RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

D027/D029
SERVICE MANUAL

003984MIU

LANIER RICOH savin

RICOH
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance
UNIVERSITY

SERVICE MANUAL

D027/D029

LANIER
RICOH
SAVIN

RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

D027/D029
SERVICE MANUAL

003984MIU

LANIER RICOH SAVIN

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Americas Corporation and its member companies.

NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH AMERICAS CORPORATION.

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.
They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

© 2008 RICOH Americas Corporation. All rights reserved.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Americas Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Americas Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
D027	MP C4000	LD540C	Aficio MP C4000	C4040
D029	MP C5000	LD550C	Aficio MP C5000	C5050

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	10/2008	Original Printing

D027/D029

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRODUCT INFORMATION

1. PRODUCT INFORMATION 1-1

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 1-1

1.2 OVERVIEW 1-2

1.2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 1-2

1.2.2 PAPER PATH 1-3

1.2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT 1-4

1.2.4 MACHINE CODES AND PERIPHERALS CONFIGURATION 1-6

1.3 GUIDANCE FOR THOSE WHO ARE FAMILIAR WITH PREDECESSOR PRODUCTS 1-10

INSTALLATION

2. INSTALLATION 2-1

2.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 2-1

2.1.1 ENVIRONMENT 2-1

2.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL 2-1

2.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS 2-2

2.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS 2-2

2.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS 2-3

2.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS 2-3

2.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 2-4

2.2.3 FAX OPTIONS 2-5

2.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS 2-5

2.3 COPIER INSTALLATION 2-6

2.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS 2-6

2.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART 2-7

2.3.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-8

Tapes and Retainers 2-8

Developer and Toner Bottles 2-9
Paper Trays 2-10
Emblem and Decals 2-11
Manual Pocket Attachment 2-11
Initialize the Developer 2-12
Settings Relevant to the Service Contract 2-12
Settings for @Remote Service 2-13
2.3.4 MOVING THE MACHINE 2-17
2.3.5 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE 2-18
2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT INSTALLATION (D351) 2-19
2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-19
2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-19
2.5 2000-SHEET LCT 2-22
2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-22
2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-22
2.6 1200-SHEET LCT (D353) 2-25
2.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-25
2.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-26
2.6.3 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE 2-28
2.7 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802) 2-29
2.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-29
2.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-30
2.8 DOCUMENT FEEDER HANDLE TYPE 5 2-33
2.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-33
2.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-34
Preparing before Installing the DF Handle 2-34
Installing the DF Handle 2-36
2.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414) 2-39
2.9.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-39
2.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-39
2.10 SHIFT TRAY UNIT (D388) 2-42
2.10.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-42
2.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-43
2.11 BRIDGE UNIT (D386) 2-45
2.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-45
2.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-46

2.12 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408) 2-49
2.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-49
2.12.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-50
2.13 2000 (BOOKLET)/ 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B804/B805) 2-52
2.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-52
2.13.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-54
Support Tray Installation 2-57
2.14 PUNCH UNIT 2-58
2.14.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-58
2.14.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-59
2.15 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY) 2-63
2.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-63
2.16 KEY COUNTER BRACKET 2-65
2.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-65
2.17 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT 2-67
2.17.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-67
2.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829) 2-69
2.18.1 INSTALLATION 2-69
User Tool Setting 2-70
2.19 USB2.0/SD SLOT TYPE A 2-71
2.19.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-71
2.19.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-71
2.19.3 TESTING THE SD CARD/USB SLOT 2-74
2.20 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER) 2-75
2.20.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-75
2.21 TRAY HEATER 2-77
2.21.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-77
2.22 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE A 2-78
2.22.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-78
2.22.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-79
Installing the Tray Heater in D351 2-79
Installing the Tray Heater in D352 2-81
Installing the Tray Heater in D387 2-84
2.23 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 2-87
2.23.1 OVERVIEW 2-87
I/F Card Slots 2-87

SD Card Slots 2-87
2.23.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE 2-87
Overview 2-87
Move Exec 2-89
Undo Exec 2-89
2.23.3 POSTSCRIPT 3 2-90
2.23.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER 2-91
2.23.5 IEEE1284 2-92
Installation Procedure 2-92
2.23.6 IEEE 802.11 A/G, G (WIRELESS LAN) 2-93
Installation Procedure 2-93
UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN 2-94
SP Mode and UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g Wireless LAN 2-96
2.23.7 BLUETOOTH 2-97
2.23.8 DATAOVERWRITESECURITY UNIT TYPE H (D377) 2-97
Before You Begin the Procedure 2-97
Seal Check and Removal 2-98
Installation Procedure 2-99
2.23.9 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT 2-101
Before You Begin the Procedure 2-101
Seal Check and Removal 2-101
Installation Procedure 2-102
Recovery from a Device Problem 2-103
Restoring the Encryption key 2-103
Clearing the NVRAM 2-104
2.23.10 PICTBRIDGE 2-105
2.23.11 VM CARD TYPE I 2-106
Installation Procedure 2-106
2.23.12 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B 2-107
Installation Procedure 2-107
Update Procedure 2-108
2.23.13 GIGABIT ETHERNET 2-110
2.23.14 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS 2-111

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3-1

3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3-1

3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS 3-2

3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS 3-2

3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS 3-3

3.2.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK 3-4

3.2.4 OPERATION CHECK 3-4

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4-1

4.1 BEFOREHAND 4-1

4.2 SPECIAL TOOLS 4-2

4.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT 4-3

4.3.1 SCANNING 4-3

Scanner sub-scan magnification 4-3

Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration 4-3

4.3.2 ARDF 4-5

ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge 4-5

ARDF sub-scan magnification 4-6

4.3.3 REGISTRATION 4-7

Image Area 4-7

Leading Edge 4-7

Side to Side 4-7

Adjustment Standard 4-7

Paper Registration Standard 4-7

Adjustment Procedure 4-7

4.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT 4-9

4.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION 4-10

Line Position Adjustment 4-10

4.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION 4-11

Copy Mode 4-11

Printer Mode 4-16

4.4 EXTERIOR COVERS 4-18

4.4.1 FRONT DOOR 4-18

4.4.2 LEFT COVER 4-19
4.4.3 REAR COVER 4-19
4.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER 4-20
4.4.5 OPERATION PANEL 4-20
4.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER 4-21
4.4.7 INNER TRAY 4-22
4.4.8 DUST FILTER 4-22
4.4.9 OZONE FILTER 4-23
Ozone filters for the scanner unit 4-23
Ozone filter for the IH inverter 4-23
4.5 SCANNER UNIT 4-25
4.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS 4-25
4.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS 4-26
4.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP 4-26
4.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR 4-29
4.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU) 4-31
When reassembling 4-31
4.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER 4-32
4.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD 4-32
4.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR 4-33
4.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR 4-34
4.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE 4-35
Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire 4-35
4.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE 4-38
Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire 4-39
4.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT 4-40
4.6 LASER OPTICS 4-41
4.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION 4-41
4.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT 4-41
Preparing the new laser optics housing unit 4-42
Before removing the old laser optics housing unit 4-42
Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit 4-42
Removing the old laser optics housing unit 4-43
Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit 4-44
After installing the new laser optics housing unit 4-45

4.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD 4-47
4.7 IMAGE CREATION 4-49
4.7.1 PCU 4-49
4.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT 4-50
Developer 4-52
4.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE 4-54
4.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN 4-54
When reinstalling the second duct fan 4-55
4.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN 4-56
When reinstalling the third duct fan 4-56
4.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT 4-57
When you install the new toner pump unit 4-59
4.7.7 TONER END SENSOR 4-62
4.8 IMAGE TRANSFER 4-63
4.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT 4-63
4.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT 4-64
4.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT 4-65
When reinstalling the image transfer belt 4-67
4.9 PAPER TRANSFER 4-70
4.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT 4-70
4.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT 4-71
4.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE 4-73
4.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD 4-74
Cleaning for ID sensors 4-74
After installing a new ID sensor unit/board 4-75
4.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR 4-75
4.10 DRIVE UNIT 4-77
4.10.1 GEAR UNIT 4-78
When installing the drive unit 4-82
Adjustment after replacing the gear unit 4-82
4.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR 4-83
4.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR 4-84
4.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y 4-84
4.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K 4-85
4.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR 4-86
4.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR 4-86

4.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR 4-87
4.10.9 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR 4-87
4.10.10 PRESSURE ROLLER CONTACT MOTOR 4-89
4.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR 4-90
4.10.12 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR 4-91
4.10.13 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR 4-93
4.10.14 TONER COLLECTION UNIT 4-94
4.10.15 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES 4-95
4.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y 4-97
4.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C 4-98
4.10.18 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K 4-99
4.11 FUSING 4-100
4.11.1 PM PARTS 4-100
4.11.2 FUSING UNIT 4-101
4.11.3 HEATING ROLLER AND HEATING ROLLER BEARING 4-102
When re-installing the heating roller 4-106
4.11.4 FUSING CLEANING FELT 4-108
When attaching a new fusing cleaning felt 4-108
4.11.5 FUSING LAMP 4-109
4.11.6 FUSING DRIVE GEAR 4-111
4.11.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING 4-112
When re-installing the pressure roller 4-114
4.11.8 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR 4-114
4.11.9 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT 4-116
4.11.10 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR 4-117
4.11.11 ONE-WAY CLUTCH GEAR AND IDLE GEAR 4-118
When re-installing the idle gear 4-118
4.11.12 FUSING FAN 4-119
When installing the fusing fan 4-119
4.11.13 PAPER EXIT FAN 4-120
When installing the paper exit fan 4-120
4.11.14 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN 4-121
When installing the IH inverter fan 4-121
4.11.15 THERMOPILE 4-122
When cleaning the lens of the thermopile 4-123
4.11.16 PRESSURE ROLLER HP SENSOR 4-125

4.11.17 IH COIL FAN 4-125
4.11.18 IH COIL UNIT 4-126
4.12 PAPER FEED 4-129
4.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT 4-129
4.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS 4-130
Tray 1 and Tray 2 4-130
4.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR 4-131
4.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR 4-132
4.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR 4-132
4.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR AND BY-PASS PAPER LENGTH SENSOR 4-134
When reinstalling the by-pass paper size sensor 4-135
4.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY 4-136
4.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR 4-138
4.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER 4-139
4.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH 4-140
4.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT 4-140
4.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR 4-142
4.13 DUPLEX UNIT 4-144
4.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT 4-144
4.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR 4-146
4.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR 4-146
4.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR 4-147
4.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 4-148
4.14.1 BOARDS 4-148
4.14.2 CONTROLLER UNIT 4-151
4.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER 4-152
4.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX 4-152
When opening the controller box 4-152
When removing the controller box 4-153
4.14.5 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD) 4-155
4.14.6 BICU 4-156
When installing the new BICU 4-156

4.14.7 PSU 4-157
PSU bracket 4-157
PSU board 4-157
4.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD 4-158
4.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD 4-158
4.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET 4-159
4.14.11 IH INVERTER 4-160
4.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD 4-160
When installing the new controller board 4-161
4.14.13 HDD FAN 4-162
4.14.14 HDD 4-163
When installing a new HDD unit 4-163
Disposal of HDD Units 4-163
Reinstallation 4-164
4.14.15 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE 4-165
NVRAM on the BICU 4-165
NVRAM on the Controller 4-165
4.15 USING DIP SWITCHES 4-167
4.15.1 CONTROLLER BOARD 4-167
4.15.2 BICU BOARD 4-167

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5. SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE 5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
5.1.1 SP TABLES 5-1
5.1.2 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
Entering SP Mode 5-1
Exiting SP Mode 5-1
5.1.3 TYPES OF SP MODES 5-2
SP Mode Button Summary 5-2
Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing 5-3
Selecting the Program Number 5-3
Exiting Service Mode 5-4
Service Mode Lock/Unlock 5-4
5.1.4 REMARKS 5-6

Display on the Control Panel Screen 5-6
Others 5-6
5.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE 5-8
5.2.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE 5-8
5.2.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN 5-10
5.2.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE 5-11
Preparation 5-11
Updating Procedure 5-11
Error Messages 5-12
Firmware Update Error 5-12
Recovery after Power Loss 5-13
5.2.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL 5-13
5.2.5 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS 5-14
Error Message Table 5-14
5.3 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE 5-16
5.4 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET 5-19
5.4.1 SOFTWARE RESET 5-19
5.4.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET 5-19
System Setting Reset 5-19
Copier Setting Reset 5-19
5.5 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS 5-21
5.5.1 OVERVIEW 5-21
5.6 SD CARD APPLI MOVE 5-22
5.6.1 OVERVIEW 5-22
5.6.2 MOVE EXEC 5-24
5.6.3 UNDO EXEC 5-25
5.7 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA 5-26
5.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-27
5.8.1 UPLOADING CONTENT OF NVRAM TO AN SD CARD 5-27
5.8.2 DOWNLOADING AN SD CARD TO NVRAM 5-28
5.9 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-29
5.9.1 INFORMATION LIST 5-29
5.9.2 DOWNLOAD 5-29
5.9.3 UPLOAD 5-30
5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG 5-31
5.10.1 OVERVIEW 5-31

5.10.2 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG 5-31
5.10.3 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD 5-36
5.10.4 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY 5-36
5.10.5 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES 5-37
SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key 5-37
SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log 5-37
SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log 5-37
5.11 CARD SAVE FUNCTION 5-38
5.11.1 OVERVIEW 5-38
Card Save: 5-38
5.11.2 PROCEDURE 5-39
5.11.3 ERROR MESSAGES 5-42

TROUBLESHOOTING

6. TROUBLESHOOTING 6-1
6.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 6-1
6.2 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS 6-2
6.3 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 6-3
6.3.1 IMAGE PROBLEMS 6-3
Stain on the outputs 6-3
6.3.2 STACK PROBLEM IN THE 1-BIN TRAY 6-3
6.4 JAM DETECTION 6-4
6.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 6-5
6.6 SCANNER TEST MODE 6-6
6.6.1 SBU TEST MODE 6-6
6.6.2 IPU TEST MODE 6-6
SP4-904-1 Register Access 6-6
SP4-904-2 Image Path 6-6

D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL APPENDICES

SEE D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL APPENDICES SECTION FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)

SEE SECTION B408 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER (B804/B805/D373/D374)

SEE SECTION B804/B805/D373/D374 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAPER FEED UNIT PB3040 (D351)

SEE SECTION D351 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

LCIT PB3050 (D352)

SEE SECTION D352 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BRIDGE UNIT BU3030D (D386)

SEE SECTION D386 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTERNAL SHIFT TRAY SH3040 (D388)

SEE SECTION D388 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FAX OPTION TYPE C5000 (D393)

SEE SECTION D393 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 BIN TRAY BN3070 (D414)

SEE SECTION D414 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRODUCT INFORMATION
APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS
Fax Option Type C5000 (D393)

INSTALLATION
APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES
Paper Feed Unit PB3040 (D351)

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE
APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS
LCT PB3050 (D352)

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT
APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)
Booklet Finisher/Finisher (B804/B805/D373/D374)

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE
APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

TROUBLESHOOTING
APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION

APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS
1 Bin Tray BN3070 (D414)

APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES
Bridge Unit BU3030 (D386)
Internal Shift Tray SH3040 (D388)

TAB POSITION 1

TAB POSITION 2

TAB POSITION 3

TAB POSITION 4

TAB POSITION 5

TAB POSITION 6

TAB POSITION 7

TAB POSITION 8

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
4. The copier drives some of its components when it completes the warm-up period. Be careful to keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components as the copier starts operation.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

Health Safety Conditions

1. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Immediately wash eyes with plenty of water. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.
2. The copier, uses a high voltage power source, and generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The copier and its peripherals must be serviced by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

⚠WARNING

- ⃠ Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an explosion might occur.

⚠CAUTION

- The Controller Board, Optional Fax, and memory Expansion Units on this machine contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, the maintenance unit which includes developer or the organic photoconductor in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

Laser Safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

⚠WARNING

- **Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

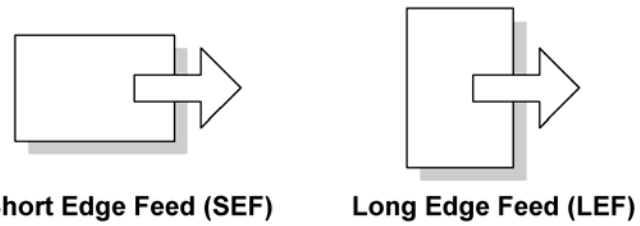
⚠WARNING

- **WARNING**: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Optics Housing Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.
- **CAUTION MARKING:**

Symbols, Abbreviations and Trademarks

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations. The meaning of those symbols and abbreviations are as follows:

☛	See or Refer to
	Clip ring
	Screw
	Connector
	Clamp
	E-ring
SEF	Short Edge Feed
LEF	Long Edge Feed



Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.
PostScript® is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.
PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.
Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.
PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

PRODUCT INFORMATION

1. PRODUCT INFORMATION

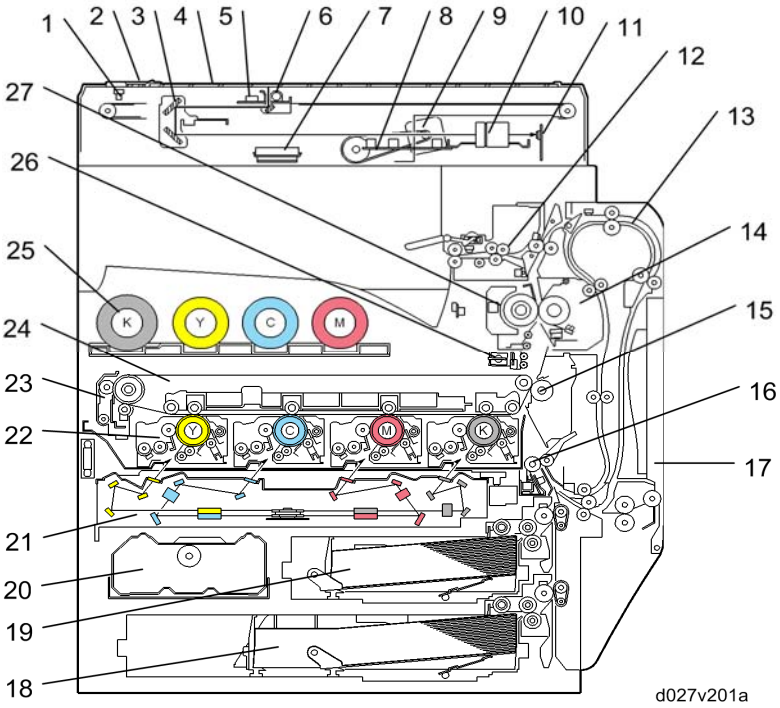
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Mainframe Specifications
- Printer Specifications
- Scanner Specifications
- Supported Paper Sizes
- Software Accessories
- Optional Equipment

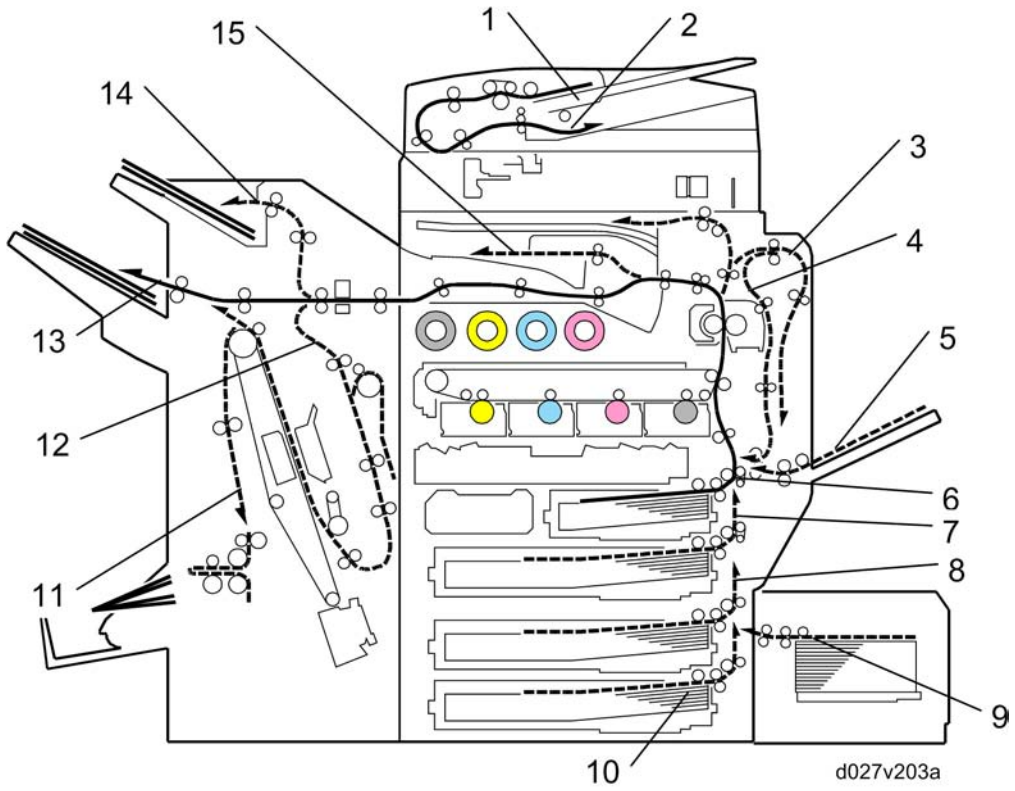
1.2 OVERVIEW

1.2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Scanner HP sensor 2. ADF exposure glass 3. 2nd scanner (2nd carriage) 4. Exposure glass 5. 1st scanner (1st carriage) 6. Scanner lamp 7. Original width sensor 8. Original length sensor 9. Scanner motor 10. Lens block 11. Sensor board unit (SBU) 12. Decurler rollers 13. Duplex unit 14. Fusing unit	15. Paper transfer roller 16. Registration roller 17. By-pass feed table 18. Tray 2 19. Tray 1 20. Toner collection bottle 21. Laser optics housing unit 22. PCU (4 colors) 23. Image transfer belt cleaning unit 24. Image transfer belt unit 25. Toner bottle (4 colors) 26. ID sensor 27. IH coil unit

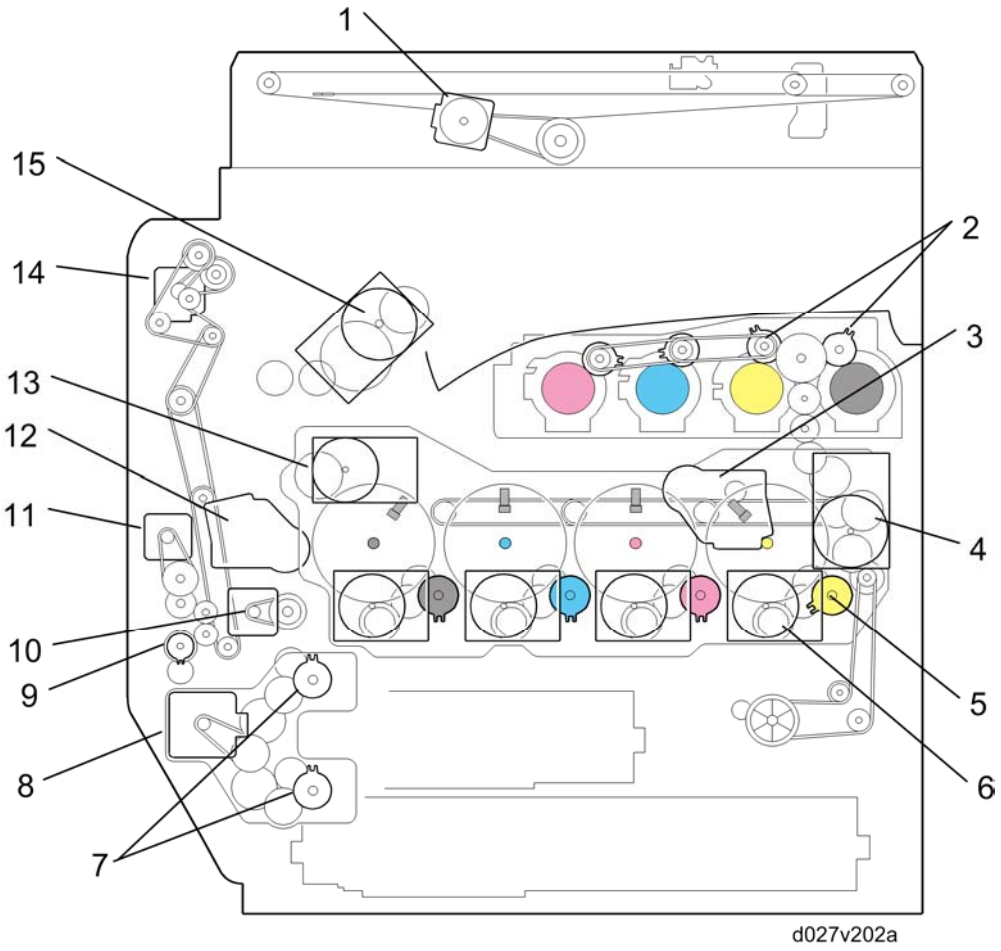
1.2.2 PAPER PATH



1. Original tray 2. Original exit tray 3. Duplex inverter 4. Duplex feed 5. By-pass tray feed 6. Tray 1 feed 7. Tray 2 feed 8. Tray 3: Optional paper feed unit/LCT	9. Tray 5: Optional LCT 1200 10. Tray 4: Optional paper feed unit 11. Finisher booklet stapler (Optional) 12. Finisher stapler (Optional) 13. Finisher upper tray (Optional) 14. Finisher proof tray (Optional) 15. Inner Tray

The 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher and 1000-sheet finisher require the bridge unit and one from the two-tray paper feed unit or the LCT.

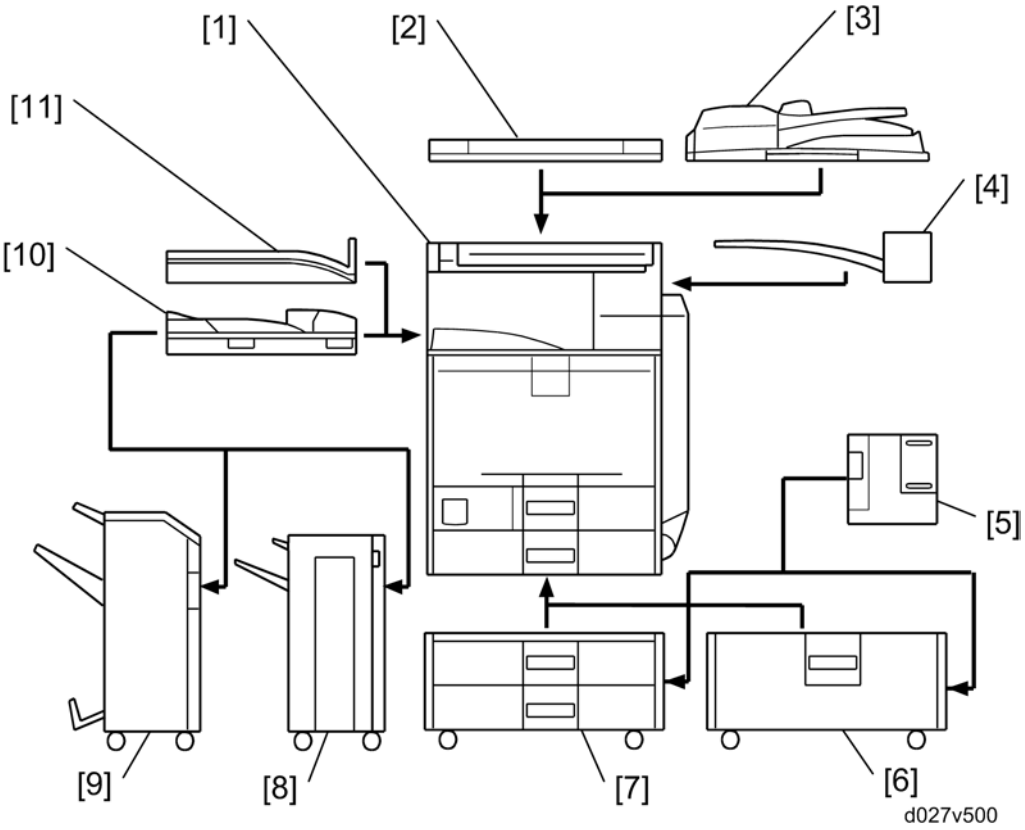
1.2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Scanner motor:	Drives the scanner unit.
2. Toner supply clutch-K and -CMY:	Turns on/off the drive power to the toner supply unit (K and -CMY).
3.ITB (Image Transfer Belt) contact motor:	Moves the ITB into contact and away from the color PCUs.
4. Toner transport motor:	Drives the toner attraction pumps and the toner collection coils from the PCUs, from the transfer belt unit, and inside the toner collection bottle. Also rotates the toner bottles.
5. Development clutch (K, Y, M, C):	Turns on/off the drive power to the development unit (K, Y, M, C).

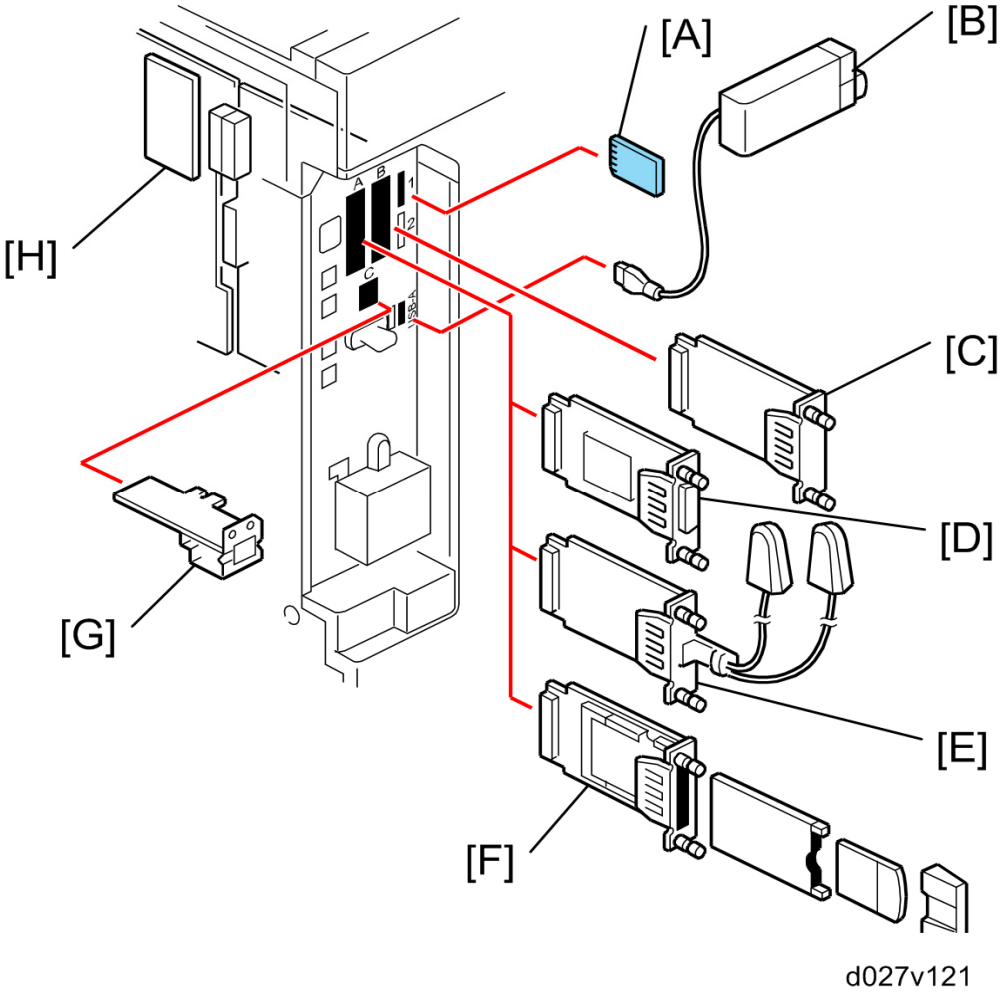
6. Drum/Development drive motor (K, Y, M, C)	Drives the color drum unit and development unit (K, Y, M, C).
7. Paper feed clutch	Switches the drive power between tray 1 and tray 2.
8. Paper feed motor:	Drives the paper feed mechanisms (tray 1 & tray 2).
9. By-pass feed clutch:	Turns on/off the drive power to the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation rollers.
10. Registration motor:	Drives the registration roller.
11. By-pass/duplex feed motor:	Drives the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation roller, and duplex transport rollers.
12. Paper transfer contact motor:	Moves the paper transfer roller in contact with the image transfer belt.
13. ITB drive motor:	Drives the image transfer belt unit.
14. Duplex inverter motor	Drives the duplex inverter rollers and duplex transport rollers.
15. Fusing/paper exit motor:	Drives the fusing unit and paper exit section.

1.2.4 MACHINE CODES AND PERIPHERALS CONFIGURATION



Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
Mainframe	D027/D029	[1]	-
Platen cover	G329	[2]	One from the two
ARDF	B802	[3]	
2000(booklet)/3000-sheet finisher	B804/B805	[9]	One from [8] and [9]; Requires [10] and one from [6] and [7]
Punch unit: 3/2 holes	B702-17	-	Requires [9]
Punch unit: 4/2 holes	B702-27	-	Requires [9]
Punch unit: 4 holes	B702-28	-	Requires [9]

Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
1000-sheet finisher	B408	[8]	One from [8] and [9]; Requires [10] and one from [6] and [7]
2000-sheet LCT	D352	[6]	One from the two
Two-tray paper feed unit	D351	[7]	
1200-sheet LCT	D353	[5]	Requires [6] or [7]
1-bin tray	D414	[4]	-
Bridge unit	D386	[10]	One from the two
Shift tray	D388	[11]	
Scanner Accessibility Option	D423	-	-



Item	Machine code	Call out	Remark
USB2.0/SD Slot	D422-01	[B]	In USB A (front)
Gigabit Ethernet	D377-21	[G]	-
IEEE 1284	B679-17	[D]	You can only install one of these at a time.
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11a/g)	D377-01 (NA) D377-02 (EU/AA)	[E]	
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11g)	D377-19		
Bluetooth	B826-17	[F]	

File Format Converter	D377-04	[C]	-
Copy Data Security Unit	B829-07	[H]	-
PostScript 3	D413-13 (NA) D413-14 (EU) D413-12 (AA)	[A]	You can only install one of these in SD slot 1 at a time
DataOverwriteSecurity Unit (DOS)	D377-06		
PictBridge	D413-04		
VM Card	D430-01 (NA) D430-02 (EU) D430-03 (AA)	-	In SD card slot 2
Browser Unit	D403-05 (NA) D403-06 (EU) D403-07 (AA)	-	In SD card slot 2 Remove it from slot 2 after installing.
HDD Encryption Unit	D377-16	-	

1.3 GUIDANCE FOR THOSE WHO ARE FAMILIAR WITH PREDECESSOR PRODUCTS

Machine D027/D029 is a successor model to Machine B222/B224. If you have experience with the predecessor products, the following information will be of help when you read this manual.

Different Points from Predecessor Products

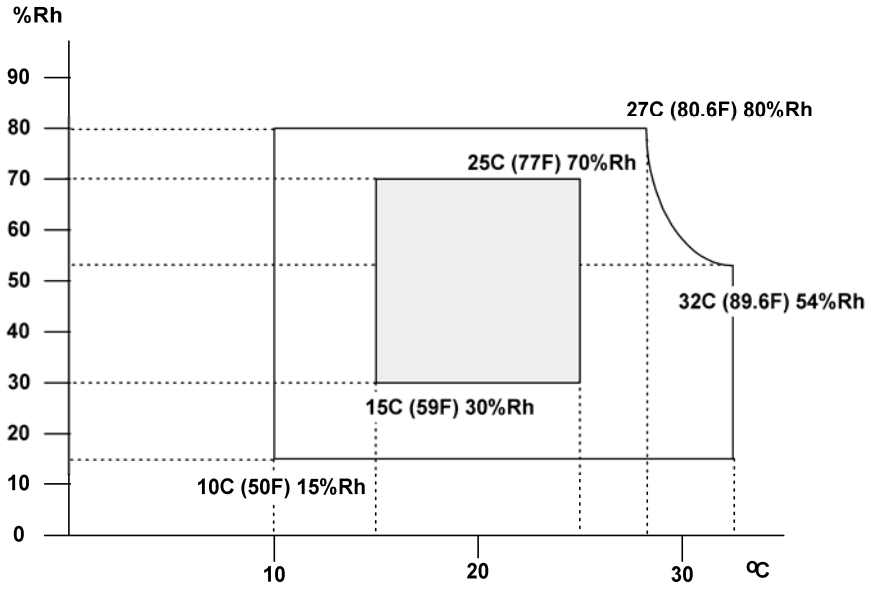
	D027/D029	B222/B224
Basic PM Interval	120K prints	80K prints
PM Operation for PCU	New steps were added to the replacement procedure for the drum unit ▪ Turn the development roller counterclockwise. ▪ Do SP 1902-001.	-
PM Operation for Fusing Unit	Some PM items (such as fusing cleaning felt) are different from the PM items for the previous models.	-
Fusing System	Roller-heating IH system	Belt-heating IH system
SD Card Slots	2 slots	3 slots
Location of Firmware for Printer, Scanner, Netfile, NIB, WebDocBox, WebSys, and DESS	Flash ROM on the controller board	Printer/scanner SD card

INSTALLATION

2. INSTALLATION

2.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

2.1.1 ENVIRONMENT



1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89.6°F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight)
4. Ventilation: 3 times/hr/person or more
5. Do not let the machine get exposed to the following:
   1) Cool air from an air conditioner
   2) Heat from a heater
6. Do not install the machine in areas that are exposed to corrosive gas.
7. Install the machine at locations lower than 2,500 m (8,200 ft.) above sea level.
8. Install the machine on a strong, level base. (Inclination on any side must be no more than 5 mm.)
9. Do not install the machine in areas that get strong vibrations.

2.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

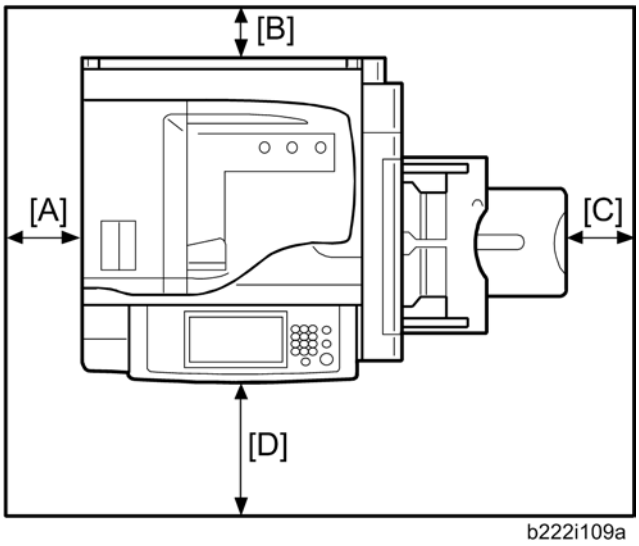
Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2")

Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2")

2.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- This machine, which uses high voltage power sources, can generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.



A: Over 100 mm (3.9")

B: Over 100 mm (3.9")

C: Over 550 mm (21.7")

D: Over 750 mm (29.5")

Put the machine near the power source with the clearance shown above.

2.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

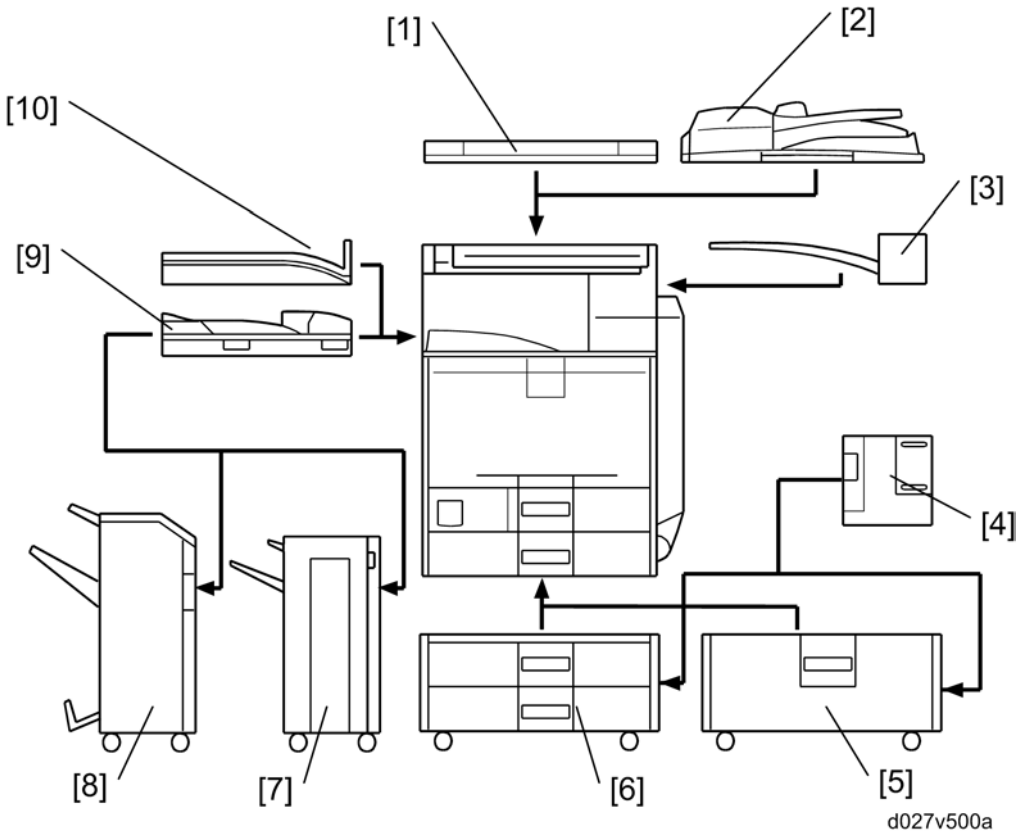
CAUTION

- Insert the plug firmly in the outlet.
- Do not use an outlet extension plug or cord.
- Ground the machine.

1. Input voltage level:
   120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12 A
   220 V to 240 V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: More than 8 A
2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10 %
3. Do not put things on the power cord.

2.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS

2.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS



No.	Options	Remarks
1	Platen Cover	One from No.1 or No.2
2	ARDF	
3	1-Bin Tray Unit	-
4	1200-Sheet LCT	Requires No.5 or No.6
5	2000-Sheet LCT	One from No.5, No.6
6	Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit	
7	1000-Sheet Finisher	One from No.7, No.8;

Optional Unit Combinations

8	2000(Booklet) / 3000-Sheet Finisher	Requires No.9 and one from No.5 and No.6
9	Bridge Unit	One from No.9 or No.10
10	Shift Tray	

2.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Bluetooth	One from the four (I/F Slot A)
2	IEEE 802.11a/g	
3	IEEE 1284	
4	File Format Converter	I/F Slot B
5	Gigabit Ethernet	I/F Slot C
6	PostScript 3	One from the three (SD card slot 1)
7	PictBridge Option	
8	DataOverwriteSecurity Unit	
9	Browser Unit	SD card slot 2 (during installation only)
10	VM Card	SD card slot 2
11	HDD Encryption Unit	SD card slot 2 (during installation only)

2.2.3 FAX OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Fax Option Type C5000	-
2	*Hand Set Type 1018	Requires No.1. (NA Only)
3	G3 Interface Unit Type C5000	-

*: Child options (Child options require a parent option.)

2.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Copy Data Security Unit	-
2	Optional Counter Interface Unit	-
3	USB2.0/SD Slot	-

2.3 COPIER INSTALLATION

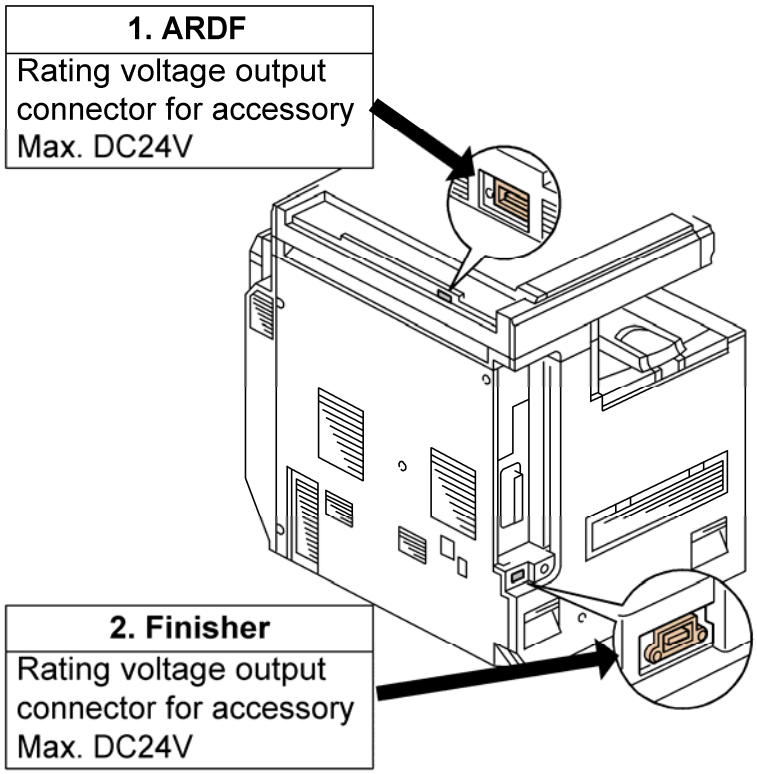
⚠CAUTION

- Make sure that the image transfer belt is in its correct position (away from the PCUs) before you move the machine. Otherwise, the image transfer belt and the black PCU can be damaged.

2.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS

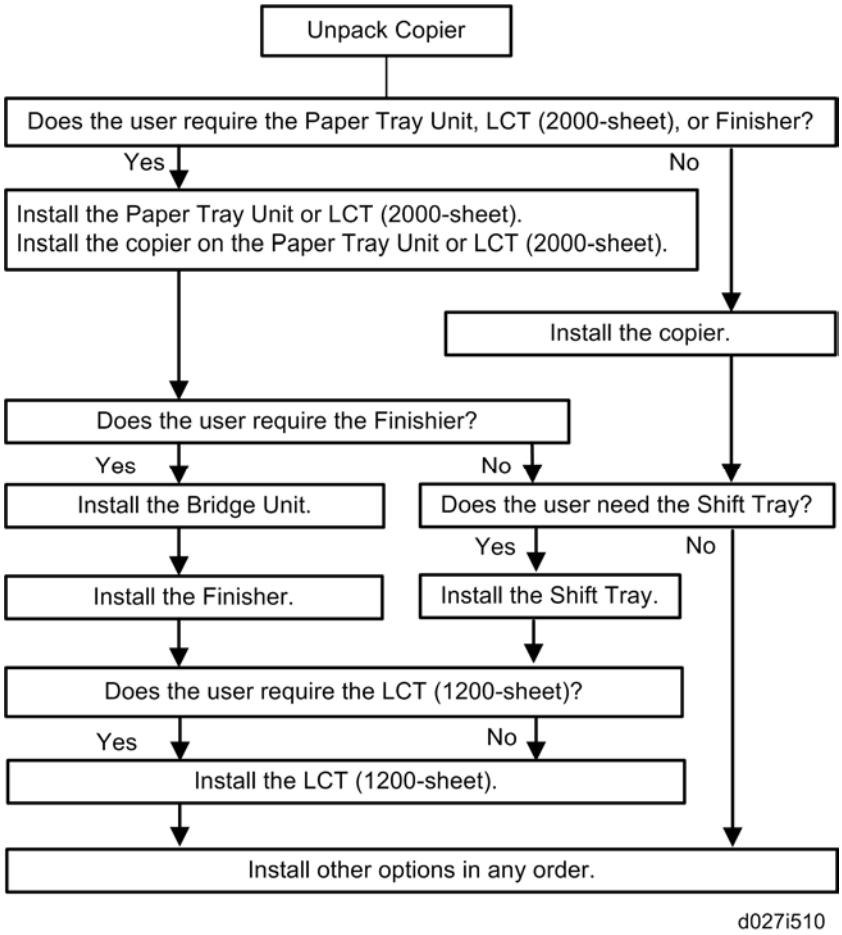
⚠CAUTION

- Rating voltage for peripherals.
- Make sure to plug the cables into the correct sockets.



2.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

This flow chart shows the best procedure for installation.



You need the optional paper tray unit or the LCT if you want to install the finisher (B408, B804 or B805).

The punch unit is for 2000-sheet booklet finisher (B804) and 3000-sheet finisher (B805).

2.3.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

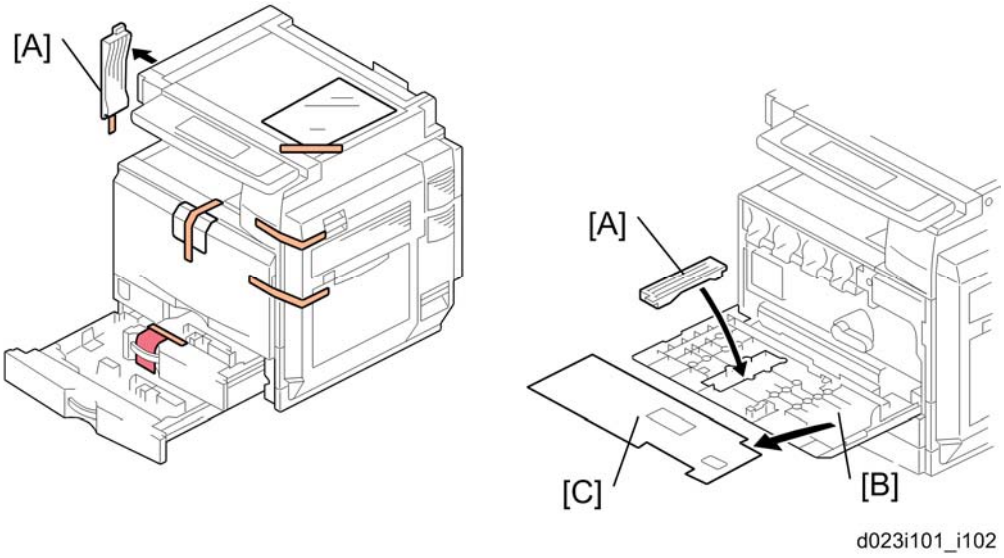
- Remove the tape from the development units before you turn the main switch on. The development units can be severely damaged if you do not remove the tape.

Put the machine on the paper tray unit or the LCT first if you install an optional paper tray unit or the optional LCT at the same time. Then install the machine and other options.

Note

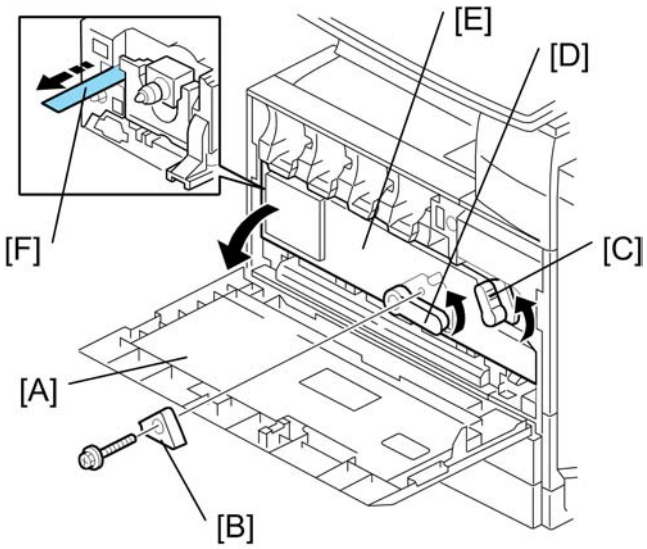
- Keep the shipping retainers after you install the machine. You may need them in the future if you transport the machine to another location.

Tapes and Retainers



1. Remove all the tapes and retainers on the machine.
2. Remove all the tapes and retainers in trays 1 and 2, and then take out the power cord from tray 1 (if applicable).
3. Remove the scanner unit stay [A].
4. Open the front door [B], and then remove the jam location sheet [C].
5. Keep the scanner unit stay [A] inside the front door [B].
6. Reattach the jam location sheet.
7. Close the front door.

Developer and Toner Bottles

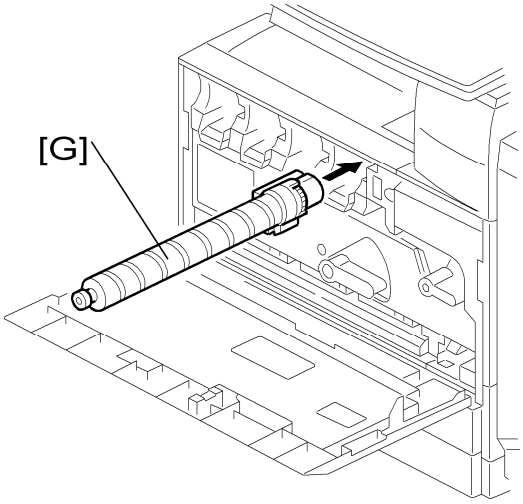


d027i106

1. Open the front door [A].
   - GSA model (-57) and EU models (-27) do not require steps from 2 to 7. Skip to step 8 if you install these models.
2. Remove the stopper [B] (🔩 x 1).

   Note
   - This stopper locks the drum positioning plate lever.
3. Release the image transfer unit lock lever [C], and turn the drum positioning plate lever [D] counterclockwise.
4. Open the drum positioning plate [E].
5. Remove all tapes [F] from the four development units.

   Note
   - When you remove the tape from the development unit, hold the development unit with your hand, and then pull the tape.
6. Close the drum positioning plate. Then lock the image transfer unit lock and turn the drum positioning plate lever clockwise.
7. Lock the drum positioning plate lever with the stopper [B] (🔩 x 1).
8. Shake each toner bottle five or six times.



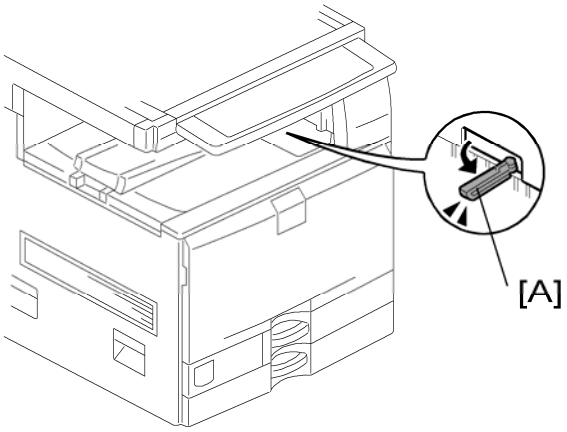
9. Install each toner bottle [G] in the machine.
10. Close the front door.

Paper Trays

1. Pull each paper tray out. Then adjust the side guides and end guide to match the paper size.

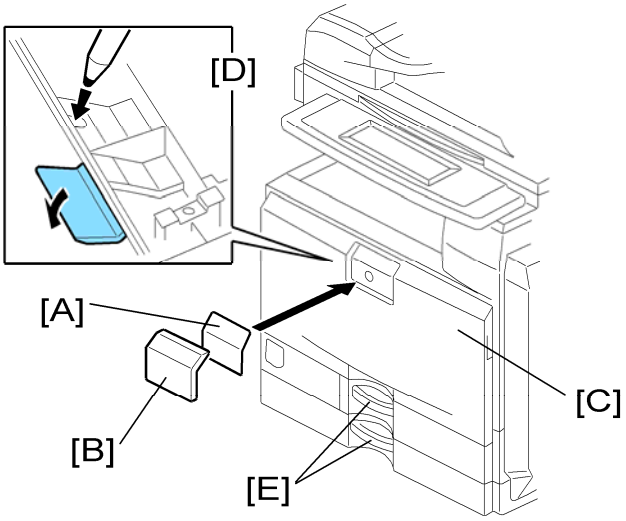
Note

- To move the side guides, first pull out the tray fully. Then push down the green lock at the rear inside the tray.



2. Pull out the feeler [A] for the output tray full detection mechanism.

Emblem and Decals



1. Attach the correct emblem [A] and the cover [B] to the front door [C] of the machine, if the emblem is not attached.

Note

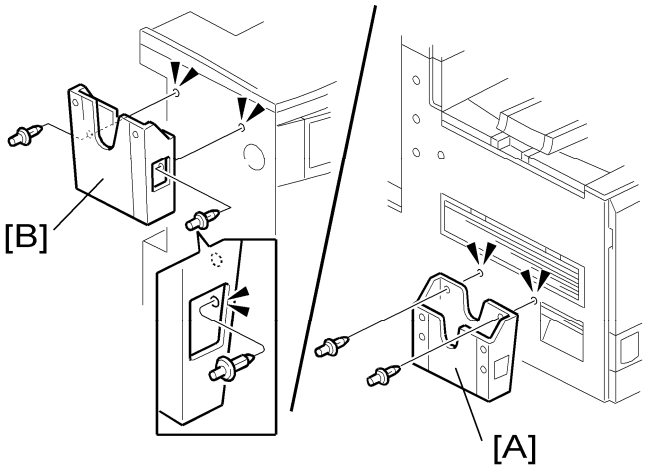
- If you want to change the emblem that has been already attached, remove the panel with an object (not a sharp object) as shown [D], and then install the correct emblem.

2. Attach the correct paper tray number and size decals to the paper trays [E].

Note

- Paper tray number and size decals are also used for the optional paper tray or the optional LCT. Keep these decals for use with these optional units.

Manual Pocket Attachment



1. Attach the manual pocket [A] to the left side of the copier (snap rivet x 2).

2. If a finisher has been installed, attach the manual pocket [B] to the rear side of the finisher (snap rivet x 2).

Initialize the Developer

1. Plug in the machine.
2. Make sure that the platen or ARDF is closed and the main power is turned off.
3. Turn the main power switch on. The machine automatically starts the initialization procedure. The Start button LED (⏻) turns green when this procedure has finished.
4. Make copies of image samples (text, photo, and text/photo modes).
5. Do the Automatic Color Calibration process (ACC) as follows:
   1). Print the ACC test pattern (User tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
   2). Put the printout on the exposure glass.
   3). Put 10 sheets of white paper on top of the test chart.
   4). Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
   5). Press “Start Scanning” on the LCD panel. The machine starts the ACC.
6. Check that the sample image has been copied normally.

Settings Relevant to the Service Contract

Change the necessary settings for the following SP modes if the customer has made a service contract.

Note

- You must select one of the counter methods (developments/prints) in accordance with the contract (☛ SP5-045-001).

Item	SP No.	Function	Default
Counting method	SP5-045-001	Specifies if the counting method used in meter charge mode is based on developments or prints. NOTE: You can set this one time only. You cannot change the setting after you have set it for the first time.	“0”: Developments
A3/11" x 17" double counting	SP5-104-001	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11" x 17" paper. When you have to change this setting, contact your supervisor.	“No”: Single counting
Service Tel. No. Setting	SP5-812-001 through 004	5812-002 programs the service station fax number. The number is printed on the counter list when the meter charge mode is selected. This lets the user fax the counter data to the service station.	

Settings for @Remote Service

Note

- Prepare and check the following check points before you visit the customer site. For details, ask the @Remote key person.

Check points before making @Remote settings

1. The setting of SP5816-201 in the mainframe must be "0".
2. Device ID2 (SP5811-003) must be correctly programmed.
   - 6 spaces must be put between the 3-digit prefix and the following 8-digit number (e.g. xxx_____xxxxxxxx).
   - ID2 (SP5811-003) and the serial number (SP5811-001) must be the same (e.g. ID2: A01_____23456789 = serial No. A0123456789)

3. The following settings must be correctly programmed.
   - Proxy server IP address (SP5816-063)
   - Proxy server Port number (SP5816-064)
   - Proxy User ID (SP5816-065)
   - Proxy Password (SP5816-066)
4. Get a Request Number

Execute the @Remote Settings

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Input the Request number which you have obtained from @Remote Center GUI, and then enter [OK] with **SP5816-202**.
3. Confirm the Request number, and then click [EXECUTE] with **SP5816-203**.
4. Check the confirmation result with **SP5816-204**.

Value	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
0	Succeeded	-
1	Request Number Error	Check the request number again.
3	Communication Error (Proxy Enabled)	Check the network condition.
4	Communication Error (Proxy Disabled)	Check the network condition.
5	Proxy Error (Illegal User Name Or Password)	Check Proxy user name and password.
6	Communication Error	Check the network condition.
8	Other Error	See "SP5816-208 Error Codes" below this.
9	Request Number Confirmation Executing	Processing… Please wait.

5. Make sure that the screen displays the Location Information with **SP5816-205** only when it has been input at the Center GUI.
6. Click [EXECUTE] to execute the registration with **SP5816-206**.

7. Check the registration result with **SP5816-207**.

Value	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
0	Succeeded	-
1	Request Number Error	Check the request number again.
2	Already Registered	Check the registration status.
3	Communication Error (Proxy Enabled)	Check the network condition.
4	Communication Error (Proxy Disabled)	Check the network condition.
5	Proxy Error (Illegal User Name Or Password)	Check Proxy user name and password.
8	Other Error	See "SP5816-208 Error Codes" below this.
9	Request Number Confirmation Executing	Processing… Please wait.

8. Exit the SP mode.

SP5816-208 Error Codes

Cause	Code	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, Registration Attempted Without Acquiring Request No.	Obtain a Request Number before attempting the Inquiry or Registration.
	-12003	Attempted Registration Without Execution Of A Confirmation And No Previous Registration.	Perform Confirmation before attempting the Registration.
	-12004	Attempted Setting With Illegal Entries For Certification And Id2.	Check ID2 of the mainframe.
	-12005	@Remote Communication Is Prohibited. The Device Has An Embedded RC Gate-Related Problem.	Make sure that "Remote Service" in User Tools is set to "Do not prohibit".
	-12006	A Confirmation Request Was Made After The Confirmation Had Been Already Completed.	Execute registration.
	-12007	The Request Number Used At Registration Was Different From The One Used At Confirmation.	Check Request No.
	-12008	Update Certification Failed Because Mainframe Was In Use.	Check the mainframe condition. If the mainframe is in use, try again later.
Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Other Error	
	-2387	Not Supported At The Service Center	
	-2389	Database Out Of Service	

Cause	Code	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
	-2390	Program Out Of Service	
	-2391	Two Registrations For The Same Mainframe	Check the registration condition of the mainframe
	-2392	Parameter Error	
	-2393	External RCG Not Managed	
	-2394	Mainframe Not Managed	
	-2395	Box ID For External RCG Is Illegal.	
	-2396	Mainframe ID For External RCG Is Illegal.	
	-2397	Incorrect ID2 Format	Check the ID2 of the mainframe.
	-2398	Incorrect Request Number Format	Check the Request No.

2.3.4 MOVING THE MACHINE

This section shows you how to manually move the machine from one floor to another floor. See the section “Transporting the Machine” if you have to pack the machine and move it a longer distance.

1. Remove all trays from the optional paper feed unit or LCT.

2.3.5 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE

Main Frame

1. Do SP 4806-001 to move the scanner carriage from the home position. This prevents dust from falling into the machine during transportation.
2. Remove the toner cartridges. This prevents toner flow into the toner supply tube, which is caused by vibration during transport. This can also cause the tube to be clogged with toner.
3. Make sure there is no paper left in the paper trays. Then fix down the bottom plates with a sheet of paper and tape.
4. Empty the toner collection bottle. Then attach securing tape to stop the toner bottle from coming out.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Attach shipping tape to the covers and doors.
   - Shrink-wrap the machine tightly.

Note

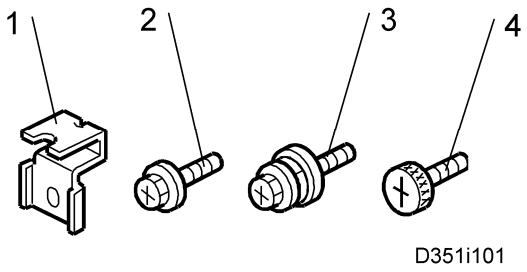
- After you move the machine, make sure you do the "Auto Color Registration" as follows. This optimizes color registration.
- 1. Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
- 2. Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).
  To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
- Make sure that the side fences in the trays are correctly positioned to prevent color registration errors.

2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT INSTALLATION (D351)

2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Securing Bracket	2
2	Screw (M4x10)	2
3	Spring Washer Screw	1
4	Knob Screw	3



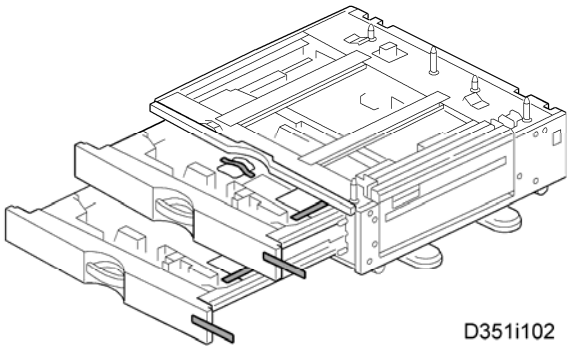
D351i101

2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

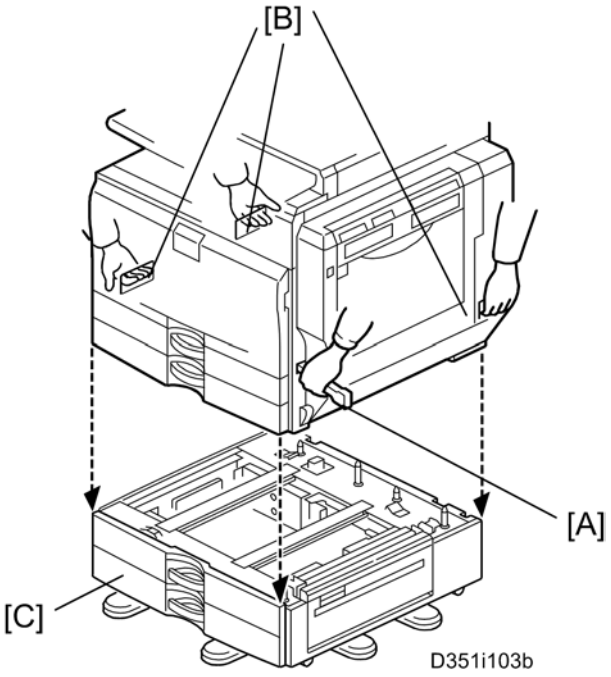
⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. The handle and grips may be damaged.

Paper Feed Unit Installation (D351)



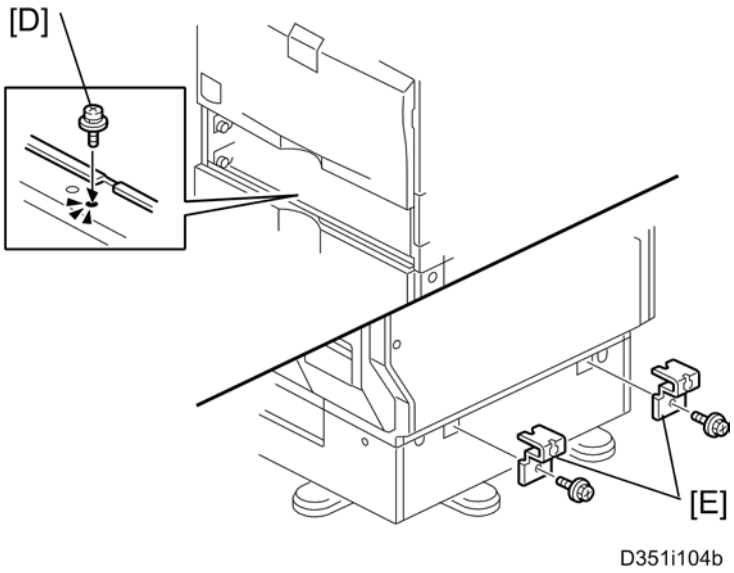
1. Remove all tape on the paper feed unit.
2. Remove the paper trays and remove all tape and padding.



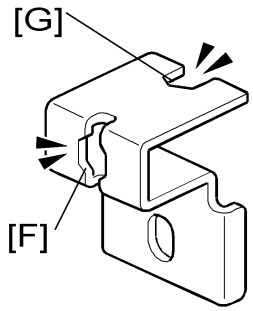
3. Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.
4. Lift the copier and install it on the paper feed unit [C].

Note

- Hold the handle and grips of the machine when you lift and move the machine.



5. Remove trays 1 and 2 of the machine.
6. Fasten the spring washer screw [D].
7. Reinstall all trays.
8. Attach the securing brackets [E] (x 1 each; M4x10).



Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 6). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you install the tray heater.

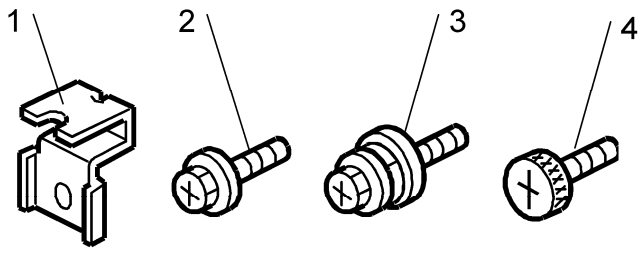
9. Load paper into the paper feed unit.
10. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
11. Check the paper feed unit operation and copy quality.

2.5 2000-SHEET LCT

2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Securing Bracket	2
2	Screw (M4x10)	2
3	Spring Washer Screw	1
4	Knob Screw	3

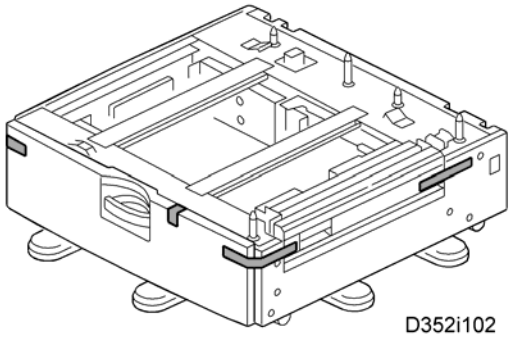


D352i101

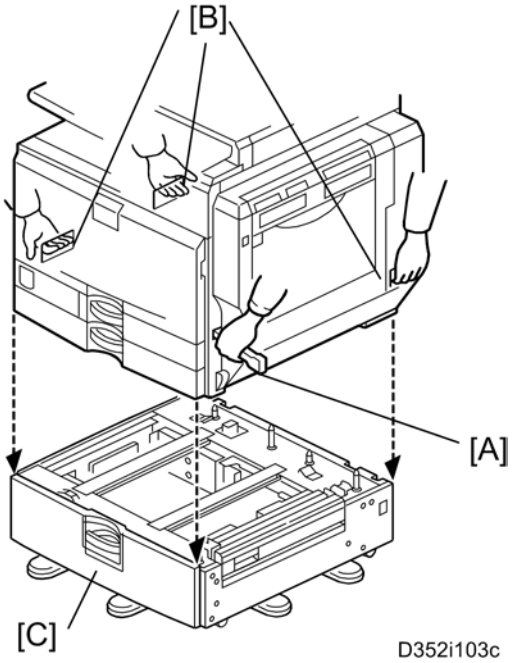
2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. The handle and grips may be damaged.



1. Remove all tapes and retainers in the LCT.

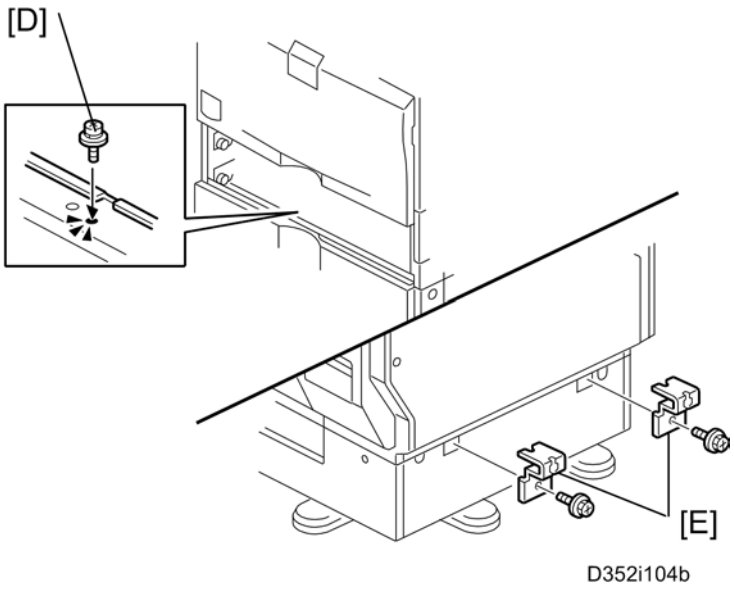


2. Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.
3. Lift the copier and install it on the LCT [C].

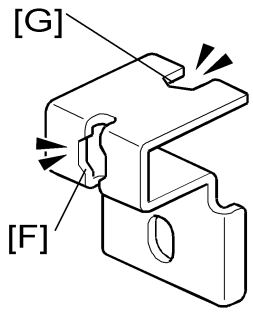
Note

- Hold the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine when you lift and move the machine.

2000-Sheet LCT



4. Remove trays 1 and 2 of the machine.
5. Fasten the spring washer screw [D].
6. Reinstall all trays.
7. Attach the securing brackets [E] (x 1 each; M4x10).



Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 5). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you install the tray heater.

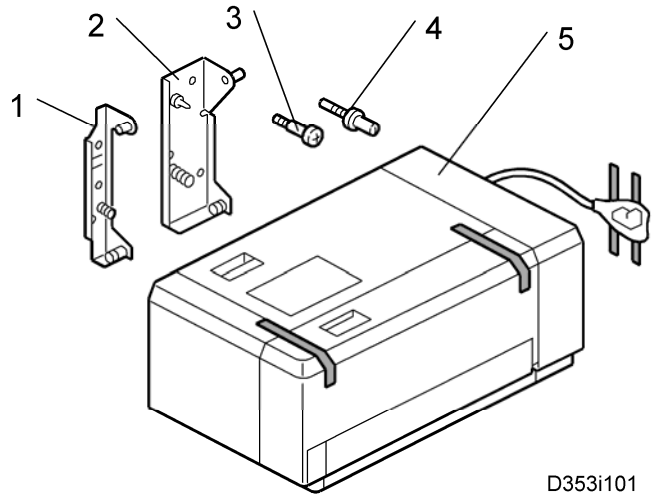
8. Load paper into the LCT.
9. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
10. Check the LCT operation and copy quality.

2.6 1200-SHEET LCT (D353)

2.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Bracket	1
2	Rear Bracket	1
3	Stud Screw	4
4	Joint Pin	2
5	LCT	1



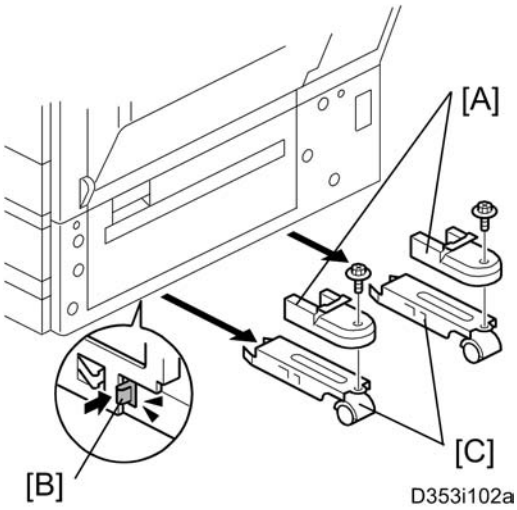
2.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

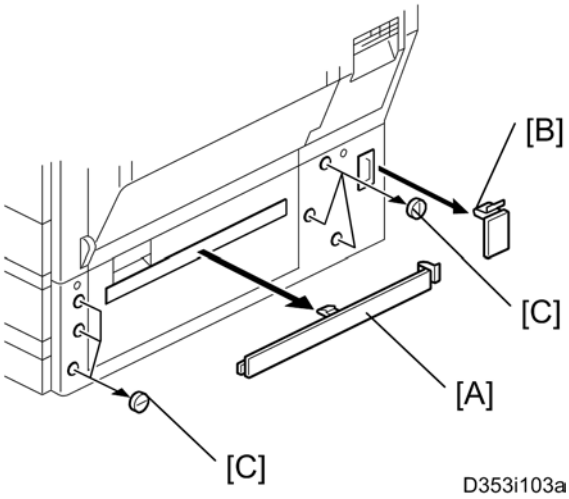
- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

Note

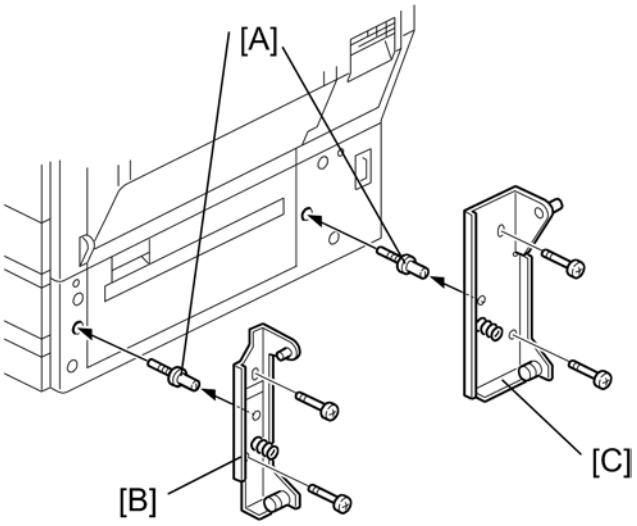
- The Paper Tray Unit (D351) or LCT 2000-Sheet (D352) must be installed before installing this 1200-sheet LCT.



1. Unpack the LCT and remove the tapes.
2. Remove the stand covers [A].
3. Release the locks [B] of the front and rear caster stands.
4. Remove the caster stands [C].

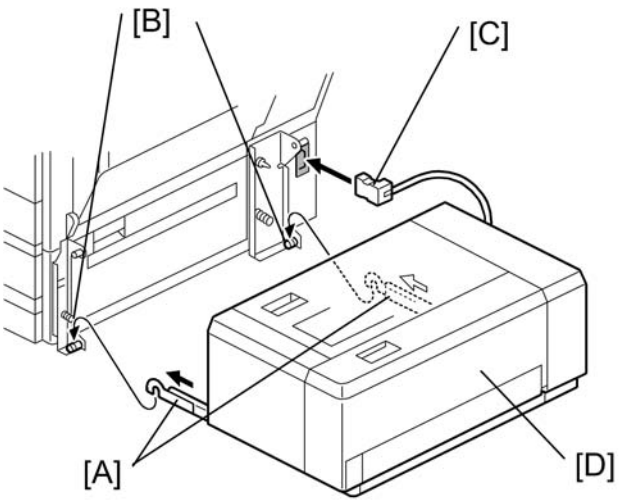


5. Remove the paper path cover [A], connector cover [B] and six hole covers [C].



D353i104a

6. Insert the joint pins [A].
7. Attach the front [B] and rear brackets [C].

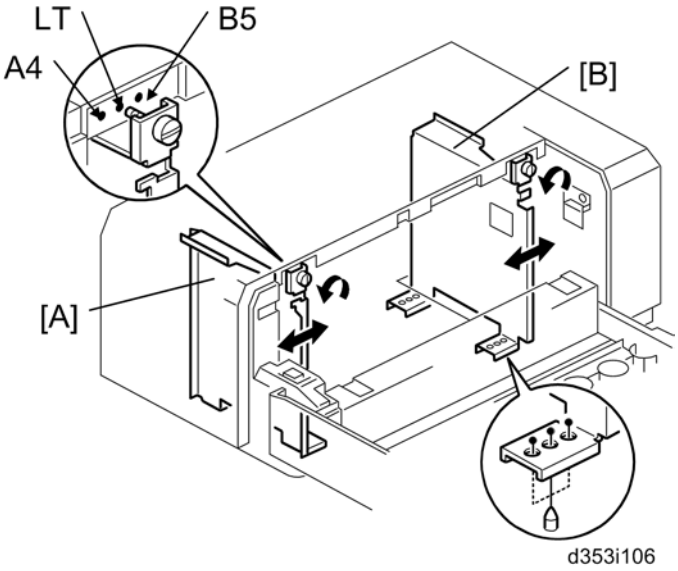


D353i105a

8. Pull out the front and rear rails [A], and then hang them on each bracket [B].
9. Connect the LCT cable [C] to the main machine.
10. Slide the LCT [D] into the main machine.
11. Make sure that the front and rear sides of the LCT are closely attached to the main machine.

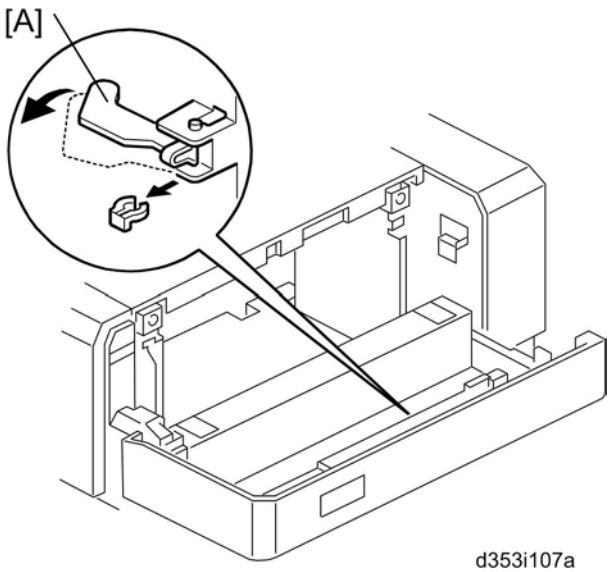
2.6.3 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE

1. Open the right door of the LCT.
2. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate until it reaches its lowest position.



d353i106

3. Remove the front and rear side fences [A, B] (x 1 each).
4. Install the side fences in the correct position (A4 LEF/ LT LEF/ B5 LEF).



d353i107a

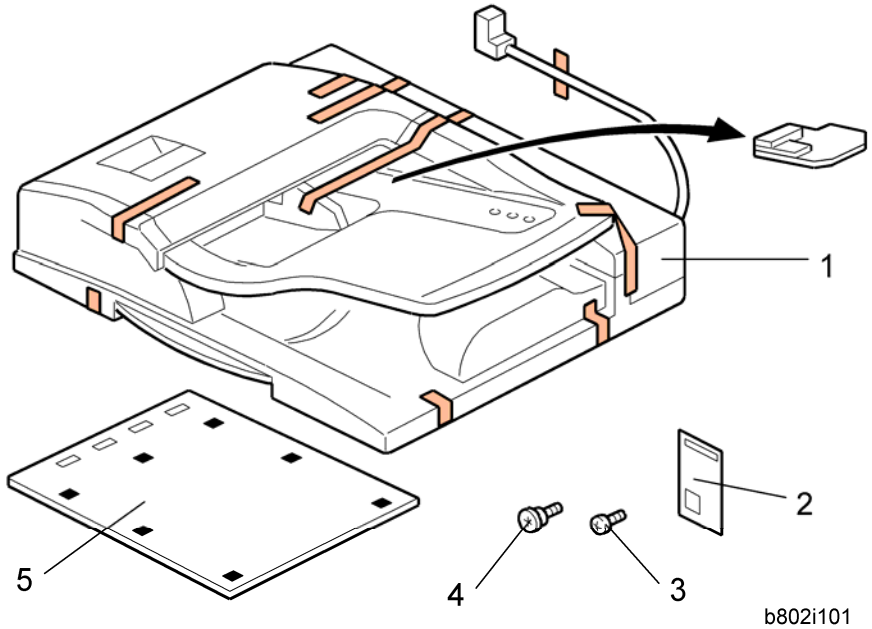
5. Pull the end fence [A] for B5 size paper as shown (x 1) if the side fences are adjusted for B5 size paper.
6. Close the right door.
7. Turn on the main power switch, and then go into the SP mode.
8. Input the correct paper size for the1200-sheet LCT with SP5181-018.

2.7 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802)

2.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	ARDF	1
2	Decal	1
3	Knob Screw	2
4	Stud Screw	2
5	Platen Plate	1

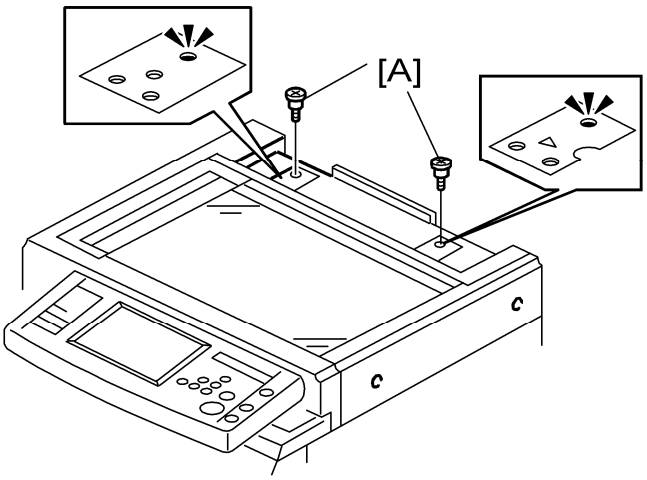


2.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

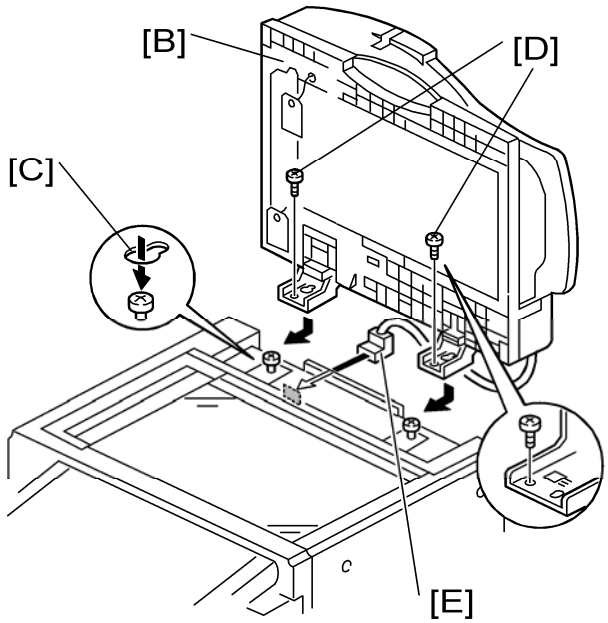
⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

1. Remove all tapes and shipping retainers.
2. Remove the two screws already installed at the top rear of the machine.

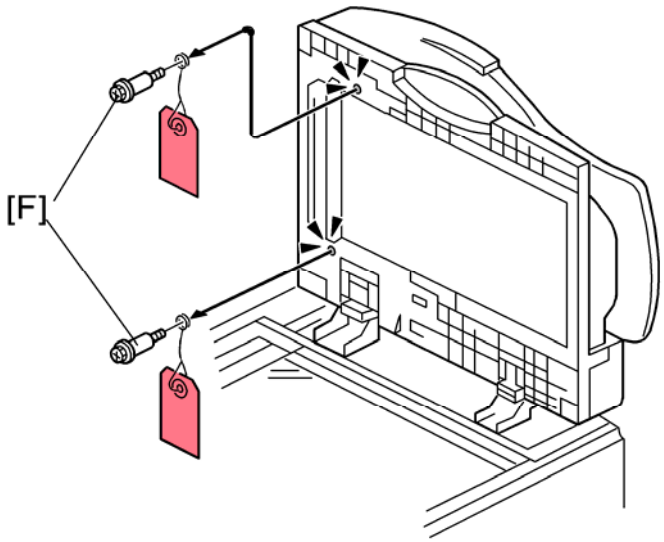


3. Insert the two stud screws [A] on the top of the machine.

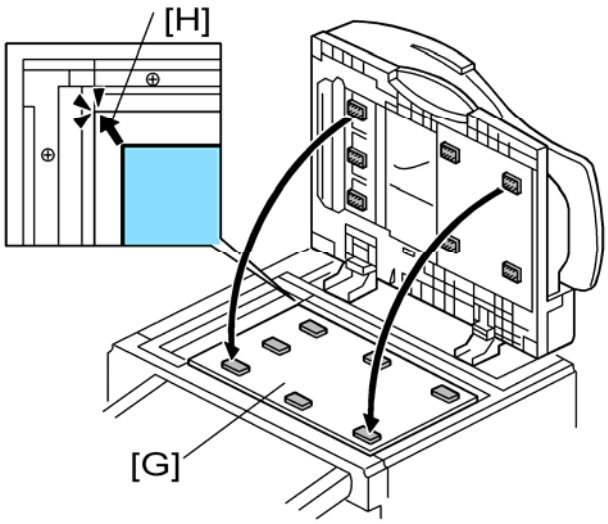


4. Mount the ARDF [B] by aligning the screw keyholes [C] in the ARDF support plate over the stud screws.
5. Slide the ARDF toward the front of the machine.
6. Secure the ARDF with the two knob screws [D].

7. Connect the ARDF interface cable [E] to the machine.

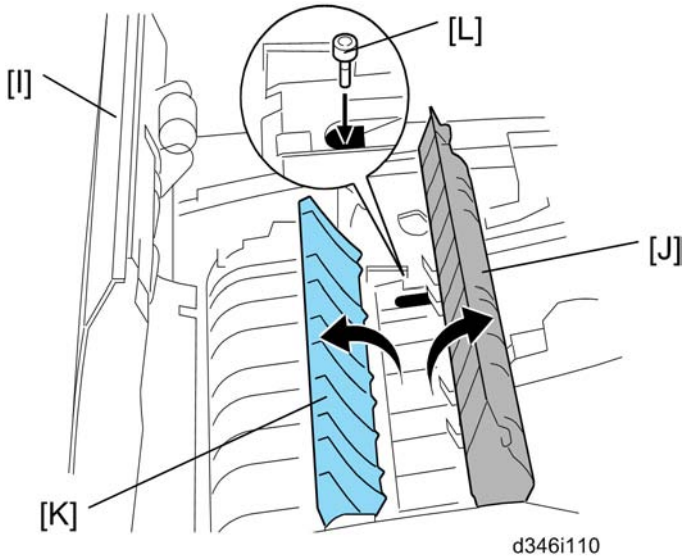


1. Remove two screws [F] from the bottom of the ARDF.

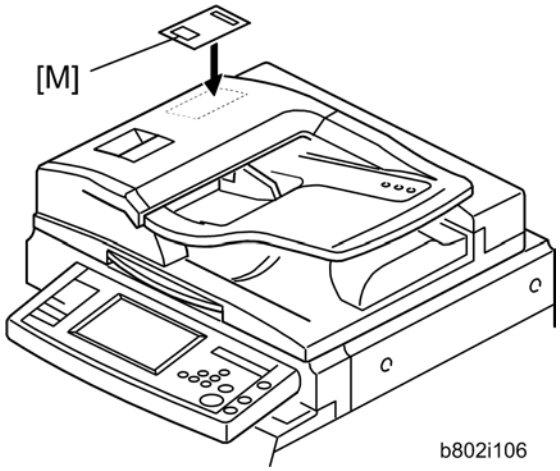


2. Peel off the platen plate [G] and place it on the exposure glass.
3. Align the rear left corner of the platen plate with the corner [H] on the exposure glass.
4. Close the ARDF.
5. Open the ARDF and check that the platen plate is correctly attached.

Auto Reverse Document Feeder (B802)



6. Open the ARDF cover [I].
7. Open the feed-in guide plate [J] and feed-out guide plate [K].
8. Install the stamp [L] into the ARDF.
9. Close two guide plates [J] [K].
10. Close the ARDF cover [I].



11. Attach the decal [M] to the top cover as shown. Choose the language you want.
12. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the machine, and then check the ARDF operation.
13. Make a full size copy. Check that the registrations (side-to-side and leading edge) and image skew are correct. If they are not, adjust the registrations and image skew (refer to "Copy Adjustments" in the "Replacements and Adjustments" section).

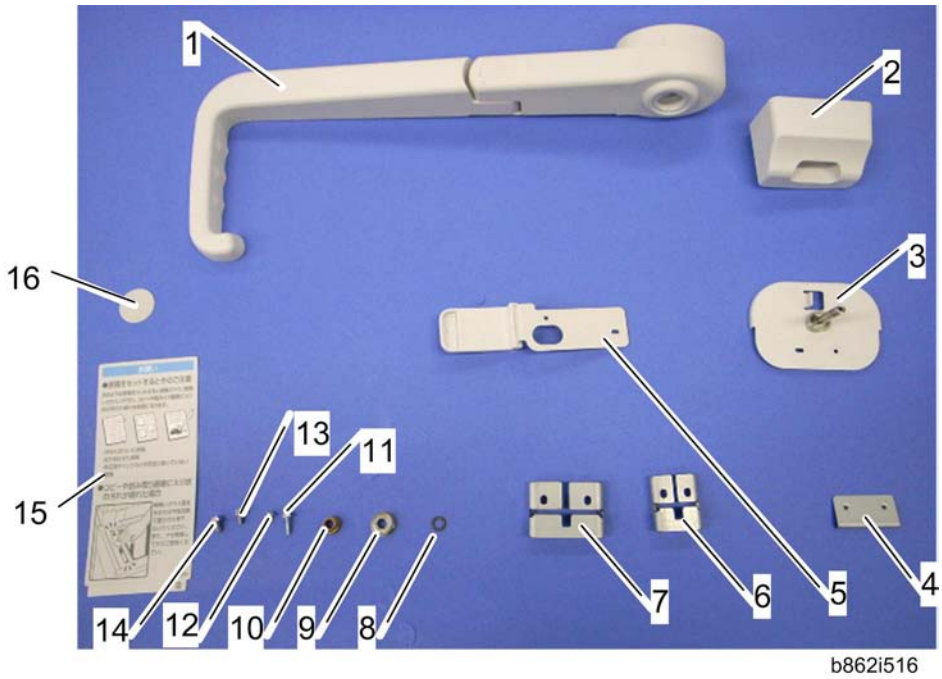
2.8 DOCUMENT FEEDER HANDLE TYPE 5

2.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Handle Unit	1
2	Holder	1
3	Stud Bracket	1
4	Securing Bracket	1
5	Handle Bracket	1
6	Hinge Stopper - Right	1
7	Hinge Stopper - Left	1
8	Spacer	1
9	Bushing: M6	1
10	Bushing: 6MM	1
11	Tapping Screw: M3 x 12	2
12	Tapping Screw (Self Binding): M3 x 12	2
13	Screw: M3 x 8	3
14	Tapping Screw: M4 x 8	4
15	Operation Decal	1
16	Stud Decal	1

Document Feeder Handle Type 5



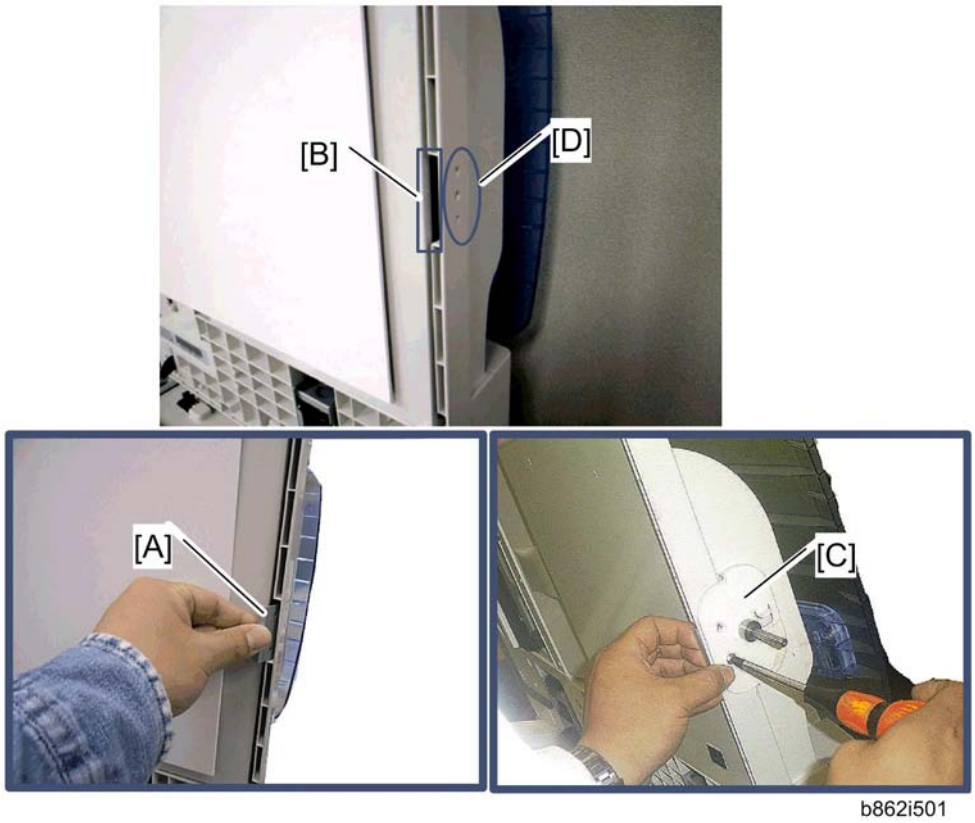
2.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.

Preparing before Installing the DF Handle

1. Open the ADF unit.

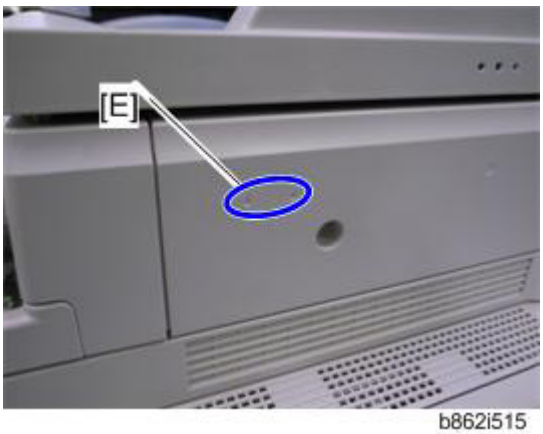


b862i501

2. Hold the securing bracket [A] at the location [B], inside the ADF cover.
3. Secure the stud bracket [C] to the outside of the ADF cover at location [D] with two screws (🔩 x 2: M3x8).

Note

- The two screws must go through the ADF cover and the securing bracket [A].



b862i515

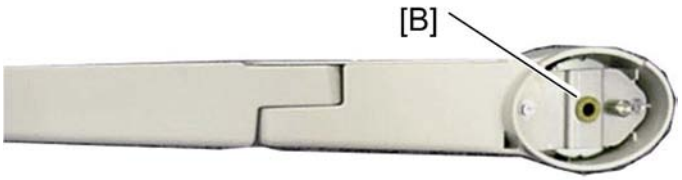
4. Make two screw holes [E] in the scanner right cover with an M3x12 tapping screw from the accessories.

Document Feeder Handle Type 5

Installing the DF Handle

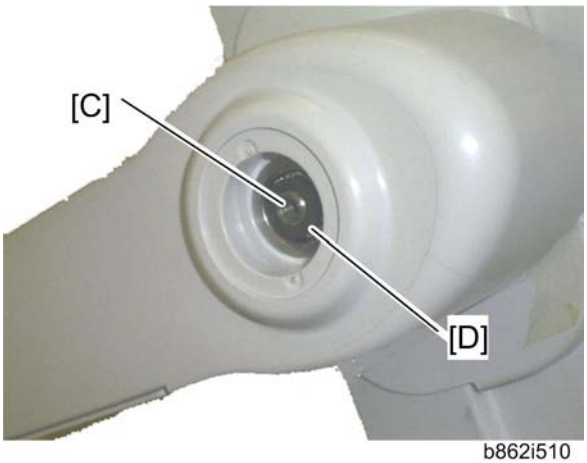
b862i509

1. Attach the holder [A] to the scanner right cover (Tapping Screw - M3x12: x 2).
   - At first, secure the screw at the rear side (away from the operation panel) temporarily and then at the front side temporarily. After that, secure them fully.



b862i513

2. Install the bushing: 6MM [B] in the inside of the handle unit.
3. Attach the handle unit to the stud bracket on the left side of the ADF.

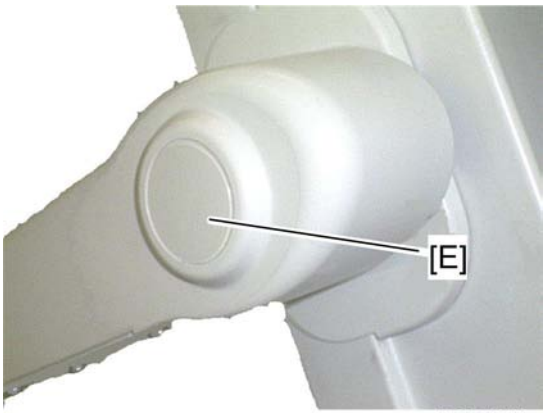


b862i510

4. In the outside of the handle unit, install the bushing - M6 [C] first, and then the spacer [D].

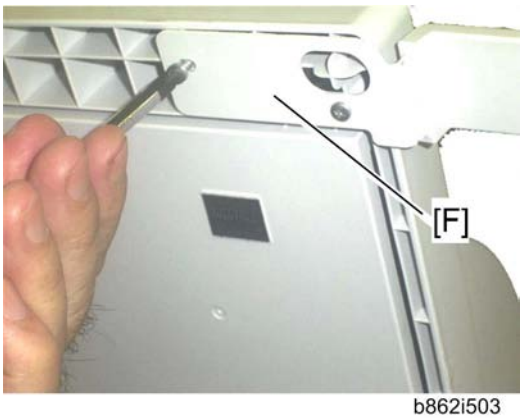
b862i514

5. Secure the handle unit with a screw (x 1: M3x8).



b862i511

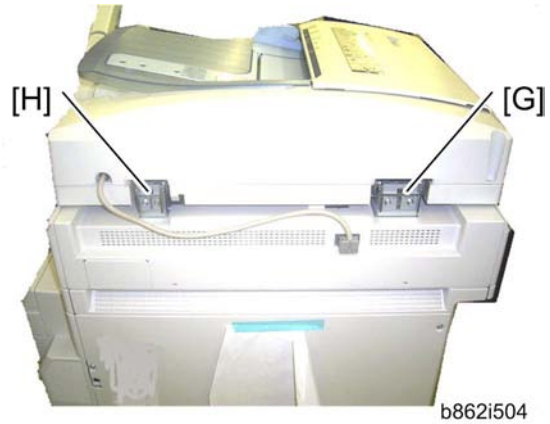
6. Clean the handle unit with alcohol. Then attach the stud decal [E] at the location that was cleaned.



b862i503

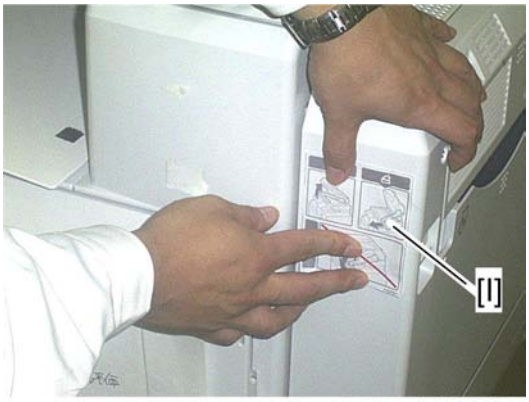
7. Attach the handle bracket [F] at the front right side on the bottom of the ADF unit (Tapping Screw [Self Binding] x 2: M3x12).
8. Close the ADF unit.

Document Feeder Handle Type 5



b862i504

9. Attach the hinge stoppers (left [G] and right [H]) to the left and right hinges (Tapping screw x 2: M4x8 each).



b862i505

10. Clean the front side of the duplex unit with alcohol. Then attach the operation decal [I] at the location that was cleaned.

b862i506

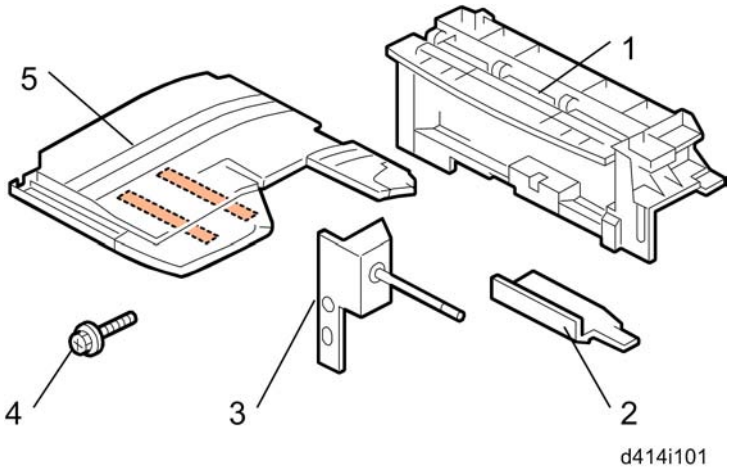
11. Check the operation of the handle unit [J].

2.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414)

2.9.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	1-Bin Tray Unit	1
2	End-fence	1
3	Tray Support Bar	1
4	Screws (M3 x 16)	2
5	Tray	1



2.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

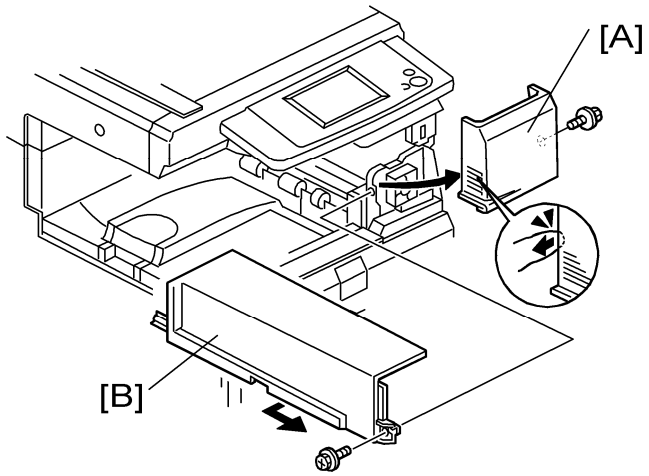
CAUTION

- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

If the bridge unit (D386) has already been installed in the machine, remove it before installing 1-bin tray unit (D414). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.

1. Remove all tapes.
2. Open the right door of the machine.

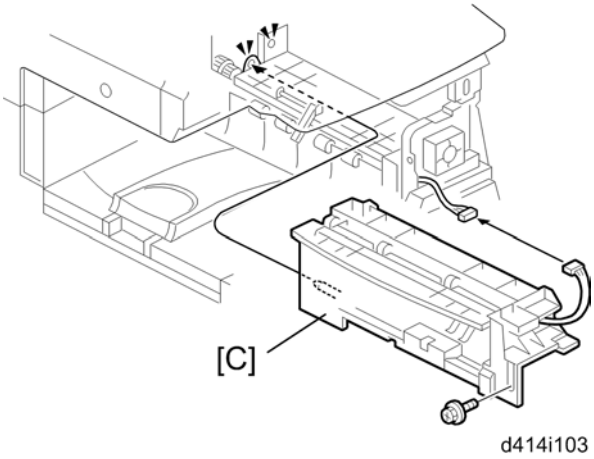
1-Bin Tray Unit (D414)



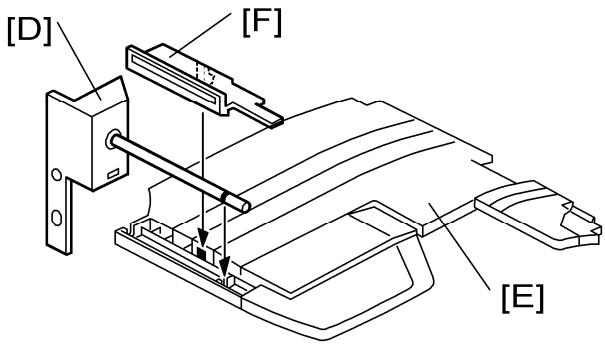
3. Remove the front right cover [A] (☞ x 1).
4. Remove the inner cover [B] (☞ x 1).

Note

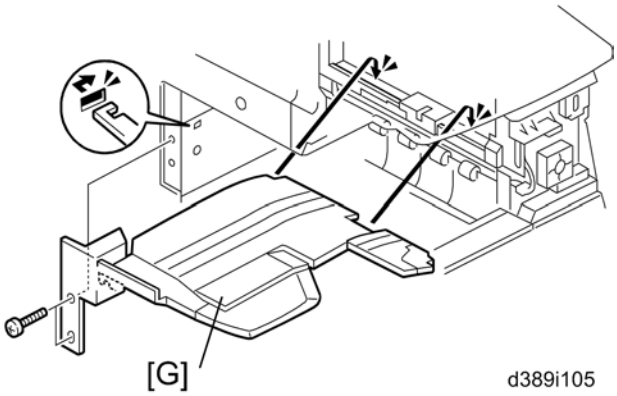
- Keep this screw for step 5.



5. Install the 1-bin tray unit [C] (x 1, ☞ x 1, x 1 [This screw was removed in step 4]).



6. Attach the tray support bar [D] to the tray [E] as shown, and then attach the end-fence [F].



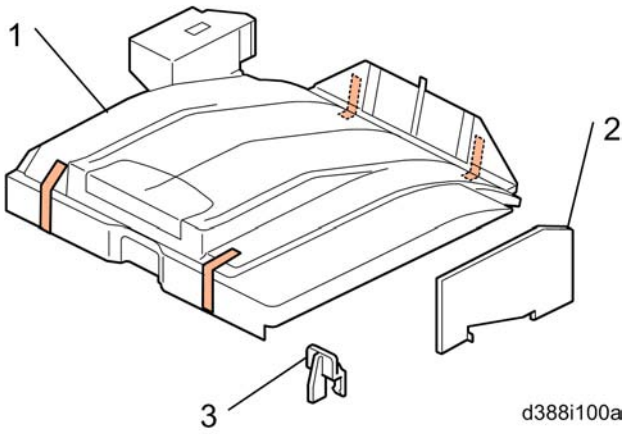
7. Install the tray [G] (with the tray support bar) in the machine (M3 x 16: ☞ x 2).
8. Reinstall the front right cover in the machine, and then close the right door of the machine.
9. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
10. Check the 1-bin tray unit operation.

2.10 SHIFT TRAY UNIT (D388)

2.10.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

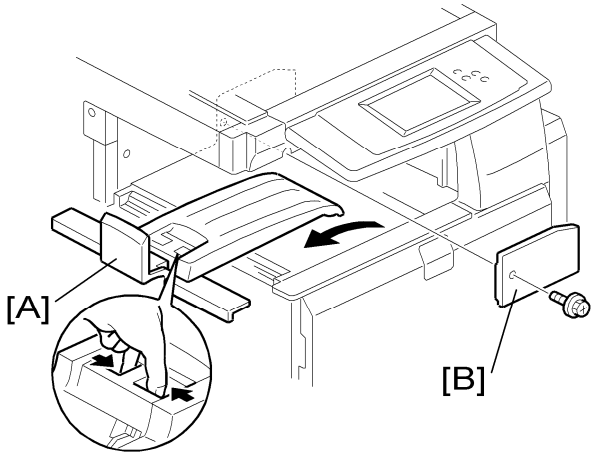
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Shift Tray Unit	1
2	Paper Guide - Small	2
3	Connector Cover	1



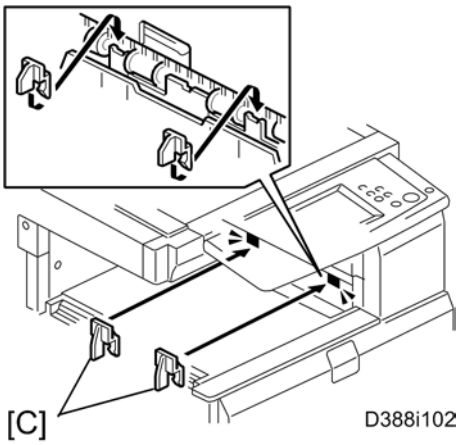
2.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

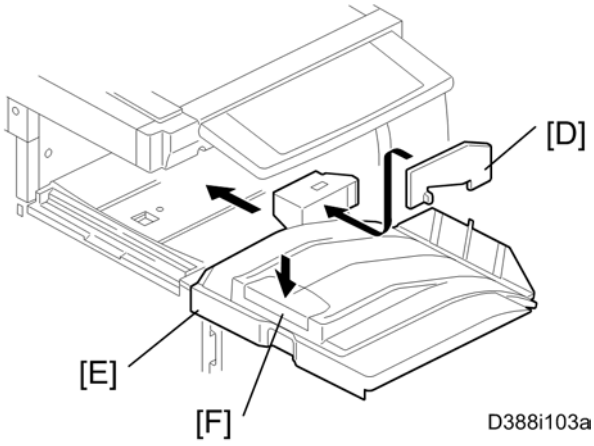


1. Remove all tapes.
2. Remove the standard tray [A].
3. Remove the inner cover [B] (🔩 x 1).



4. Install the small paper guides [C].

Shift Tray Unit (D388)



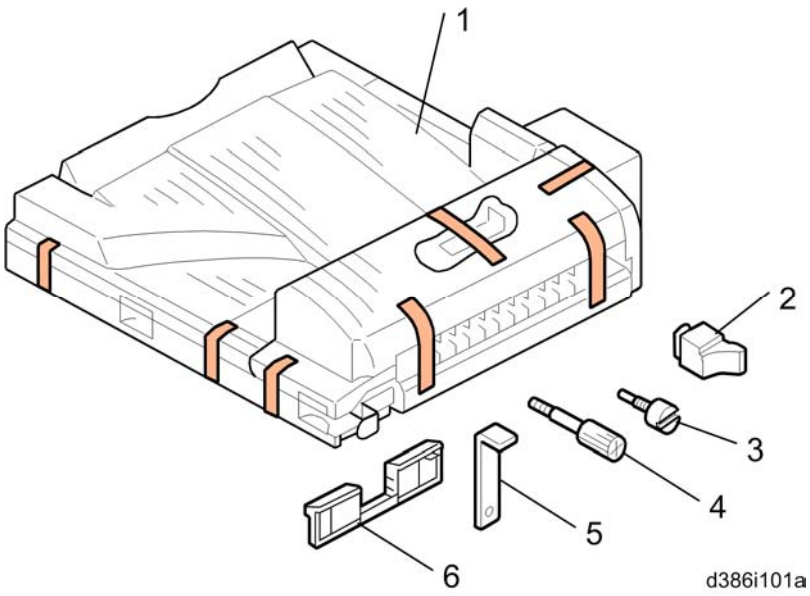
5. Attach the connector cover [D] to the shift tray unit [E].
6. Install the shift tray unit [E] to the machine.
7. Push down the left edge [F] of the shift tray.
8. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
9. Check the shift tray unit operation.

2.11 BRIDGE UNIT (D386)

2.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Bridge Unit	1
2	Frame Cover	1
3	Knob Screw	1
4	Long Knob Screw	1
5	Holder Bracket	1
6	Guide	2



2.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

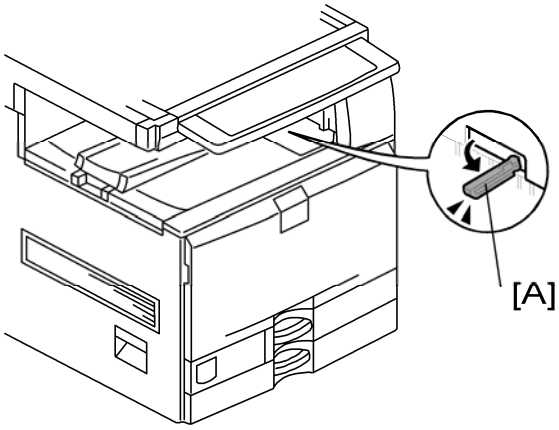
CAUTION

- Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

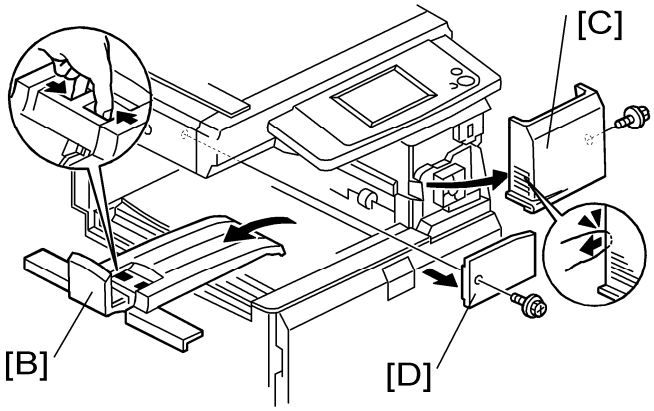
Note

- If you will install the 1-bin tray (D414) in the machine, install the 1-bin tray before you install the bridge unit (D386). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.
- If you will install a finisher (B408, B804 or B805) in the machine, install the finisher after you install the bridge unit (D386).

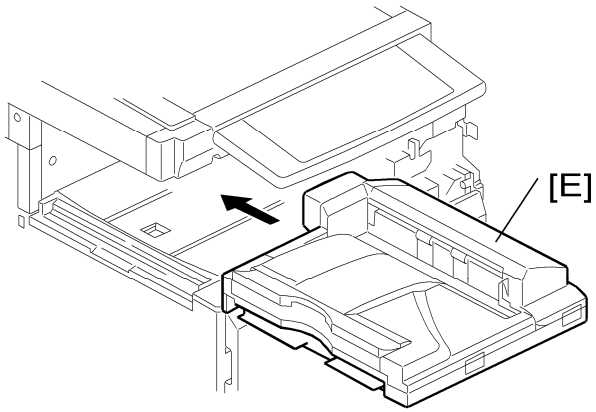
1. Remove all tapes.



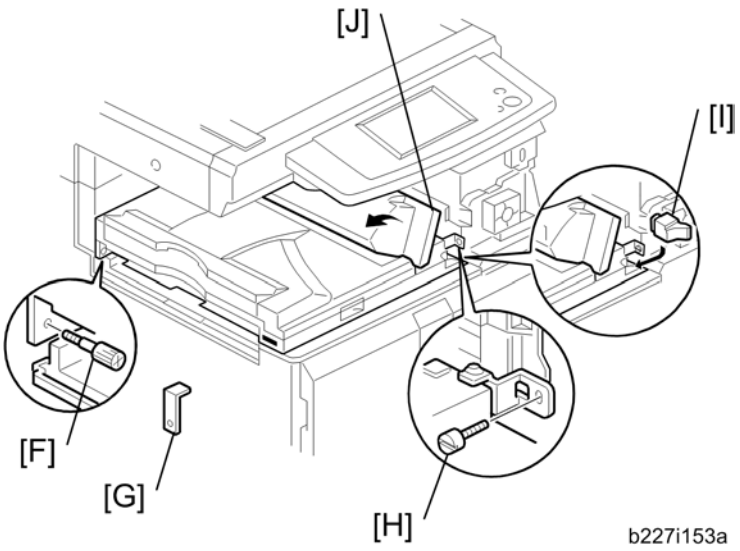
2. If the sensor feeler [A] is out, fold it into the machine.
3. Open the right door of the machine.



4. Remove the inner tray [B].
5. Remove the front right cover [C] (x 1).
6. Remove the connector cover [D] (x 1).



7. Install the bridge unit [E] in the machine.



8. Secure the bridge unit with the knob screw [F] and screw [H].
9. Attach the frame cover [I].
10. Reinstall the front right cover in the machine. Then close the right door of the machine.

Note

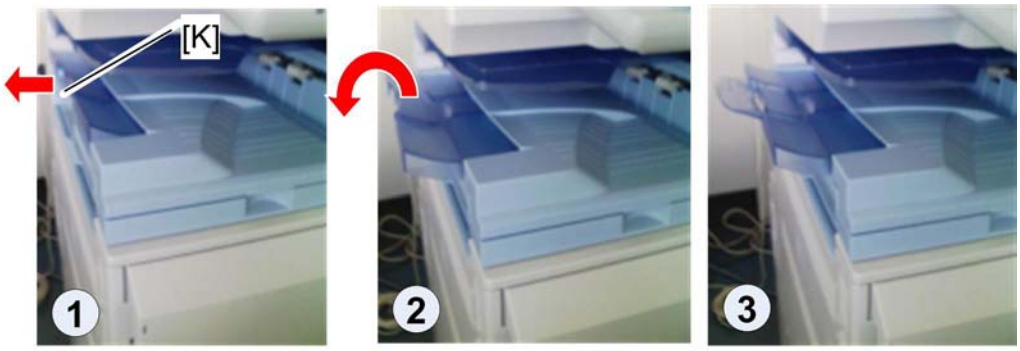
- Open the bridge unit cover [J] when installing the front right cover. Otherwise, the bridge unit cover is an obstacle for attaching the front right cover.

11. Install the optional finisher (refer to the finisher installation procedure).

Note

- If you will not install the finisher at this time, install the holder bracket [G]. Otherwise, the customer will damage the bridge unit if they pull up the bridge unit tray. When you install the finisher, you will need this bracket during the installation procedure.

Bridge Unit (D386)



d386i509b

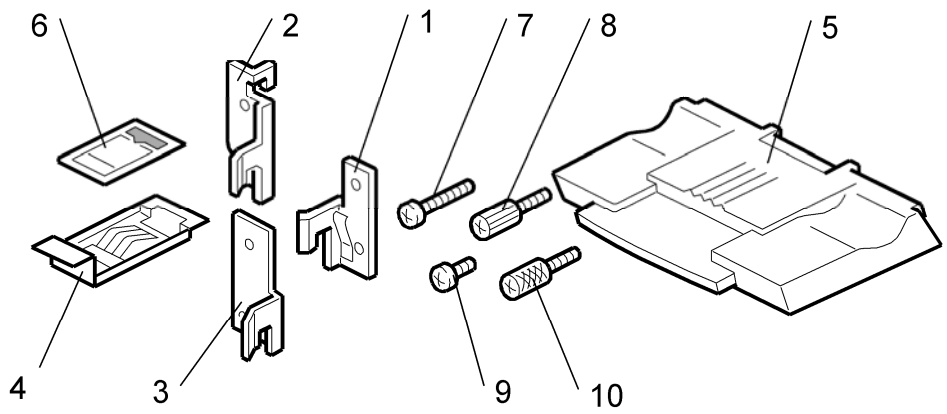
12. Pull the extension tray [K] only if the 1000-sheet finisher (B408) is to be installed in the main machine.
13. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
14. Check the bridge unit operation.

2.12 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408)

2.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Joint Bracket	1
2	Rear Joint Bracket (Not used)	1
3	Rear Joint Bracket	1
4	Grounding Plate	1
5	Copy Tray	1
6	Staple Position Decal	1
7	Screw - M4 x 14	4
8	Knob Screw - M4 x 10	1
9	Screw - M3 x 8	1
10	Knob Screw - M3 x 8	1



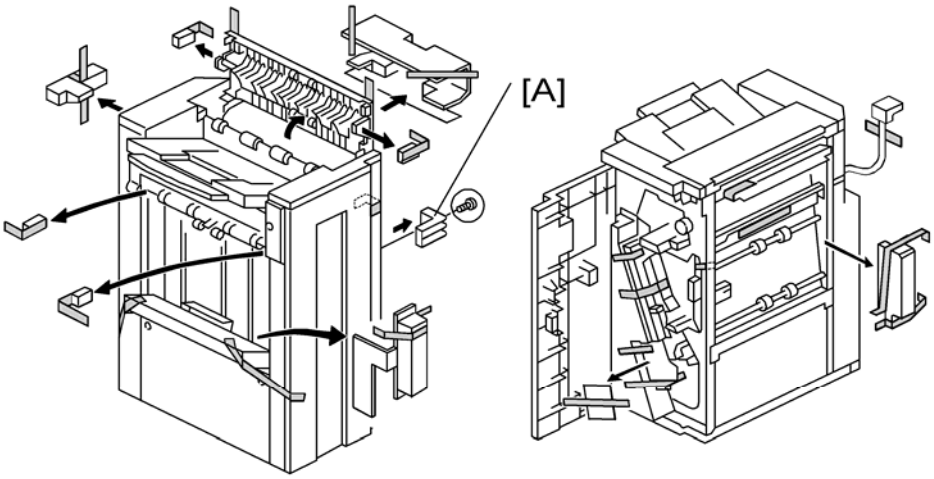
2.12.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

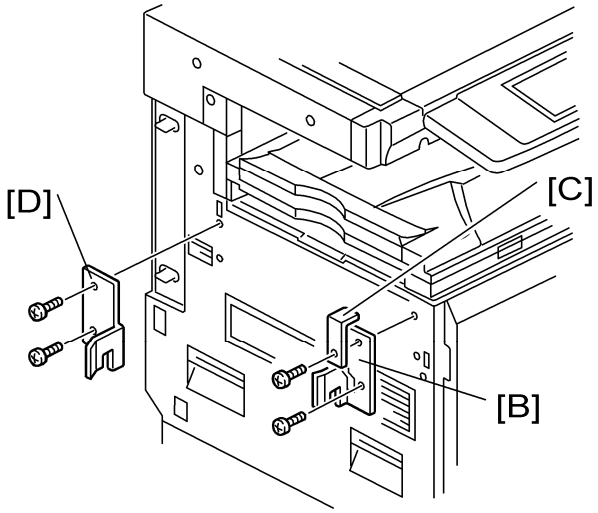
- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

If this finisher will be installed on the D027 or D029 copier, the following options must be installed before installing this finisher.

- Bridge Unit (D386)
- Paper Feed Unit (D351) or LCT (D352)



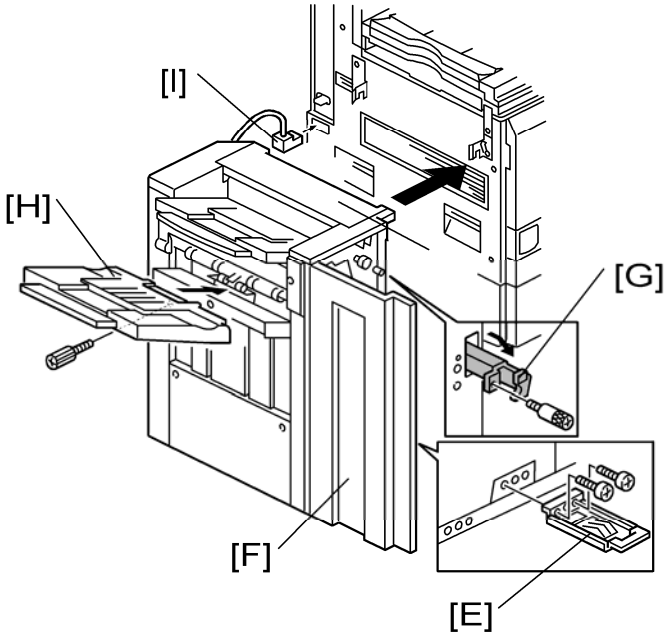
1. Unpack the finisher, and then remove the stopper [A] and tapes (x 1).



2. Install the front joint bracket [B], holder bracket [C] (x 2 - M4 x 14), and rear joint bracket [D] (x 2 - M4 x 14).

Note

- The holder bracket [C] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [B]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (D386).

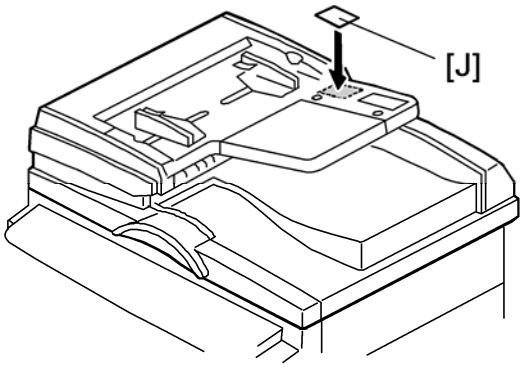


1. Install the grounding plate [E] on the finisher (x 2 - M3 x 8).

Note

- Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.

2. Open the front door [F] of the finisher, and then pull the locking lever [G] (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).
3. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
4. Secure the locking lever (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).
5. Close the front door.
6. Install the copy tray [H] (1 knob screw - M4 x 10).
7. Connect the finisher cable [I] to the main machine below the right rear handle.



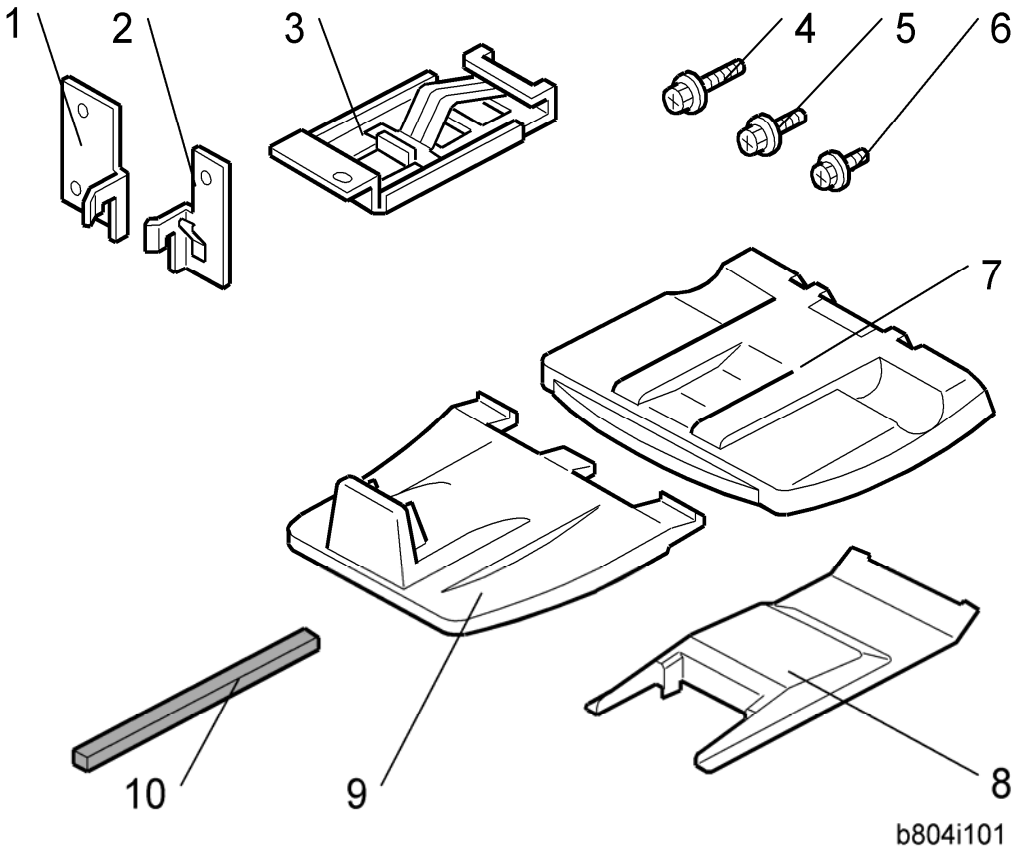
8. Attach the staple position decal [J] to the ARDF as shown.
9. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

2.13 2000 (BOOKLET)/ 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B804/B805)

2.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Rear Joint Bracket	1
2	Front Joint Bracket	1
3	Ground Plate	1
4	Tapping Screws - M4 X14	4
5	Tapping Screws - M3 X 8	1
6	Tapping Screws - M3 X 6	6
7	Upper Output Tray	1
8	Support Tray	1
9	Lower Output Tray (B804 Only)	1
10	Cushion (With Double-Sided Tape)	1

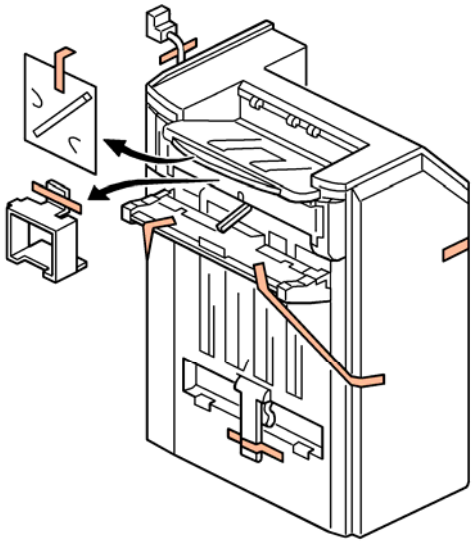

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
b804i101

2.13.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

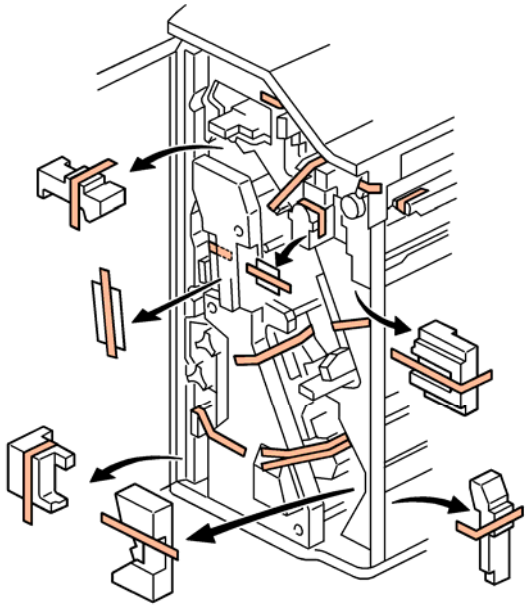
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

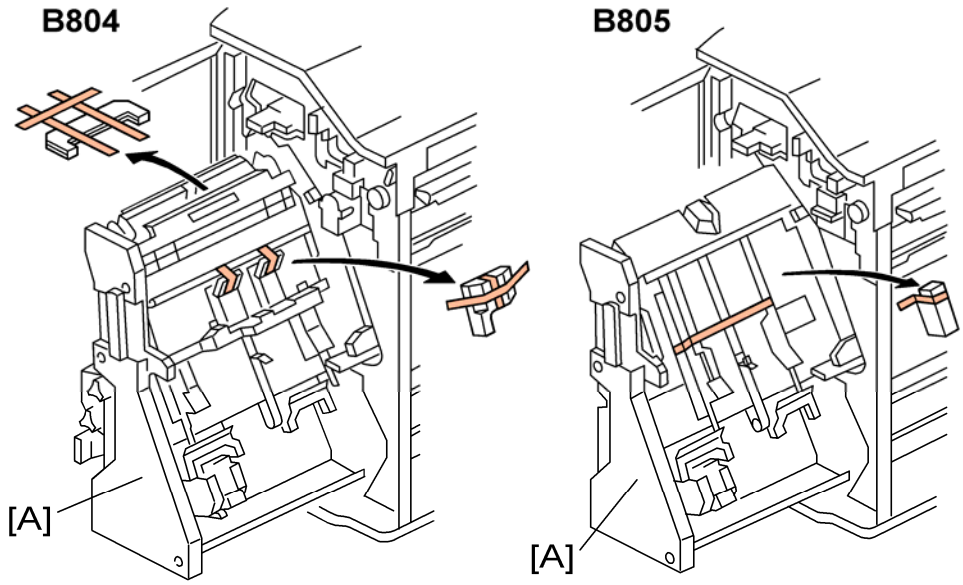
The bridge unit (D386) and optional paper feed unit (D351) must be installed before installing this finisher (B804/B805).



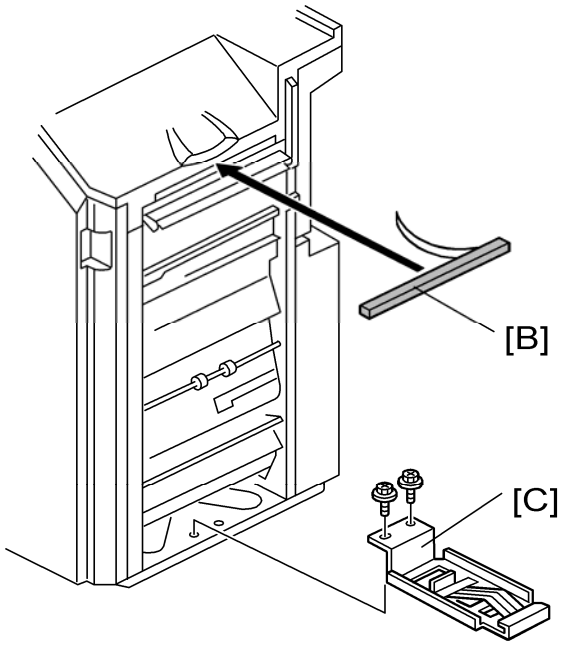
1. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and packing materials from the finisher.



2. Open the front door, and then remove all tapes and packing materials from the inside of the finisher.



3. Pull out the jogger unit [A], then remove all tapes and retainers.

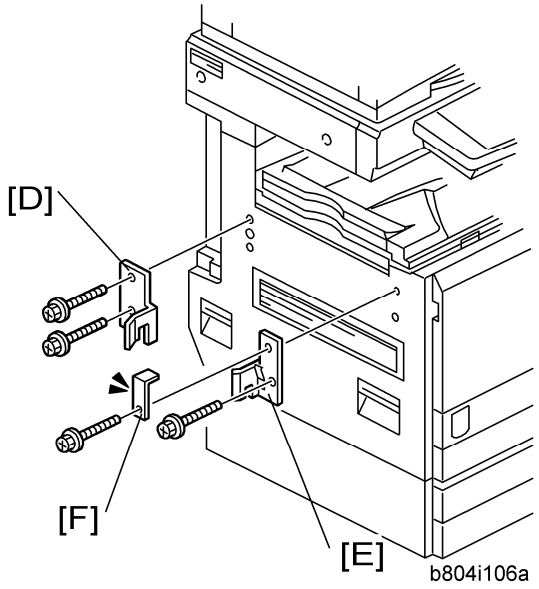


1. Attach the cushions [B] to the finisher.

Note

- Make sure that the cushion is placed within 0 to 1 mm from the edge of the cover.

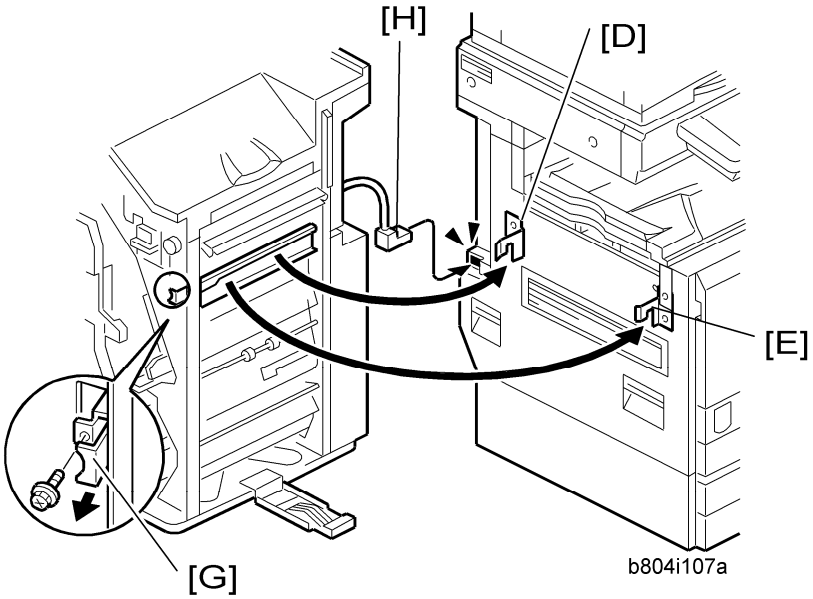
2. Install the ground plate [C] on the finisher (x 2; M3x6).



3. Attach the rear joint bracket [D] (☞ x 2; M4x4).
4. Attach the front joint bracket [E] and the holder bracket [F] (☞ x 2; M4x14).

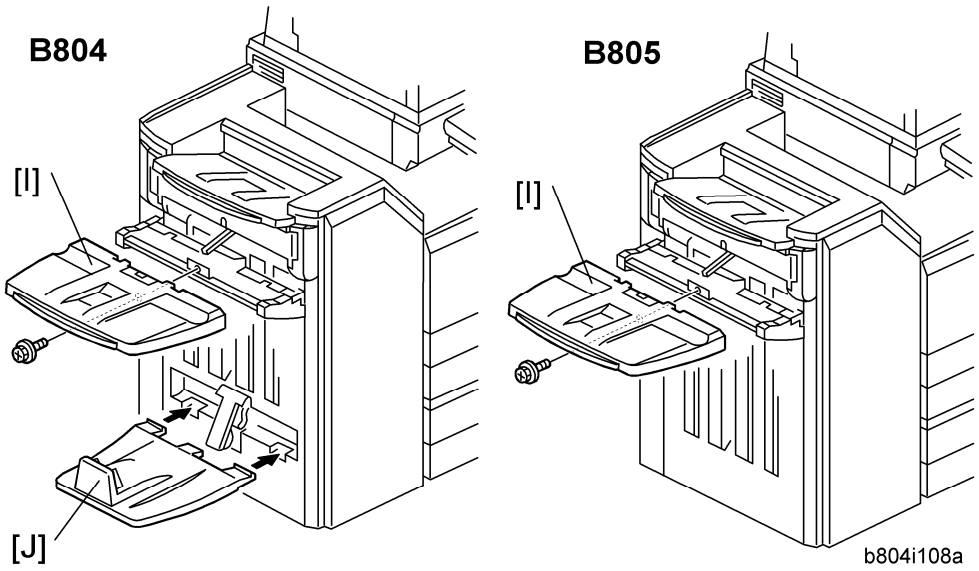
Note

- The holder bracket [F] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [E]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (D386).



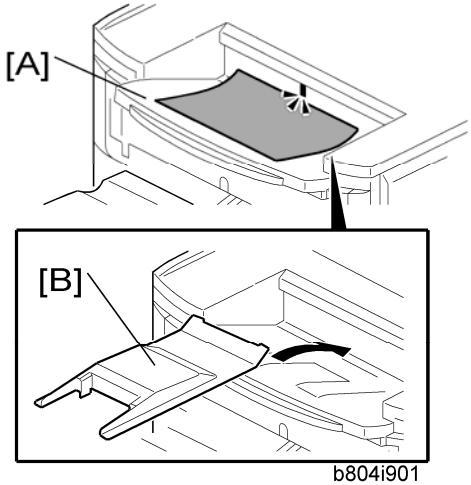
5. Pull the lock lever [G] (long knob screw x 1).
6. Slowly push the finisher to the left side of the machine, keeping its front door open until the brackets [D] [E] go into their slots.
7. Push the lock lever [G], then secure it (Long knob screw x 1).
8. Close the front door of the finisher.

9. Connect the finisher connector [H] to the machine.



10. Install the upper output tray [I] (x 1; M3x8).
11. Only for B804, install the lower output tray [J].
12. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
13. Check the finisher operation.

Support Tray Installation



If a stacking problem occurs several times on the upper output tray [A], put the support tray [B] on the tray as shown.

Note

- Keep this tray in the manual pocket if this tray does not need to be installed.

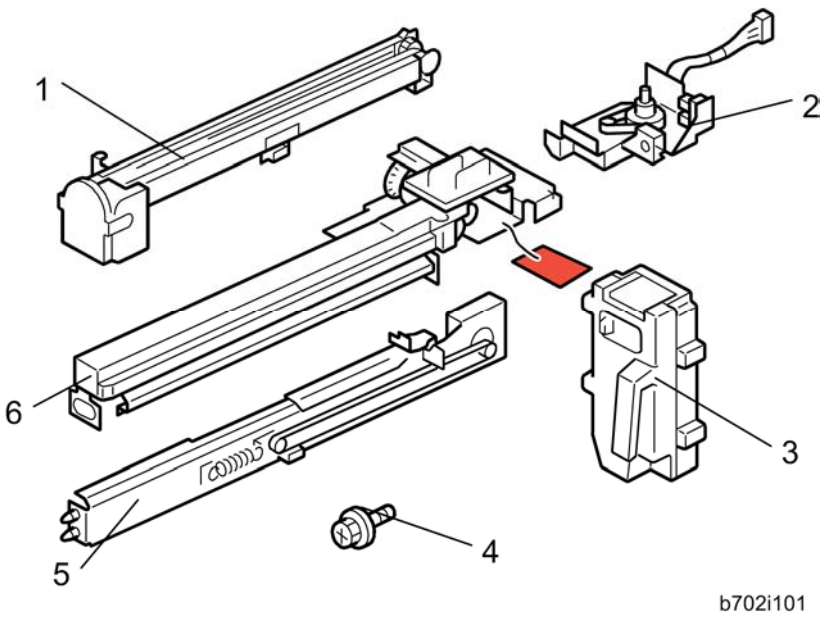
2.14 PUNCH UNIT

The Punch Unit B702 is installed in the 2000-Sheet Booklet (B804) Finisher/ 3000-Sheet Finisher (B805).

2.14.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

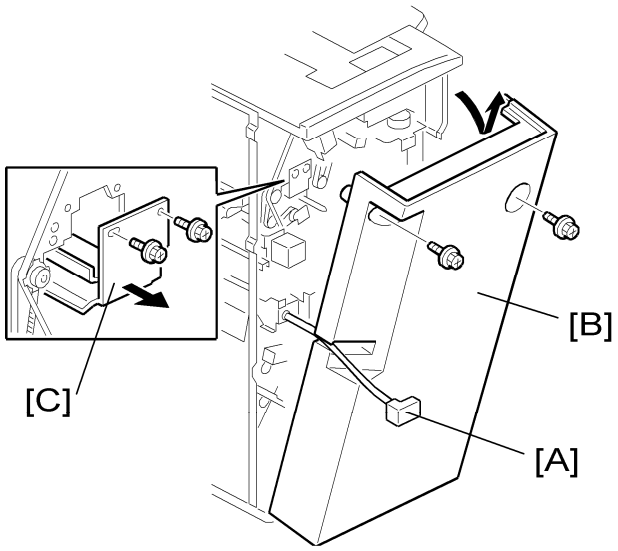
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Punchout Waste Unit	1
2	Slide Drive Unit	1
3	Punch Waste Hopper	1
4	Screws: M3 x 6	5
5	Side-to-Side Detection Unit	1
6	Punching Unit	1



2.14.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure. If the 2000-sheet booklet/ 3000-sheet finisher has been installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine.

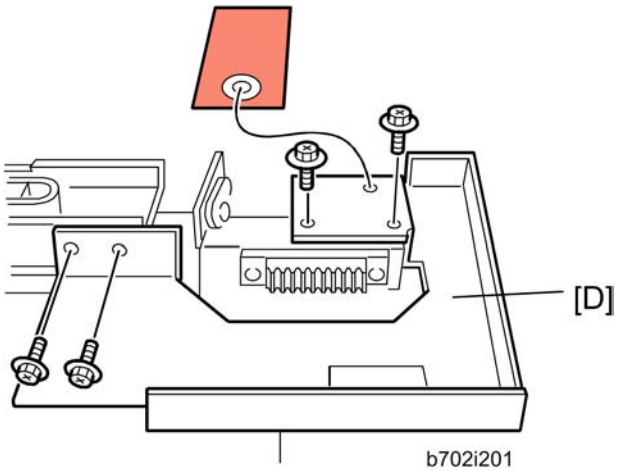


1. If the finisher is connected to the copier, disconnect the power connector [A] and move the finisher away from the copier.
2. Remove the rear cover [B] (x 2) and open the front door.

Note

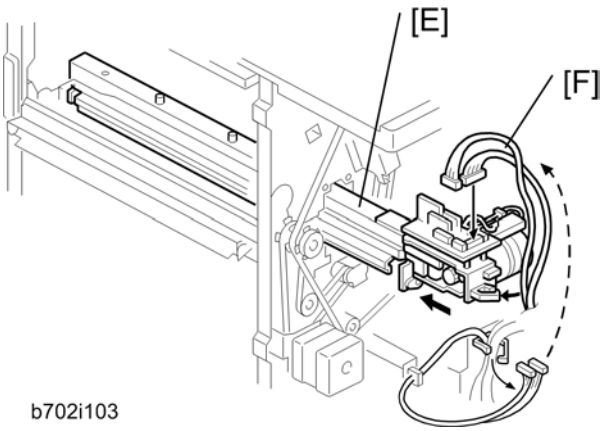
- At the bottom of the rear cover, make sure to disconnect the tabs that attach the cover to the frame.

3. Remove the guide plate [C] (x 2).

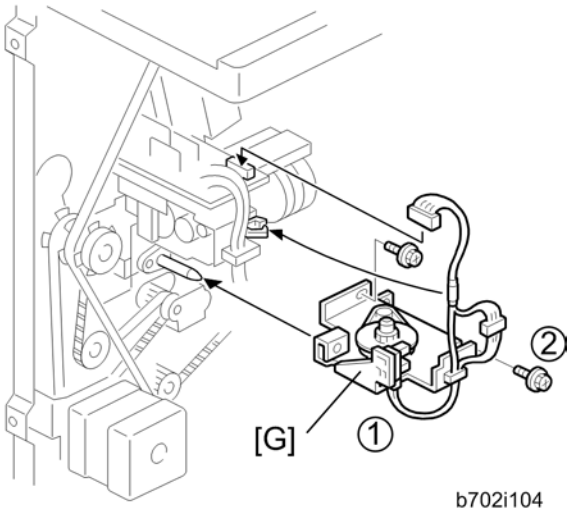


4. Remove the shipping retainer [D] (x 4).

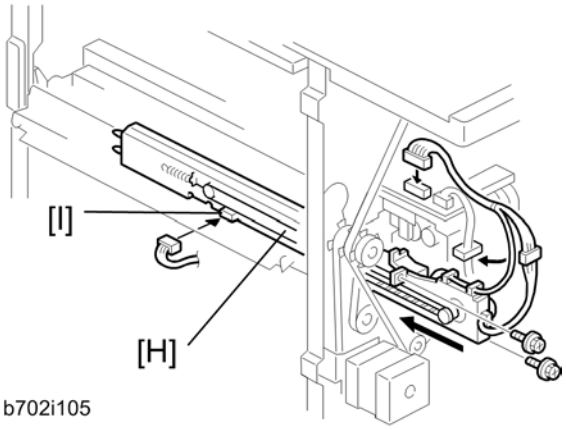
Punch Unit



5. Move the punch unit [E] along its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pin engages correctly at the front and rear.
6. Connect the cables [F] of the finisher to the connectors (CN601 and CN602) on the punch unit board (x 2, x 1).
   - The cables [F] are coiled and attached to the PCB.



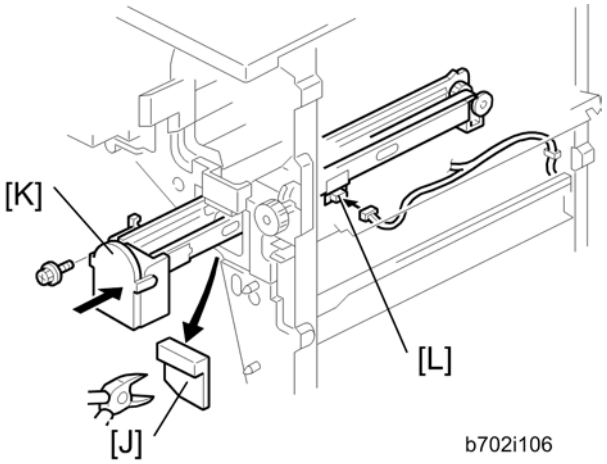
7. Attach the slide drive unit [G] to the finisher and connect it to the punch unit (x 2, x 1). Push in the slide drive unit at ① when you attach the screw ②.
8. Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.



9. Put the side-to-side detection unit [H] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.
10. Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.
11. Attach the side-to-side detection unit and connect it at the rear (x 2, x 1, x 1).
12. Pull the short connector out of the connector [I] then connect the cable of the finisher (x 1).

Note

- This is the 3-pin connector.



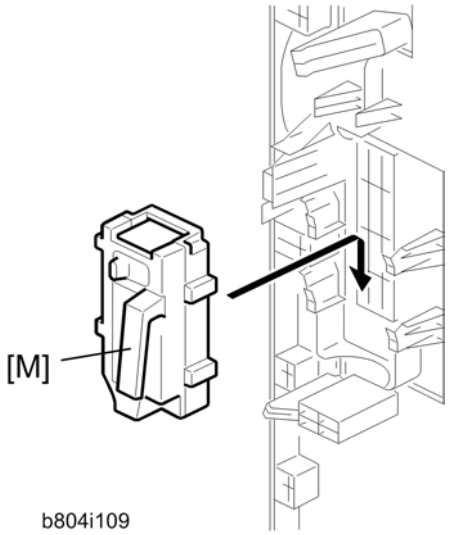
13. At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [J] of the cover.
14. Install the punch-waste transport unit [K] in the finisher.
15. Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.
16. Remove the short connector from the connector [L].

Note

- This is the 4-pin connector.

17. Connect the cable and attach the punch-waste transport unit (x 1, x 1, x 1).

Punch Unit

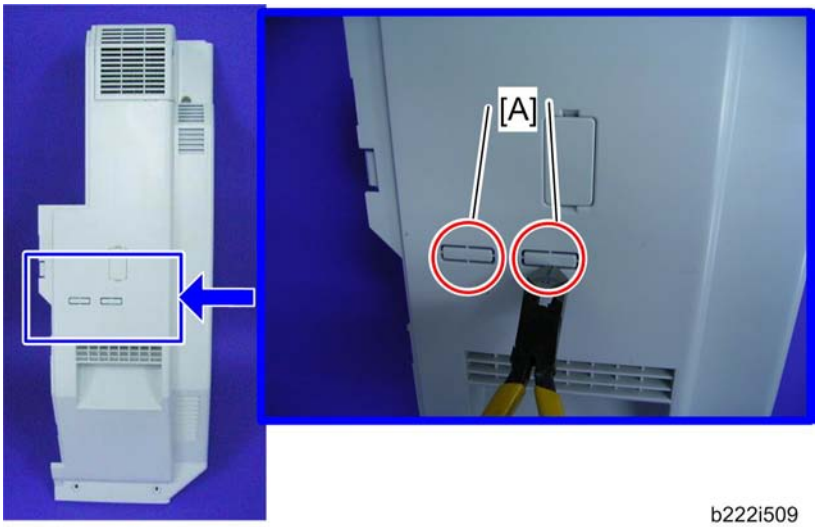


18. Set the hopper [M] in its holder.
19. Reassemble the finisher, and then install it on the main machine.
20. Connect the power cord to the outlet, and then turn the main power switch on.
21. Check the punch unit operation.

2.15 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY)

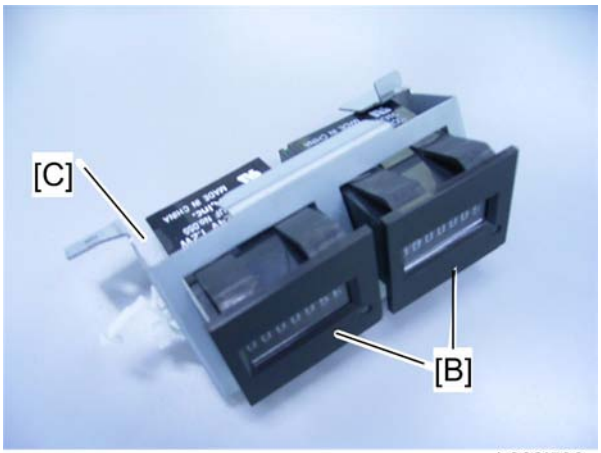
2.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Rear cover (see p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (see p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222i509

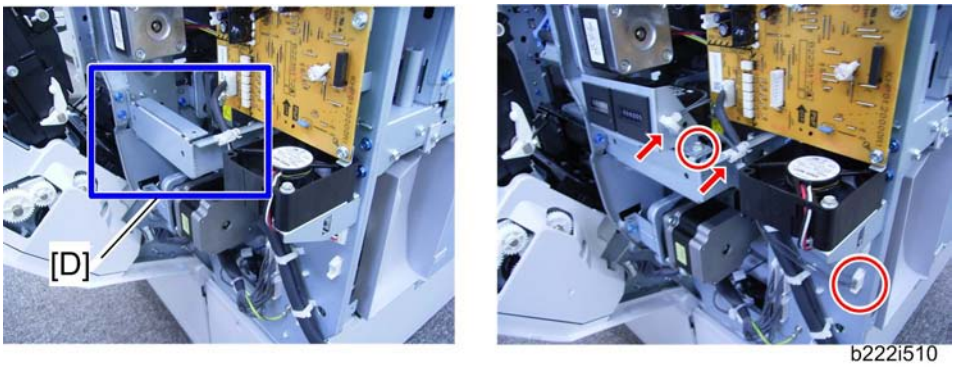
3. Remove the cutouts [A] on the right rear cover with nippers.



b222i508

4. Attach the mechanical counters [B] to the bracket [C] and connect the harness to each mechanical counter.

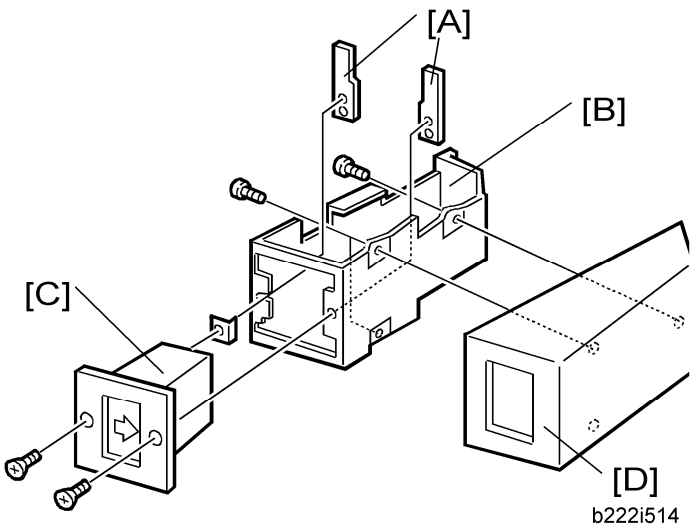
Mechanical Counter (NA Only)



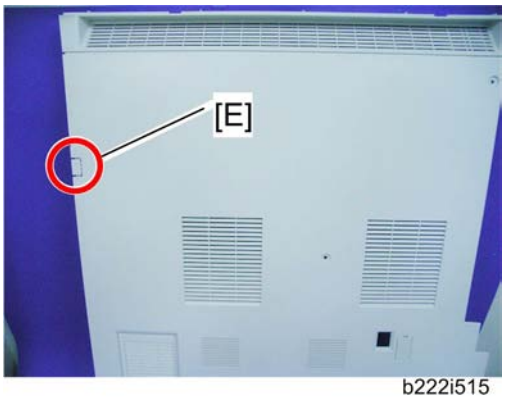
5. Attach the mechanical counter bracket to the frame [D] (x 1, x 2, x 1).
6. Reassemble the machine.
7. Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.
8. Enter the SP mode.
9. Set SP5987-001 to "1: ON".
10. Exit the SP mode, and then turn the machine off and on.

2.16 KEY COUNTER BRACKET

2.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



1. Hold the key counter plate nuts [A] on the inside of the key counter bracket [B] and insert the key counter holder [C].
2. Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (x 2).
3. Install the key counter cover [D] (x 2).
4. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")

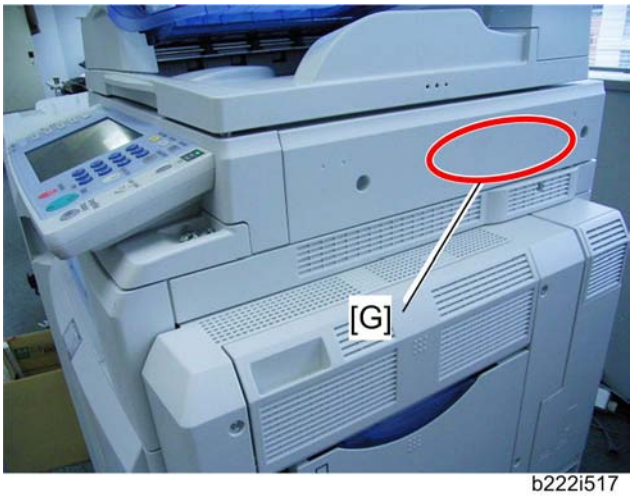


5. Cut off part [E] of the rear cover.

Key Counter Bracket

b222i516

6. Connect the harness to the connector [F] inside the machine.



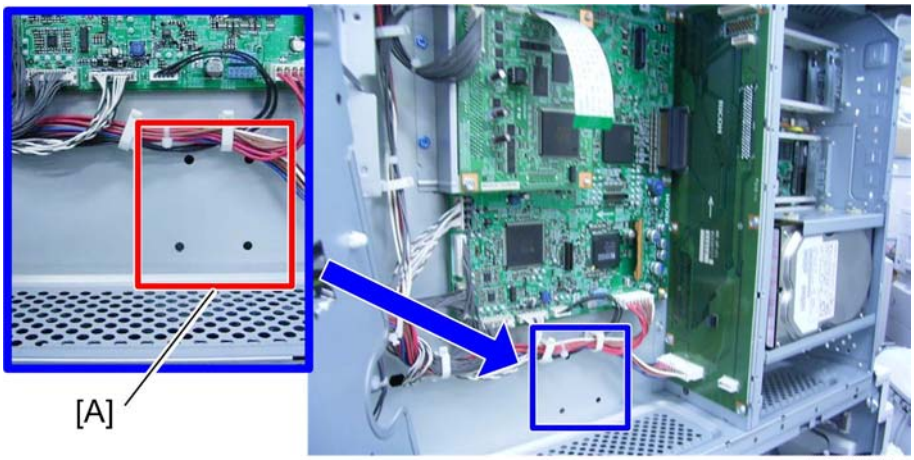
b222i517

7. Peel off double sided tape on the key counter bracket and attach the key counter to the scanner right cover [G].
8. Reassemble the machine.

2.17 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT

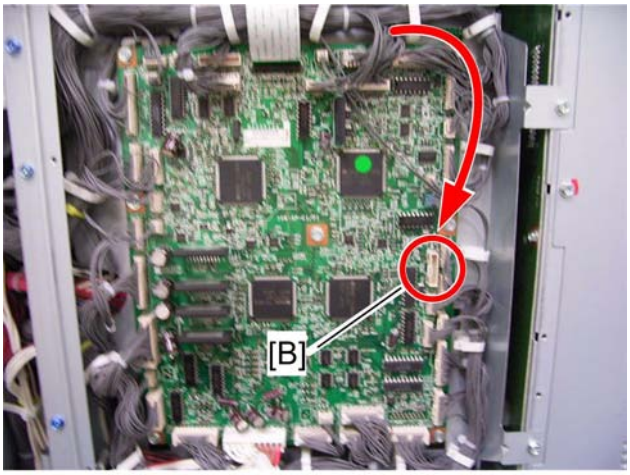
2.17.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. IOB bracket (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



b222i511

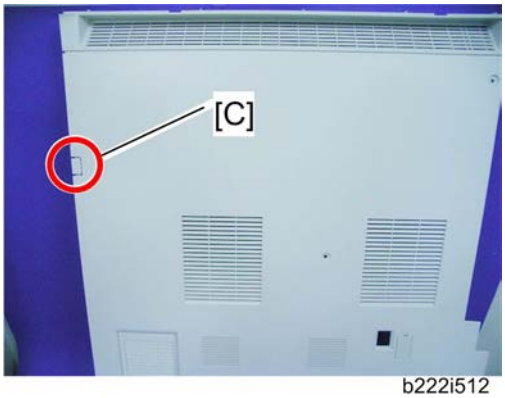
3. Install the four stud stays in the location [A] in the controller box.
4. Install the key counter interface board on the four stud stays in the controller box.
5. Connect the harness to CN3 on the key counter interface board.



b222i676

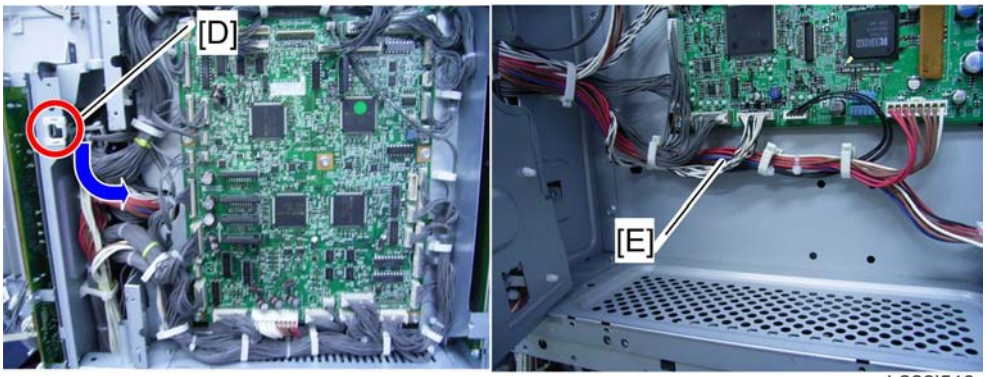
6. Close the IOB bracket and connect the other terminal to CN215 [B] on the IOB.

Key Counter Interface Unit



b222i512

7. Cut off part [C] of the rear cover.



b222i513

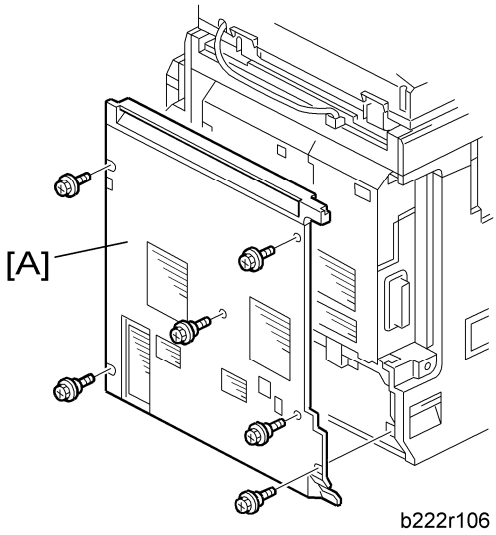
8. Clamp the harness from the counter device with the clamp [D] and put it as shown by the blue arrow (🖃 x 1).
9. Route the harness from the counter device in the same way as the other harnesses [E] (🖃 x 3).
10. Connect the harness from the counter device to CN4 on the key counter interface board.
11. Reattach the IOB bracket (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").
12. Reassemble the machine.

2.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829)

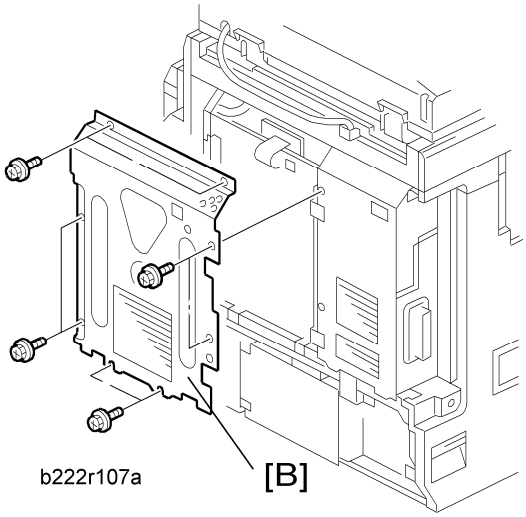
2.18.1 INSTALLATION

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

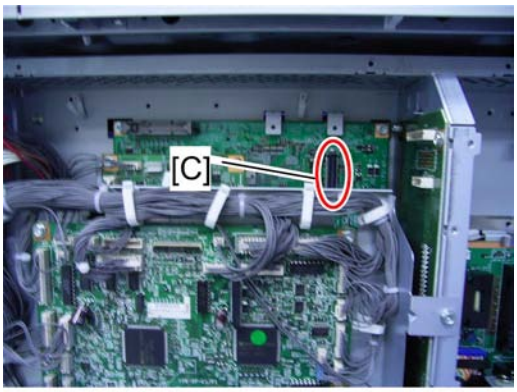


1. Remove the rear cover [A] of the machine (🔩 x 5).



2. Remove the controller box right cover [B] (🔩 x 8).

Copy Data Security Unit Type F (B829)



b222i507

3. Attach the ICIB-3 (copy data security board) to CN 508 [C] on the BICU (🔩 x 2).
4. Reassemble the machine.

User Tool Setting

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
2. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings > Administrator Tools > Copy Data Security Option > “On”.
3. Exit User Tools.
4. Check the operation.

Note

- The machine will issue an SC165 error if the machine is powered on with the ICIB-3 removed and the “Data Security for Copying “feature set to “ON”.
- When you remove this option from the machine, first set the setting to “OFF” with the user tool before removing this board. If you forget to do this, “Data Security for Copying“ feature cannot appear in the user tool setting. Then SC165 will appear every time the machine is switched on, and the machine cannot be used.

Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

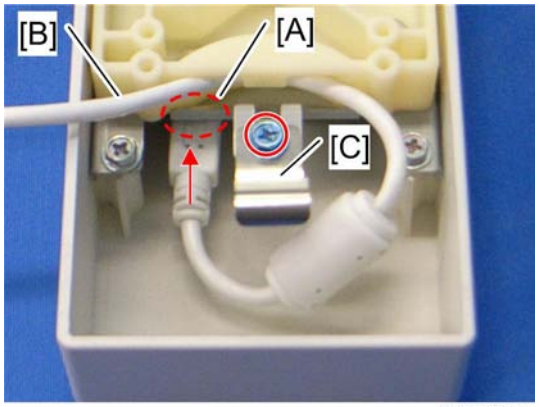
2.19 USB2.0/SD SLOT TYPE A

2.19.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	USB2.0/SD Slot	1
2	Ground Plate	1
3	USB Cable	1
4	Screw: M3 x 6 blue	1
5	Screw: M3 x 8	4
6	Screw: M3 x 6 (Not used)	1
7	Bracket (Not used)	1

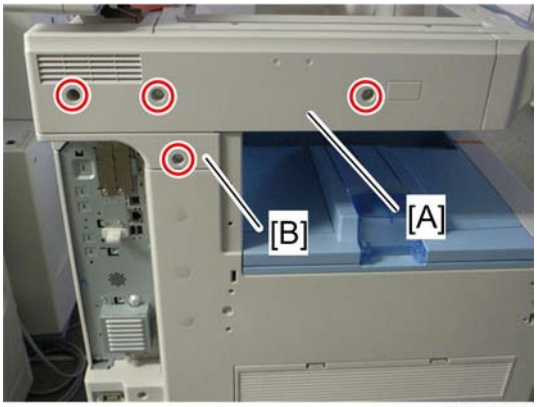
2.19.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



d027i111

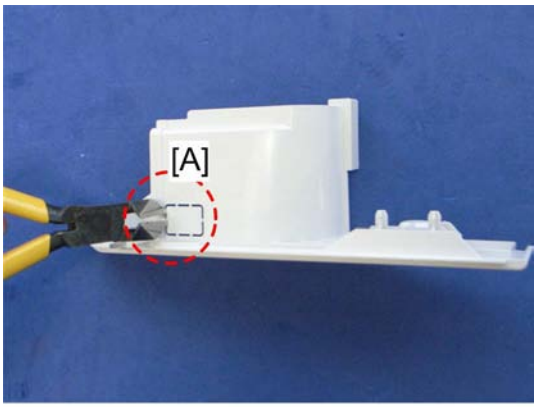
1. Connect the USB cable [B] to the USB slot [A] in the USB2.0/SD Slot as shown above.
2. Attach the ground plate [C] to the bracket of the USB2.0/SD Slot (🔩 x 1: M3x6 blue).

USB2.0/SD Slot Type A



d027i110

3. Remove the scanner left cover [A] (x 3).
4. Remove left frame cover [B] (x 1).

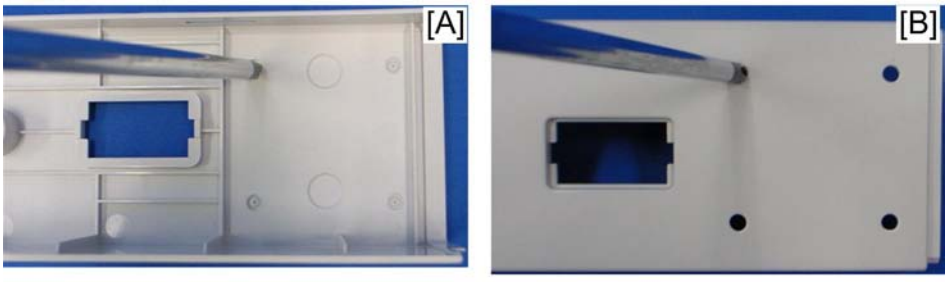


d027i112

5. Remove part [A] of the left frame cover with pliers or a similar tool.
6. Reinstall the left frame cover (x 1).

d027i113

7. Remove the part [A] on the scanner left cover.

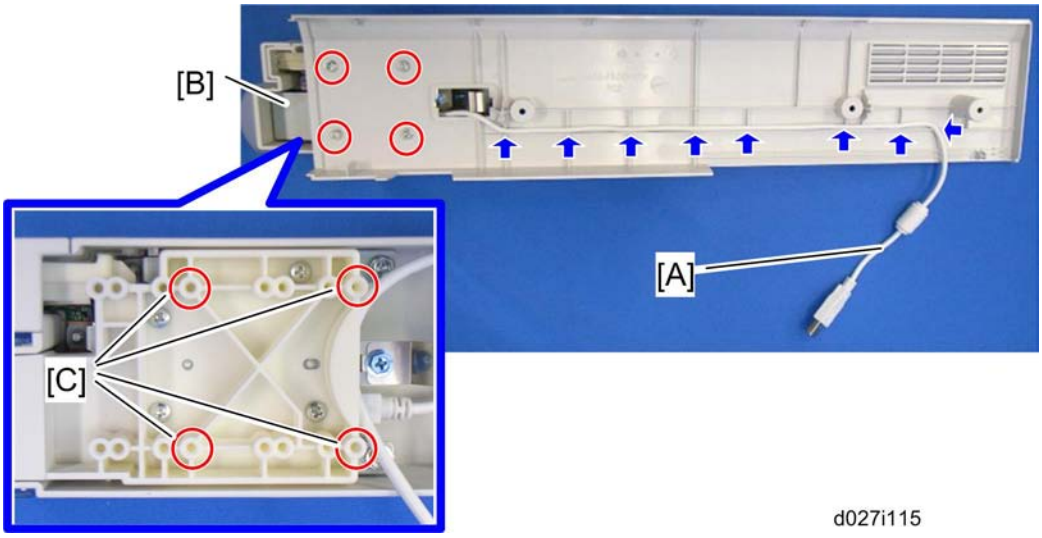


d027i113a

8. Make four holes in the scanner left cover with a screwdriver as shown [A].

Note

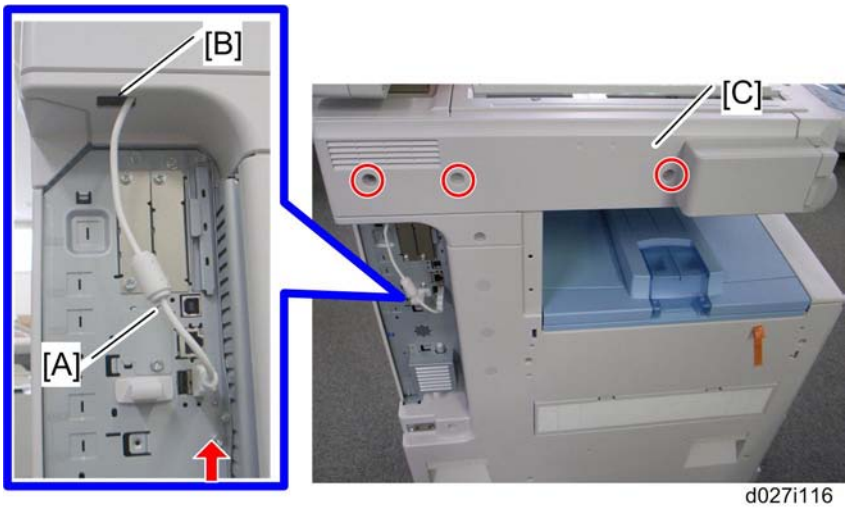
- Smooth the four holes in the scanner left cover as shown [B].



9. Route the USB cable [A] through the gaps in the left scanner cover.
10. Secure the USB2.0/SD Slot [B] with the left scanner cover as shown above (x 4: M3x8).

Note

- Use the screw holes [C] as shown above.



11. Put the USB cable [A] through the cutout [B] in the left frame cover.
12. Attach the scanner left cover [C] to the mainframe, and then connect the USB cable [A] to USB-A (front side) as shown above (x 3).

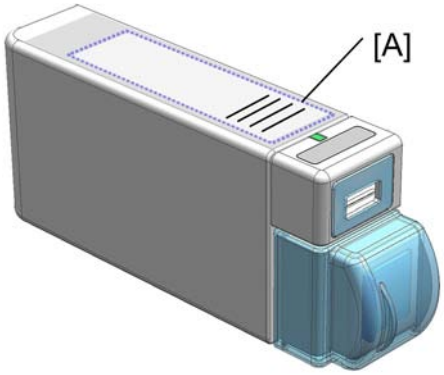
Note

- Make sure that the USB cable is inserted in USB-A (front side).

13. Plug in and turn on the mainframe.

USB2.0/SD Slot Type A

14. Enter the SP mode, and then change the setting of SP1013-001 from “0” to “1”.
15. Exit the SP mode, and then check the operation of the USB2.0/SD Slot.



16. Attach the decal [A] to the USB2.0/SD Slot as shown above.

2.19.3 TESTING THE SD CARD/USB SLOT

1. Insert an SD card or USB memory device in the slot.
   You can connect only one removable memory device at a time.
2. Close the media slot cover.
   If you leave the cover open, static electricity conducted through an inserted SD card could cause the machine to malfunction.
3. Make sure that no previous settings remain.
   If a previous setting remains, press the [Clear Modes] key.
4. Place an original on the exposure glass.
5. Press [Store File].
6. Press [Store to Memory Device].
7. Press [OK].
8. Press the [Start] key.
   When writing is complete, a confirmation message appears.
9. Press [Exit].
10. Remove the memory device from the media slot.

Note

- Do not remove the memory device while writing is in process.

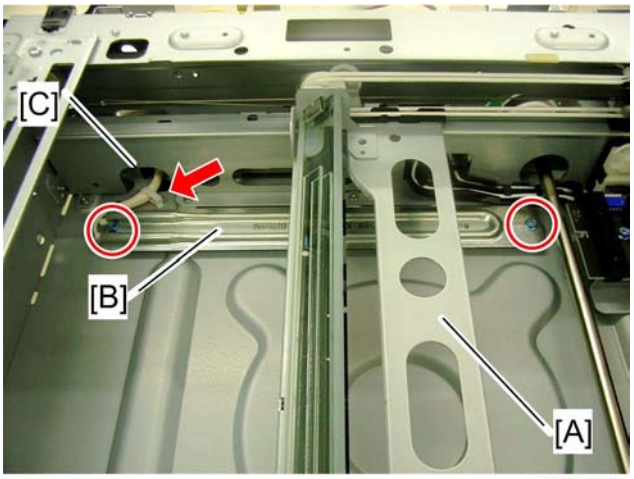
2.20 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER)

2.20.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Remove the ARDF or platen cover (☛ p.2-29 "Auto Reverse Document Feeder (B802)")
2. Remove the rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover").
3. Remove the ARDF exposure glass and exposure glass with left scale (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass").
4. Remove the scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "

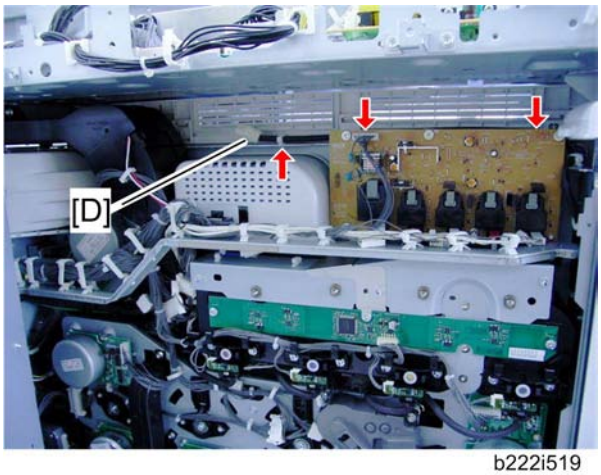
Anti-Condensation Heater (Scanner)

Scanner Motor")



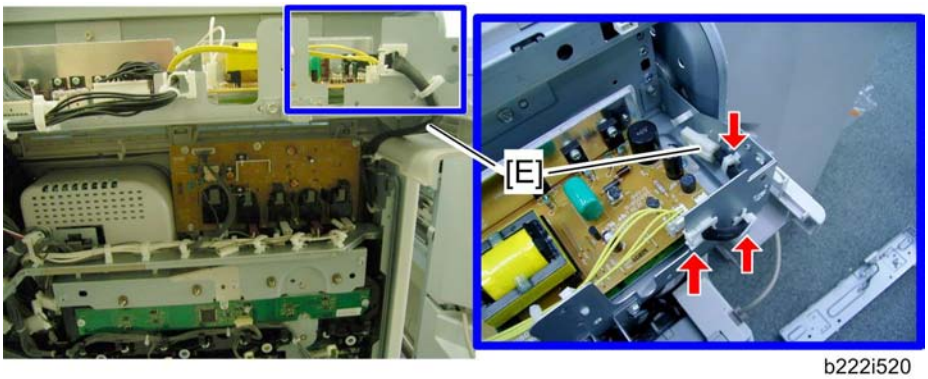
b222i518

5. Move the scanner carriage [A] to the right side by rotating the scanner motor.
6. Install the heater [B] in the scanner unit (x 2, x 1)
7. Put the cable through the cutout [C].



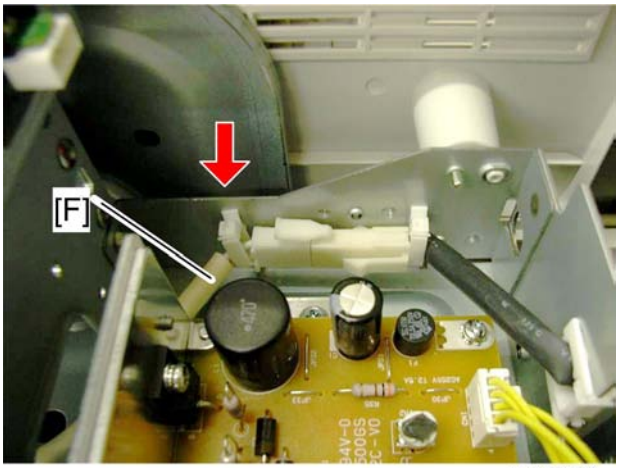
b222i519

8. Release the heater relay cable [D] (x 3).



b222i520

9. Route the heater relay cable [E] as shown (x 3).

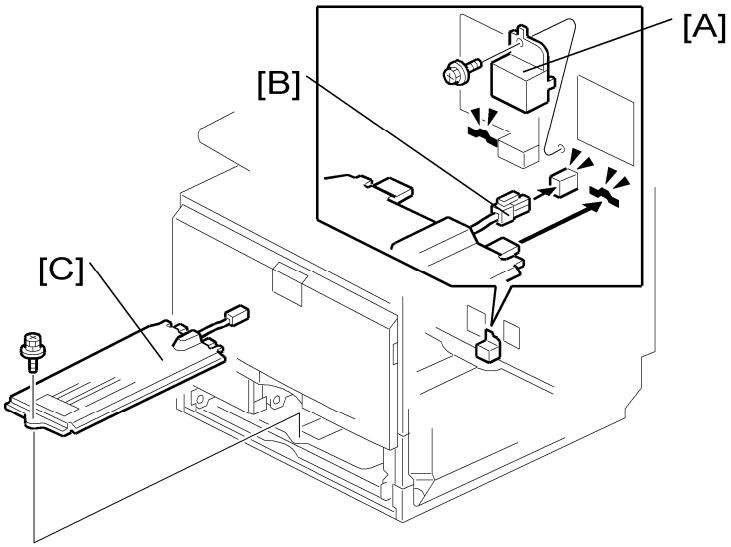


b222i521

10. Connect the heater cable [F] to the heater relay cable (🖘 x 1).
11. Reassemble the machine.

2.21 TRAY HEATER

2.21.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

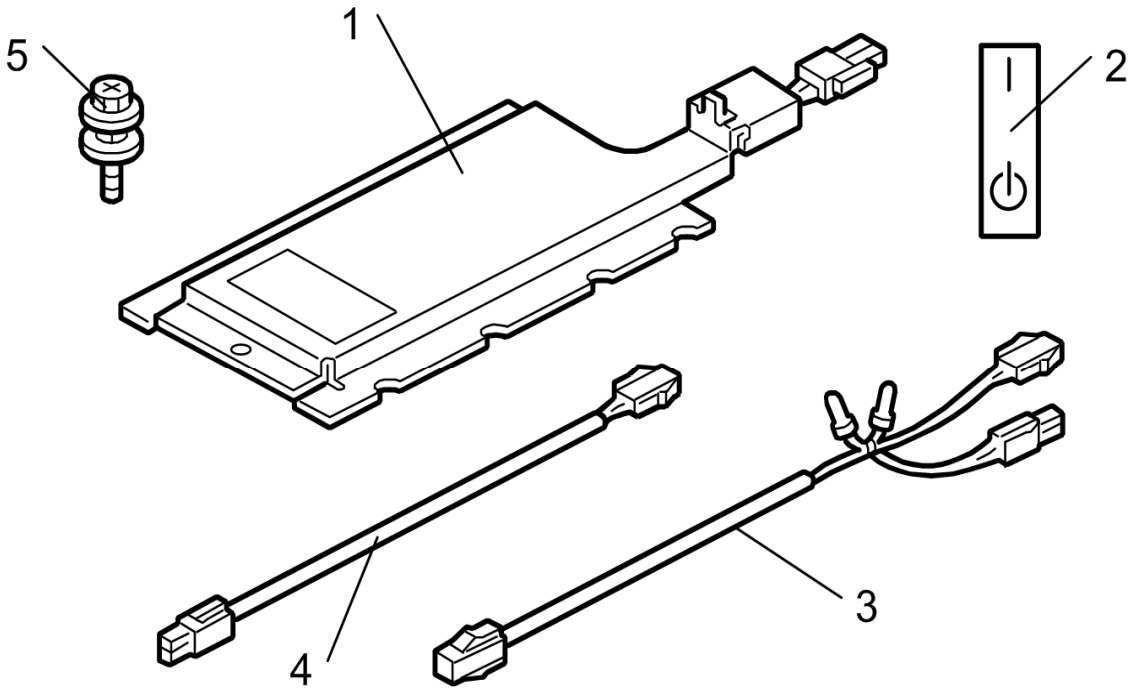


1. Remove trays 1 and 2 from the machine.
2. Remove the connector cover [A] (x 1).
3. Connect the connector [B] of the heater to the connector of the main machine.
4. Install the heater [C] inside the machine (x 1)
5. Reassemble the machine.

2.22 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE A

2.22.1 COMPONENT CHECK

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Tray Heater	1
2	On-Standby Decal	1 (-90) or 2 (-91)
3	Harness 2 (For D387)	1
4	Harness 1 (For D351/D352)	1
5	Screw M4 X 10	2
-	Installation Procedure	1



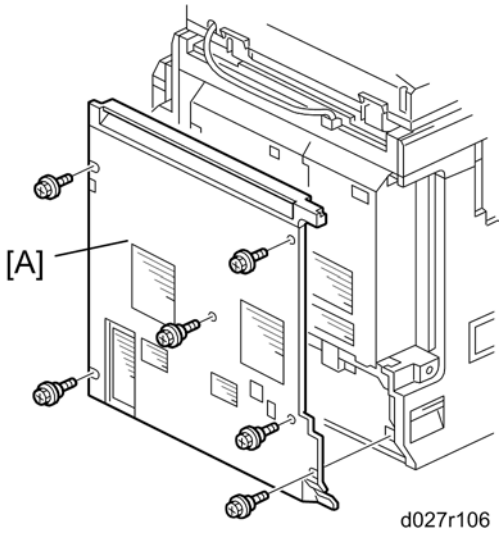
b800i191

2.22.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

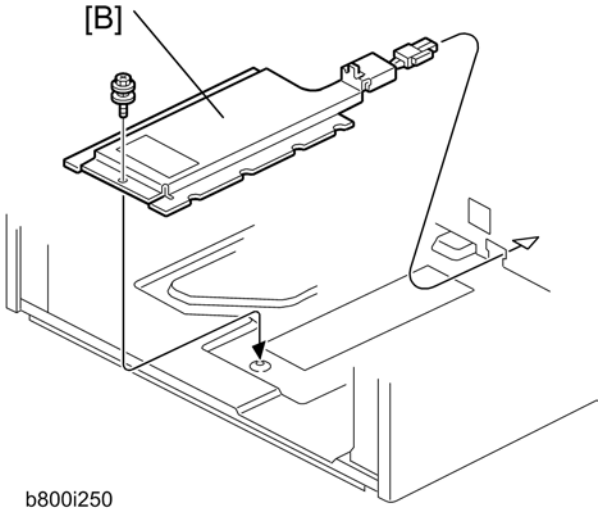
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.
- Do the following procedure not to damage any harnesses.
- Check that any harnesses are not damaged nor pinched after installation.

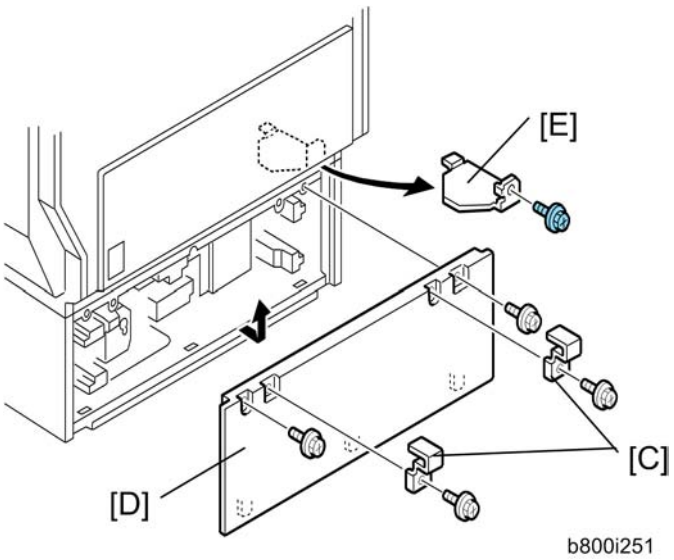
Installing the Tray Heater in D351



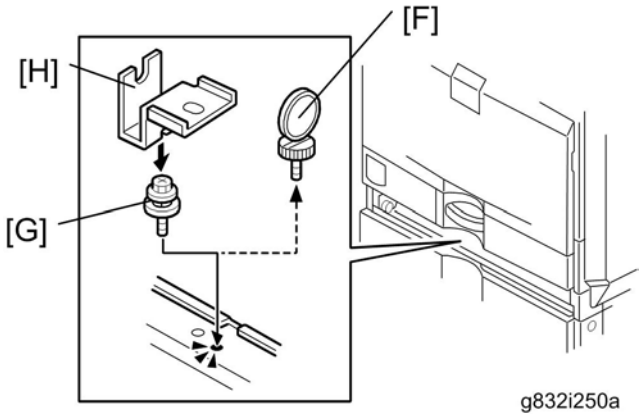
1. Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6)
2. Pull out the two trays in the optional paper feed unit.



3. Install the tray heater [B] in the optional paper feed unit (🔩 x 1).

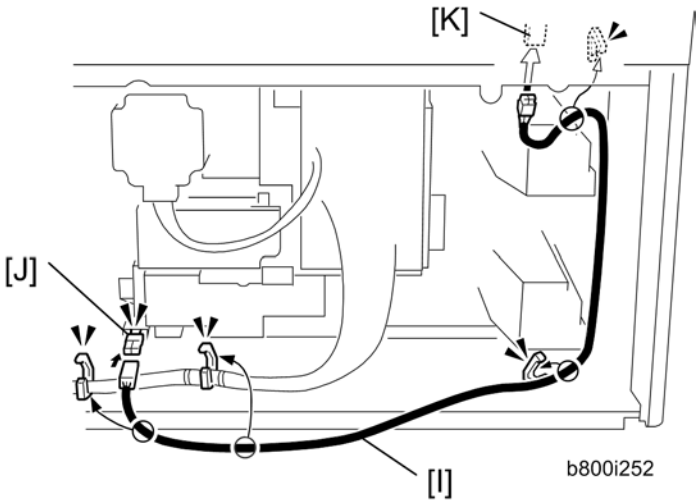


4. Remove the two securing brackets [C] (🔩 x 1 each), and then the rear cover [D] of the optional paper feed unit (🔩 x 2).
5. Remove the harness cover bracket [E] (🔩 x 1).

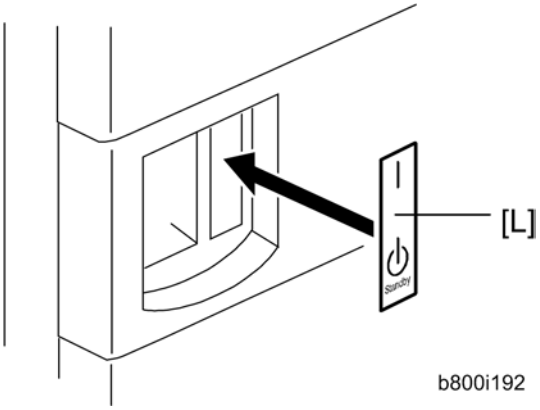


6. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
7. Replace the shoulder screw [F] with the washer screw [G], using securing bracket [H] (🔩 x 1).

Anti-Condensation Heater Type A



8. Connect the harness [I] to the connector [J] of the tray heater.
9. Route the harness [I] as shown and clamp it with four clamps.
10. Connect the harness [I] to the connector [K] of the mainframe.
11. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper feed unit.



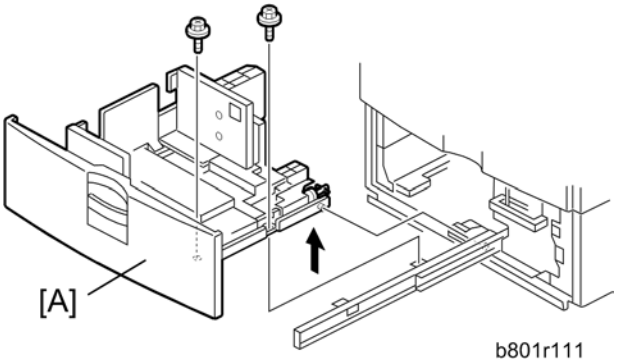
12. Attach the on/standby decal [L] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

Installing the Tray Heater in D352

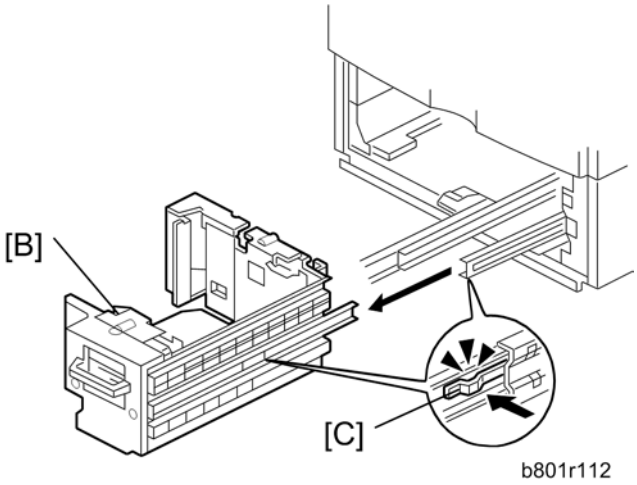
1. Remove the rear cover of the mainframe (☛ step 1 in "For Installing the Tray Heater in D321").
2. Pull out the LCT drawer.

Note

- If the right tray comes out with the left tray, push the right tray into the LCT.



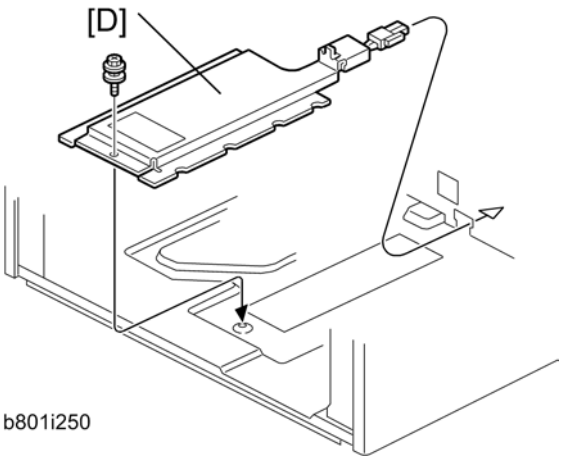
3. Left tray [A] (🔩 x 2)



4. Remove the right tray [B] while pressing down the stopper [C].

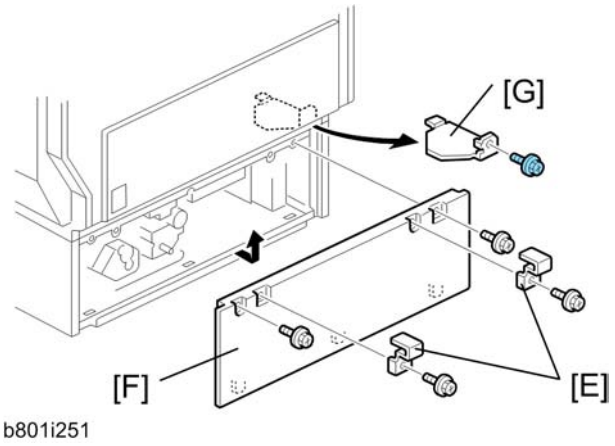
Note

- When reinstalling the right tray, set the right tray on the guide rail and carefully push the tray in, making sure to keep the tray level.

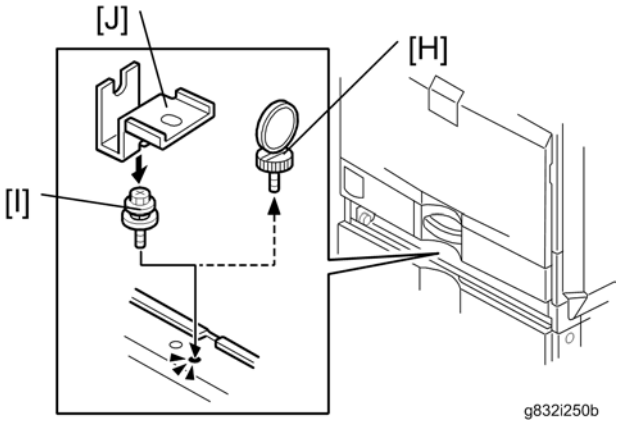


5. Install the tray heater [D] in the optional LCT (🔩 x 1).

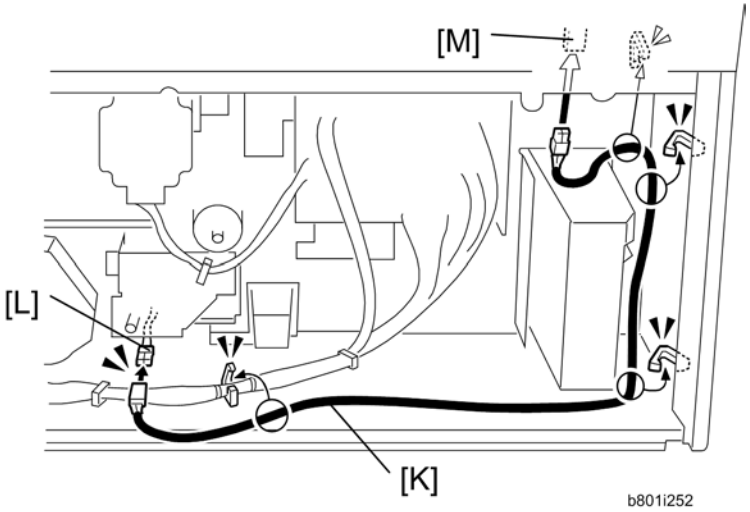
Anti-Condensation Heater Type A



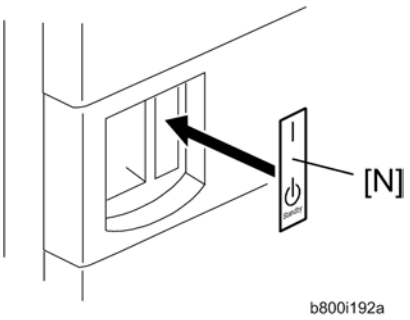
6. Remove the two securing brackets [E] (☞ x 1 each), and then the rear cover [F] of the optional LCT (☞ x 2).
7. Remove the harness cover bracket [G] (☞ x 1).



8. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
9. Replace the shoulder screw [H] with the washer screw [I], using the securing bracket [J] (☞ x 1).



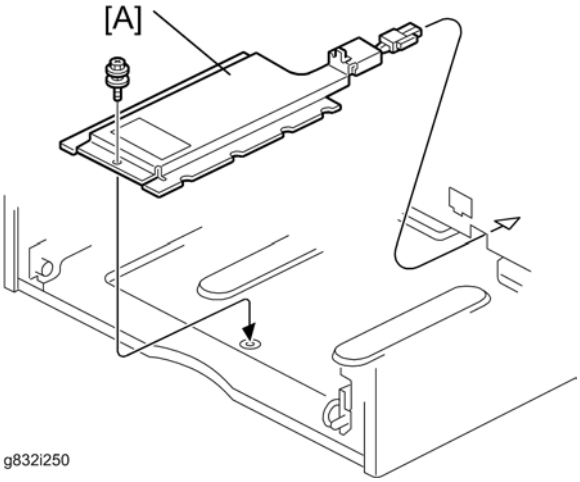
10. Connect the harness [K] to the connector [L] of the tray heater.
11. Route the harness [K] as shown and clamp it with four clamps (x 4).
12. Connect the harness [K] to the connector [M] of the mainframe.
13. Reassemble the mainframe and optional LCT.



14. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper feed unit.
15. Attach the on/standby decal [N] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

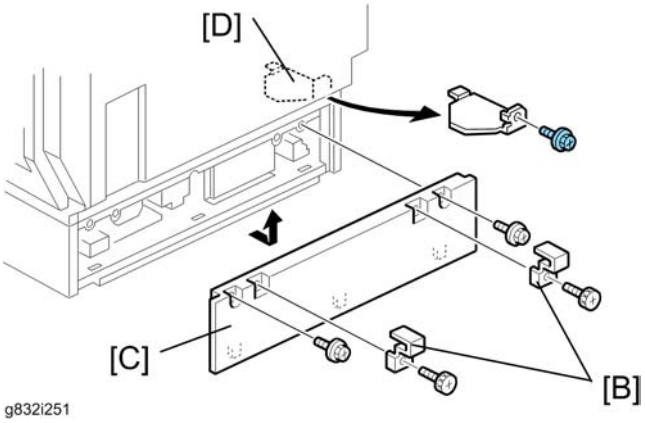
Installing the Tray Heater in D387

1. Remove the rear cover of the mainframe (☛ step 1 in "For Installing the Tray Heater in D321").
2. Pull out the tray in the optional paper tray.

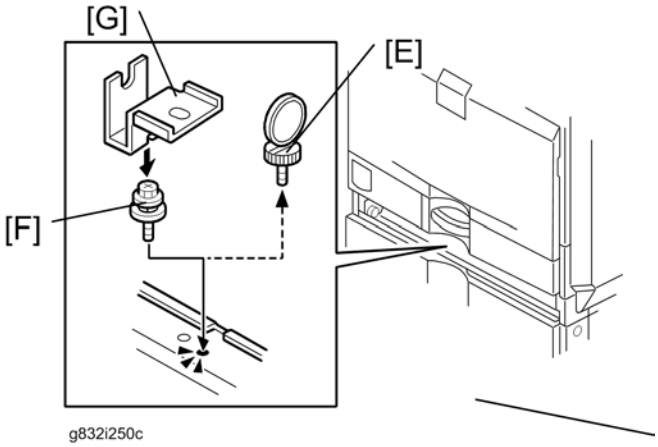


3. Install the tray heater [A] in the optional paper tray (x 1).

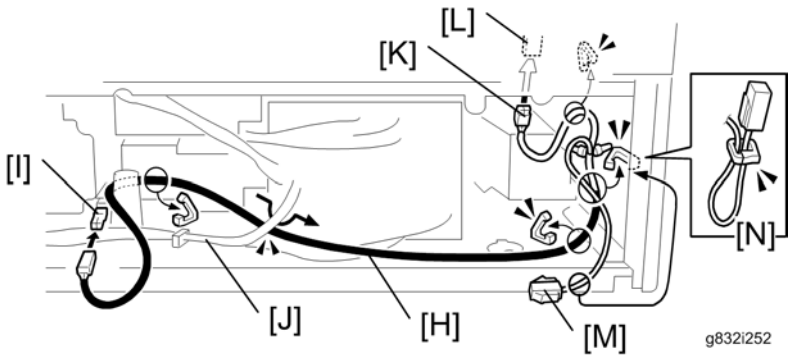
Anti-Condensation Heater Type A



4. Remove the two securing brackets [B] (☞ x 1 each), then the rear cover [C] of the optional paper tray (☞ x 2).
5. Remove the harness cover bracket [D] (☞ x 1).



6. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
7. Replace the shoulder screw [E] with the washer screw [F], using securing bracket [G] (☞ x 1).



1. Connect the harness [H] to the connector [I] of the tray heater.
2. Route the harness [H] as shown and clamp it with four clamps (☞ x 4).

Note

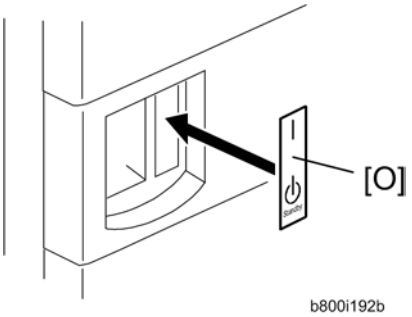
- Make sure that the harness [H] is placed below the harness [J].

3. Connect one harness [K] of the two-way harness to the connector [L] of the mainframe.

Note

- The harness [K] of the two-way harness, which has two binds, is for the connector of the mainframe. The harness [M], which has one bind, is for another optional paper feed unit.

4. Clamp the other harness [M] of the two-way harness as shown [N] if you do not install another optional paper feed unit.
5. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper tray.

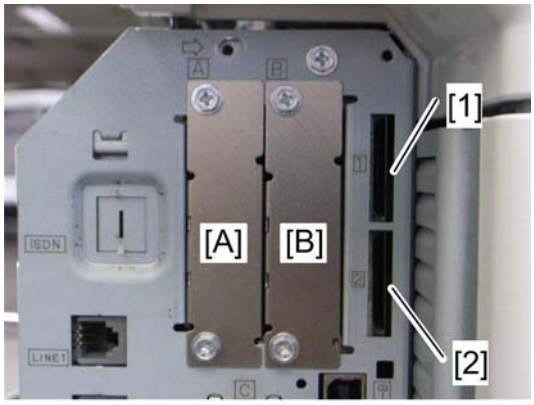


6. Attach the on/standby decal [O] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

2.23 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

2.23.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has I/F card slots for optional I/F connections and SD card slots applications. After you install an option, check that the machine can recognize it (see “Check All Connections” at the end of this section).



d027i400

I/F Card Slots

- Slot A is used for one of the optional I/F connections (only one can be installed): IEEE1284, IEEE802.11a/g, g (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth, or Remote Communication Gate.
- Slot B is used for the File Format Converter or Remote Communication Gate.

SD Card Slots

- Slot 1 is used for one of the optional applications: PostScript 3, DataOverwriteSecurity Unit, PictBridge
- Slot 2 is used for installing the Browser Unit, HDD Encryption unit, VM card or for service only (for example, updating the firmware).

2.23.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

Overview

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 is used to store application programs. But there are 3 possible applications (PostScript 3, DOS unit, PictBridge). You cannot run application programs from Slot 2. However you can move application programs from Slot 2 to Slot 1 with the following

procedure.

For this model, the printer/scanner card in slot 1 has enough space for the PictBridge and the DOS applications. Use the card that is already in slot 1 (printer/scanner card). Do not remove the printer/scanner card from slot 1.

Make sure that the target SD card has enough space.

1. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”.
2. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 2 to the SD Card in Slot 1.

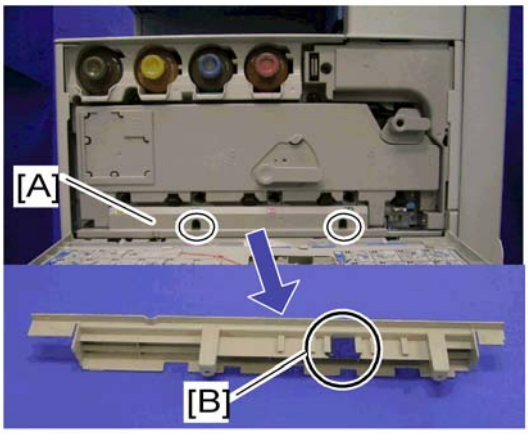
Note

- Do steps 1-2 again if you want to move another application program.

3. Exit the SP mode.

Be very careful when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.
- Do not use the SD card if it has been used before for other purposes. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.



- Remove the cover [A] (☞ x 2), and then keep the SD card in the place [B] after you copy the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
  - The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
  - You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.
- You cannot copy PostScript application and VM card to another SD card. You have to copy the other application (PictBridge, DOS Unit) to the SD card that stores the PostScript application or VM card.

Move Exec

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied to this SD card.
3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 2.The application program is copied from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

Undo Exec

“Undo Exec” (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied back into this card.
3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 1.The application program is copied back from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-002 “Undo Exec.”

7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.

Note

- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.

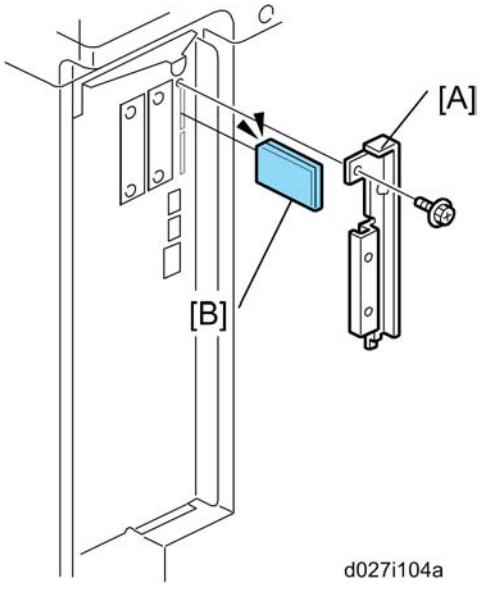
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.
12. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

2.23.3 POSTSCRIPT 3

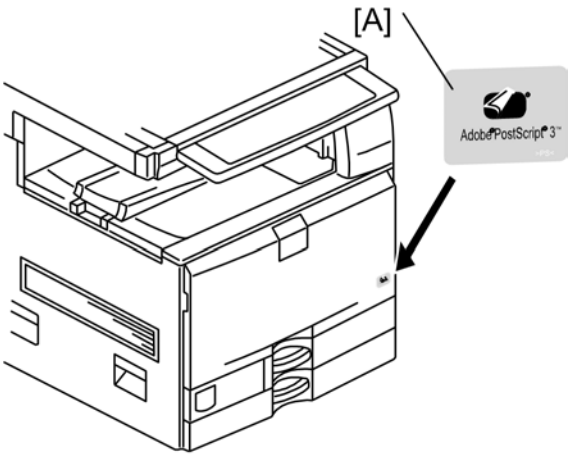
The PostScript3 application and fonts cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the PostScript3 SD card.

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



1. Remove the SD-card slot cover [A] from the SD card slots (☞ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
3. Attach the slot cover [A] (☞ x 1).



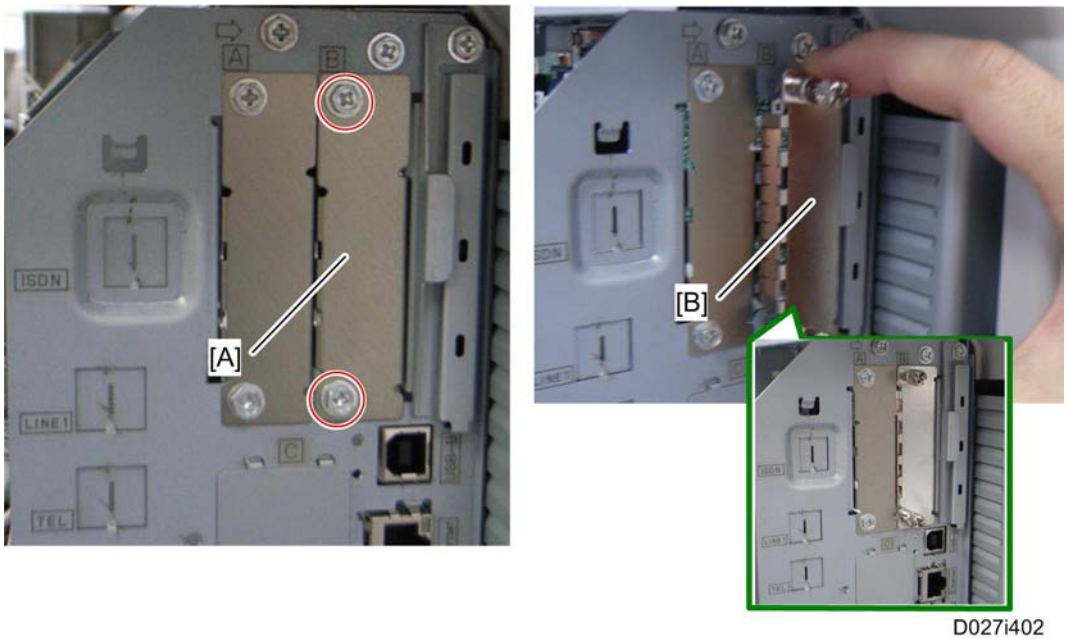
d027i504

4. Attach the “Adobe PostScript 3” decal [A] to the front door.
5. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

2.23.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



D027i402

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (x 2).
2. Install the file format converter [B] into slot B and then fasten it with screws.
3. Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.
4. Check or set the following SP codes with the values shown below.

SP No.	Title	Setting
SP5-836-001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)	"1"
SP5-836-002	Panel Setting	"0"

5. Check the operation.
6. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

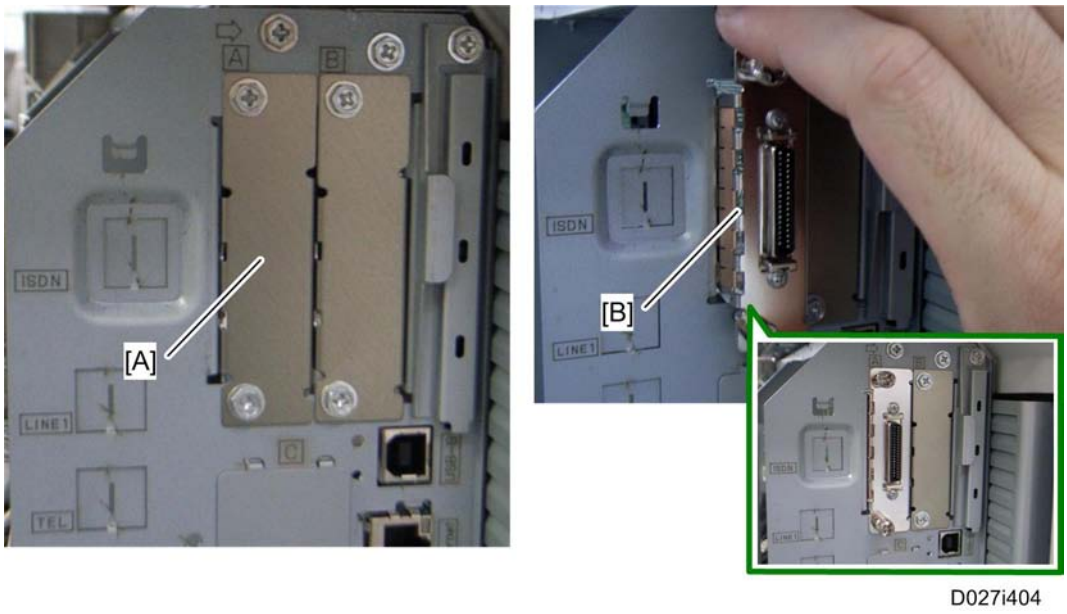
2.23.5 IEEE1284

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



D027i404

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Install the interface board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the slot A.
3. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

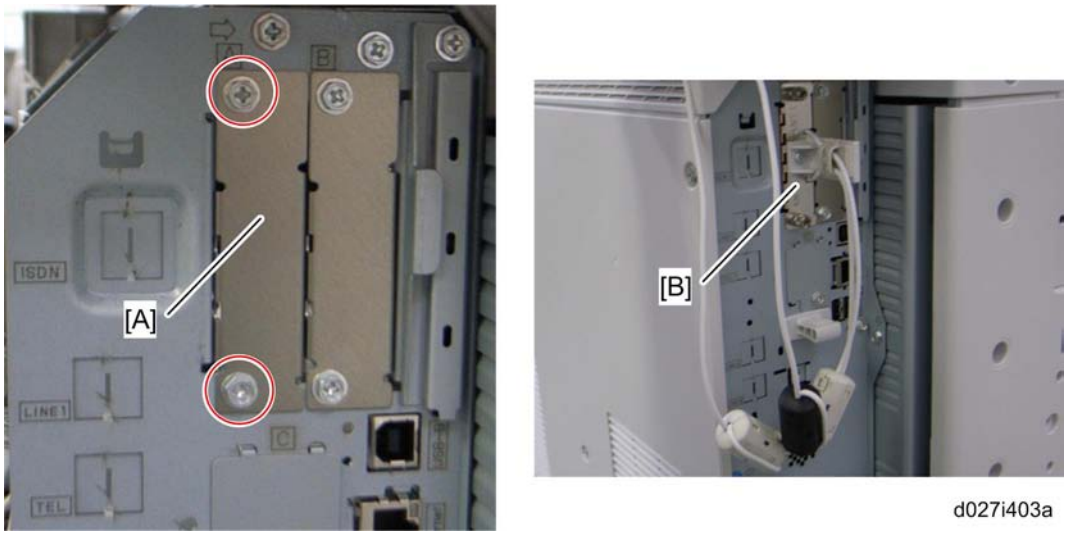
2.23.6 IEEE 802.11 A/G, G (WIRELESS LAN)

Installation Procedure

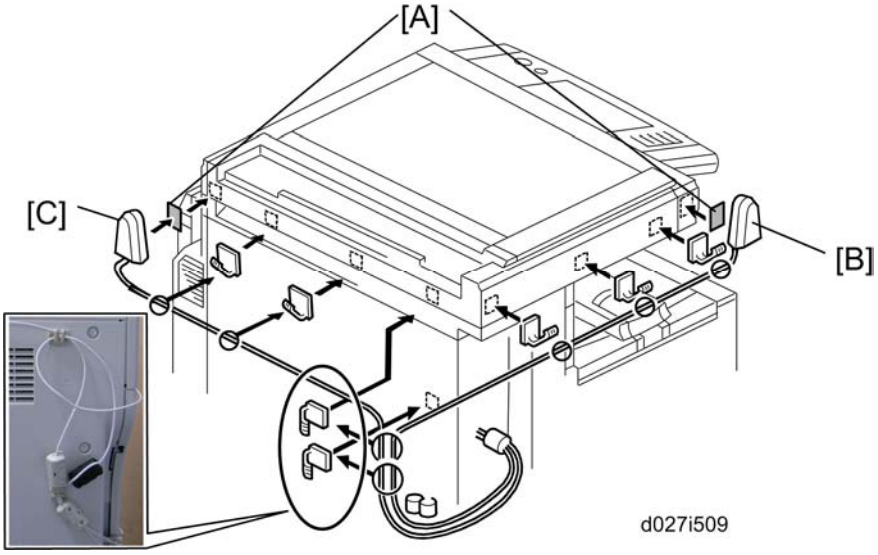
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at one time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



1. Remove the slot cover [A] from the board slot (🔩 x 2).
2. Install the wireless LAN board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the board slot.
3. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).



4. Peel off the double-sided tapes on the Velcro fasteners [A], and then attach them [A] at the front left and rear left of the machine.

5. Attach "ANT1" (having a black ferrite core) [B] to the front left of the machine.
6. Attach "ANT2" (having a white ferrite core) [C] to the rear right of the machine.

Note

- "ANT1" is a transmission/reception antenna and "ANT2" is a reception antenna. Do not attach them at the wrong places.

7. Attach the clamps as shown above.
8. Wire the cables and clamp them (x 7).

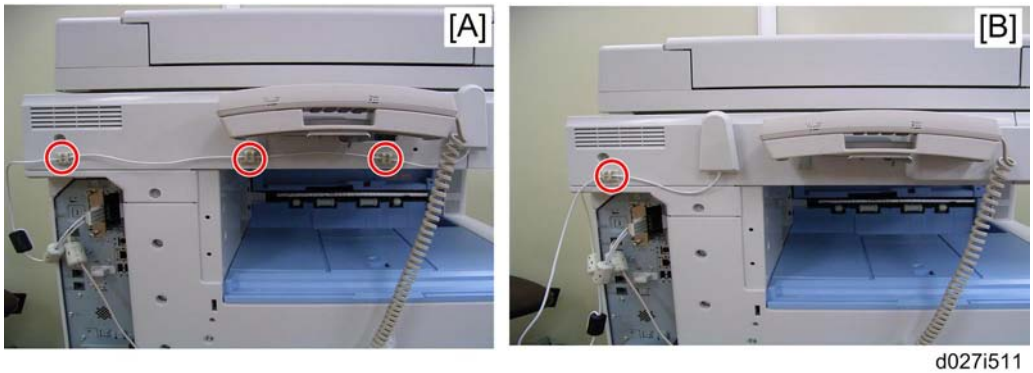
Note

- Make sure that the cables are not slack. Keep them wired tightly along the covers.

You may have to move the machine if the reception is not clear.

- Make sure that the machine is not located near an appliance or any type of equipment that generates strong magnetic fields.
- Put the machine as close as possible to the access point.

Installing Various Hardware Combinations



d027i511

- Refer to the above picture [A] when installing the handset.
- Refer to the above picture [B] when installing the handset and the USB2.0/SD.

UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

Note

- You cannot use the wireless LAN if you use Ethernet.

1. Press the “User Tools/Counter” key.
2. On the touch panel, press “System Settings”.

Note

- The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.

3. Select “Interface Settings”.

4. Press “Wireless LAN”. Only the wireless LAN options show.
5. Communication Mode. Select either “802.11 Ad hoc”, “Ad hoc” or “Infrastructure”.
6. SSID Setting. Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)
7. Channel. You need this setting when Ad Hoc Mode is selected.

   Range: 1 to 14 (default: 11)

   Note

   - The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
8. WEP (Encryption) Setting. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. The same WEP key is required on the receiving side in order to unlock encoded data. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.

   WEP:

   Selects “Active” or “Inactive” (“Inactive” is default.).

   Range of Allowed Settings:

   64 bit: 10 characters

   128 bit: 26 characters
9. Transmission Speed. Press the Next button to show more settings. Then select the transmission speed for the mode: Auto, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (default: Auto). This setting should match the distance between the closest machine or access point. This depends on which mode is selected.

   Note

   - For the Ad Hoc Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest PC in the network. For the Infrastructure Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest access point.

   11 Mbps: 140 m (153 yd.)

   5.5 Mbps: 200 m (219 yd.)

   2 Mbps: 270 m (295 yd.)

   1 Mbps: 400 m (437 yd.)
10. Press “Return to Default” to initialize the wireless LAN settings.

    Press “Yes” to initialize the following settings:

    - Transmission mode
    - Channel
    - Transmission Speed
    - WEP
    - SSID
    - WEP Key

SP Mode and UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g Wireless LAN

The following SP commands and UP modes can be set for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g.

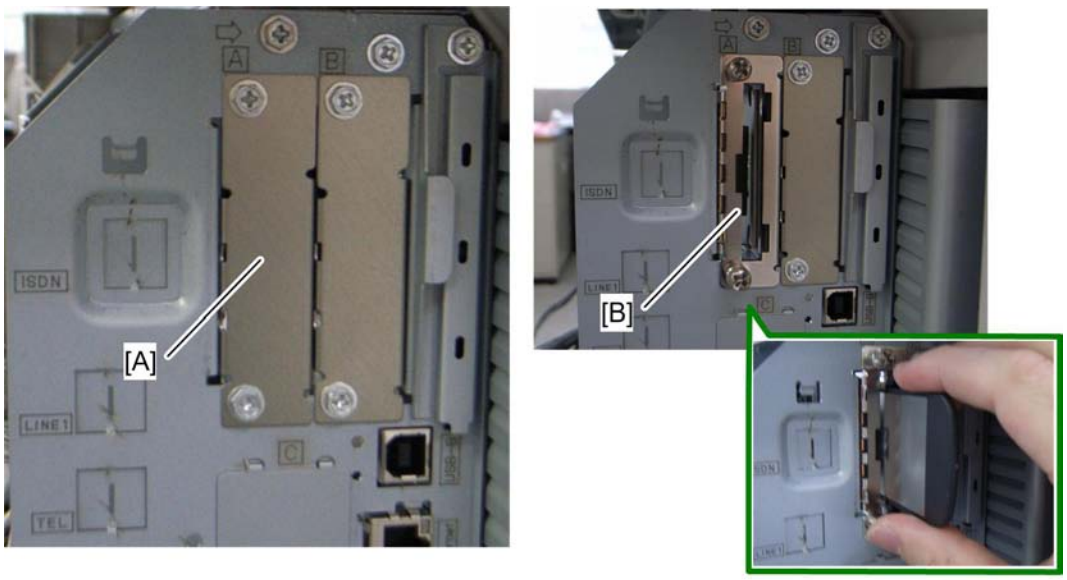
SP No.	Name	Function
5840-006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for your country.
5840-007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channels settings allowed for your country.
5840-011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
UP mode	Name	Function
	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
WEP Key	Used to confirm the current WEP key setting.	
WEP Mode	Used to show the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.	

2.23.7 BLUETOOTH

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



D027i405

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Install the Bluetooth board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the slot A.
3. Insert the Bluetooth card into the Bluetooth card adaptor.
4. Install the Bluetooth card adaptor on the Bluetooth board.
5. Attach the antenna cap to the Bluetooth board.
6. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

2.23.8 DATAOVERWRITESECURITY UNIT TYPE H (D377)

Before You Begin the Procedure

1. Confirm that the DataOverwriteSecurity unit SD card is the correct type for the machine. The correct type for this machine is "**Type H"**.

   Important

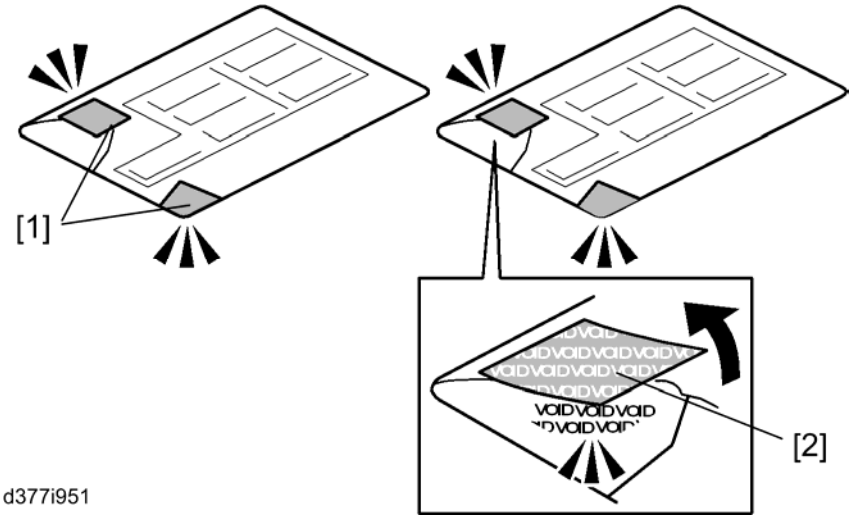
   - If you install any version other than "**Type H**", you will have to replace the NVRAM and do this installation procedure again.
2. Make sure that the following settings are not at their factory default values:
   - Supervisor login password

- Administrator login name
- Administrator login password

If any of these settings is at a factory default value, tell the customer these settings must be changed before you do the installation procedure.

3. Make sure that “Admin. Authentication” is ON.
   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Admin. Authentication]
   If this setting is OFF, tell the customer this setting must be ON before you do the installation procedure.
4. Make sure that “Administrator Tools” is enabled (selected).
   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Available Settings]
   If this setting is disabled (not selected), tell the customer this setting must be enabled (selected) before you do the installation procedure.

Seal Check and Removal



d377i951

⚠CAUTION

- You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

1. Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see “VOID” on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show “VOID”, remove them from the corners of the box.
3. You can see the “VOID” marks [2] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they

cannot be attached to the box again.

Installation Procedure

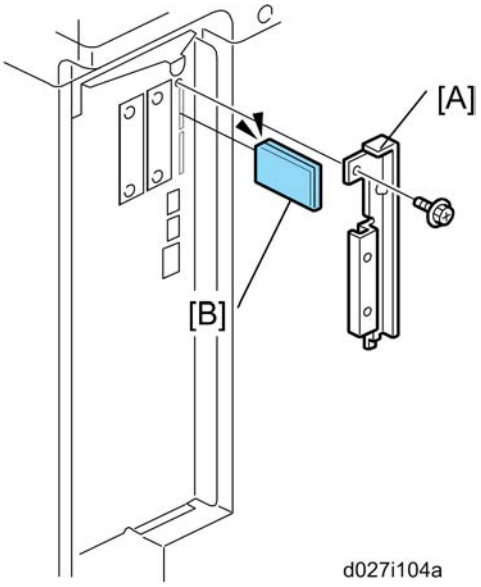
CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

Note

- You must install the DataOverwriteSecurity unit in SD Card slot 1. However, the Postscript option and others are also installed in SD Card slot 1. You must do the "SD Card Appli Move" procedure first if you want to install the DataOverwriteSecurity unit.

1. Turn off the main power switch if the machine is turned on.
2. Disconnect the network cable if it is connected.



3. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (☞ x 1).
4. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
5. Connect the network cable if it needs to be connected.
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Go into the SP mode and push “EXECUTE” with SP5-878-001.
8. Exit the SP mode and turn off the operation switch. Then turn off the main power switch.
9. Turn on the machine power.
10. Do SP5990-005 (SP print mode Diagnostic Report).
11. Make sure the ROM number and firmware version in area [a] of the diagnostic report are the same as those in area [b].

- [a]: “ROM Number/Firmware Version” – “HDD Format Option”
- [b]: “Loading Program” – “GW5a_zoffym”

Diagnostic Report:	“ROM No. / Firmware Version” [a]	“Loading Program” [b]
DataOverwriteSecurity Unit	HDD Format Option: D3775912 / 1.00m	GW5a_zoffym: D3775912 / 1.00m

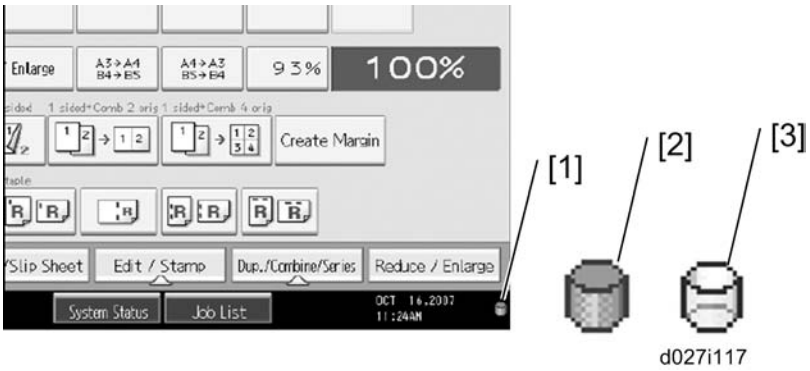
Important

- The ROM number and firmware version number change when the firmware is upgraded. However, the important thing is to make sure the numbers in [a] are the same as the numbers in [b].
- If the ROM numbers are not the same, or the version numbers are not the same, this means the unit was not installed correctly.

If this happens:

Make sure of the unit type (must be Type H).

12. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings> Administrator Tools> Auto Erase Memory Setting> On.
13. Exit the User Tools mode.



14. Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [1] shows.
15. Check the overwrite erase icon.
    - The icon [2]: This icon is lit when there is temporary data to be overwritten, and blinks during overwriting.
    - The icon [3]: This icon is lit when there is no temporary data to be overwritten.

2.23.9 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT

Before You Begin the Procedure

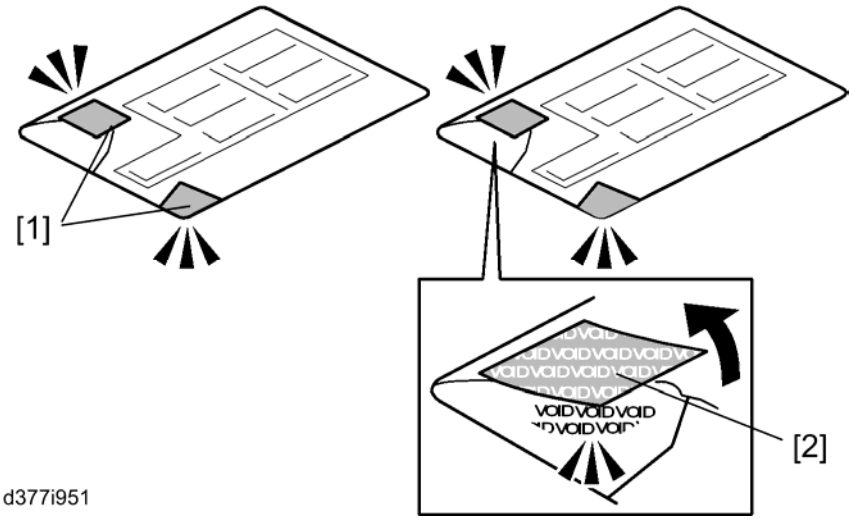
1. Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
   - Supervisor login password
   - Administrator login name
   - Administrator login password

   Important
   - These settings must be set up by the customer before the HDD Encryption unit can be installed.
2. Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:
   [User Tools] > "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Admin. Authentication"> "On"
   If this setting is "Off", tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.
3. Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:
   [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Available Settings"

   Note
   - "Available Settings" is not displayed until Step 2 is done.

   If this setting is not selected, tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.

Seal Check and Removal



d377i951

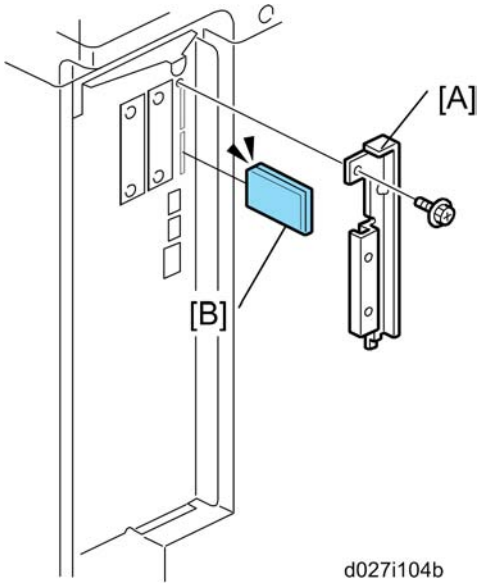
CAUTION

- You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the

items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

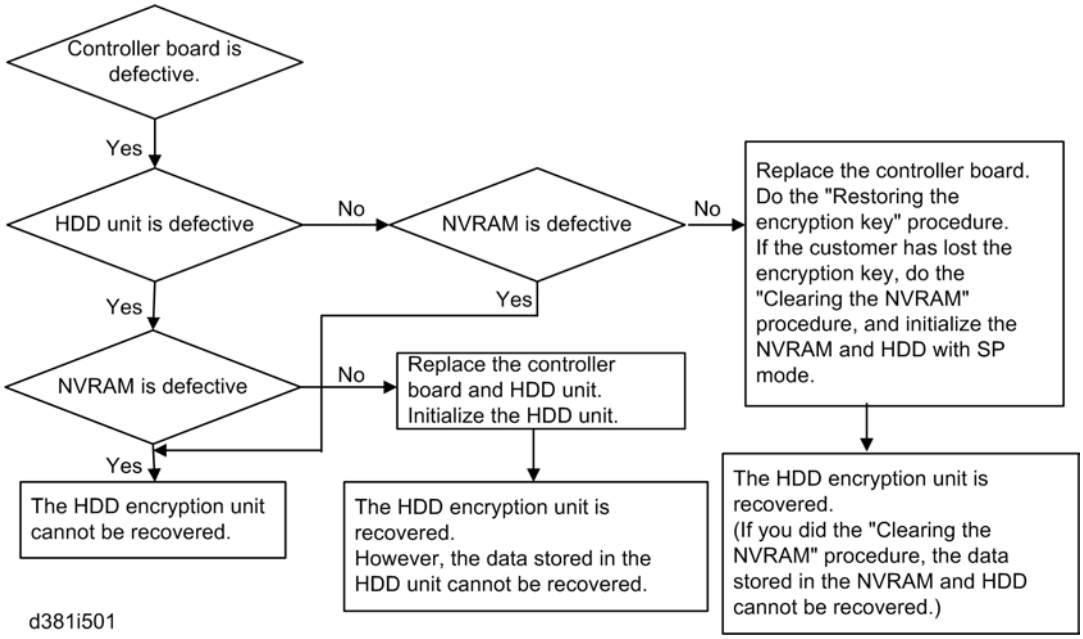
1. Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see “VOID” on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show “VOID”, remove them from the corners of the box.
3. You can see the “VOID” marks [2] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they cannot be attached to the box again.

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (🖉 x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label [B] to face the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Turn on the main power switch, and then enter the SP mode.
4. Select SP5878-002, and then press "Execute" on the LCD.
5. Exit the SP mode after "Completed" is displayed on the LCD.
6. Turn off the main power switch.
7. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
8. Attach the SD card slot cover [A] (🖉 x 1).

Recovery from a Device Problem



Restoring the Encryption key

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed, updating the encryption key is required.

1. Prepare an SD card which is initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Ask an administrator to input the encryption key (this has been printed out earlier by the user) into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Remove only the HDD unit (☛ p.4-202 "

HDD").

6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
8. Turn off the main power switch.
9. Insert the SD card that contains the encryption key into slot 2.
10. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
11. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
12. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
13. Reinstall the HDD unit.

Clearing the NVRAM

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed and a customer has lost the encryption key, clearing the NVRAM is required to recover the HDD encryption unit.

1. Prepare an SD card which is initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Input "nvclear" into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Turn on the main power switch.
6. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
7. Turn off the main power switch.
8. Insert the SD card that contains “nvclear” into slot 2.
9. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
10. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
11. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
12. Turn on the main power switch.
13. Initialize the NVRAM (SP5801-001) and HDD unit (SP5832-001) with SP mode.
14. The user must enable the HDD encryption unit with a user tool.

2.23.10 PICTBRIDGE

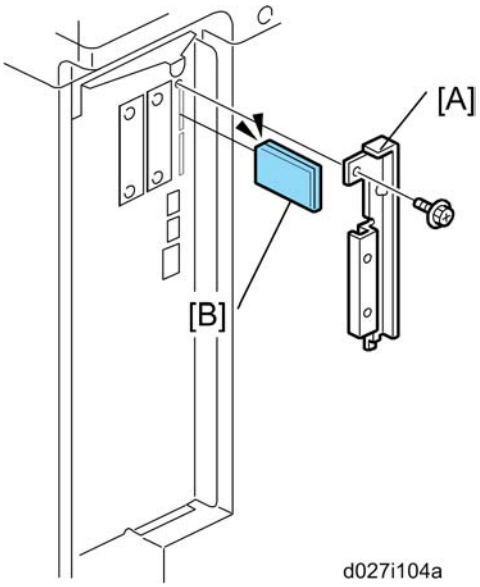
CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

Note

- You must install the PictBridge option in SD Card slot 1. However, the Postscript option and the DataOverwriteSecurity unit option are also installed in SD Card slot 1. You must do the SD Card Appli move procedure first if you have the postscript or DataOverwriteSecurity unit option installed and you want to install the PictBridge unit.

You must install the USB Host Interface when using the PictBridge unit.



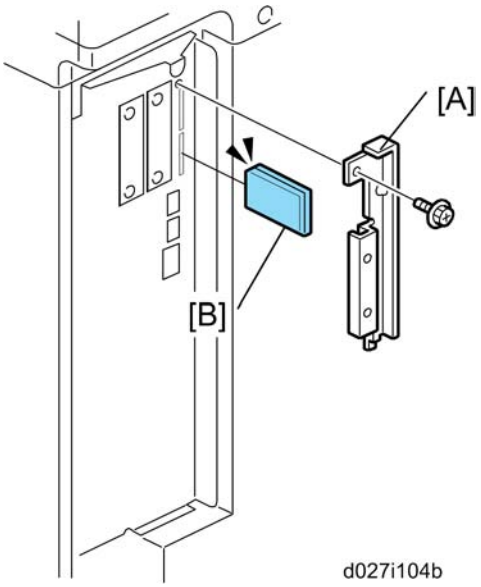
1. Remove the SD-card slot cover [A] for SD cards (☞ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
3. Attach the SD-card slot cover [A] (☞ x 1).
4. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

2.23.11 VM CARD TYPE I

The VM card application cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the VM card.

Installation Procedure

1. Switch the machine off.



2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
3. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
4. Reattach the SD card slot cover.
5. Switch the machine on.
6. On the operation panel, remove the bottom blank keytop and replace it with the keytop provided.
7. Attach the decal to the copier.

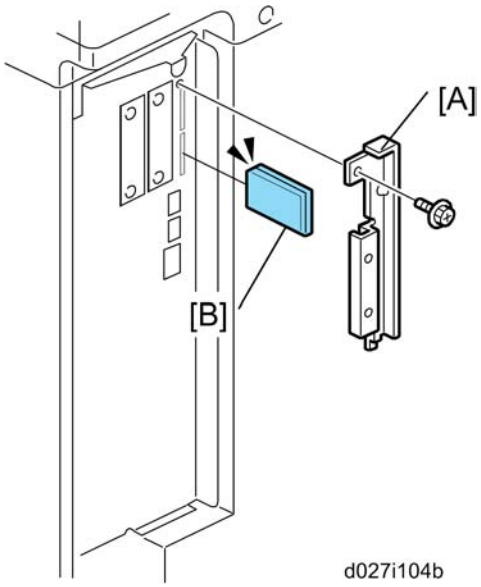
2.23.12 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

SD card slot 2 is basically used only for service maintenance. Do not leave an SD card in slot 2 after installing an application.



1. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🖉 x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
4. Push the "User Tools" key.
   - If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to step 7.
5. Push the "Login/ Logout" key.
6. Login with the administrator user name and password.
7. Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.
8. Touch "Install" on the LCD.
9. Touch "SD Card".
10. Touch the "Browser" line.
11. Under "Install to" touch "Machine HDD" and touch "Next".
12. When you see "Ready to Install", check the information on the screen to confirm your previous selection.

13. Touch "OK". You will see "Installing the extended feature... Please wait.," and then "Completed".
14. Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.
15. Touch "Change Allocation."
16. Touch the "Browser" line.
17. Press one of the hard keys, which you want to use for the Browser Unit. In default, this function is assigned to the "Other Functions" key (bottom key of function keys).
18. Touch "OK".
19. Touch "Exit" twice to go back to the copy screen.
20. Turn off the main power switch.
21. Install the key for "Browser Unit" to the place, where you want.
22. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
23. Attach the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1).
24. Keep the SD card in place (☛ p.5-22 "SD Card Appli Move") after you install the application program from the card to HDD. The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program. You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

Update Procedure

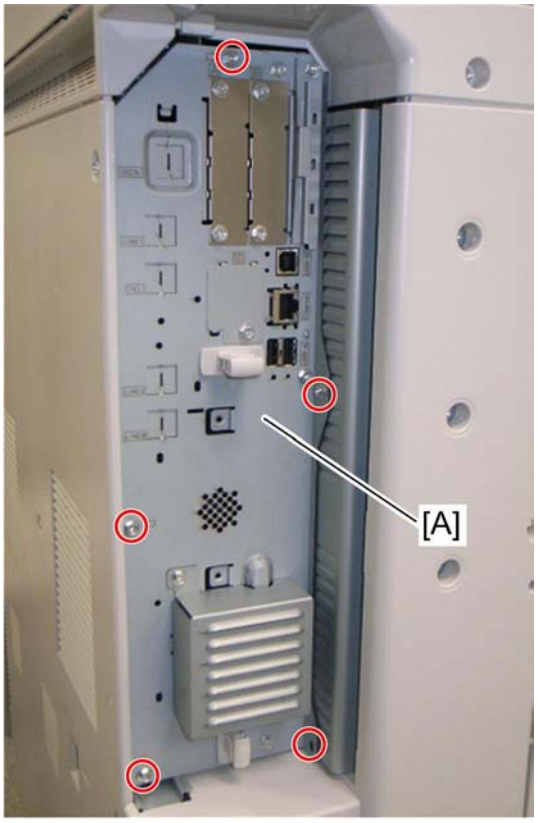
1. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🔩 x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
4. Push the "User Tools" key.
   - If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to step 7.
5. Push the "Login/ Logout" key.
6. Login with the administrator user name and password.
7. Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.
8. Touch "Uninstall" on the LCD.
9. Touch the "Browser" line
10. Confirmation message appears on the LCD.
11. Touch "Yes" to proceed.
12. Reconfirmation message appears on the LCD.
13. Touch "Yes" to uninstall the browser unit.
14. You will see "Uninstalling the extended feature... Please wait.", and then "Completed".
15. Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.

16. Exit "User/Tools" setting, and then turn off the main power switch.
17. Remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
18. Overwrite the updated program in the "sdk" folder of the browser unit application with PC.
19. Do the "Installation Procedure" to install the browser unit.

2.23.13 GIGABIT ETHERNET

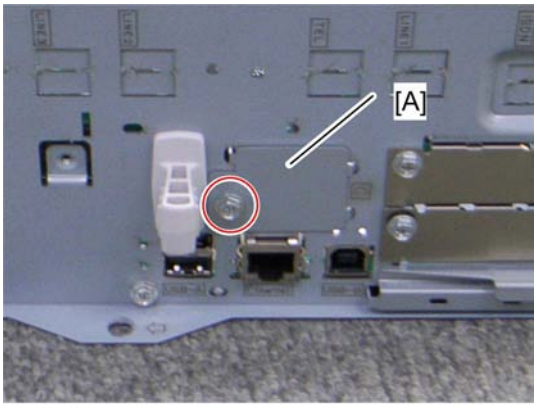
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



d027i075

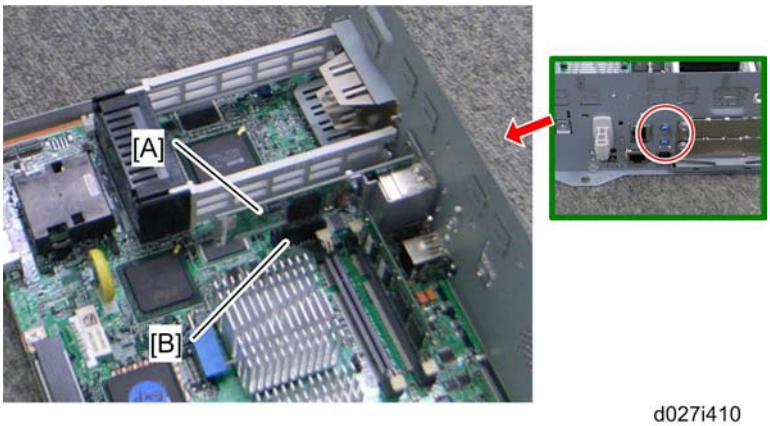
1. Pull out the controller board [A] (🔩 x 5).



d027i409

2. Remove the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1).

Controller Options



d027i410

3. Attach the Gigabit Ethernet controller [A] into the slot [B] (🔩 x 2).
4. Reassemble the machine.
5. Check the operation of the Gigabit Ethernet

2.23.14 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

1. Plug in the power cord. Then turn on the main switch.
2. Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.
   User Tools > Printer Settings > List Test Print > Config. Page

All installed options are shown in the “System Reference” column.

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Preventive Maintenance Items
- Other Yield Parts

3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS

3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004.
3. Set the following SPs to "1" before you turn the power off. Then, the machine will reset the PM counters automatically. In the case of developer, the developer initialization will also be done automatically.
4. Exit the SP mode.

Item	SP
Developer	Black: 3902-005 Yellow: 3902-006 Cyan: 3902-007 Magenta: 3902-008
Drum Unit	Black: 3902-009 Yellow: 3902-010 Cyan: 3902-011 Magenta: 3902-012
Fusing Unit Parts (not necessary for complete fusing units; see below)	3902-014
Image Transfer Belt Cleaning Unit	3902-015
Paper Transfer Unit	3902-016
Toner Collection Bottle (if not full or near-full)	3902-017

For the following units, there is a new unit detection mechanism. It is not necessary to reset PM counters.

- PCU
- Development unit
- Complete fusing unit
- Toner Collection Bottle (if full or near-full)

3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS

1. Turn on the main power switch.
2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004 and check the counter values.
3. Make sure that the PM counters for the replaced units are “0” with SP7-803. If the PM counter for a unit was not reset, then reset that counter with SP 7-804.
4. Make sure that the exchange counter counts up with SP7-853.
5. Make sure that the counters for the previous units (SP7-906) on the new SMC logging data list (from step 2 above) are equal to the counters (SP7-803) for these units on the previous SMC logging data list (the list that was output in the “Before removing the old parts” section).
6. Make sure that the unit replacement date is updated with SP7-950.

3.2.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK

1. Clean the exposure glasses (for DF and book scanning).
2. Enter the user tools mode.
3. Do the “Automatic Color Calibration “(ACC) for the copier mode & printer mode as follows:
   - Print the ACC test pattern (User Tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
   - Put the printout on the exposure glass.
   - Put 10 sheets of white paper on the test chart. This ensures the precise ACC adjustment.
   - Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
   - Press “Start Scanning” on the LCD. Then, the machine starts the ACC.
4. Exit the User Tools mode, and then enter the SP mode.
5. Do the “Forced line position adjustment” as follows.
   - First do SP2-111-3 (Mode c).
   - Then do SP2-111-1 (Mode a).
   - To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
6. Exit the SP mode.

3.2.4 OPERATION CHECK

Check if the sample image has been copied normally.

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 BEFOREHAND

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing options, please do the following:
- If there is a fax unit in the machine, print out all messages stored in the memory, the lists of user-programmed items, and the system parameter list.
- If there are printer jobs in the machine, print out all jobs in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord, the telephone line, and the network cable.

4.2 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
B645 5010	SD Card	1
B645 6705	PCMCIA Card Adapter	1
B645 6820	USB Reader/Writer	1
VSSM9000	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE87	1
G021 9350	Loop-back Connector – Parallel ***NOTE**	1
C401 9503	20X Magnification Scope	1
A257 9300	Grease Barrierta – S552R	1
5203 9502	Silicone Grease G-501	1
A092 9503	C4 Color Test Chart (3 pcs/set)	1
A184 9501	Optics Adjustment Tool (2 pcs / set)	2
B679 5100	Plug - IEEE1284 Type A	1
B132 9700	Lubricant Powder	1

Note

- The "Loop-back Connector–Parallel" requires the "Plug-IEEE1284 Type A", and the optional IEEE1284 interface option must also be installed.

4.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

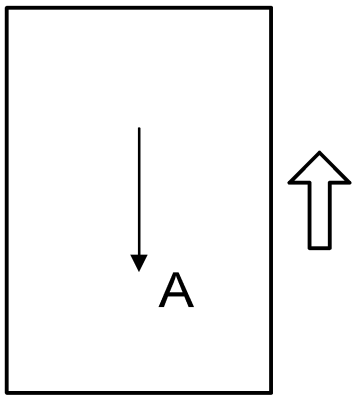
4.3.1 SCANNING

Check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment before you do the following scanner adjustments.

Note

- Use S-2-1 test chart to do the following adjustments.

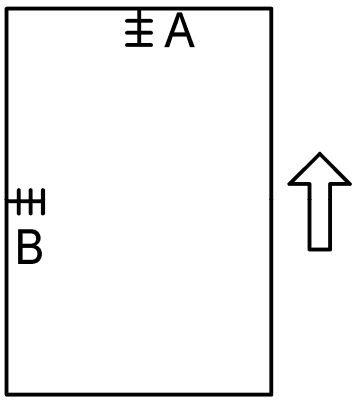
Scanner sub-scan magnification



A: Sub-scan magnification

1. Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP4-008 if necessary.
   Standard: ±1.0%.

Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration



A: Leading Edge Registration

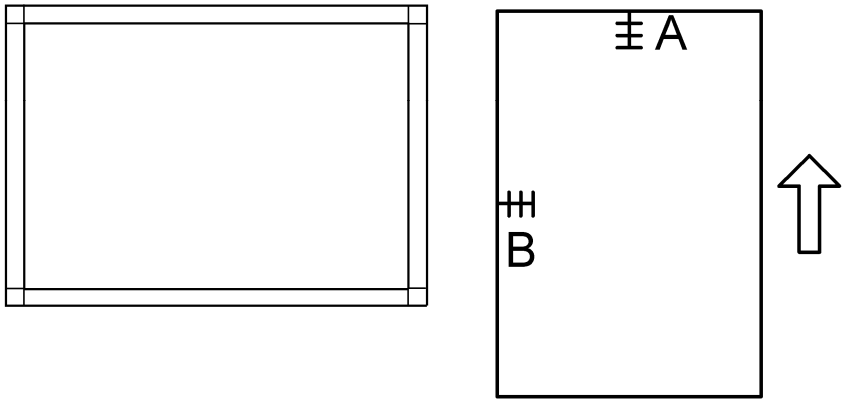
Image Adjustment

1. Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary.
   Standard: 0 ± 2mm for the leading edge registration, 0 ± 2.5mm for the side-to-side registration.

	SP mode
Leading Edge Registration	SP4-010-001
Side-to-Side Registration	SP4-011-001

4.3.2 ARDF

ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge



A: Leading edge registration

Use A3/DLT paper to make a temporary test chart as shown above.

1. Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the registration. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary.
   Standard: 4.2 ± 2 mm for the leading edge registration, 2 ± 1 mm for the side-to-side registration. Use the following SP modes to adjust if necessary.

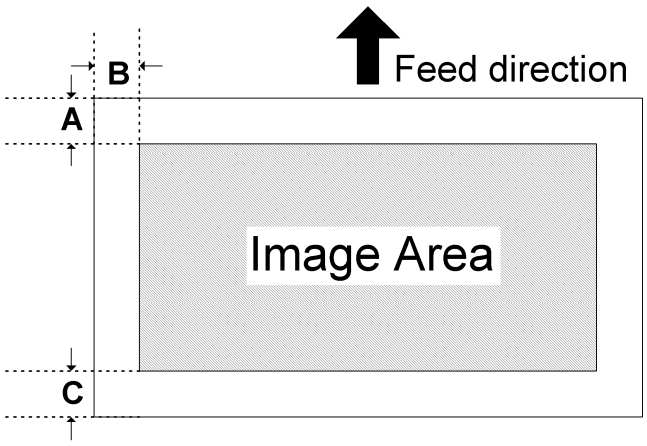
SP Code	What It Does	Adjustment Range
SP6-006-001	Side-to-Side Registration	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-003	Leading Edge Registration	± 5.0 mm
SP6-006-005	Buckle: Duplex Front	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-006	Buckle: Duplex Rear	± 2.5 mm
SP6-006-007	Rear Edge Erase (Trailing Edge)	± 10.0 mm

ARDF sub-scan magnification

1. Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP6-017-001 if necessary.
   - Standard: ±1.0%
   - Reduction mode: ±1.0%
   - Enlargement mode: ±1.0%

4.3.3 REGISTRATION

Image Area



A = C = 5.2 mm (0.2"), B = 2.0 mm

Make sure that the registration is adjusted within the adjustment standard range as shown below.

Leading Edge

Adjusts the leading edge registration for each paper type and process line speed.

Side to Side

Adjusts the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station. Use SP mode (SP1-002) to adjust the side-to-side registration for the optional paper feed unit, LCT, and duplex unit.

Adjustment Standard

- Leading edge (sub-scan direction): 5.2 ± 2 mm
- Side to side (main-scan direction): 2 ± 1 mm

Paper Registration Standard

The registration in both main- and sub-scan directions can change within the following tolerance.

- Sub-scan direction: 0 ± 9 mm
- Main-scan direction: 0 ± 4 mm

Adjustment Procedure

1. Enter SP2-109-003.
2. Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.

Note

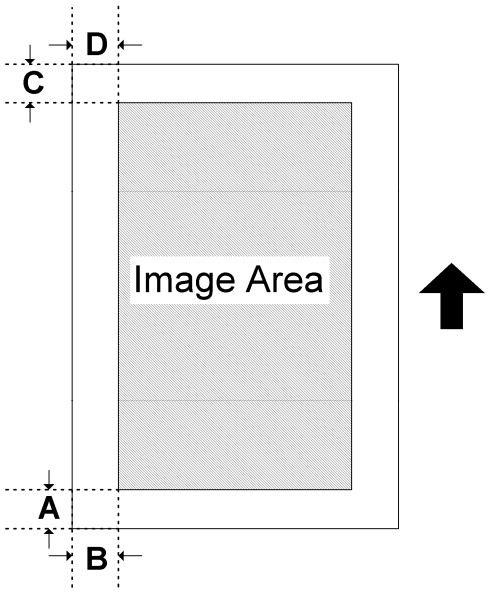
- Registration can change slightly as shown on the previous page. Print some pages of the 1-dot trimming pattern for step 3 and 4. Then average the leading edge and side-to-side registration values, and adjust each SP mode.

3. Do the leading edge registration adjustment.
   1) Check the leading edge registration and adjust it with SP1-001.
   2) Select the adjustment conditions (paper type and process line speed).
   3) Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4) Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.
4. Do the side-to-side registration adjustment.
   1) Check the side-to-side registration and adjust it with SP1-002.
   2) Select the adjustment conditions (paper feed station).
   3) Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4) Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.

4.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT

Note

- Adjust the erase margin C and D only if the registration (main scan and sub scan) cannot be adjusted within the standard values. Do the registration adjustment after adjusting the erase margin C and D, and then adjust the erase margin A and B.



1. Enter SP2-109-003.
2. Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.
3. Check the erase margin A and B. Adjust them with SP2-103-001 to -010 if necessary.
   - Leading edge: 1.5 to 5.0 mm,
   - Side-to-side: 0.5 to 4.0 mm,
   - Trailing edge: 0.5 to 0.6 mm

4.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION

Line Position Adjustment

The automatic line position adjustment usually is done for a specified condition to get the best color prints.

Do the following if color registration shifts:

- Do “Auto Color Registration” as follows to do the forced line position adjustment.
  1. First do SP2-111-3.
  2. Then do SP2-111-1.
     To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
- You should also do the line position adjustment at these times:
  - After you transport or move the machine (you should do the forced line position adjustment if you install the machine at the user location.) if the machine is pre-installed at the workshop and moved to the user location,
  - When you open the drum positioning plate
  - When you remove or replace the motors, clutches, and/or gears related to the drum/development/transfer sections
  - When you remove or replace the image transfer belt, image transfer belt unit or laser optical housing unit

4.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION

Note

- The ACC is usually sufficient to adjust the color balance to get the best print output. You only need the printer gamma correction to fine-tune to meet user requirements.

Use SP modes if you want to modify the printer gamma curve created with ACC. You can adjust the gamma data for the following:

- Highlight
- Middle
- Shadow areas
- IDmax.

The adjustable range is from 0 to 30 (31 steps).

Copy Mode

- KCMY Color Balance Adjustment -

The adjustment uses only “Offset” values.

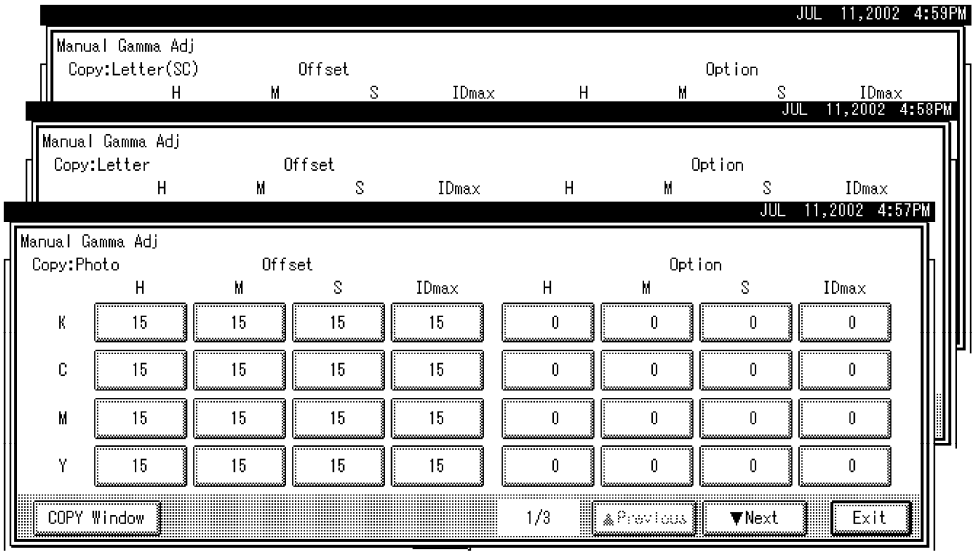
Note

- Never change “Option” values (default value is 0).

Highlight (Low ID)	Levels 2 through 5 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Middle (Middle ID)	Levels 3 through 7 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Shadow (High ID)	Levels 6 through 9 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
ID max	Level 10 in the C4 chart 10-level scale (affects the entire image density.)
Offset	The higher the number in the range associated with the low ID, middle ID, high ID, and ID max, the greater the density.

There are four adjustable modes (can be adjusted with SP4-918-009):

- Copy Photo mode
- Copy Letter mode
- Copy Letter (Single Color) mode
- Copy Photo (Single Color) mode



- Adjustment Procedure -

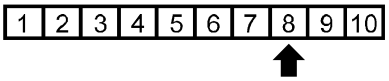
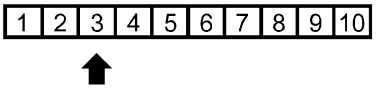
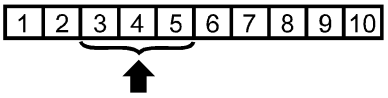
1. Copy the C-4 chart in the mode that you want to adjust.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Select “Copy SP.”
4. Select SP4-918-009.
5. Adjust the offset values until the copy quality conforms to the standard (* the table below).

Note

- 1. Never change “Option” value (default value is "0").
- 2. Adjust the density in this order: “ID Max,” “Middle,” “Shadow,” “Highlight.”

- Photo Mode, Full Color -

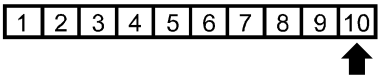
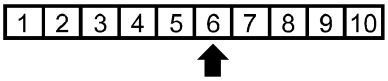
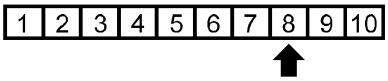
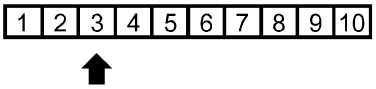
	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ⬆	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ⬆	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.

3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.
5	K Highlight (Low ID) (C,M, and Y) <on the full color copy>		Adjust the offset value so that the color balance of black scale levels 3 through 5 in the copy is seen as gray (no C, M, or Y should be visible). If the black scale contains C, M, or Y, do steps 1 to 4 again.

-

Image Adjustment

Photo Mode, Single Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

- Text (Letter) Mode, Full Color -

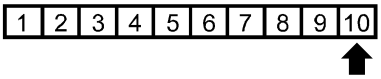
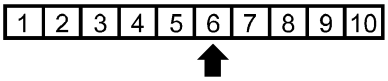
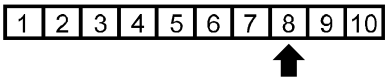
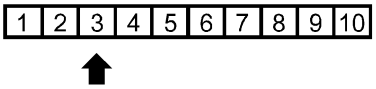
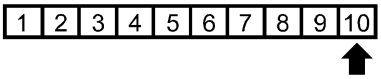
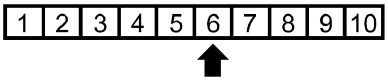
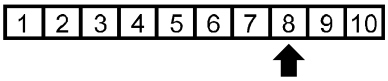
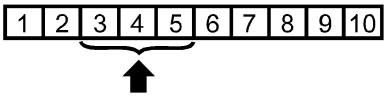
	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

Image Adjustment

- Text (Letter) Mode, Single Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

Note

- Text parts of the test pattern cannot be printed clearly after you adjust “shadow” as shown above. At this time, check if the 5 line/mm pattern at each corner is printed clearly. If it is not, adjust the offset value of “shadow” again until it is.

Printer Mode

There are six adjustable modes (select these modes with printer SP1-102-001):

- 1200 x 1200 photo mode
- 1200 x 1200 text mode
- 2400 x 600 photo mode
- 2400 x 600 text mode
- 1800 x 600 photo mode

- 1800 x 600 text mode
- 600 x 600 photo mode
- 600 x 600 text mode

	K	C	M	Y
Highlight	SP1-104-1	SP1-104-21	SP1-104-41	SP1-104-61
Shadow	SP1-104-2	SP1-104-22	SP1-104-42	SP1-104-62
Middle	SP1-104-3	SP1-104-23	SP1-104-43	SP1-104-63
IDmax	SP1-104-4	SP1-104-24	SP1-104-44	SP1-104-64

- Adjustment Procedure -

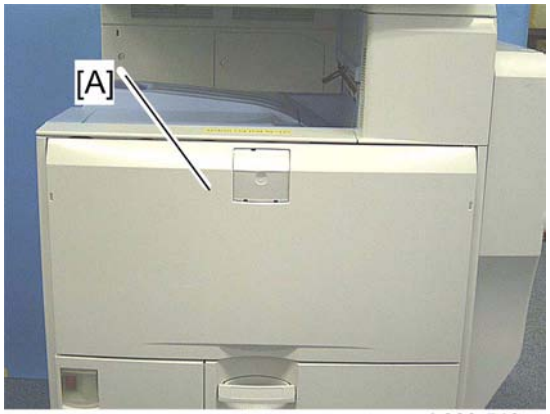
1. Do ACC for the printer mode.
2. Turn the main power off and on.
3. Enter SP mode.
4. Select “Printer SP”.
5. Select SP1-102-001. Then select the necessary print mode to adjust.
6. Choose SP1-103-1 to print out a tone control test sheet if you want to examine the image quality for these settings.
7. Adjust the color density with SP1-104. Compare the tone control test sheet with the C4 test chart.

   Note

   - Adjust the density in this order: “ID Max”, “Shadow”, “Middle”, “Highlight”.
8. Use SP1-105-001 to keep the adjusted settings.

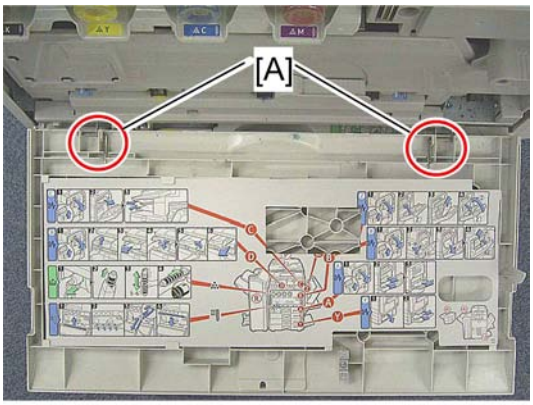
4.4 EXTERIOR COVERS

4.4.1 FRONT DOOR



b222r512

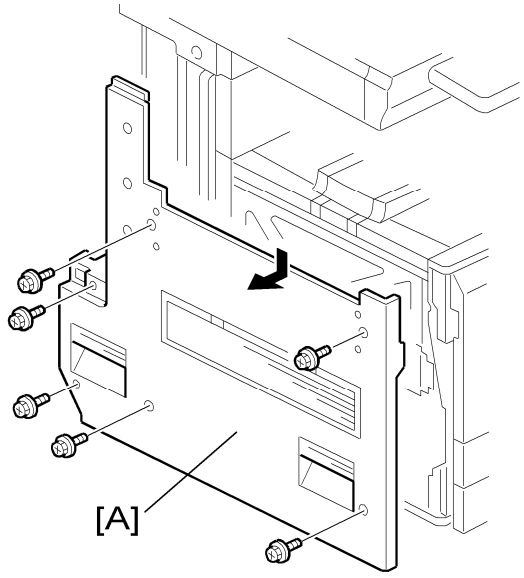
1. Open the front door [A].



d027r513

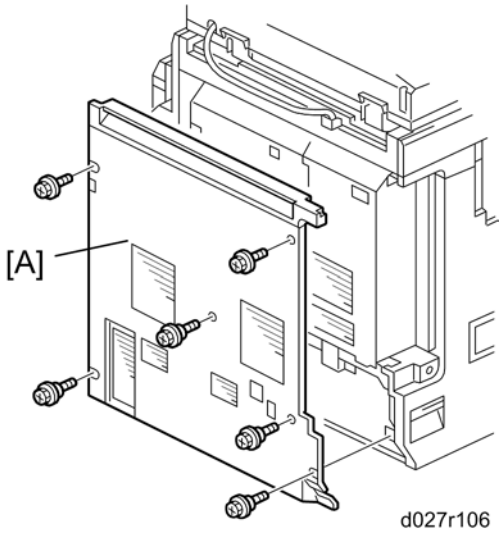
2. Remove the two pins [A], and then remove the front cover.

4.4.2 LEFT COVER



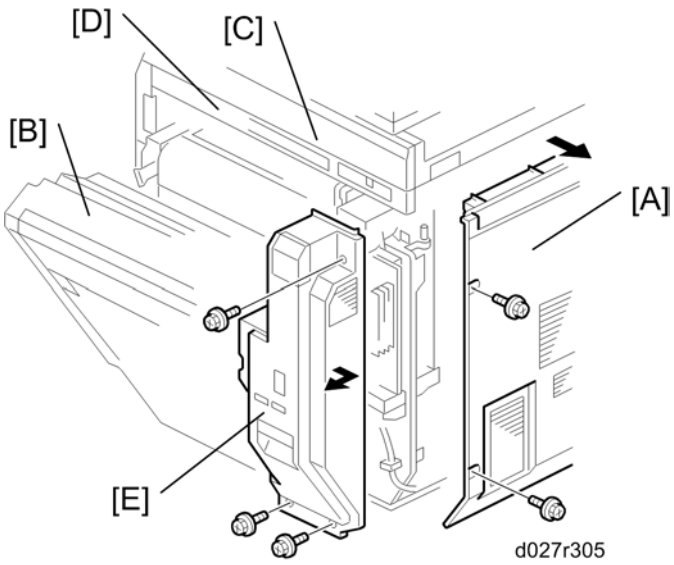
1. Left cover [A] (🔩 x 6)

4.4.3 REAR COVER



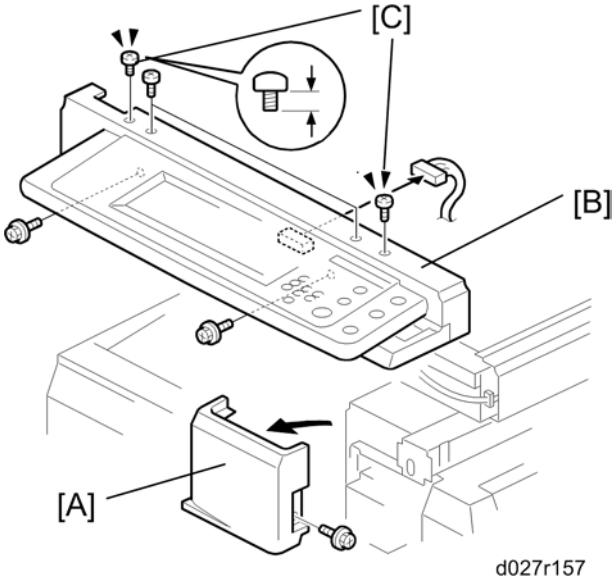
1. Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6)

4.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER



1. Rear cover [A] (x 6)
2. Open the right door [B].
3. Scanner right cover [C] (x 2)
4. Right top cover [D] (x 1)
5. Right rear cover [E] (x 3)

4.4.5 OPERATION PANEL



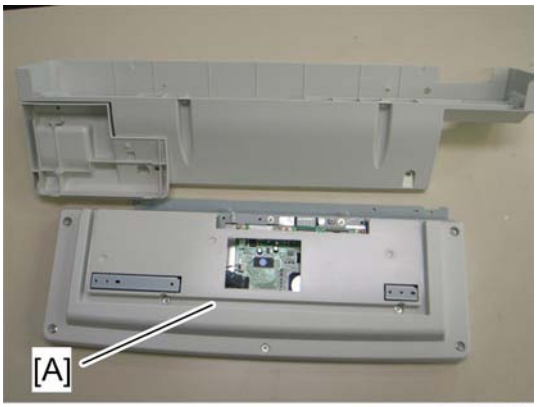
1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover [A] (x 1)
3. Operation panel with the scanner front cover [B] (x 5, x 1, x 1)

Note

- The two screws [C] are shorter than the other screws installed in the inner two screw holes. Make sure that the two screws [C] are installed in the outer screw holes in the scanner front cover.

d027r514

4. Scanner front cover [A] (🔩 x 2)

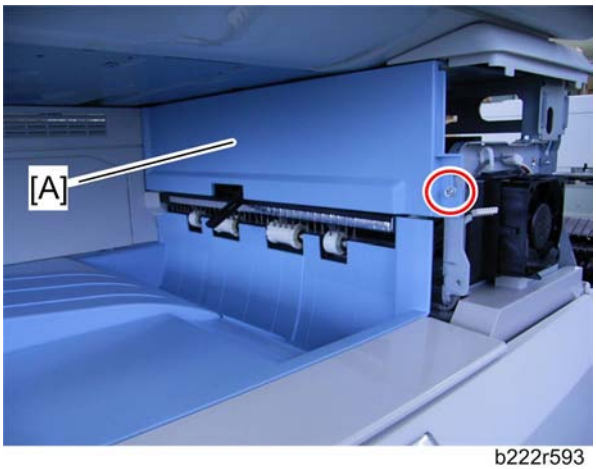


d027r515

5. Operation panel [A]

4.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER

1. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")

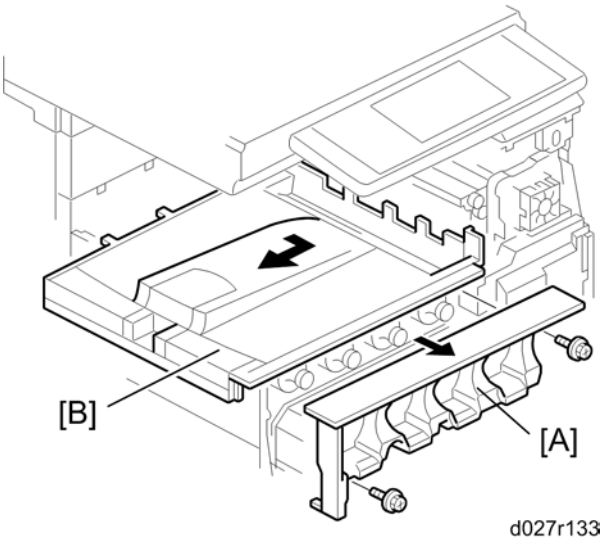


b222r593

2. Paper exit cover [A] (🔩 x 1)

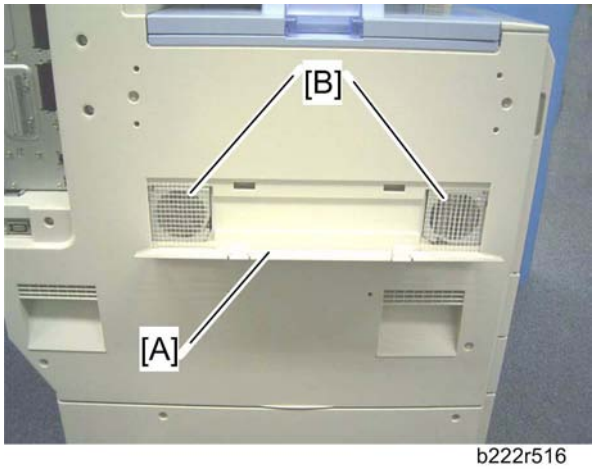
4.4.7 INNER TRAY

1. Remove the image transfer belt unit.
2. Paper exit cover (☛ p.4-21 "Paper Exit Cover")
3. Left cover (☛ p.4-19 "Left Cover")



4. Toner cartridge cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
5. Inner tray [B]

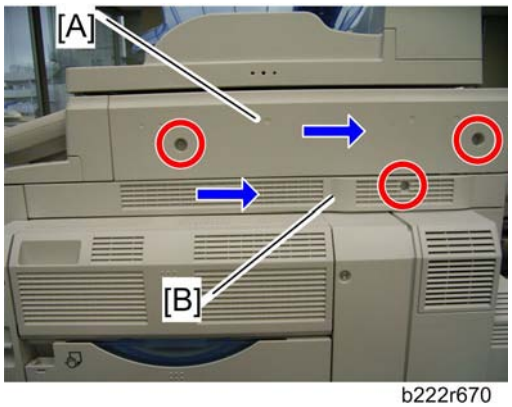
4.4.8 DUST FILTER



1. Dust filter cover [A]
2. Two dust filters [B]

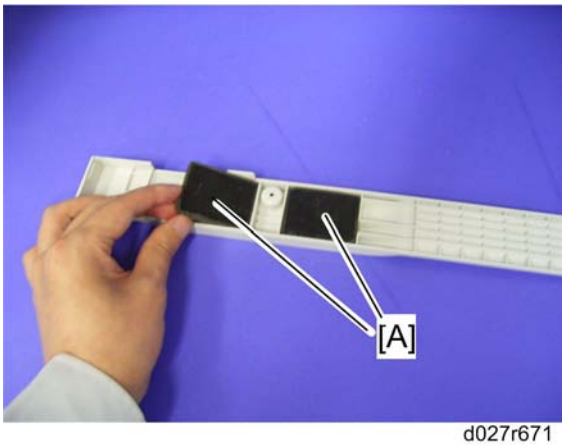
4.4.9 OZONE FILTER

Ozone filters for the scanner unit



b222r670

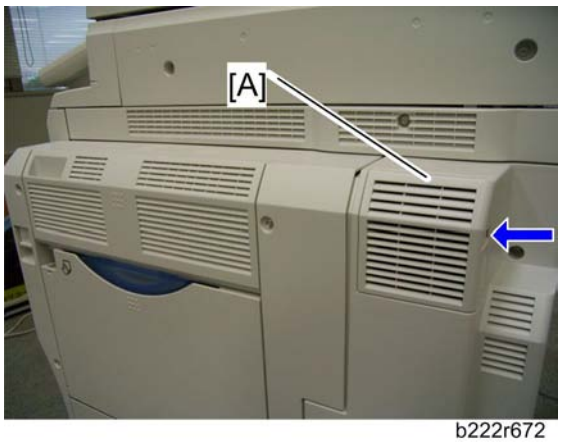
1. Scanner right cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
2. Right top cover [B] (🔩 x 1)



d027r671

3. Ozone filters [A] in the right top cover.

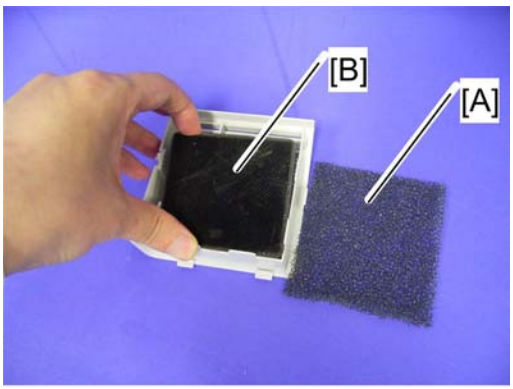
Ozone filter for the IH inverter



b222r672

Exterior Covers

1. IH inverter fan cover [A] (hook)

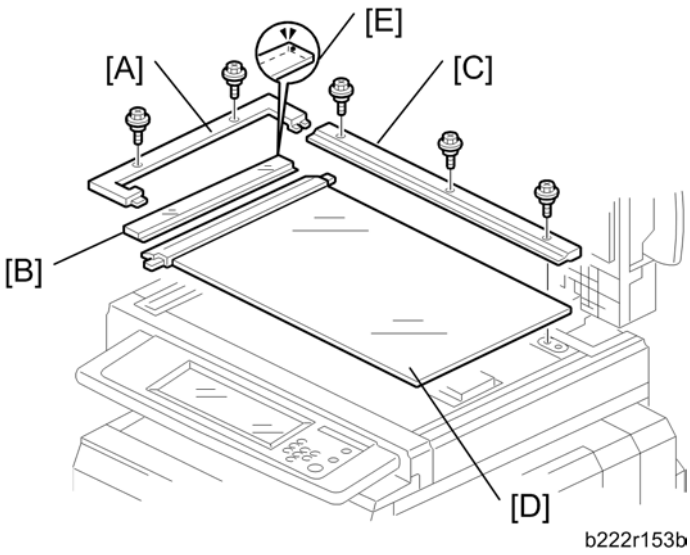


d027r673

2. Filter [A]
3. Ozone filter [B]

4.5 SCANNER UNIT

4.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS



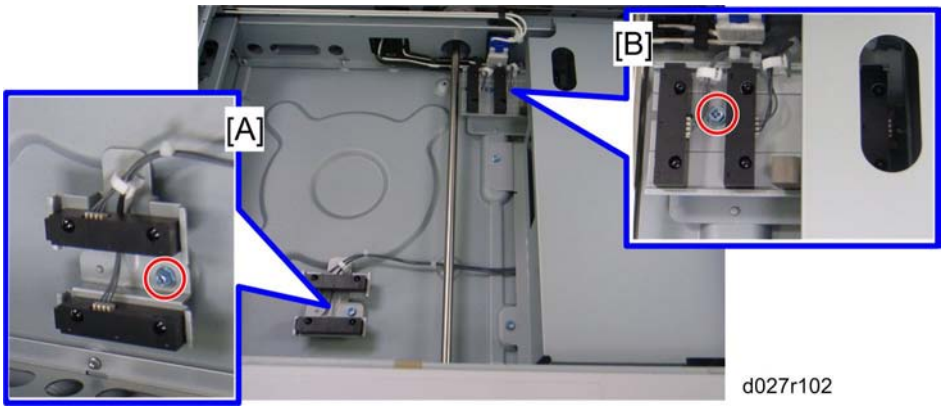
1. Glass cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
2. ARDF exposure glass [B]
3. Rear scale [C] (🔩 x 3)
4. Exposure glass with left scale [D]

Note

- Position the white marker [E] at the rear-left corner and the black or blue marker at the front-left corner when you reattach the ARDF exposure glass.

4.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS

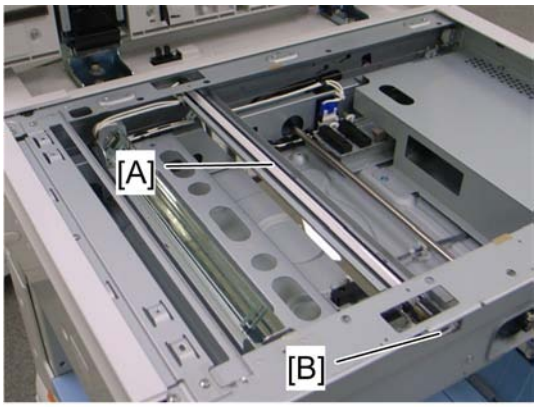
1. Exposure glass with left scale (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")



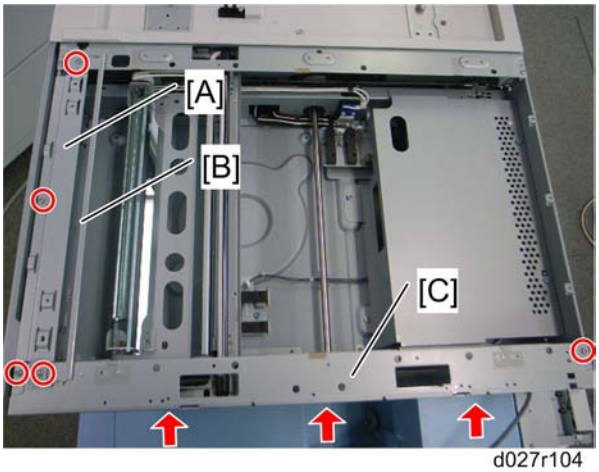
2. Original width sensors [A] (x 1, x 2, x 1)
3. Original length sensors [B] (x 1, x 3, x 2)

4.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP

1. Operation panel with scanner front cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
2. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")

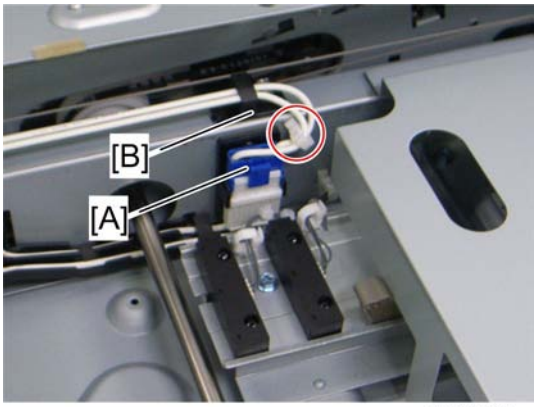


3. Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the cutout [B] in the front frame.



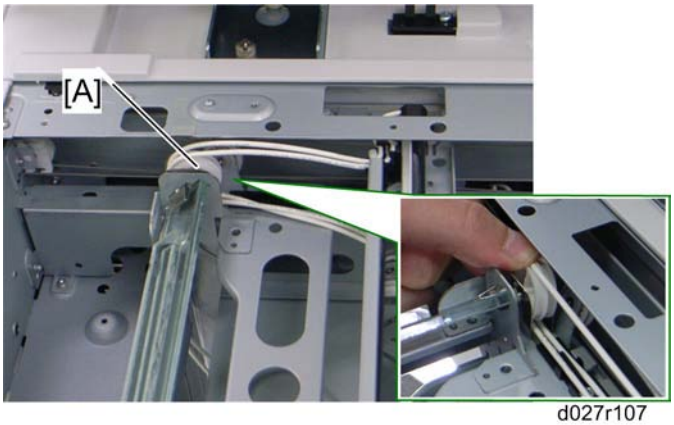
d027r104

4. Scanner left stays [A] and [B] (x 3)
5. Scanner front frame [C] (x 5)



d027r105

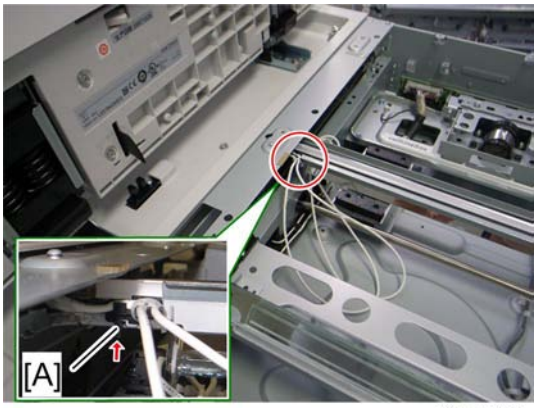
6. Disconnect the connector [A] (x 1, x 1).
7. Remove the clamp bracket [B] (x 1).



d027r107

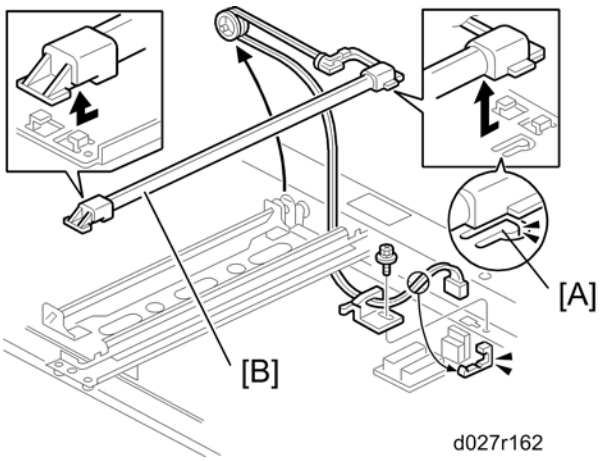
8. Remove the pulley [A].

Scanner Unit



d027r108

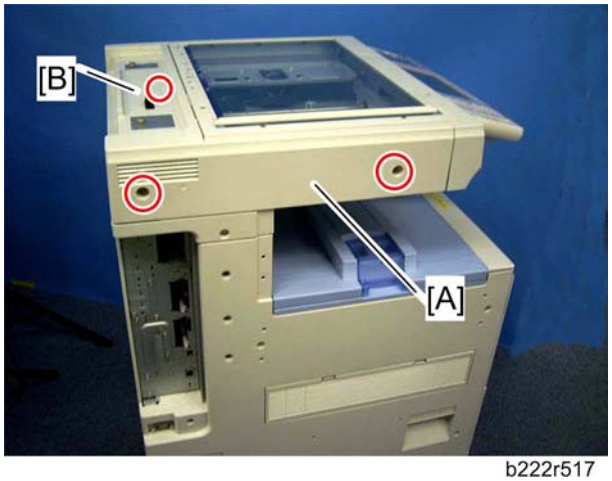
9. Remove the plastic bracket [A] (hook).



d027r162

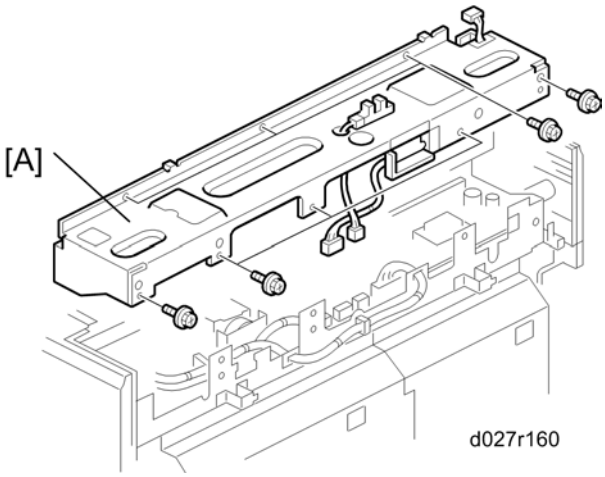
10. Hold down the snap [A], and then slide the exposure lamp [B] to the front side.
11. Exposure lamp [B]

4.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR



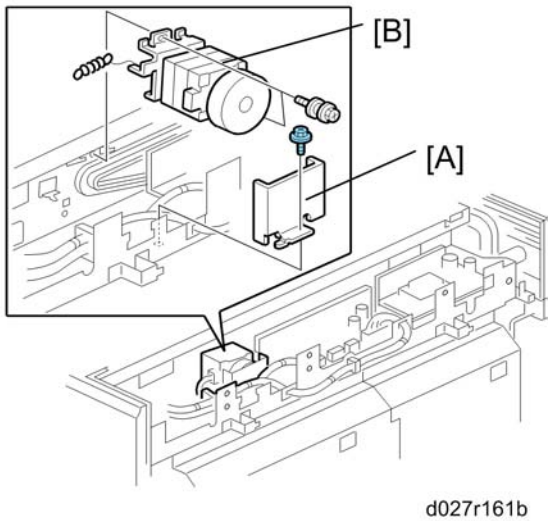
b222r517

1. Scanner left cover [A] (x 2)
2. Scanner rear cover [B] (x 1)



d027r160

3. Scanner rear frame [A] (x 8, x 3, x 1)



d027r161b

Scanner Unit

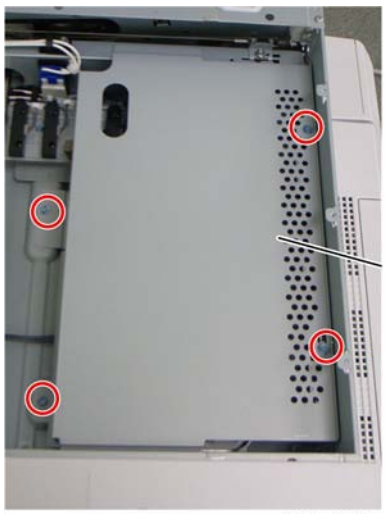
4. Scanner motor bracket [A] (x 1)
5. Scanner motor [B] (x 2, x 1, spring x 1, belt x 1)

Note

- After replacing the scanner motor, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

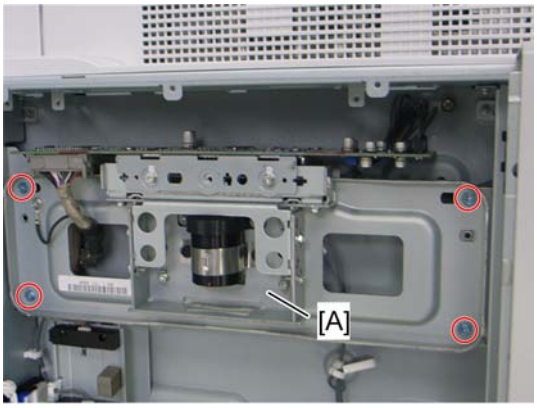
4.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU)

1. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")
2. Scanner right cover (🔩 x 2)



d027r109

3. SBU cover bracket [A] (🔩 x 4)



d027r110

4. Sensor board unit [A] (🔩 x 4, 🔌 x 2, ground cable x 1)

When reassembling

Adjust the following SP modes after you replace the sensor board unit:

- SP4–008 (Sub Scan Mag): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–010 (Sub Mag Reg.): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–011 (Main Scan Reg): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–688 (DF: Density Adjustment): Use this to adjust the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.

4.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER

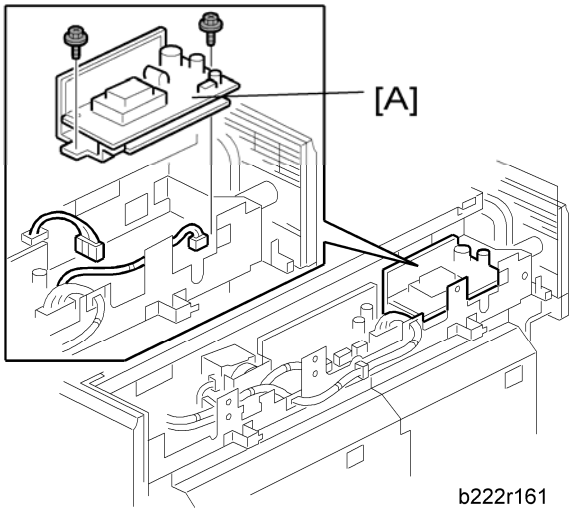
1. Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "

Scanner Motor")

2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "

Scanner Unit

Scanner Motor")



3. Exposure lamp stabilizer [A] (x 2, x 2)

4.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD

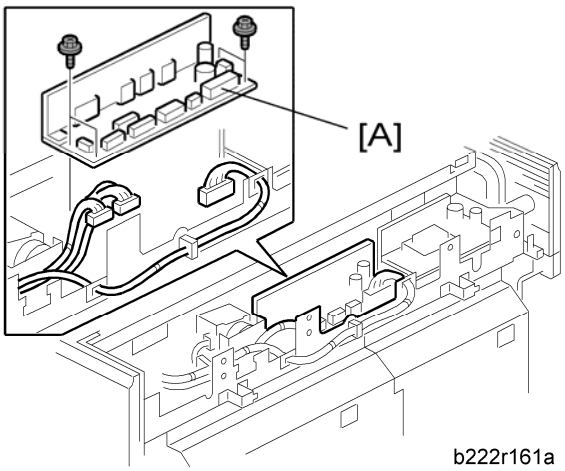
1. Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "

Scanner Motor")

2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "

Scanner Unit

Scanner Motor")



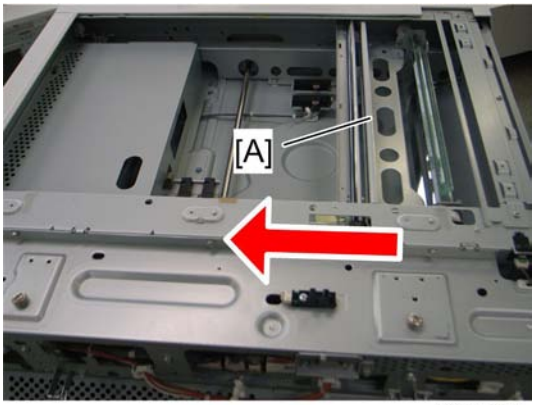
3. SIO board with bracket [A] (🔩 x 4, All ✋s)

4.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR

1. Scanner left cover and Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "

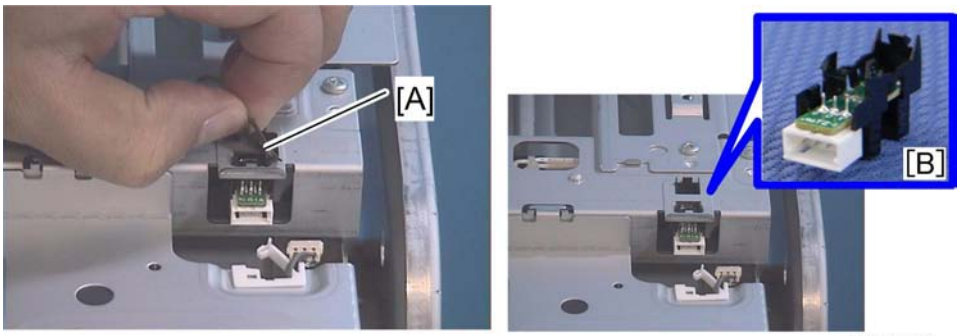
Scanner Motor")

2. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")



d027r111

3. Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the right side.



d027r524

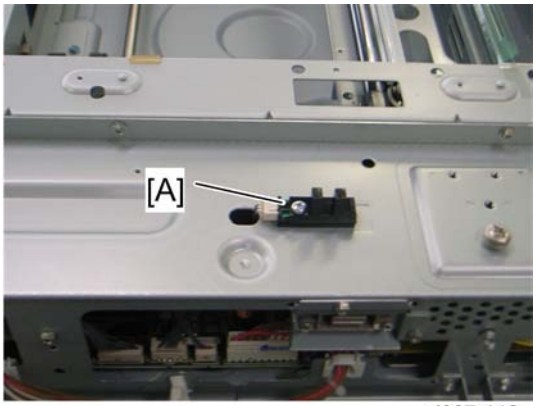
4. Remove the mylar [A]
5. Remove the scanner HP sensor [B] (☞ x 1, three snaps)

4.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR

1. Scanner left cover and Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "

Scanner Unit

Scanner Motor")

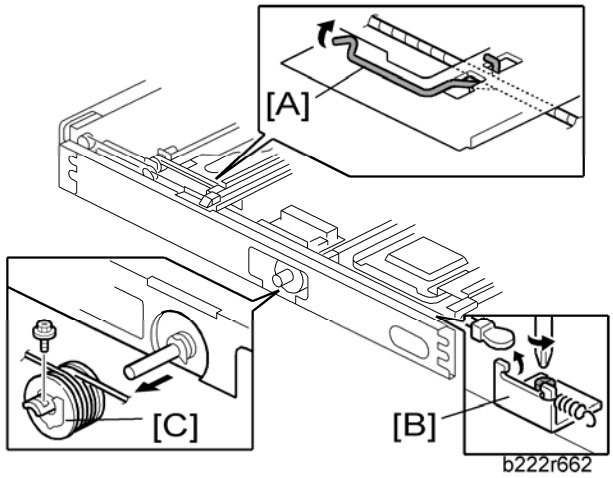


d027r112

2. Platen cover sensor [A] (x 1, x 1)

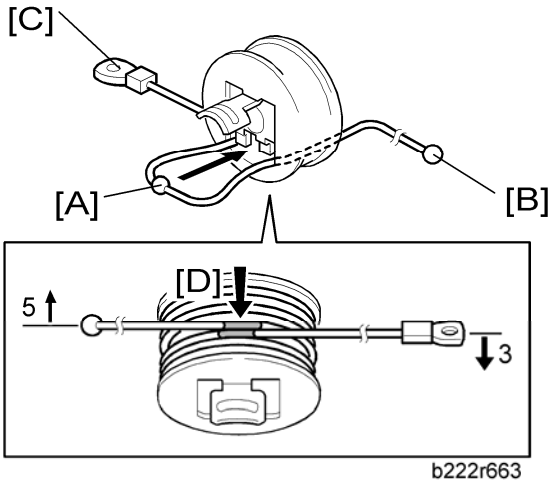
4.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE

1. Operation panel with the scanner front cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
2. Front frame (☛ p.4-26 "Exposure Lamp")
3. To make reassembly easy, slide the 1st scanner carriage to the right.



4. Front scanner wire clamp [A]
5. Front scanner wire bracket [B] (☞ x 1)
6. Front scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [C] (☞ x 1)

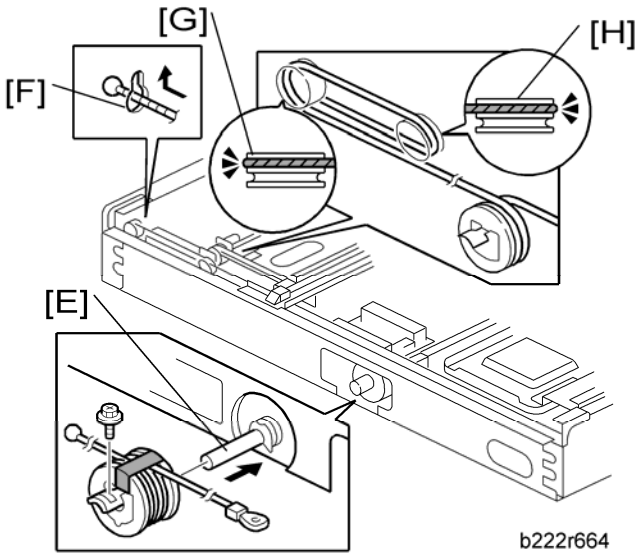
Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire



1. Position the center ball [A] in the middle of the forked holder.
2. Pass the right end (with the ball) [B] through the square hole. Pass the left end (with the ring) [C] through the notch.
3. Wind the right end counterclockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times. Wind the left end clockwise twice.

Note

- The two red marks [D] come together when you have done this. Stick the wire to the pulley with tape. This lets you easily handle the assembly at the time of installation.

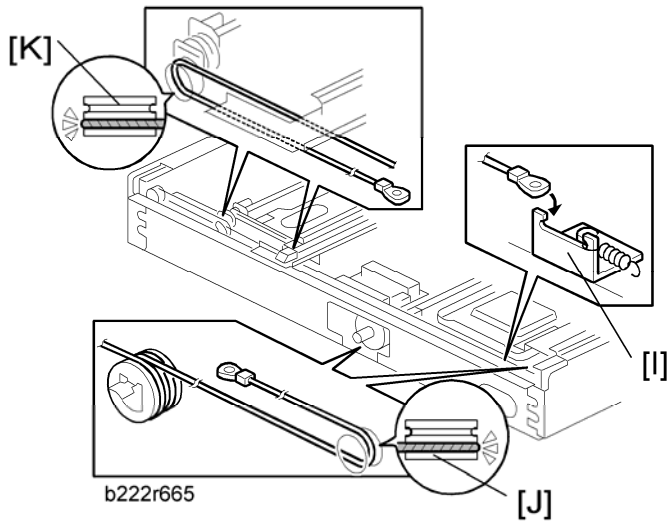


4. Install the drive pulley on the shaft [E].

Note

- Do not attach the pulley to the shaft with the screw at this time.

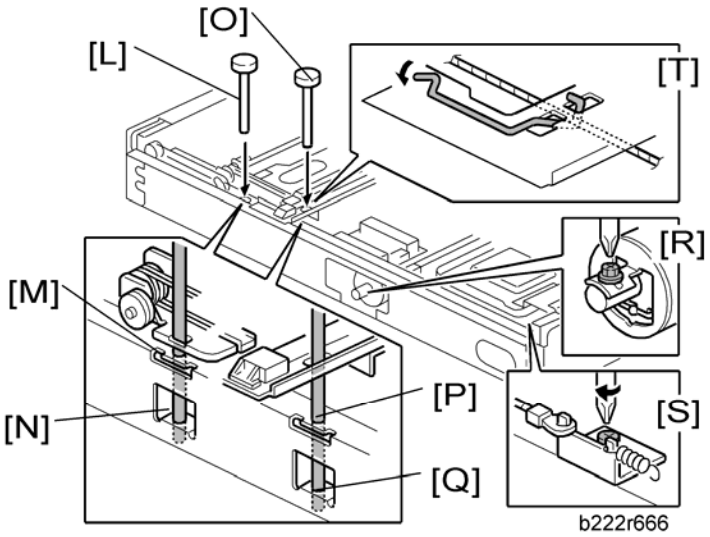
5. Insert the left end into the slit [F]. The end should go via the rear track of the left pulley [G] and the rear track of the movable pulley [H].



6. Hook the right end onto the front scanner wire bracket [I]. The end should go via the front track of the right pulley [J] and the front track of the movable pulley [K].

Note

- Do not attach the scanner wire bracket with the screw at this time.



7. Remove the tape from the drive pulley.
8. Insert a scanner-positioning pin [L] through the 2nd carriage hole [M] and the left holes [N] in the front rail. Insert another scanner positioning pin [O] through the 1st carriage hole [P] and the right holes in the front rail [Q].
9. Insert two more scanner positioning pins through the holes in the rear rail.
10. Screw the drive pulley to the shaft [R].
11. Screw the scanner wire bracket to the front rail [S].
12. Install the scanner wire clamp [T].
13. Pull out the positioning pins.

Note

- Make sure the 1st and 2nd carriages move smoothly after you remove the positioning pins. Do steps 8 through 13 again if they do not.
- After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

4.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE

1. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")
2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "

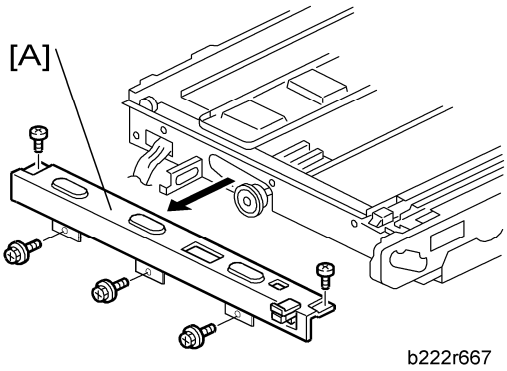
Scanner Motor")

3. Scanner motor (☛ p.4-29 "

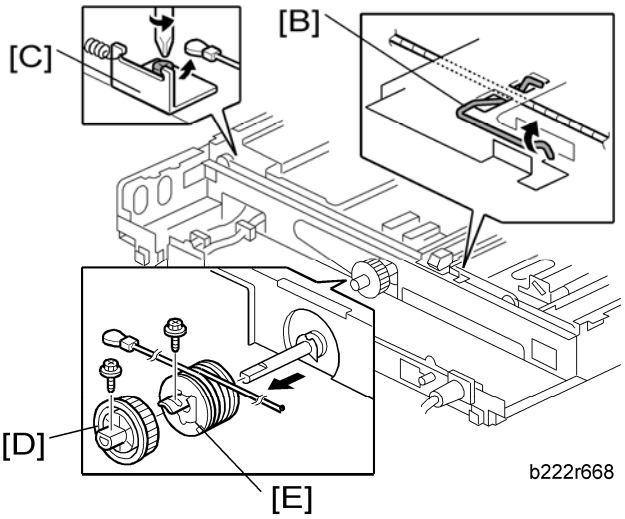
Scanner Unit

Scanner Motor")

4. IOB with bracket (☛ p.4-190)

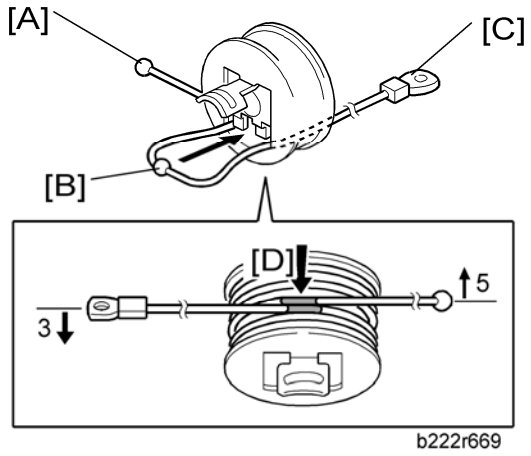


5. Rear rail frame [A] (☞ x 5)



6. To make reassembly easy, slide the first scanner to the center.
7. Rear scanner wire clamp [B]
8. Rear scanner wire bracket [C] (☞ x 1)
9. Scanner motor gear [D] (☞ x 1)
10. Rear scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [E] (☞ x 1)

Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire



1. Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the forked holder.
2. Pass the end with the ball [A] through the right square hole from the front.
3. Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the notch, as shown by the arrow.
4. Pass the ball end [A] through the drive pulley notch.
5. Wind the end with the ring [C] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) three times; wind the ball end [A] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times.

   Note

   - The two red marks [D] should meet when you have done this.
6. Stick the wire to the pulley with tape, so you can easily handle the pulley and wire during installation.
7. Install the drive pulley on the shaft.

   Note

   - Do not screw the pulley onto the shaft yet.
8. Install the wire.

   Note

   - The winding of the wire on the three pulleys at the rear of the scanner should be the same as the winding on the three pulleys at the front. This must show as a mirror image. Example: At the front of the machine, the side of the drive pulley with the three windings must face the front of the machine. At the rear of the machine, it must face the rear.
9. Perform steps 8 through 13 in "Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire".

   Note

   - After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

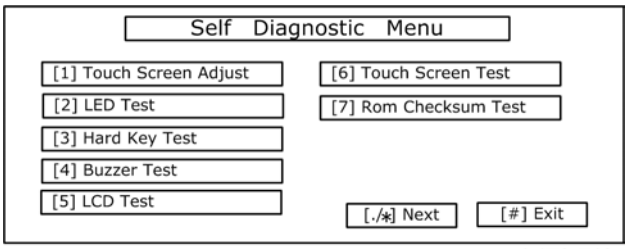
4.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Note

- It is necessary to calibrate touch panel at the following times:
- When you replace the operation panel.
- When you replace the controller board.
- When the touch panel detection function does not operate correctly.

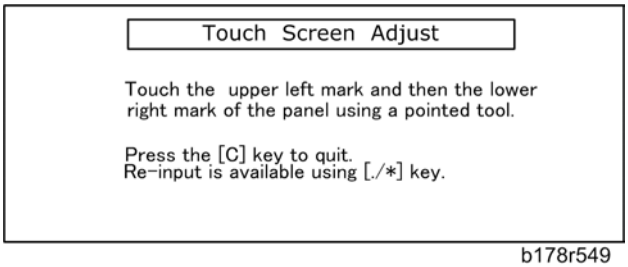
Do not use items [2] to [9] on the Self-Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.

1. Press [ ], press 1 9 9 3, press C/E 5 times to open the Self-Diagnostics menu.



b178r548

2. On the touch screen press “Touch Screen Adjust” (or press 1).
3. Use a pointed (not sharp) tool to press the upper left mark ↖.



b178r549

4. Press the lower right mark when “↘” shows.
5. Press [#] OK on the screen (or press #) when you are finished.
6. Touch [#] Exit on the screen to close the Self-Diagnostic menu. Save the calibration settings.

4.6 LASER OPTICS

⚠WARNING

- Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can cause serious eye injury.

4.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION

Caution decals are placed as shown below.

d027r113

⚠WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the main switch and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet before beginning any disassembly or adjustment of the laser unit. This copier uses a class IIIb laser beam with a wavelength of 655 nm and an output of 7 mW. The laser can cause serious eye injury.

4.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT

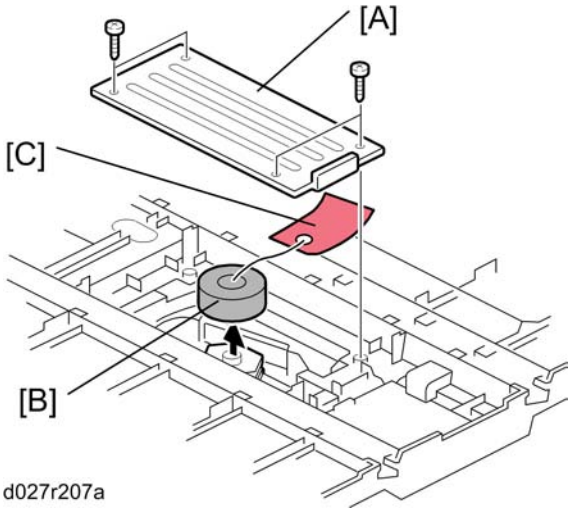
⚠CAUTION

- Before installing a new laser optics housing unit, remove the sponge padding and the tag from the new unit.

Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).
- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

Preparing the new laser optics housing unit



1. Polygon motor cover [A] of the laser optics housing unit (🖉 x 4)
2. Sponge padding [B]
3. Tag [C]
4. Reinstall the polygon motor cover [A].

Before removing the old laser optics housing unit

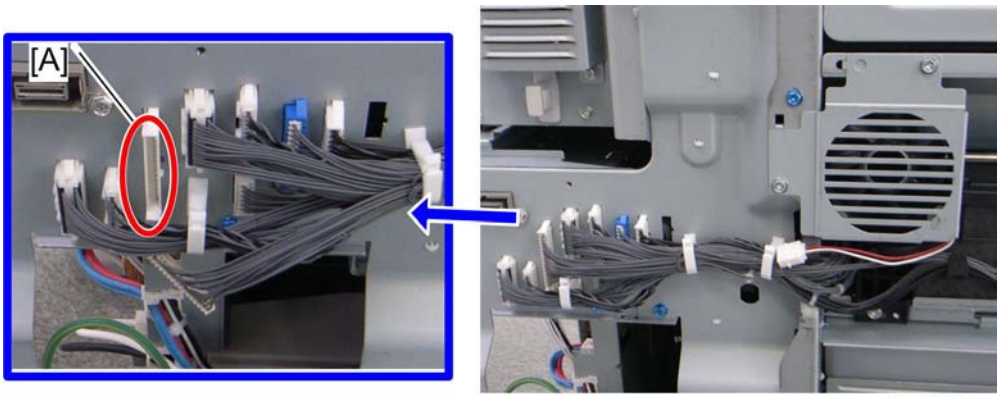
Do the following settings before removing the laser optics housing unit. These are adjustments for skew adjustment motors in the laser optics housing unit.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Execute SP9511-001 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Magenta.
4. Execute SP9511-002 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Cyan.
5. Execute SP9511-003 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Yellow.
6. Exit the SP mode.
7. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.

Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit

If you did not do the procedure in ‘Before removing the old laser optics housing’ before removing the old laser optics housing unit, you must do the following.

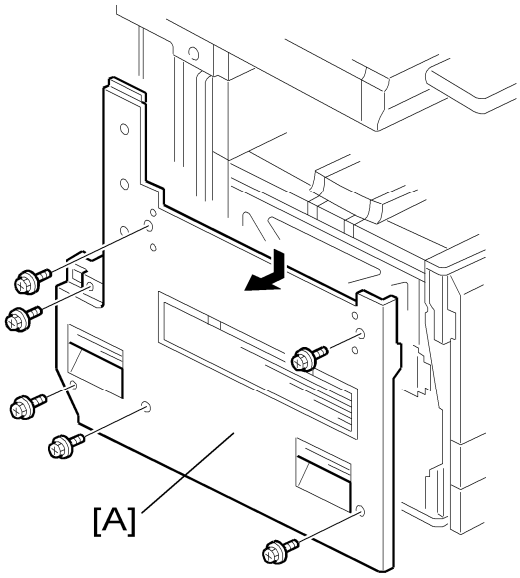
1. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.
2. Remove the left cover and harness cover bracket (see the following "Removing the old laser optics housing unit")



d027r610

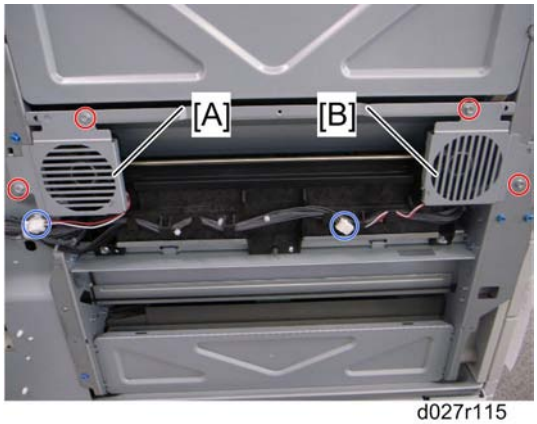
3. Disconnect the harness [A] of the skew correction motor.
4. Do steps 1 to 7 of "Before removing the old laser optics housing unit".
5. Connect the harness [A] and reinstall the harness bracket and left cover.
6. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.

Removing the old laser optics housing unit



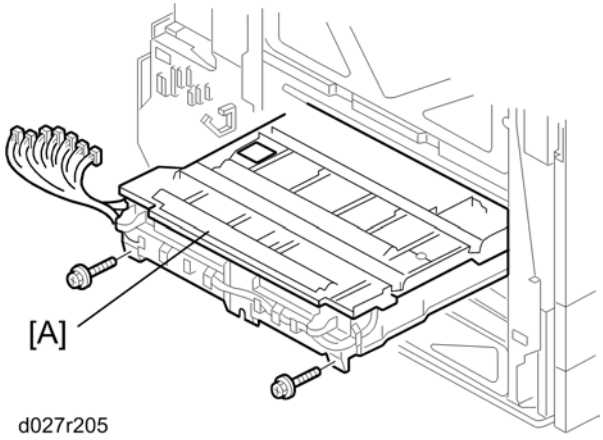
1. Left cover [A] (☞ x 6)

Laser Optics



d027r115

2. Rear fan bracket [A] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)
3. Front fan bracket [B] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)



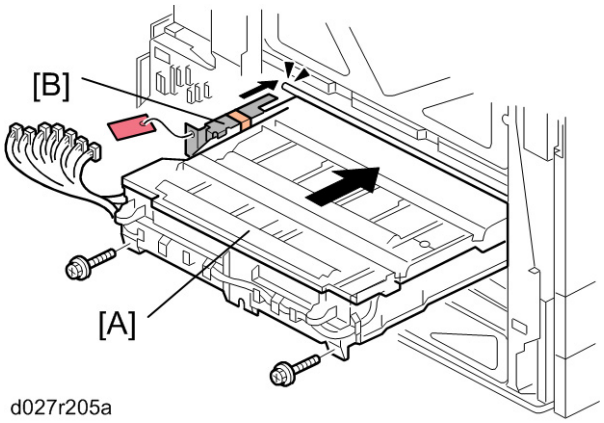
d027r205

4. Remove the old laser optics housing unit [A] (x 2, All 's, x 3)

Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit

Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).
- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

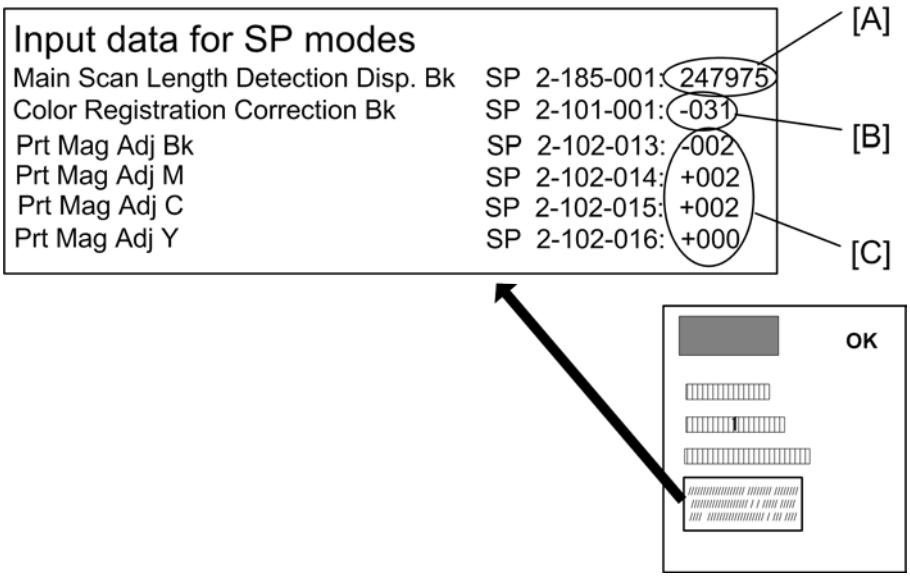


1. Push the new laser optics housing unit [A] slowly into the copier until the bracket [B] bumps against the frame of the copier.
2. Remove the bracket [B], and then push the new laser optics housing unit fully into the copier (🔩 x 2, All 🤜's, 🖨 x 3).
3. Reassemble the machine.

After installing the new laser optics housing unit

Do the following adjustment after installing the new laser optics housing unit.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.



2. Adjust the main scan magnification for K, M, C, Y.
   - Input the standard values [C] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan magnification adjustment with SP2-102-013, 014, 015, 016.

   Note

   - The values [C] are different for each laser optics housing unit.
3. Adjust the main scan magnification only for black (K).

Laser Optics

- Input the standard value [A] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan magnification adjustment with SP2-185-001.

  Note

  - The value [A] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
- Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
- Check that the left and right trim margin is within 4 ± 1 mm. If not, change the standard value for the main scan magnification adjustment.

4. Adjust the main scan registration only for black (K).
   - Input the registration value [B] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan registration adjustment with SP2101-001.

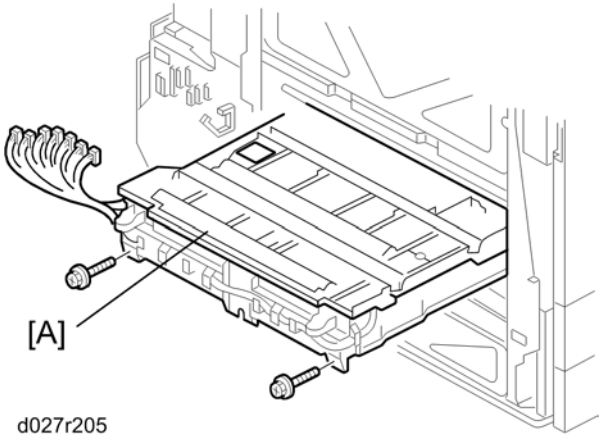
     Note

     - The value [B] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
   - Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
   - Check that the left trim margin is within 2 ± 1 mm. If not, change the registration value for the main scan registration adjustment.
5. Select "0" with SP2-109-003 after printing the "1-dot trimming pattern.
6. Do the line position adjustment.
   - First do SP2-111-3.
   - Then do SP2-111-1.

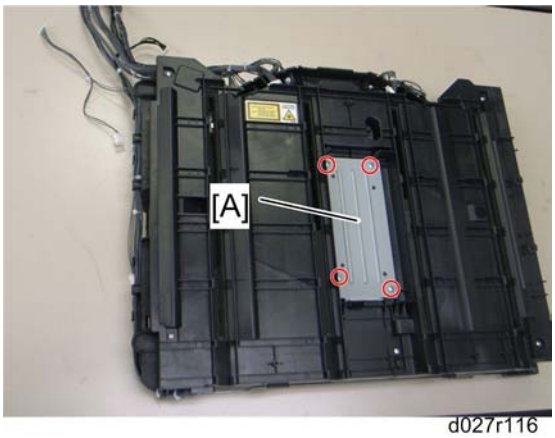
     To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
7. Exit the SP mode.

After you replace the housing unit, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.

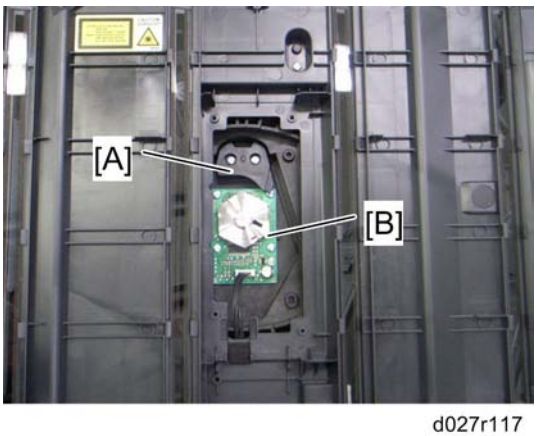
4.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD



1. Laser optics housing unit [A] (☛ p.4-49 "Laser Optics Housing Unit")



2. Polygon mirror motor cover [A] of the laser optics housing unit (🔩 x 4)



3. Polygon mirror motor holder [A] (🔩 x 2)
4. Polygon mirror motor [B] (🔩 x 4, 🖐 x 1)

After installing the polygon mirror motor:

- 1) Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
- 2) Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).

To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.

After you replace the motor, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.

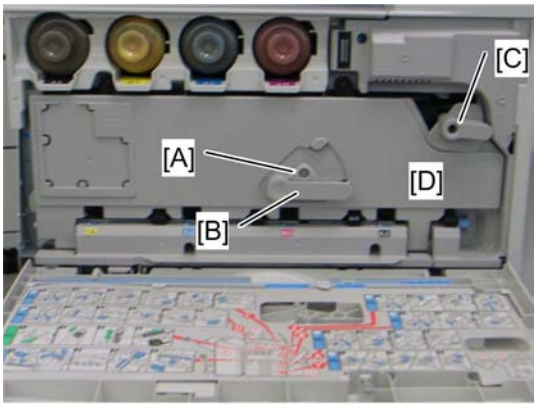
4.7 IMAGE CREATION

4.7.1 PCU

Note

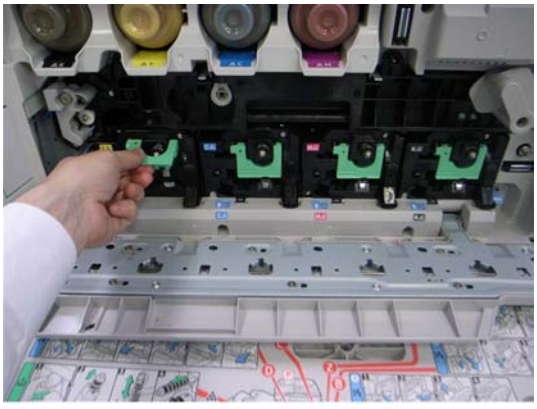
- Do not touch the OPC drum. Do not let metal objects touch the development sleeve.

1. Open the front door.



d027r118

2. Lever lock [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Turn the drum positioning plate lever [B] and the image transfer unit lock lever [C] counter-clockwise.
4. Open the drum positioning plate [D].



d027r119

5. Pull out the PCU (hold the grip while you pull it out).

4.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT

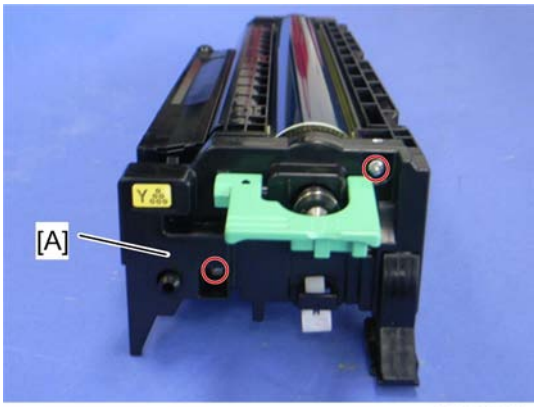
The new drum unit has a front cover and a front joint. When you attach the new drum unit to the development unit, remove a front cover and a front joint at first.

And use them for reassembling the new drum unit and development unit.

1. If you install a new drum unit, set SP 3902-xxx to "1".
   - Black: 3902-009
   - Yellow: 3902-010
   - Cyan: 3902-011
   - Magenta: 3902-012

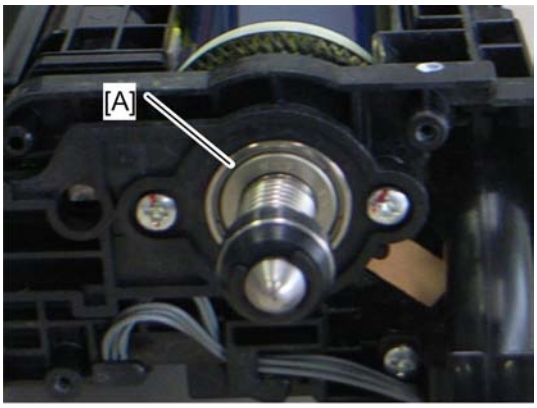
   Note

   - If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the drum unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
2. Turn the machine power off.
3. PCU (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")



d027r120

4. Front cover [A] (🔩 x 2)

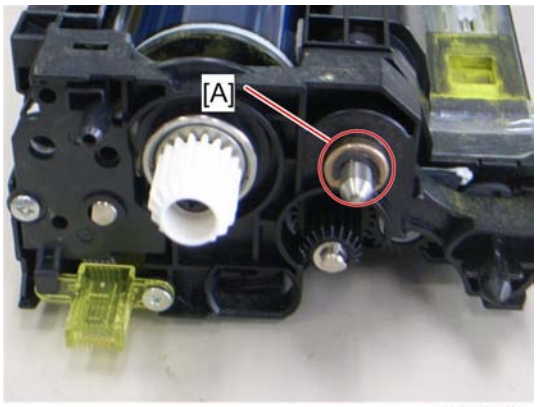


d027r121

Note

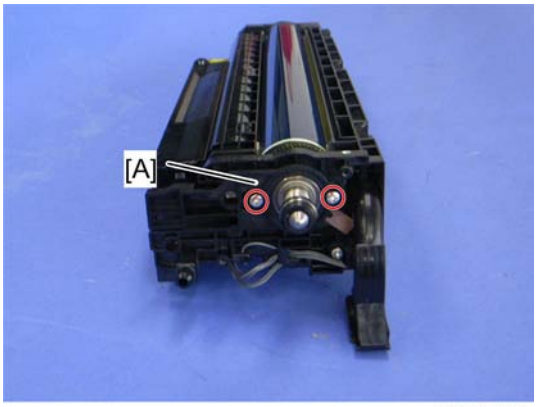
- Do not touch the bearing [A] after removing the front cover. The bearing is

properly applied with lubricant.



d027r122

5. Remove the bushing [A] of the development roller at the rear of the PCU (ℂ x 1).

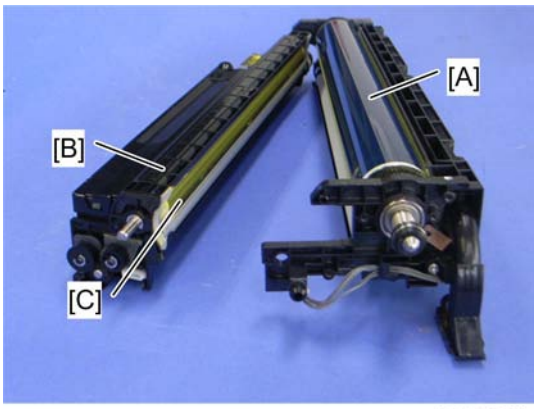


d027r123

6. Remove the front joint [A] (🖉 x 2, 🖑 x 1).

Note

- The front joint [A] is firmly set. Remove it with a flat screwdriver.

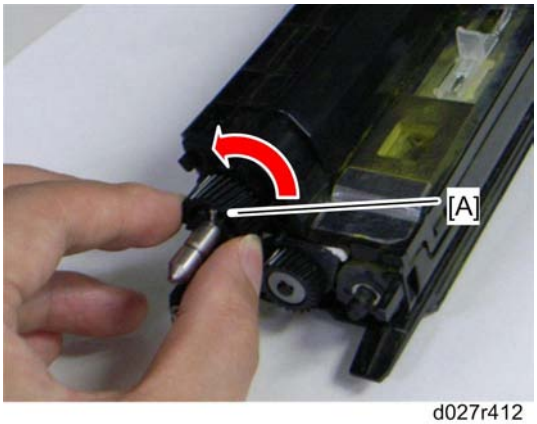


d027r124

7. Drum unit [A] and Development Unit [B]

Note

- When the development unit is removed from the drum unit, clean the entrance mylar [C] with a vacuum.



d027r412

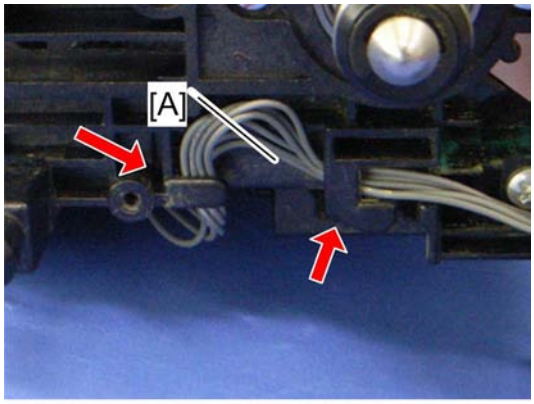
8. Rotate the development roller [A] five or six times in the counterclockwise direction.

Note

- This step removes developer that has stuck to the development roller, which would cause color unevenness.

9. If you change the development unit, do the ACC procedure.
10. Execute the drum phase adjustment with SP1902-001 twice.

When reassembling the PCU:



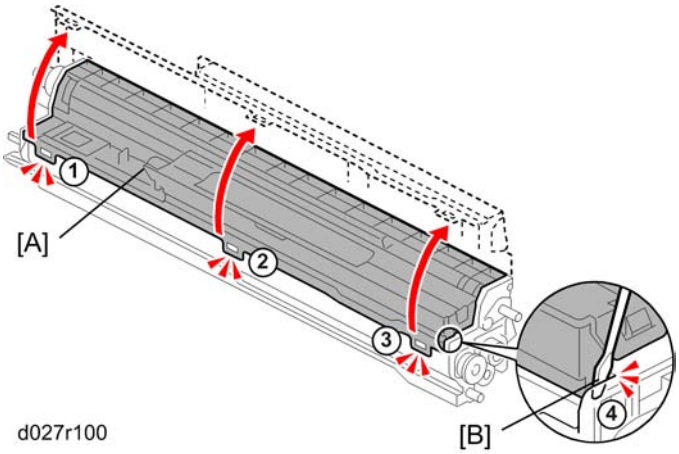
d027r681

- Make sure that the harness [A] is hooked as shown.

Developer

1. Set SP 3902-xxx to "1".
   Black: 3902-005
   Yellow: 3902-006
   Cyan: 3902-007
   Magenta: 3902-008
2. Turn the machine power off.
3. Development unit (☛ p.4-58 "

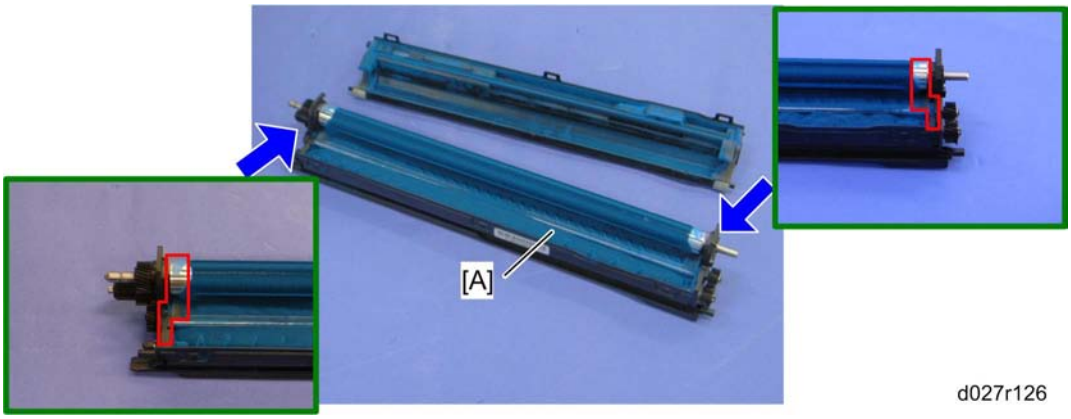
Drum Unit and Development Unit")



4. Hopper cover [A] (4 hooks)
   - Release the three hooks first in the correct order (from ① to ③).
   - Put the head of a screwdriver in the groove gap [B] as shown, and then release the hook ④.

CAUTION

   - Follow the correct order ① to ④. Otherwise, the hopper cover may be damaged. The hook ④ breaks easily.



5. Shake a bag of developer and pour it into the development hopper [A].
6. Reattach the hopper cover (hook x 3).

CAUTION

   - Keep the developer off at both ends of the development unit enclosed in red lines in the diagram.

7. Turn the machine power on. The machine initializes the developer and resets the PM counter for the developer. (For details of the developer initialization result, see "Developer Initialization Result" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" chapter.

Image Creation

8. Do the ACC procedure.

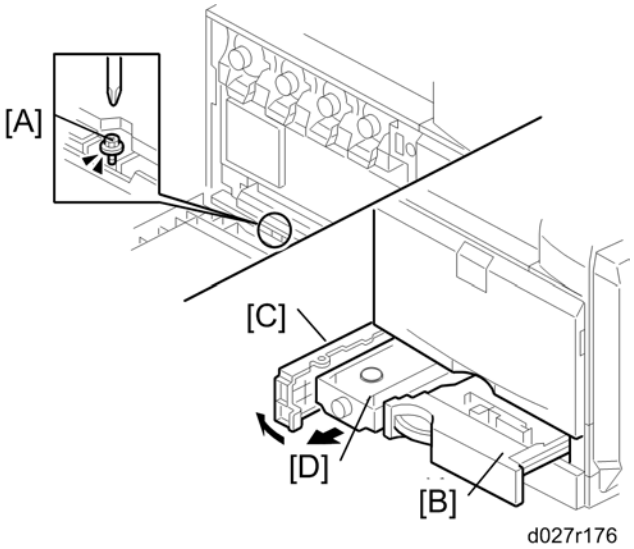
4.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE

If you will install a new bottle, and the old bottle is not in a full or near-full condition, then set SP 3902-017 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the bottle automatically, after you turn the power on again.
- If the bottle is in a full or near-full condition, it is not necessary to do this.

1. Turn off the main power switch.



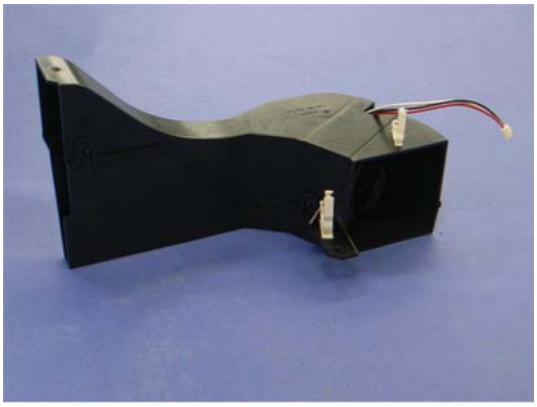
2. Open the front door and remove the screw [A].
3. Close the front door.
4. Pull out tray 1 [B].
5. Open the toner collection bottle door [C].
6. Pull out the toner collection bottle [D].

4.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")

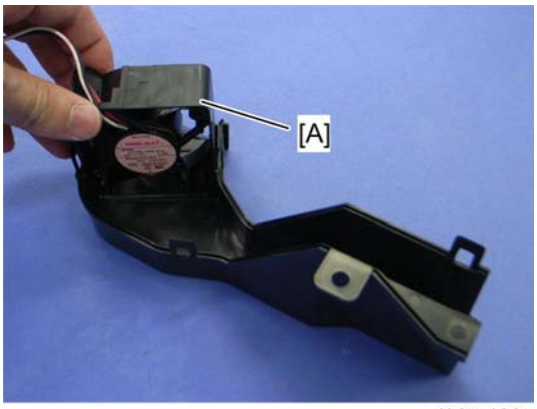
d027r127

4. Second duct [A] (x 2, x 1, x 2)



d027r128

5. Split the second duct (4 hooks).



d027r129

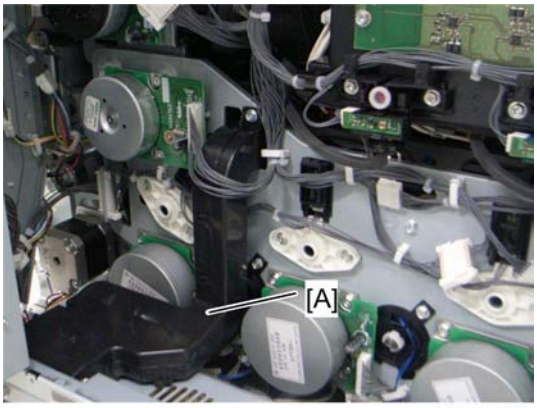
6. Second duct fan [A]

When reinstalling the second duct fan

Make sure that the second duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the front of the machine.

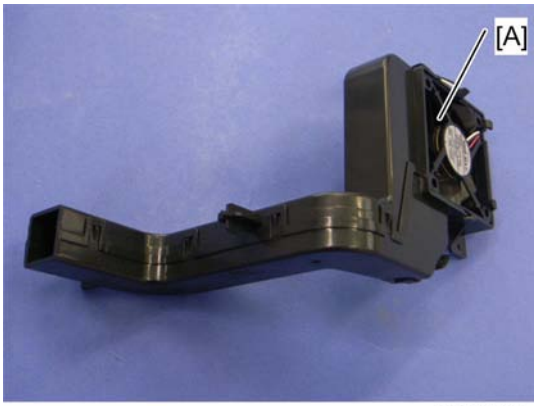
4.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



d027r130

4. Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)



d027r131

5. Third duct fan [A] (3 hooks)

When reinstalling the third duct fan

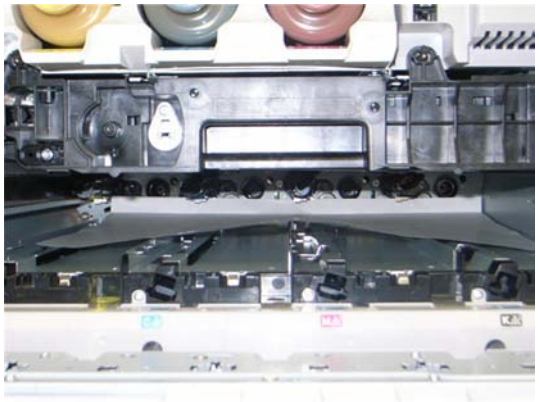
Make sure that the third duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the upper side of the machine.

4.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT

There are four pump units inside the machine. This procedure describes the replacement procedure only for one unit. If you need to replace another unit, do the same as this procedure.

Note

- Put some sheets of paper on the floor before doing this procedure. Toner may fall on the floor.

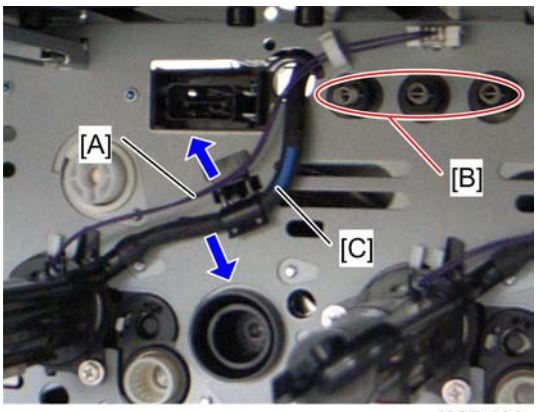


d027r132

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
3. All PCUs (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")
4. Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine as shown and on the floor.

Note

- The sheet of paper on the floor is used in a later step.



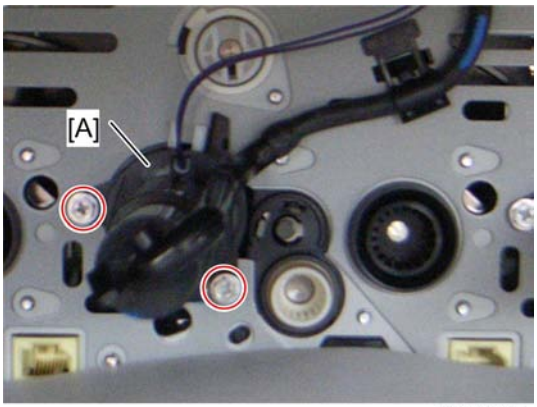
d027r134

5. Release the harness [A] from the clamp (x 1 for YCM, x 2 for K) and hook, and then disconnect the harness.

Note

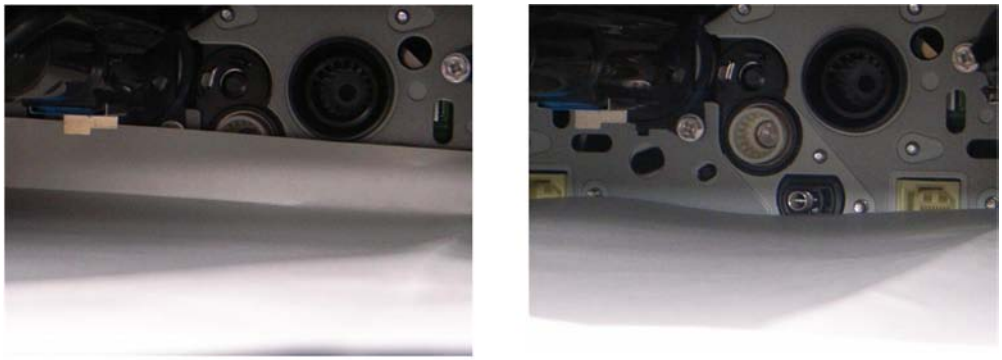
- Avoid touching these spring terminals [B].

6. Release the toner supply tube [C].



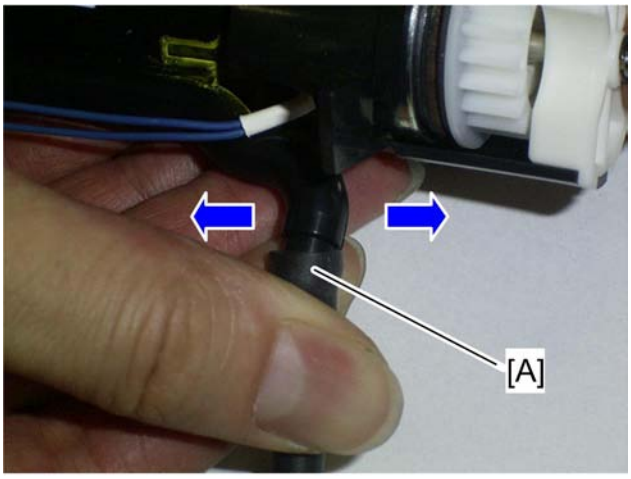
d027r135

7. Remove the toner pump unit [A] (🔩 x 2)



d027r136

- Make sure that a sheet of paper is attached to the frame of the rear side. The picture on the left shows a sheet of paper that is correctly set, but the picture on the right shows a sheet of paper that is not correctly set. This sheet of paper prevents toner and screws from falling into the laser optics housing unit through cutouts.

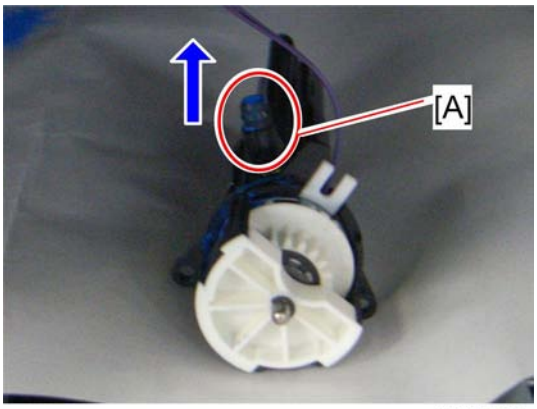


d027r705

8. Slowly remove the toner supply tube [A] from the toner pump unit by pulling the tube right and left.
9. Turn up the openings of the toner pump unit and toner supply tube just after removing the tube.

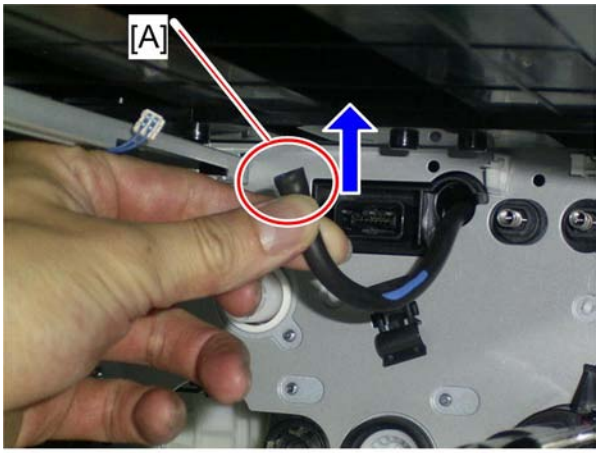
Note

- If not, the toner may scatter away and fall down.



d027r137

10. Put the toner pump unit on the sheet of paper, which has been put in step 4, with its opening [A] up.



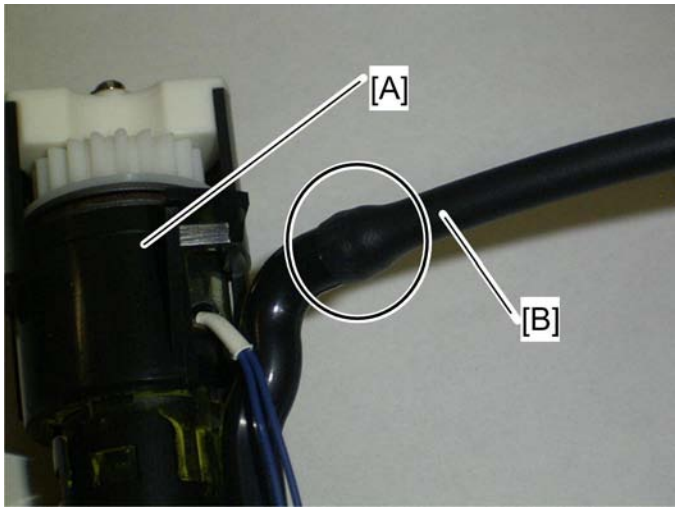
d027r707

11. Keep the opening [A] of the toner supply tube up, and then clip the opening of the toner supply.

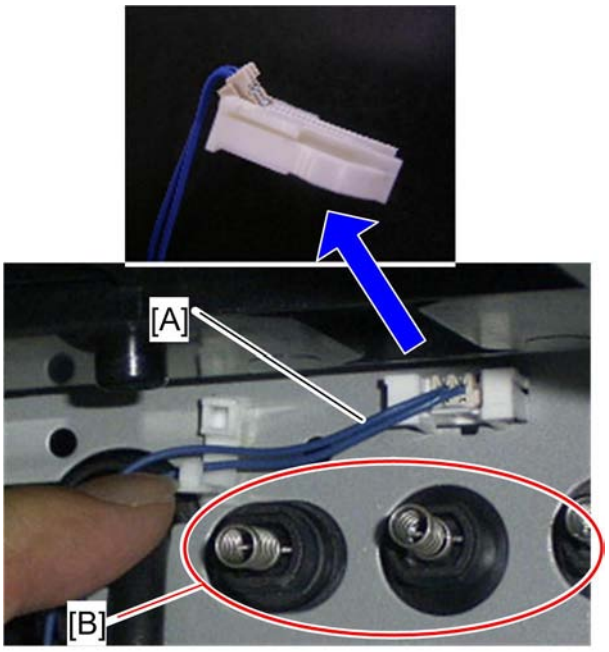
When you install the new toner pump unit

Before installing the new toner pump unit, mask the opening of the old toner pump unit with tape. Dispose of it following local rules.

Image Creation



1. Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine.
2. Turn up the opening of the toner supply tube, and then remove the object that was used to clip the opening of the toner supply tube.
3. Insert the opening of the toner pump unit [A] into the opening of the toner supply tube [B] as far as possible.



d027r709

4. Connect the harness [A] to the connector of the machine.

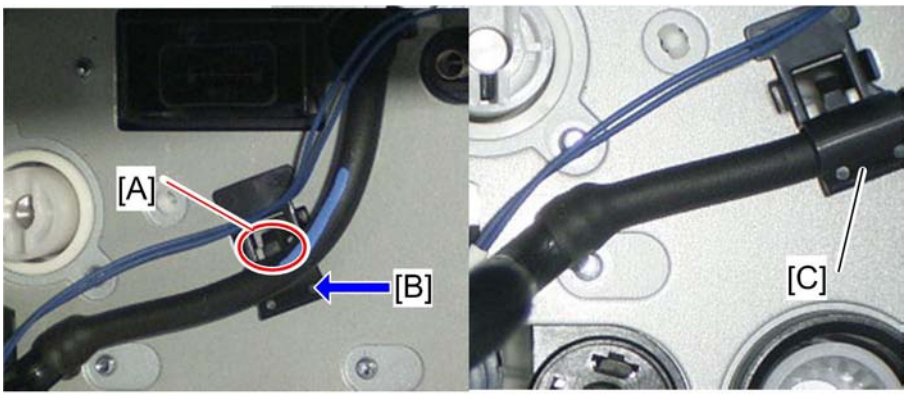
Note

- On the above picture, the magnified picture of the connector shows the easiest way to connect it.

5. Clamp the harness [A] (x 1 for YCM, x 2 for K).

Note

- Avoid touching these spring terminals [B].

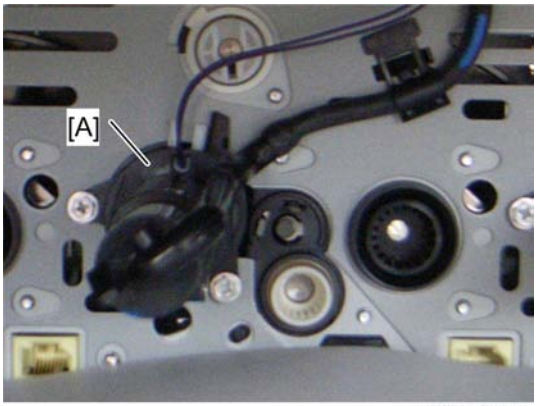


d027r710

6. Pass the harness of the toner pump unit behind the hook [A], while pressing at [B].
7. Secure the toner supply tube with the holder [C], lifting up the edge of the holder "very gently".

Note

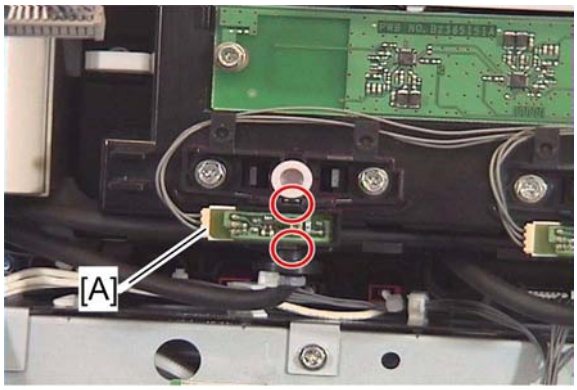
- Be careful when you lift the edge of the holder, because the holder is easily broken.



d027r135a

8. Insert the toner pump unit [A] into the rear frame of the machine (x 2).

4.7.7 TONER END SENSOR



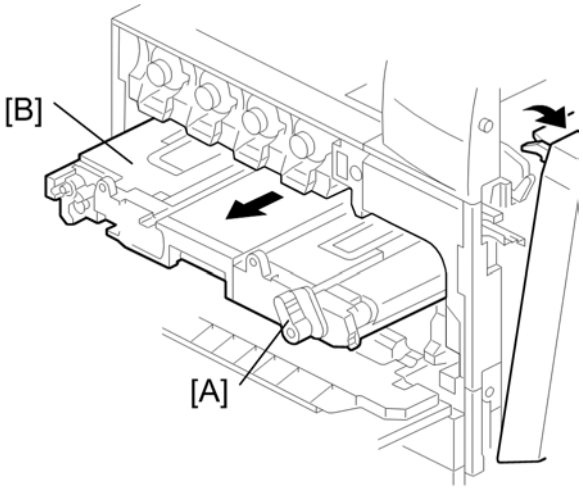
d027r042

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")
3. Toner end sensor [A] (✋ x 1, 2 hooks each)

4.8 IMAGE TRANSFER

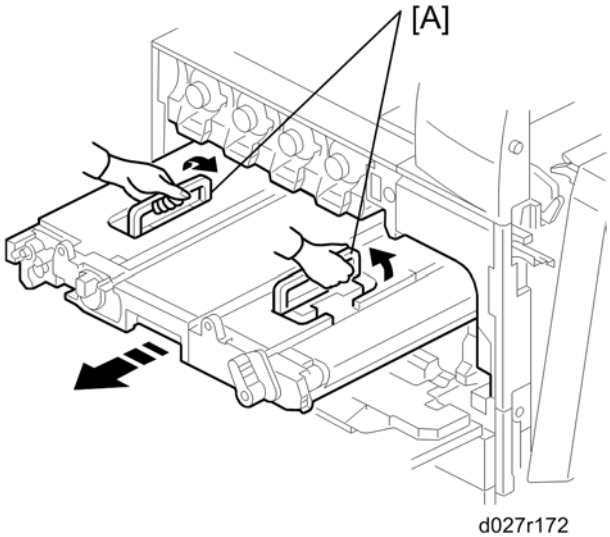
4.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT

1. Open the right door.
2. Open the front door.
3. Open the drum positioning plate. (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")



d027r171

4. Turn the image transfer belt unit lock lever [A] counterclockwise.
5. Pull out the image transfer belt unit [B] halfway.



d027r172

6. Grasp the handles [A], and then pull out the image transfer belt unit fully.

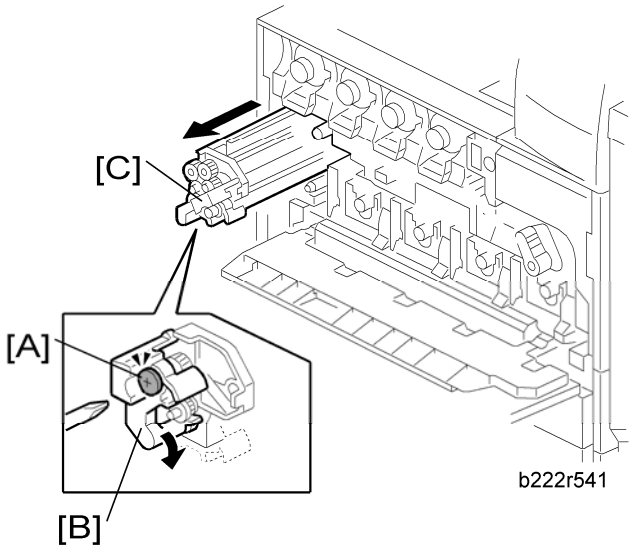
4.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT

1. If you will install a new belt cleaning unit, then set SP 3902-015 to 1.

   Note

   - If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the belt cleaning unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
   - Do not use SP3902-015 or 013 if you replace the complete ITB unit.

2. Turn off the main power switch.
3. Open the right door.
4. Open the front door.
5. Open the drum positioning plate. (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")



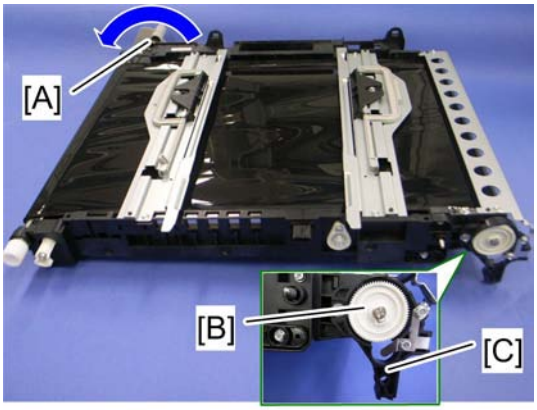
6. Loosen the screw [A].
7. Turn the lock lever [B] clockwise
8. Pull out the image transfer belt cleaning unit [C].

4.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT

1. Image transfer belt cleaning unit (☛ p.4-72 "

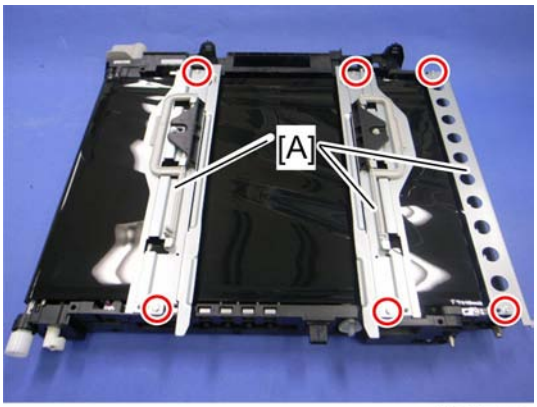
Image Transfer Belt Cleaning Unit")

2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")



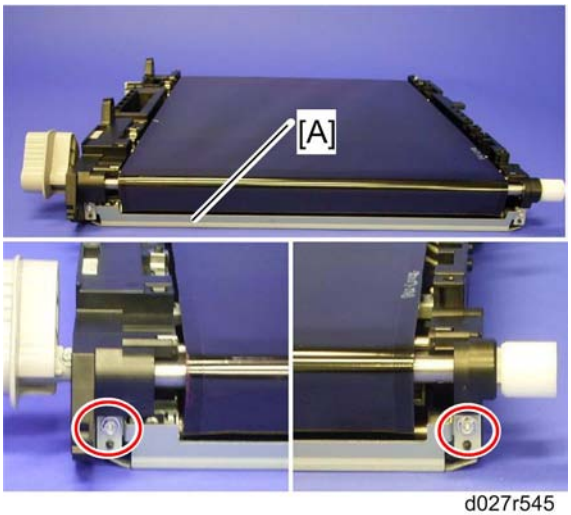
d027r138

3. Turn the image transfer unit contact lover [A] counterclockwise (as seen from the rear).
4. Gear [B] (hook x 1)
5. Turn the gear cover [C] clockwise (as seen from the rear) (🔩 x 1).



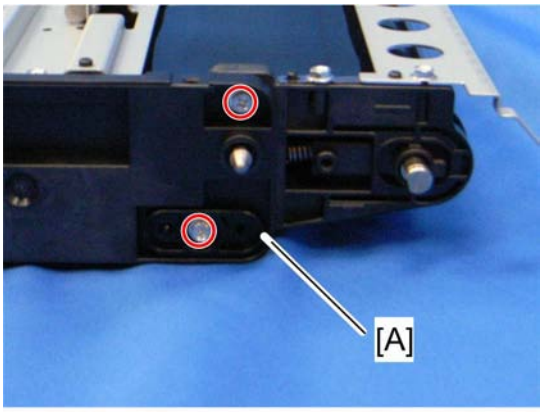
d027r139

6. Three stays [A] (🔩 x 6)



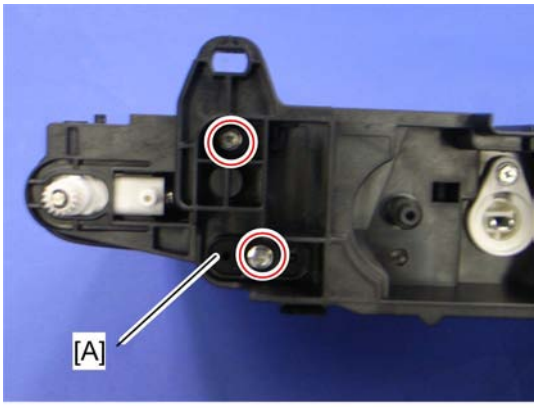
d027r545

7. Guide plate [A] (as seen from the right side of the machine) (🔩 x 2)



d027r545a

8. Remove the two screws and then the rear holder bracket [A] (as seen from the rear).

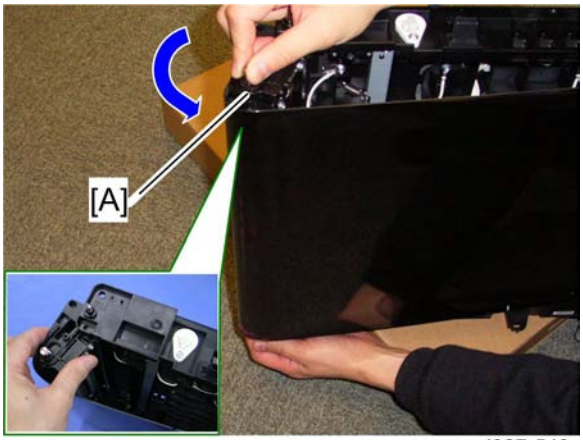


d027r140

9. Remove the two screws and then the front holder bracket [A] (as seen from the front).

b222r548

10. Put the front side of the image transfer belt unit on a corner of the table or a box as shown.



d027r549

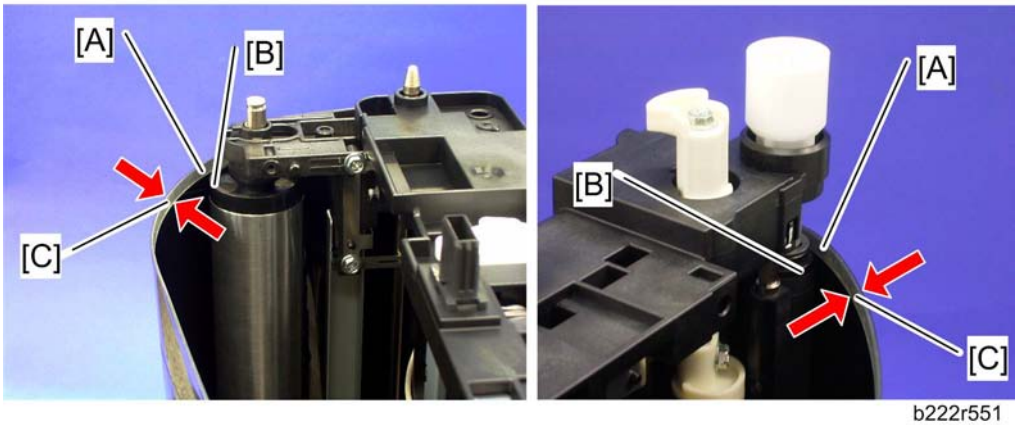
11. Pull the tension roller [A] as shown.

d027r550

12. Image transfer belt [A]

When reinstalling the image transfer belt

- Clean all rollers with dry cloth before installing the image transfer belt.

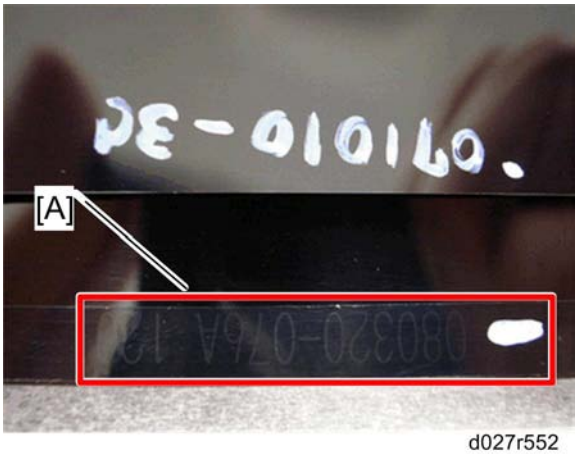


b222r551

- There is a rim [A] at each edge of the transfer belt. The ends of all the rollers ([B] for example) in the transfer belt unit must be between the two rims.

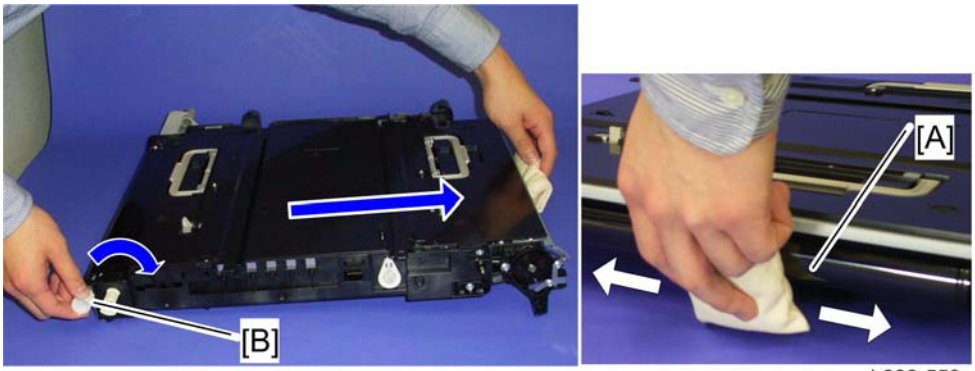
Note

- There are two rims (width [C]: about 5 mm) on the underside of the front and rear edges of the image transfer belt.



d027r552

- This belt must be installed the correct way around. When you reinstall the image transfer belt unit, install it with the number [A] on the belt at the rear side of the unit.



b222r553

- Put "Lubricant Powder" (B132 9700) on the surface of the image transfer belt [A], while you turn the drive gear [B] at a constant speed, as shown. (The straight arrow in the picture shows belt movement direction.) Lubricant powder prevents the image transfer cleaning blade from turning up.

Note

- Do not put the lubricant powder at the right side of the image transfer belt unit (the above picture is taken from the rear). Otherwise, lubricant powder may damage the encoder sensor.

4.9 PAPER TRANSFER

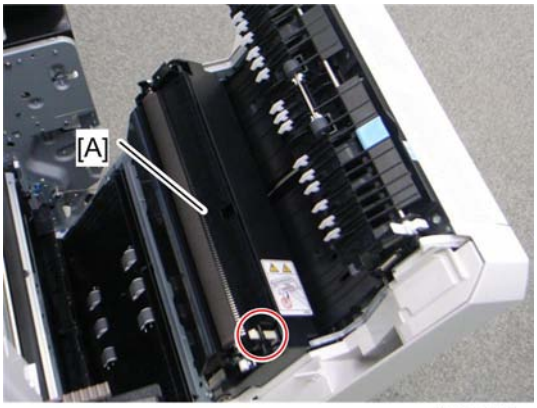
4.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP 3902-016 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

1. Open the right door.



d027r141

2. Release the white hook.
3. Paper transfer roller unit [A]

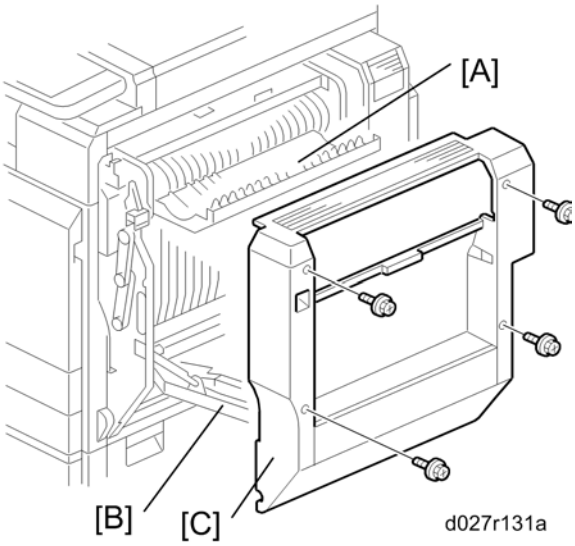
4.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP3-902-016 to 1.

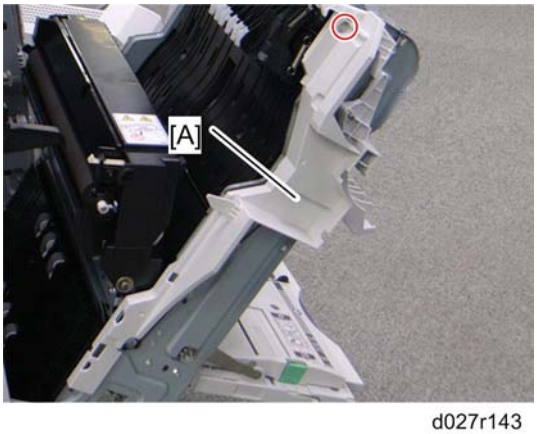
Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

1. Turn off the main power switch.

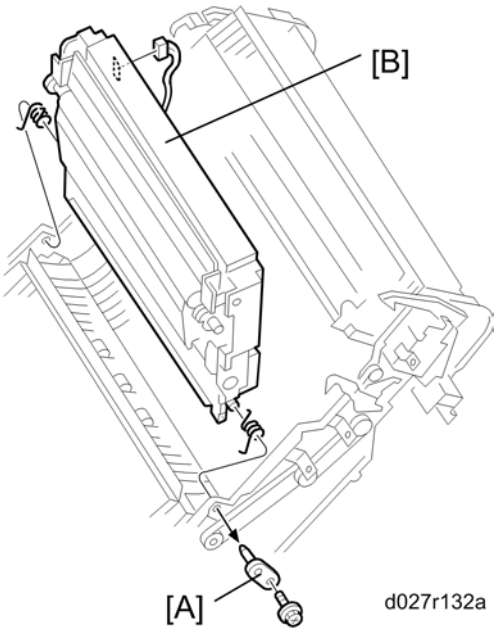


1. Open the duplex door [A].
2. Open the by-pass tray [B]
3. Right door cover [C] (🔩 x 4)
4. Open the right door.



5. Right door inner cover [A] (🔩 x 1)

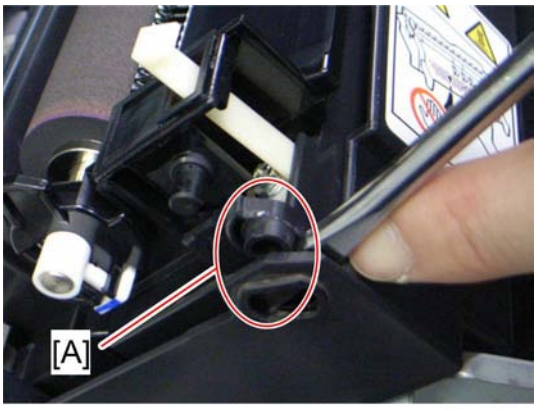
Paper Transfer



1. Pivot bracket [A] (☞ x 1)
2. Paper transfer unit [B] (☞ x 1, 2 springs)

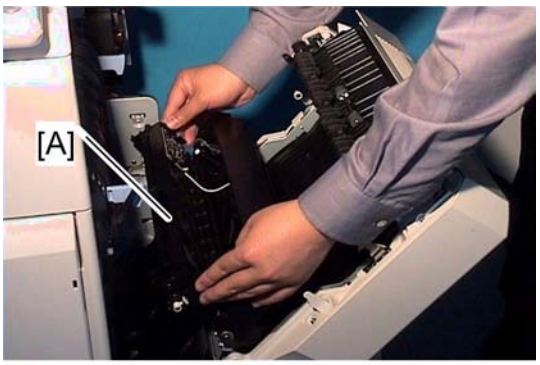
4.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE

1. Open the right door.



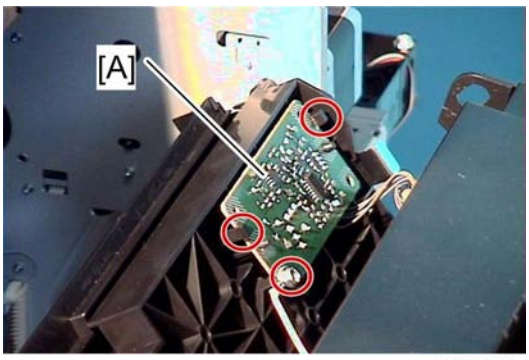
d027r144

2. Release the front [A] and rear pivots of the paper transfer roller case.



d027r557

3. Paper transfer roller case [A]



d027r558

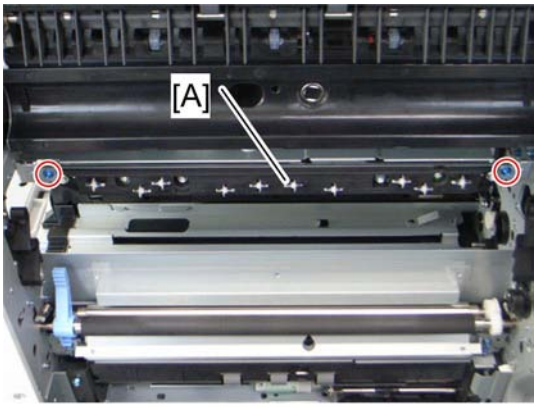
4. High voltage supply board [A] (x 3, x 1, ground cable x 1)

4.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD

1. K PCU (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")
2. Open the right door.
3. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

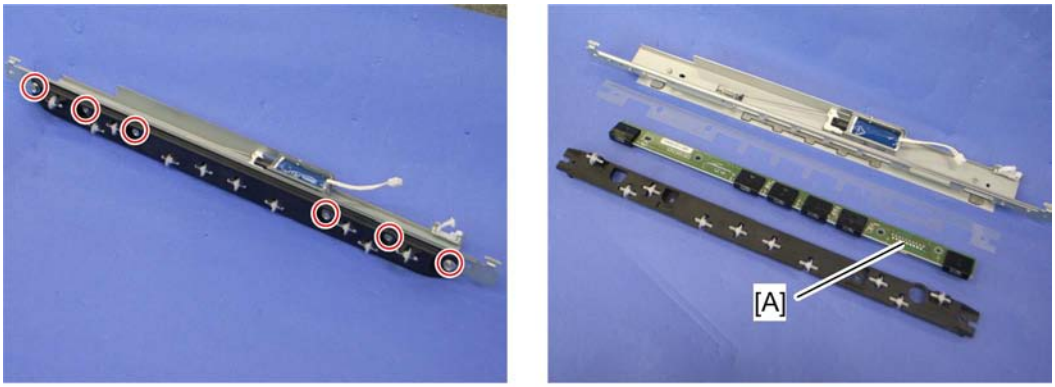
Fusing Unit")

4. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")



d027r145

5. ID sensor unit [A] (x 2, x 2, x 1)

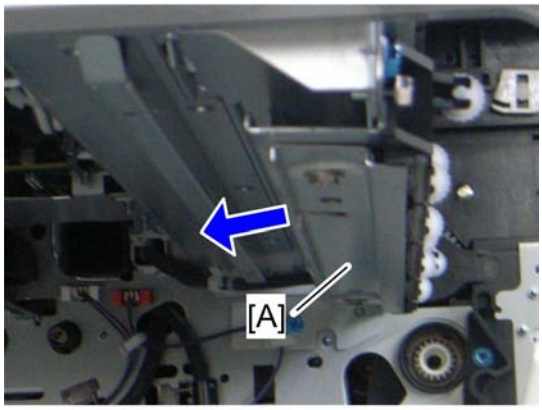


d027r146

6. ID sensor board [A] (x 6)

Cleaning for ID sensors

ID sensors require a cleaning procedure every EM. Do the following steps for ID sensor cleaning.



d027r147

1. K PCU (☛ p.4-57 "PCU")

Paper Transfer

2. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")

3. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
4. Slide the ID sensor shutter [A] to the left side.
5. Clean the ID sensors keeping the ID sensor shutter to the left.

After installing a new ID sensor unit/board

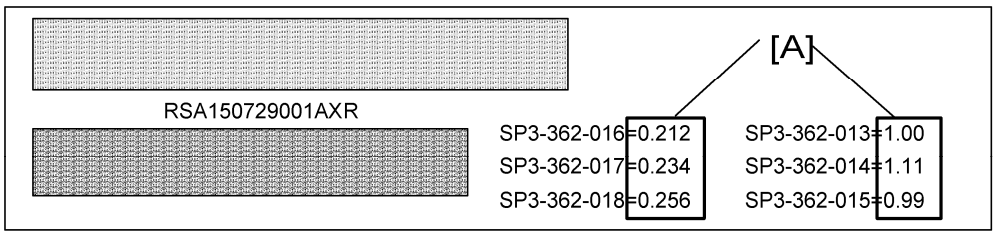
Do the following adjustment after installing a new ID sensor unit/board.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Input all correction coefficients [A] for the ID sensor with the SP modes referring to the barcode sheet provided with the new ID sensor unit/board.

Note

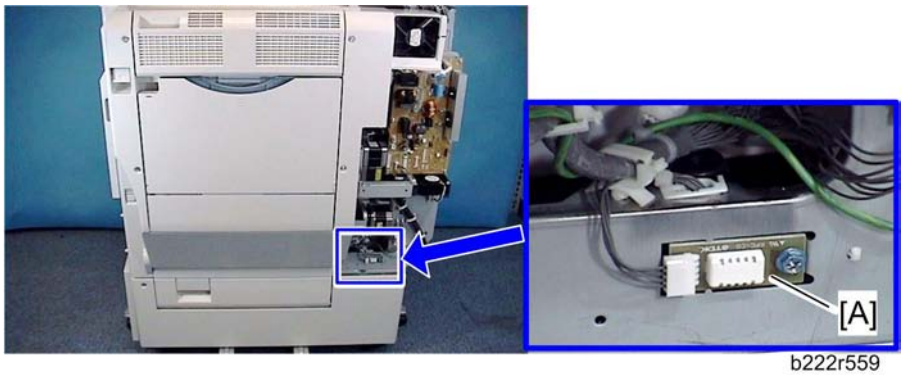
- For example, input "**1.00**" with SP3-362-013.

4. Exit the SP mode.



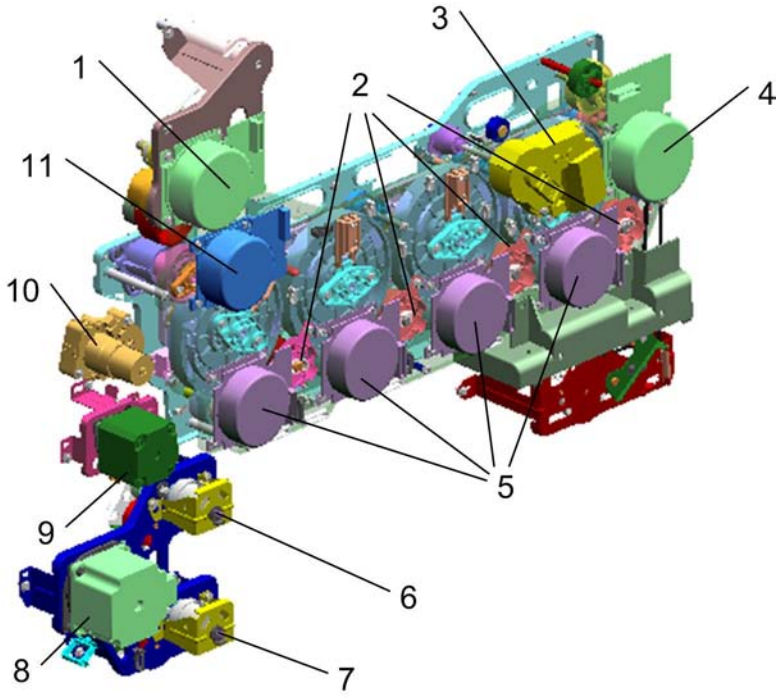
4.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



3. Temperature and humidity sensor [A] (x 1, x 1)

4.10 DRIVE UNIT



The drawing above shows the drive unit layout.

1. Fusing/paper exit motor 2. Development clutches 3. Image transfer belt contact motor 4. Toner transport motor 5. Drum/Development drive motors 6. Paper feed clutch – Tray 1	7. Paper feed clutch – Tray 2 8. Paper feed motor 9. Registration motor 10. Paper transfer contact motor 11. ITB drive motor

There are some motors and clutches that are not shown in the above drawing:

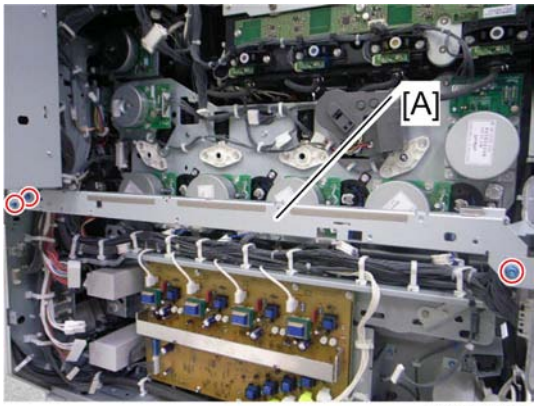
▪ Tray lift motor 1 and 2 ▪ Duplex inverter motor ▪ Duplex/By-pass Motor	▪ Junction gate 1 motor ▪ Shutter motor ▪ By-pass clutch

4.10.1 GEAR UNIT

1. All PCU's
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
3. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
4. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")
5. Third duct (☛ p.4-64 "

Third Duct Fan")

6. Left cover (☛ p.4-19 "Left Cover")
7. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")

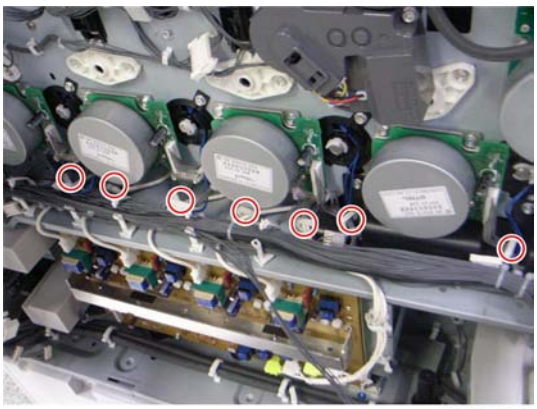


d027r148

8. Remove the rear stay [A] (🔩 x 3).

d027r149

9. Remove ten clamps (blue arrows).

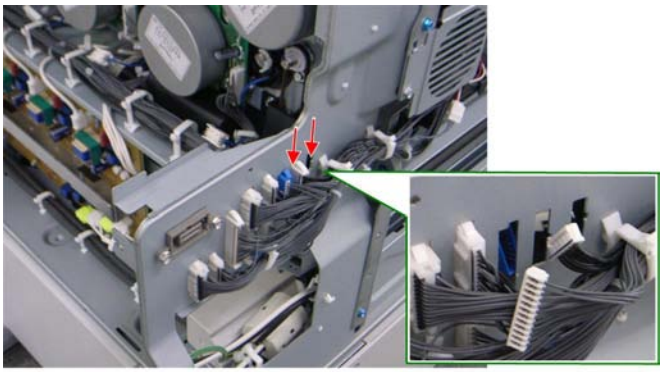


d027r150

10. Release seven clamps and turn each harness aside.

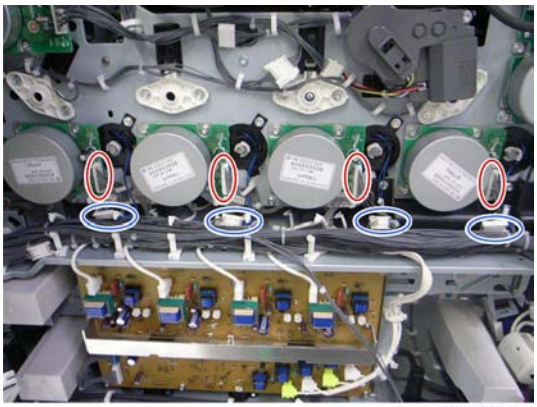
d027r151

11. Disconnect four connectors (red arrows).



d027r152

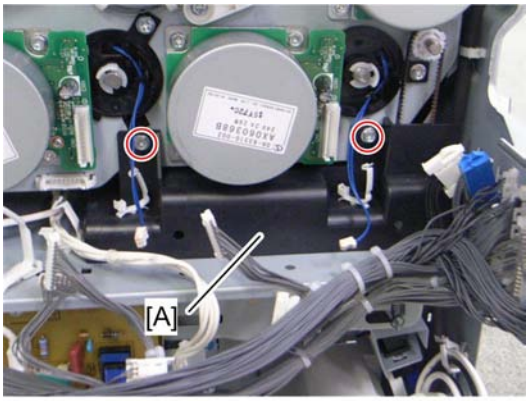
12. Disconnect two connectors (red arrows) and put these harnesses inside the machine.



d027r153

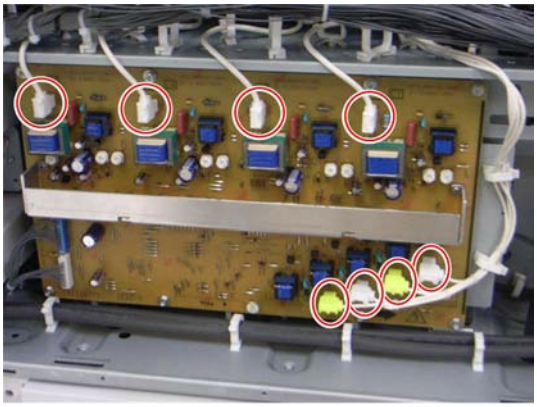
13. Disconnect each connector (red circles) from the drum/development drive motors (x 1, x 1 each).
14. Disconnect each connector (blue circles) from the development clutches (x 1 each).

Drive Unit



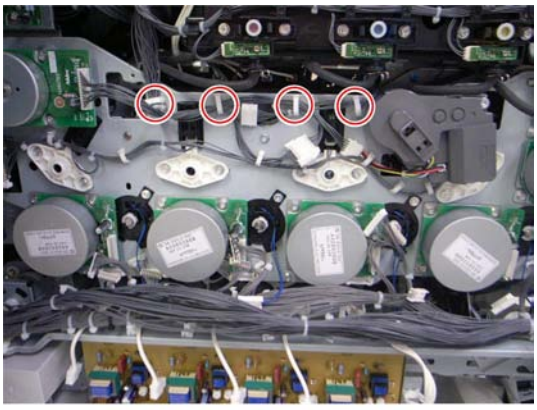
d027r155

15. Cover [A] (🔩 x 2)



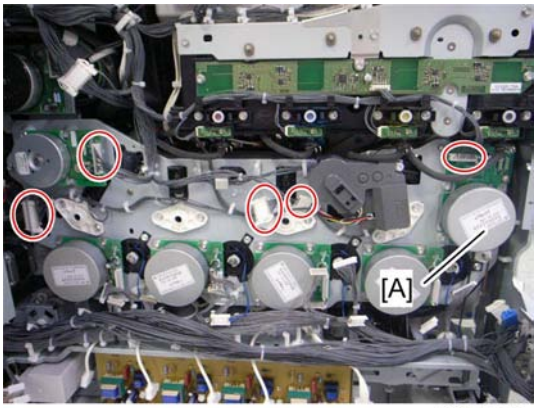
d027r156

16. Disconnect eight connectors from the high voltage supply board (🤏 x 8, 🤏 x 2).



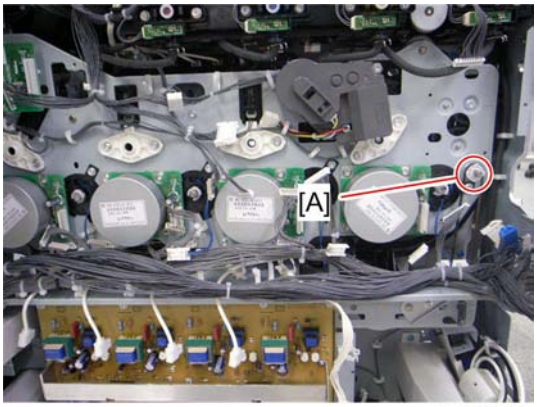
d027r157b

17. Release four clamps (red circles) and turn the harnesses aside.



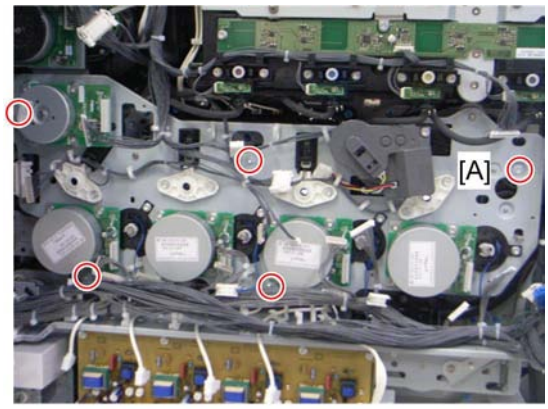
d027r158

18. Disconnect five connectors (red circles) (✋ x 5).
19. Toner transport motor [A] (🔩 x 3)



d027r159

20. Pulley [A] (timing belt)

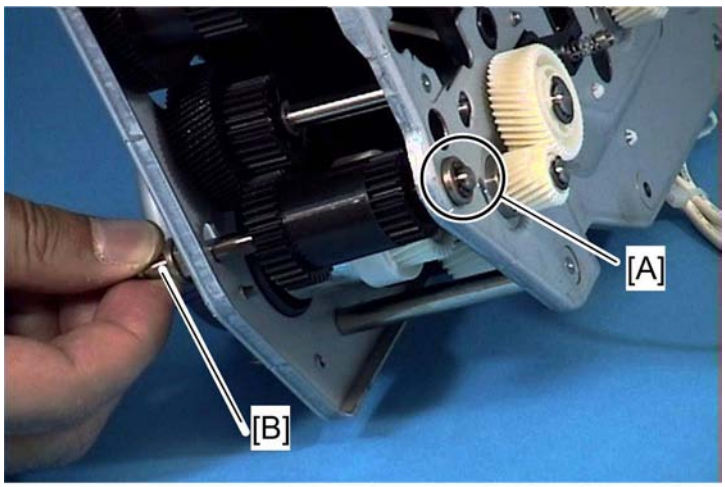


d027r160a

21. Gear unit [A] (🔩 x 8)

Drive Unit

When installing the drive unit



b222r573

Make sure that the bushing [A] is fully set in the frame of the gear unit before installing the timing belt and pulley to the shaft [B].

Adjustment after replacing the gear unit

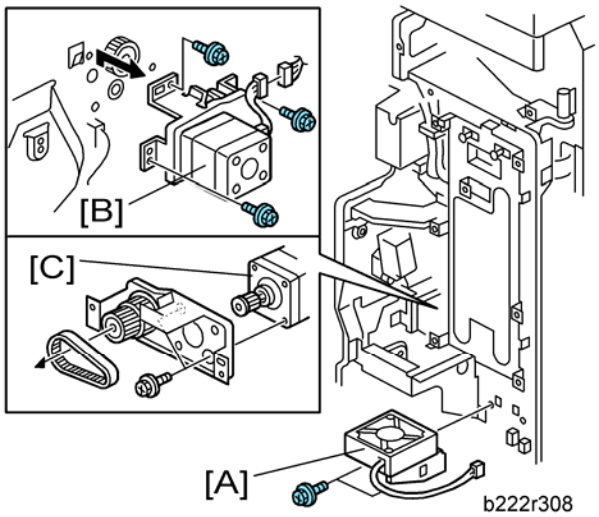
Do the following procedures after replacing the gear unit.

1. Turn on the main power switch.
2. Enter "Copy SP" in the SP mode.
3. Do “Amplitude Control" with SP1-902-001.
4. Check the result of the Amplitude Control with SP1-902-002.
   0: Success, 1: Failure due to no sampling data,
   2: Failure due to insufficient number of pattern detections
   When the result of this adjustment is "1" or "2":
   - Check that all the PCUs are correctly set and that the image transfer belt unit is correctly set.
   - Do "Amplitude Control " again after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit.

   When the result is still "1" or "2" after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit:
   - Check that the gear unit is installed correctly.
5. Exit the SP mode.

4.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR

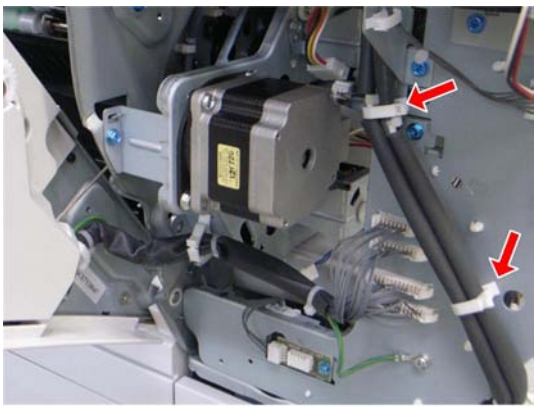
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Ventilation duct (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
4. Turn the harnesses aside (x 5)



5. Fusing power supply board fan bracket [A] (x 2, x 1)
6. Registration motor assembly [B] (x 3, x 1)
7. Registration motor [C] (x 2, timing belt)

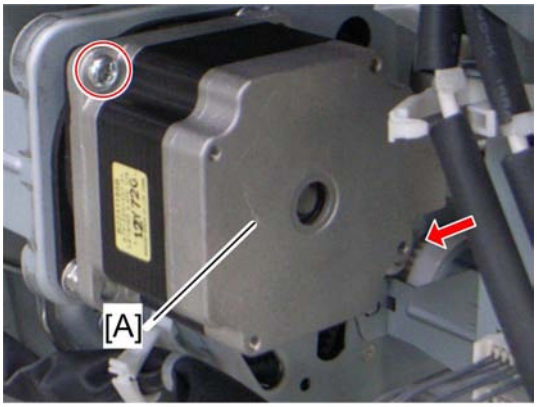
4.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



d027r161

3. Release the two clamps (x 2)

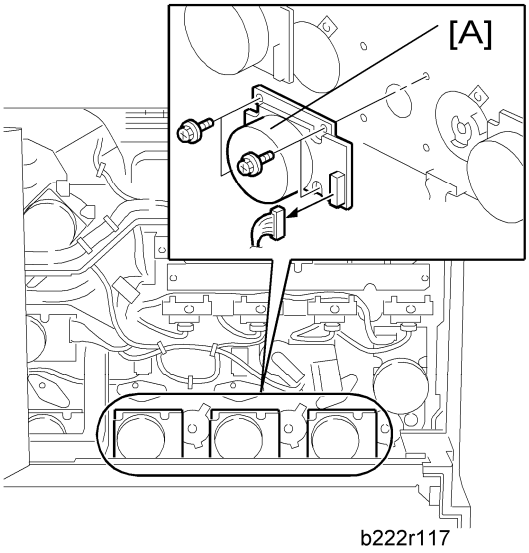


d027r162a

4. Paper feed motor [A] (x 1, x 2, timing belt)

4.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y

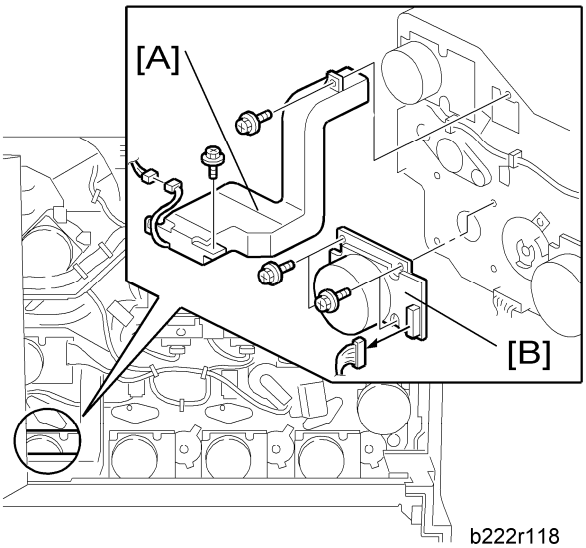
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box.



4. Drum/Development motors (three motors, one each for MCY) [A] (x 4, x 1 each)

4.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K

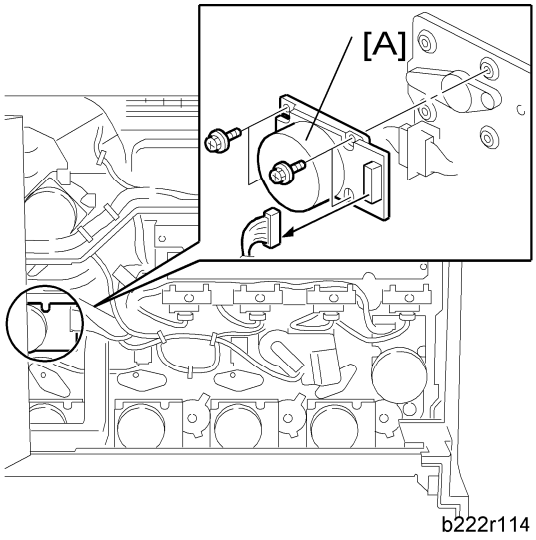
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



4. Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)
5. Drum/Development motor-K [B] (x 4, x 1)

4.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR

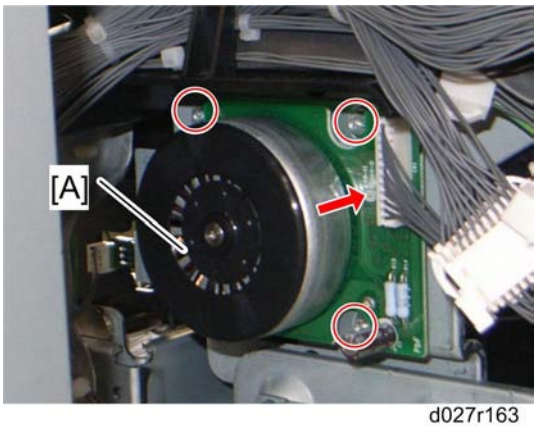
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



3. ITB drive motor [A] (x 4, x 1)

4.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR

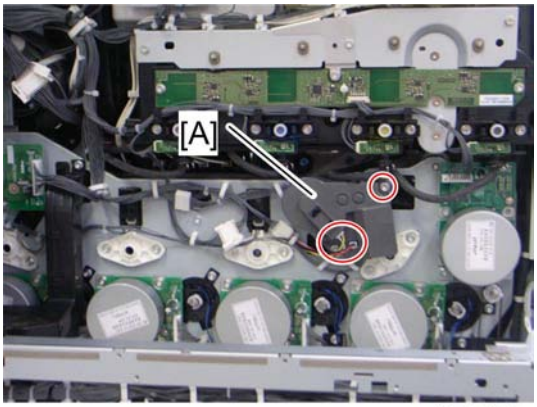
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



3. Fusing/paper exit motor [A] (x 3, x 1)

4.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



d027r164

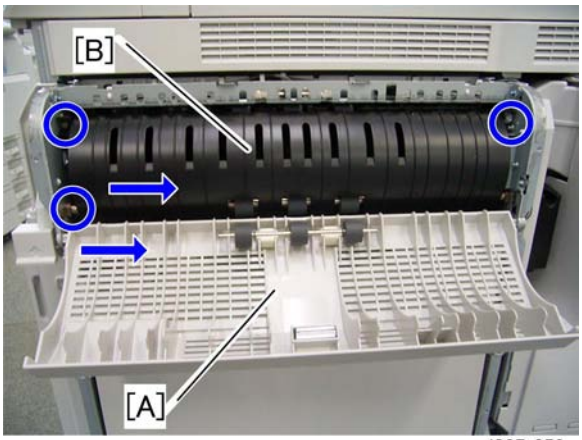
3. Transfer belt contact motor [A] (x 2, x 2)

4.10.9 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR

1. Open the right door.
2. Right door cover (☛ p.4-165 "

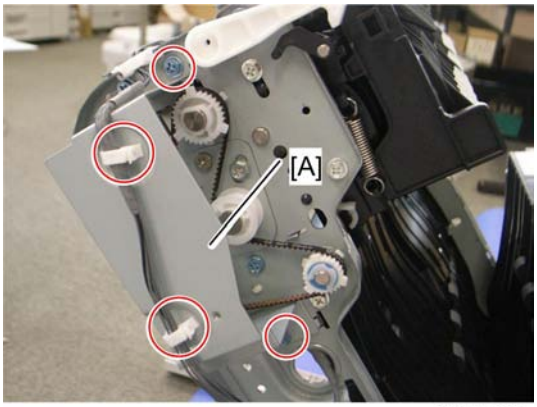
Drive Unit

By-pass Bottom Tray")



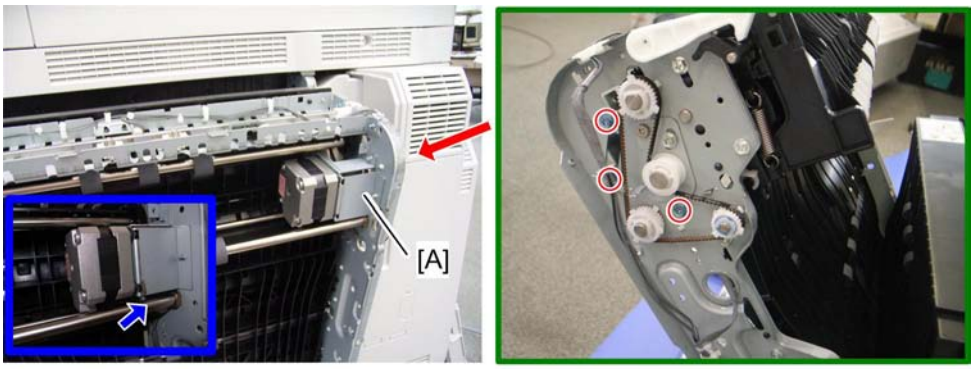
d027r659

3. Duplex door [A] (2 hooks)
4. Duplex guide plate [B] (x 3, 2 hooks)



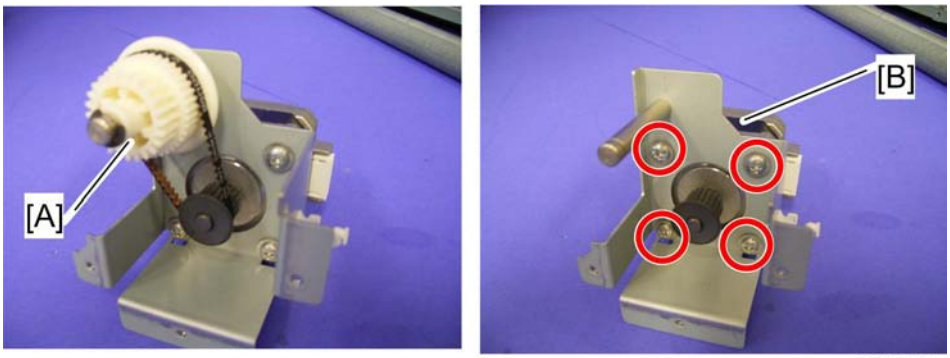
d027r166

5. Duplex inverter motor bracket cover [A] (x 2, x 2)



d027r660b

6. Duplex inverter motor bracket [A] (x 3, x 1, x 1)

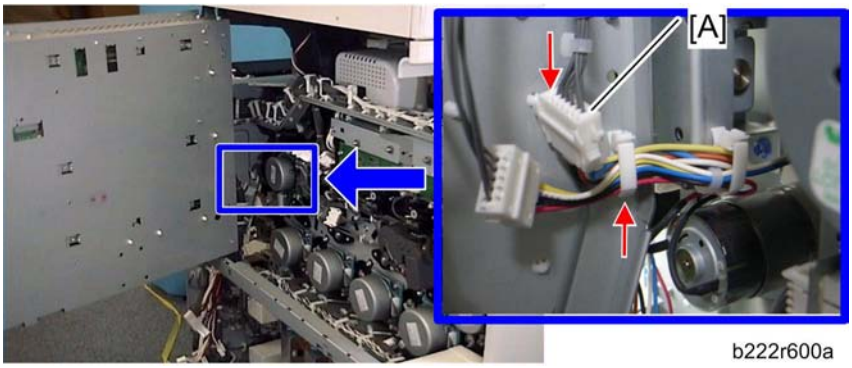


d027r661

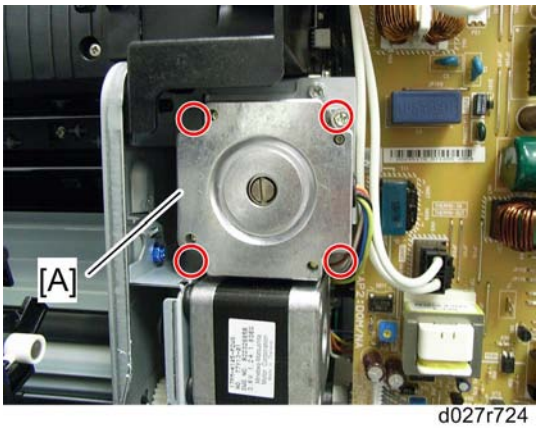
7. Gear [A] (ℂ x 1, belt x 1)
8. Duplex inverter motor [B] (🔩 x 4)

4.10.10 PRESSURE ROLLER CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



4. Disconnect the connector (🔌 x 1).



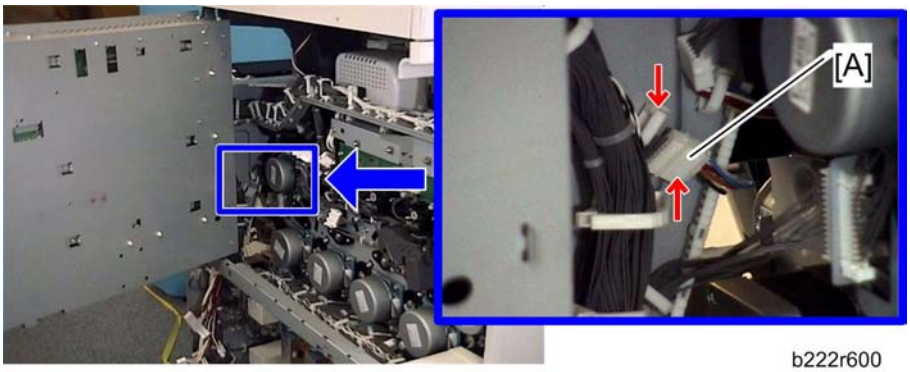
5. Pressure roller contact motor [A] (🔩 x 4)

4.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").
4. Pressure roller contact motor (☛ p.4-100 "

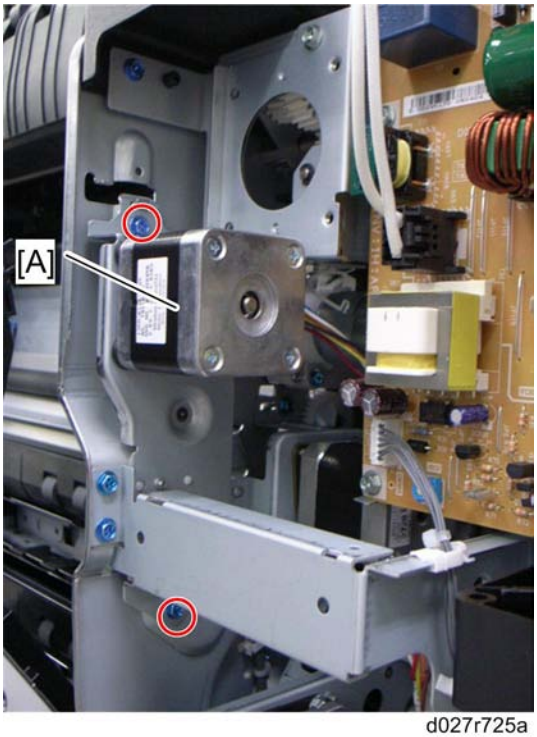
Drive Unit

Pressure Roller Contact Motor")



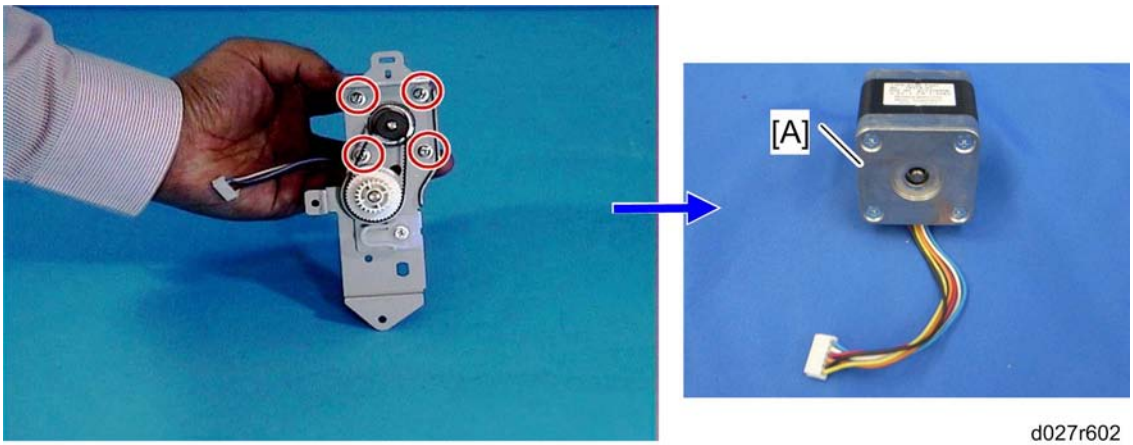
b222r600

5. Disconnect the connector [A] (x 1, x 1)



d027r725a

6. Duplex/by-pass motor bracket [A] (x 2)

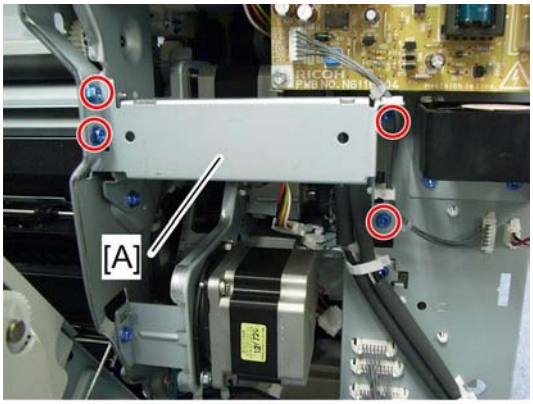


d027r602

7. Duplex/by-pass motor [A] (☞ x 4, belt x 1)

4.10.12 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



d027r723

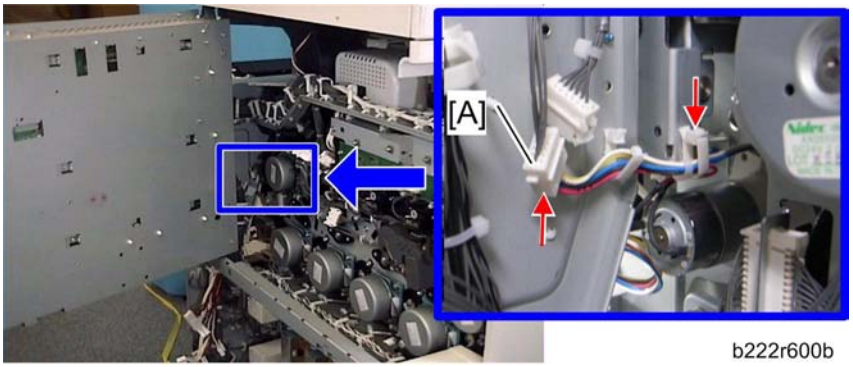
4. Stay [A] (☞ x 4)
5. Pressure roller contact motor (☛ p.4-100 "

Drive Unit

Pressure Roller Contact Motor")

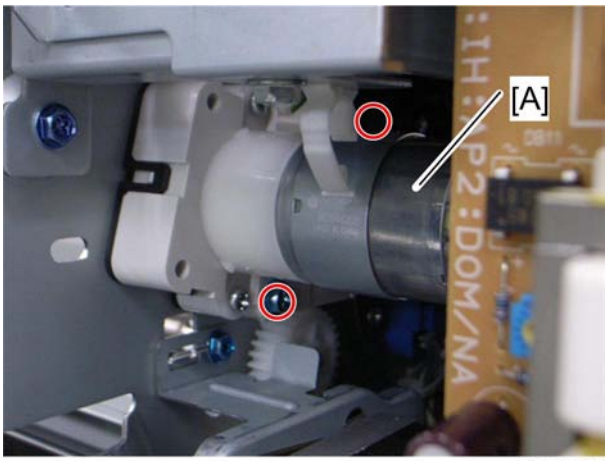
6. Duplex/by-pass motor bracket (☛ p.4-101 "

Duplex/By-pass Motor")



b222r600b

7. Disconnect the connector [A] (🔌 x 1)

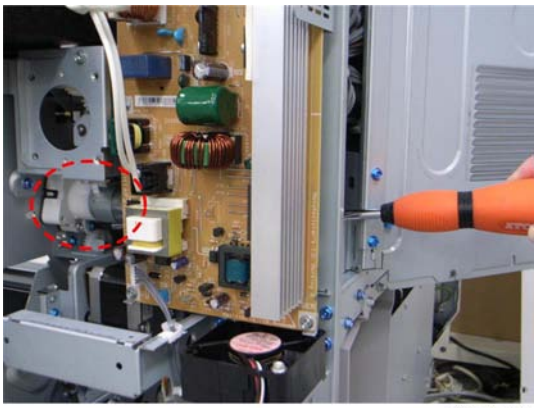


d027r726

8. Paper transfer contact motor [A] (🔩 x 2)

NOTE:

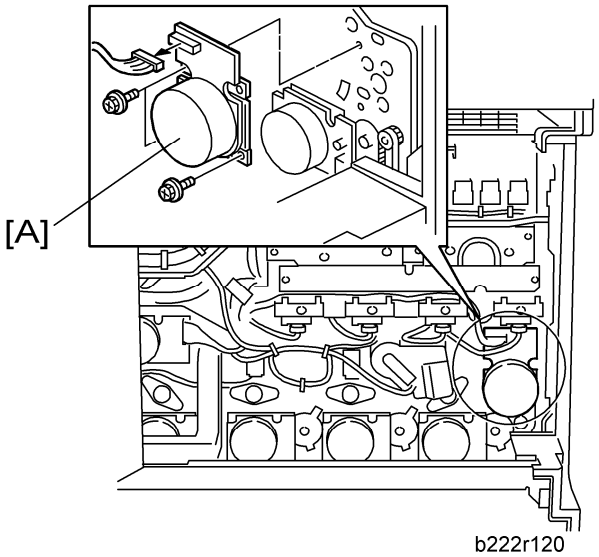
The picture below shows how to use the screwdriver to remove the screws of the paper transfer contact motor.



d027r727

4.10.13 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR

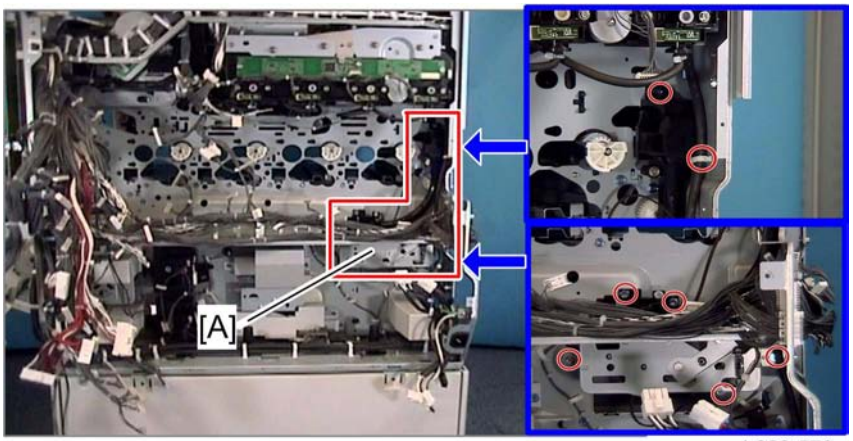
1. Rear cover(☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



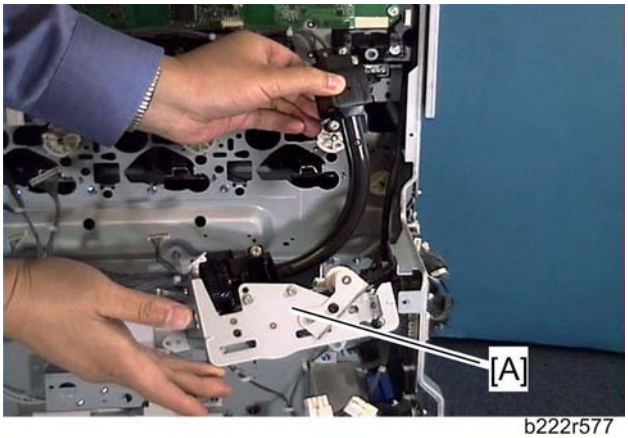
3. Toner transport motor [A] (🔩 x 3, 🖐 x 1)

4.10.14 TONER COLLECTION UNIT

1. Gear Unit (☛ p.4-87 "Gear Unit")



b222r576

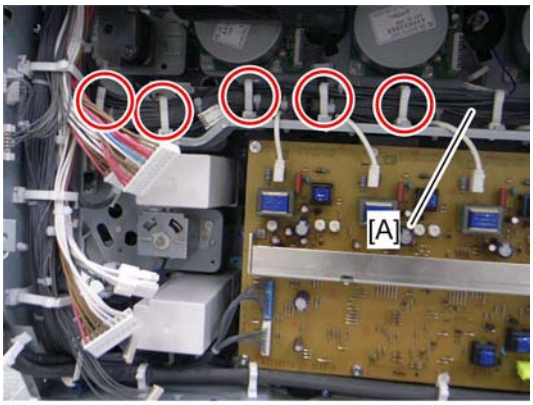


b222r577

2. Toner collection unit [A] (x 6, x 1)

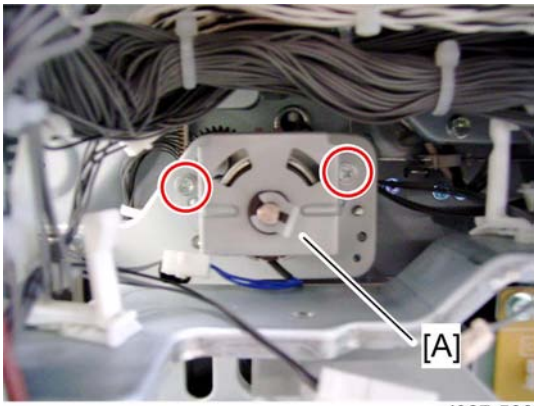
4.10.15 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")



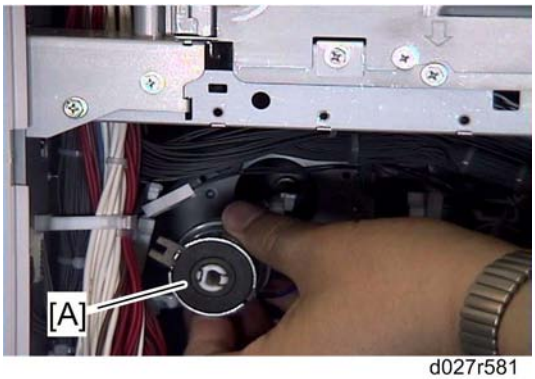
d027r578

3. Release five clamps, and then turn the harness [A] aside.



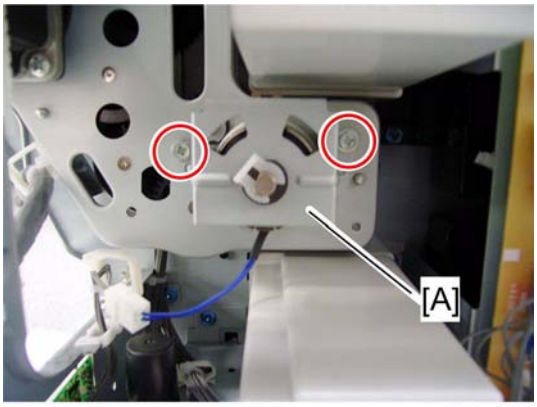
d027r580

4. Paper feed clutch 1 bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1, x 1)



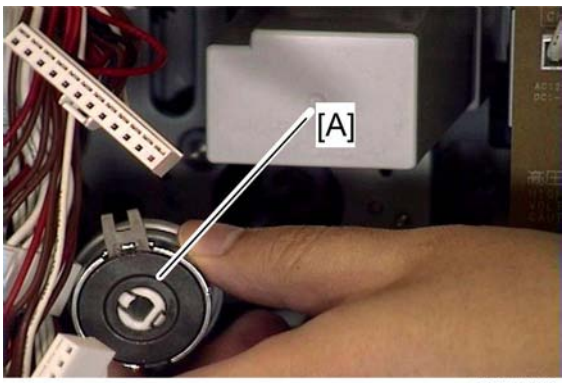
d027r581

5. Paper feed clutch 1 [A]



d027r582

6. Paper feed clutch 2 bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1)

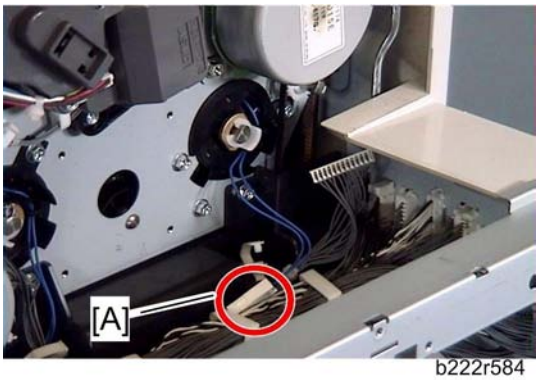


d027r583

7. Paper feed clutch 2 [A]

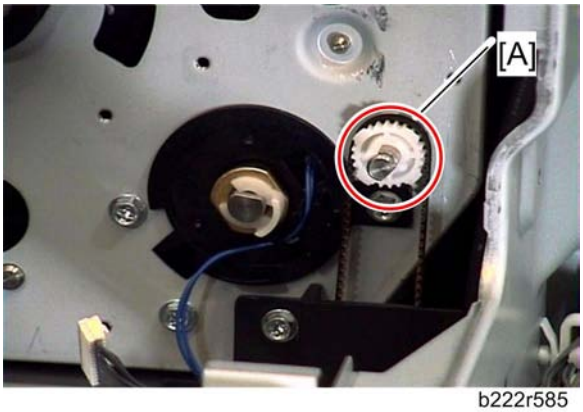
4.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box. (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").
4. Drum/development motor-Y (☛ p.4-94 "Drum/Development Motors for M, C, and Y")



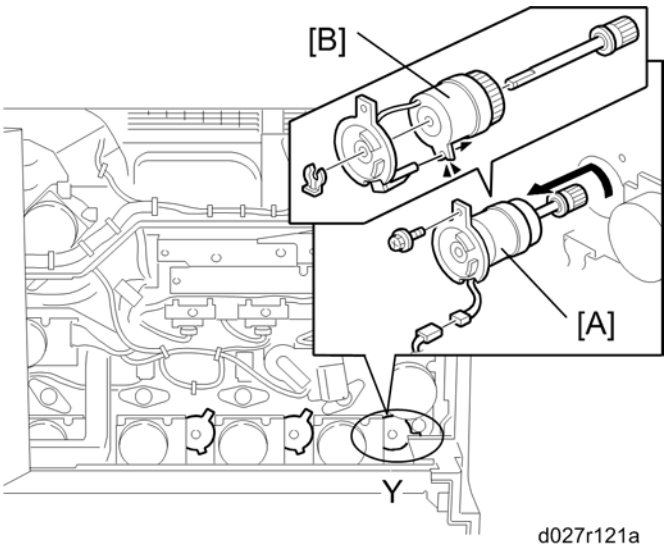
b222r584

5. Disconnect the connector [A] (☜ x 1).



b222r585

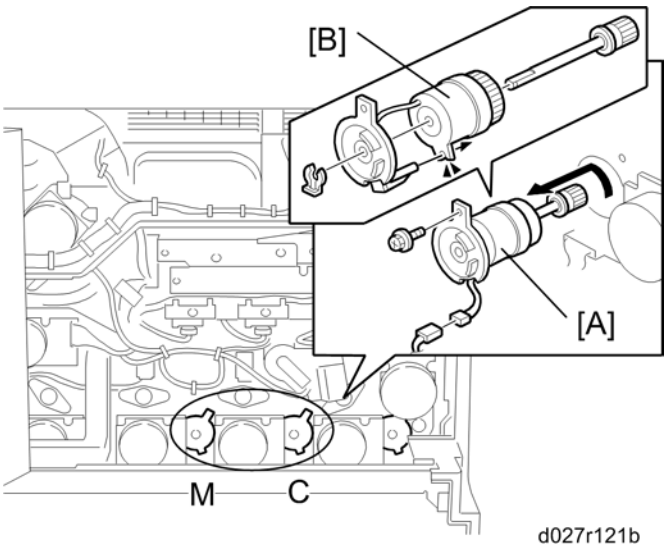
6. Remove the pulley and bushing [A].



7. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (☞ x 1).
8. Development clutch-Y [B] (☞ x 1)

4.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C

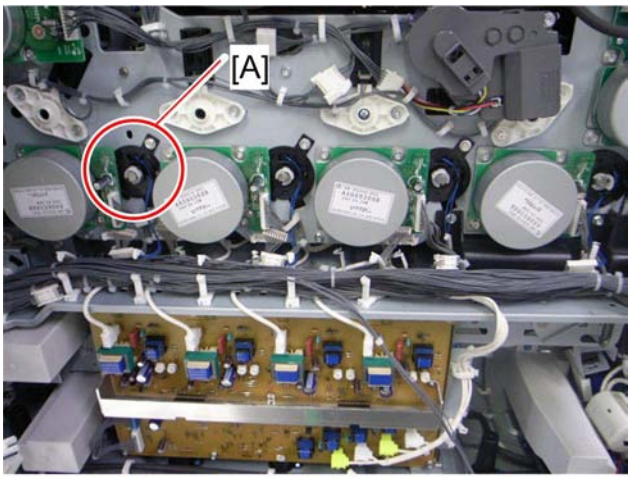
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").
4. Drum/development motors for M and C (☛ p.4-94 "Drum/Development Motors for M, C, and Y")
5. Disconnect the connector for each development clutch (☞ x 1).



6. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (☞ x 1).
7. Development clutches for M and C [B] (☞ x 1)

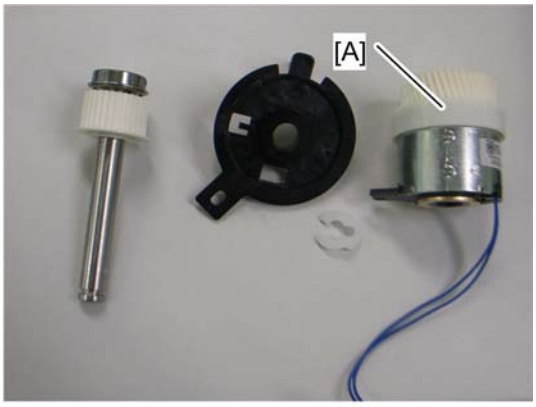
4.10.18 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. Controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")
4. Drum/development motor-K (☛ p.4-95 "Drum/Development Motor-K")



d027r586

5. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (🔩 x 1).



d027r167

6. Development clutch-K [A] (🔩 x 1)

4.11 FUSING

4.11.1 PM PARTS

In the fusing unit, there are many PM parts. Refer to the following list to check the PM parts.

PM Parts	Replacement Procedure
Heating Roller	☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
-Bearing	☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
Pressure Roller	☛ p.4-129 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing"
-Bearing	☛ p.4-129 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing"
Heating Roller Thermistor	☛ p.4-132 "Heating Roller Thermistor"
Pressure Roller Thermistor	☛ p.4-137 "Pressure Roller Thermistor"
Lower Cover	
Stripper Plate	☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
Entrance Guide Plate	☛ p.4-135 "Pressure Roller Thermostat"
Exit Guide Plate	
Fusing Cleaning Felt	☛ p.4-122 "Fusing Cleaning Felt"
Thermopile	☛ p.4-145 "Thermopile"

4.11.2 FUSING UNIT

CAUTION

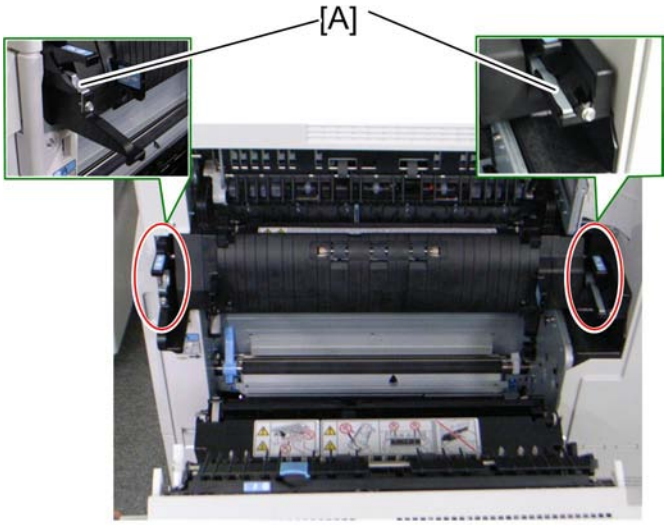
- Turn off the main switch and wait until the fusing unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The fusing unit can cause serious burns.

1. If you will install a lot of new parts in the fusing unit (at PM for example), then set SP 3902-014 to "1".

Note

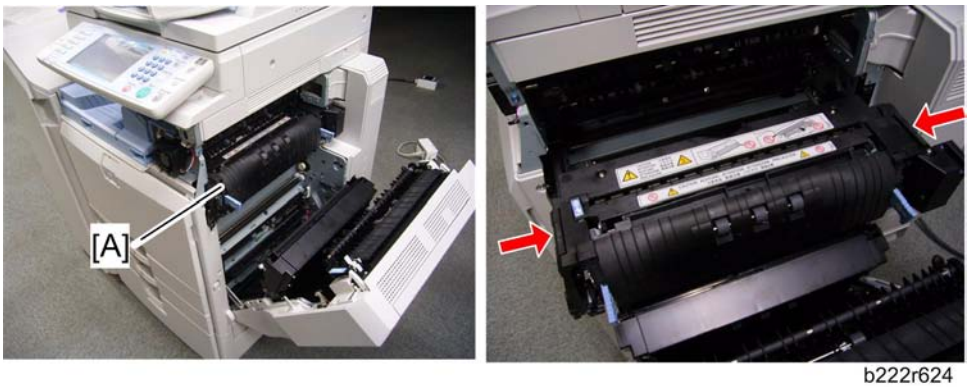
- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the fusing unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
  Do not do this if you replace the complete fusing unit. This is because the fusing unit has a new detection mechanism.

2. Turn off the main power switch.
3. Open the right door.



d027r411

4. Loosen the screws to remove the stays [A] (x 1 each).



b222r624

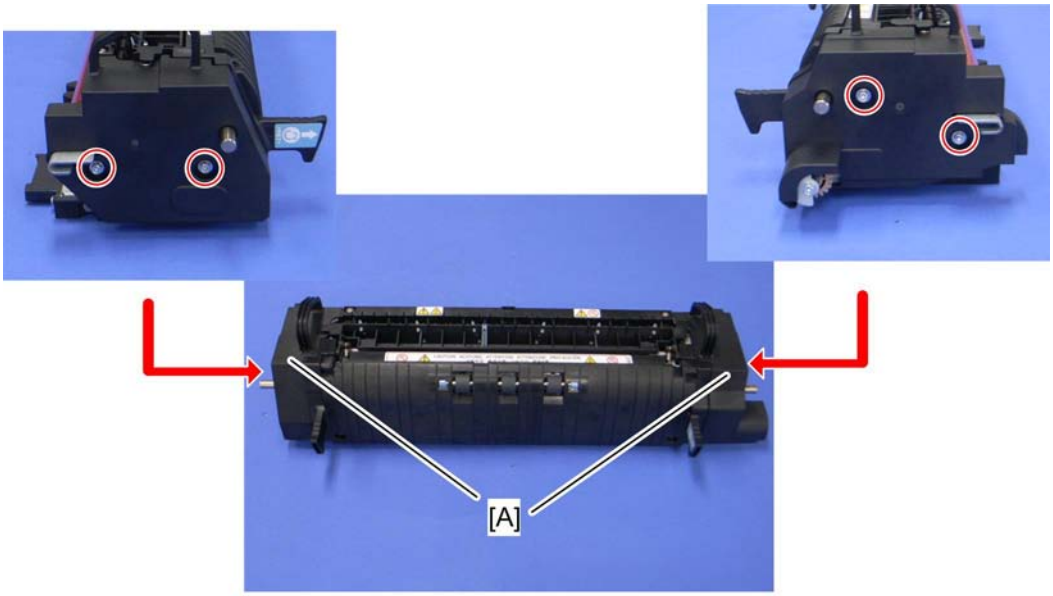
5. Pull out the fusing unit [A].

4.11.3 HEATING ROLLER AND HEATING ROLLER BEARING

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

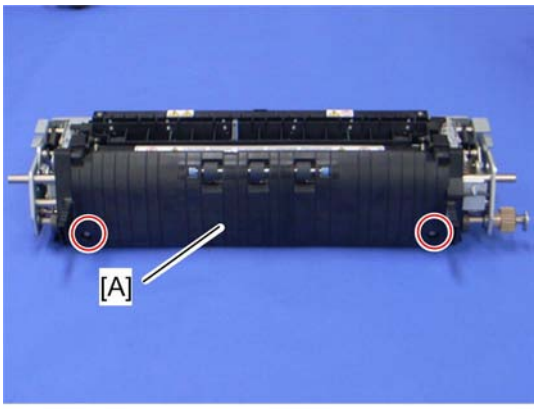
Fusing

Fusing Unit")



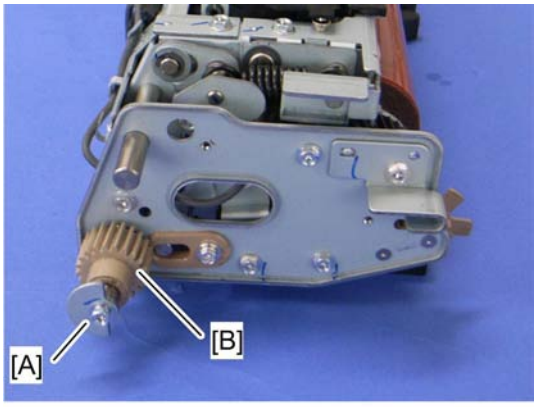
d027r186

2. Front and rear fusing covers [A] (🔩 x 2 each; Stepped screws)



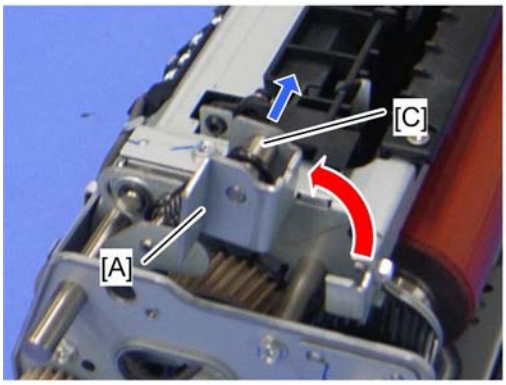
d027r190

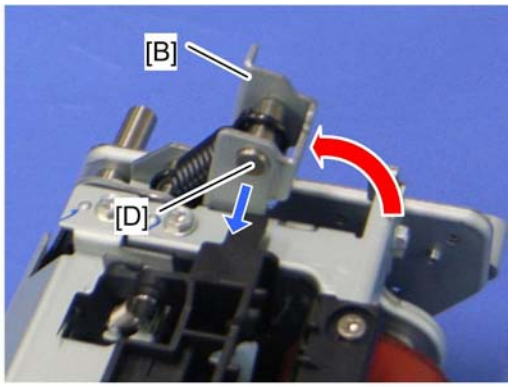
3. Fusing right cover [A] (🔩 x 2; Stepped screws)



d027r187

4. Pressure roller contact shaft actuator [A] and pressure roller contact shaft gear [B] (🔩 x 1, 🔄 x 1)



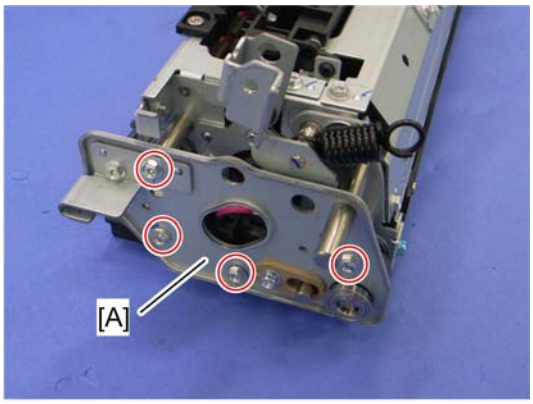


d027r191

5. Turn both pressure levers [A] [B], and pull out pins [C] [D].

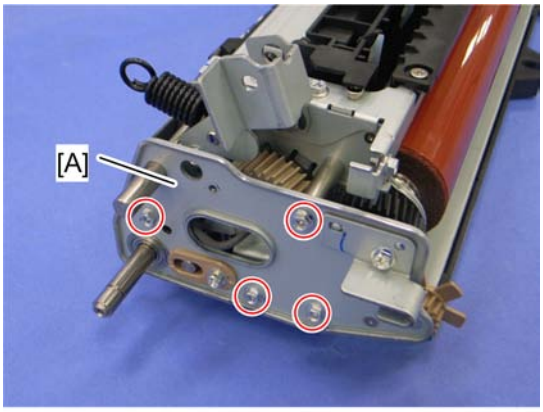
⚠CAUTION

- If the pins [C] [D] are not pulled out in this step, the fusing unit frames may become bent.



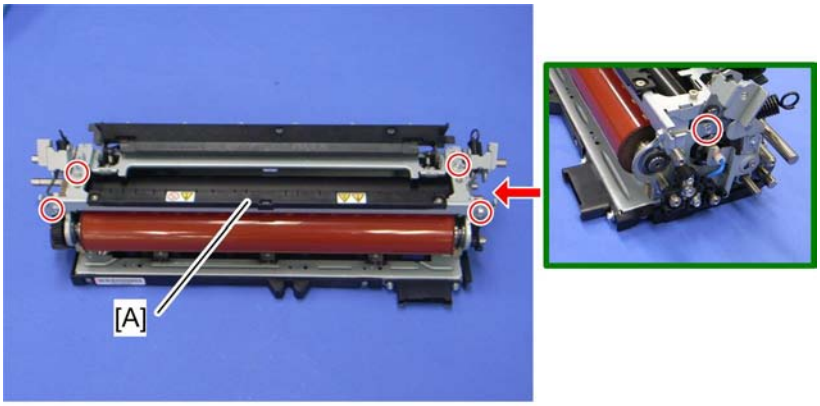
d027r188

6. Front bracket [A] (🔩 x 4)



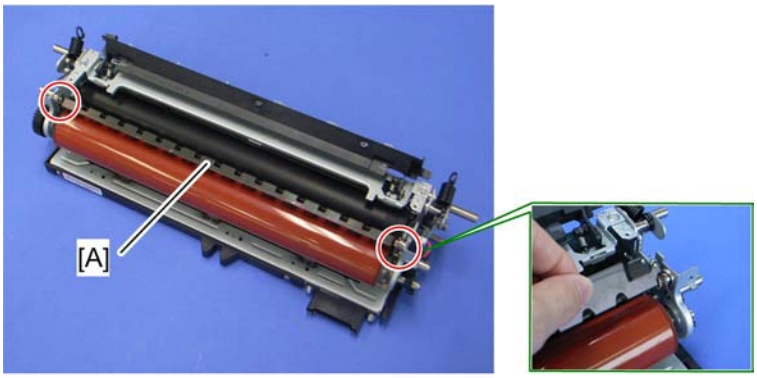
d027r189

7. Rear bracket [A] (🔩 x 4)



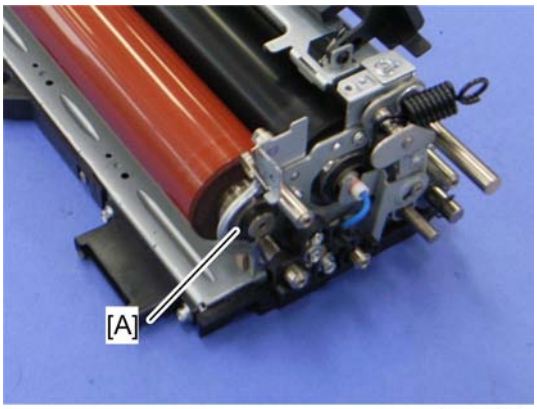
d027r195

8. Top stay [A] (🔩 x 5)



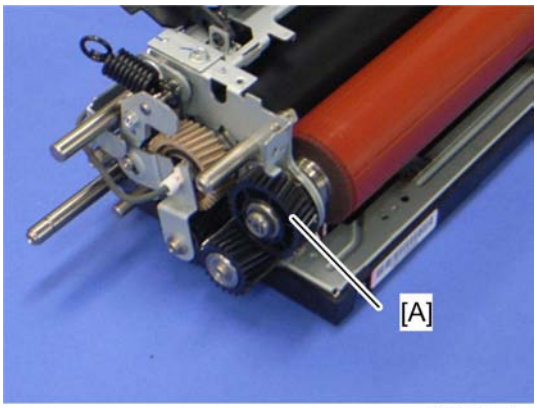
d027r197

9. Stripper plate [A] (two springs)



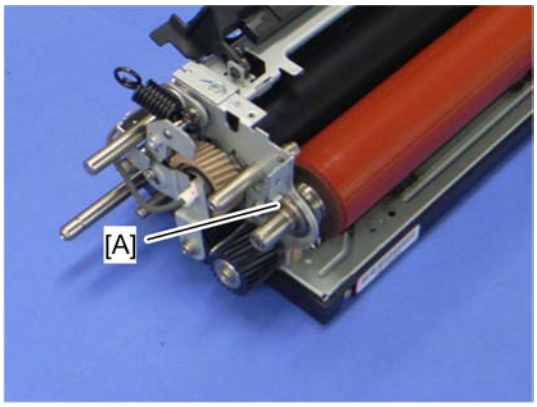
d027r208

10. Heating roller bearing [A] at the front side (ℂ x 1)



d027r209

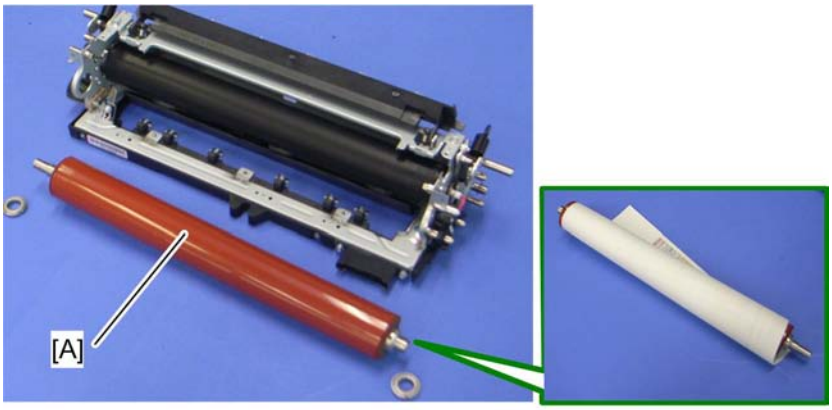
11. Heating roller gear [A] (ℂ x 1)



d027r217

12. Heating roller bearing [A] at the rear side

Fusing



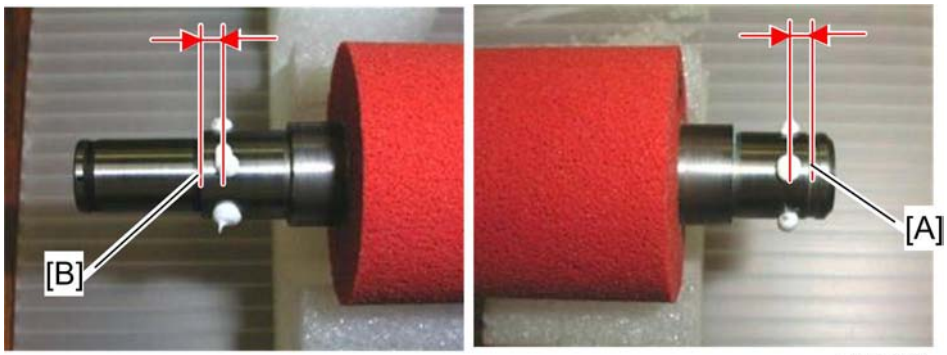
d027r210

13. Heating roller [A]

Note

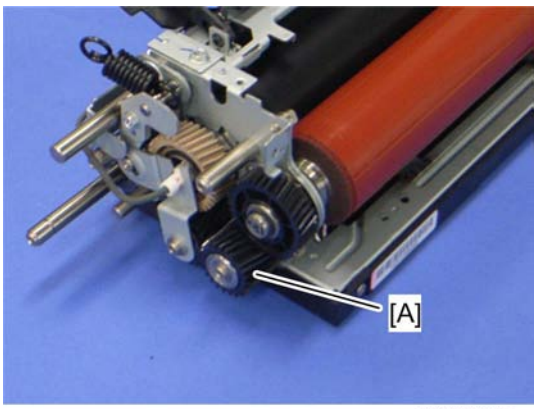
- The surface of the heating roller is fragile, so the heating roller must be covered with a sheet of paper when it is placed on a table or floor.

When re-installing the heating roller



b222r682

1. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the front shaft of the heating roller at 2 - 3 mm from the notch [A].
2. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the rear shaft of the heating roller at 2 - 3 mm from the edge [B] (rear side of the heating roller).



d027r209a

Note

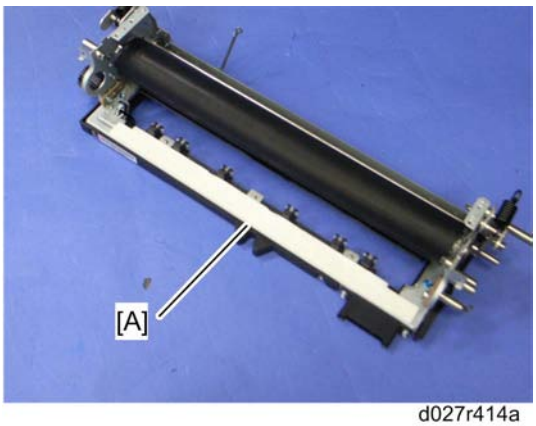
- Do not wipe off the grease of the new idle gear when replacing the idle gear [A]. (The actual idle gear [A] is white.)

4.11.4 FUSING CLEANING FELT

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")

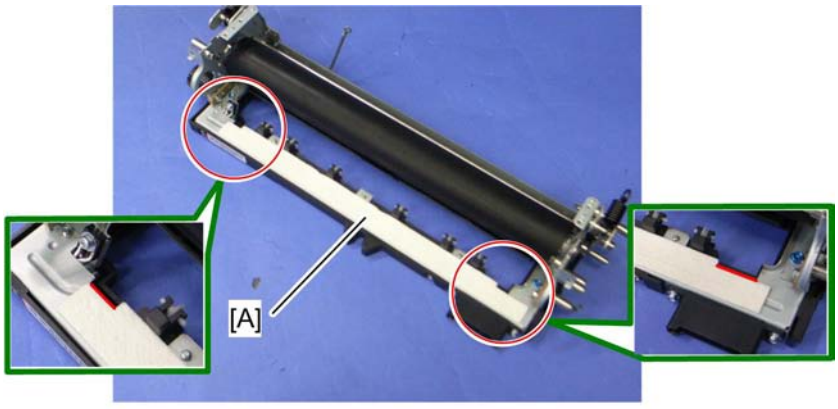
2. Heating roller (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")



d027r414a

3. Remove the fusing cleaning felt [A].

When attaching a new fusing cleaning felt



d027r414

Attach the fusing cleaning felt [A], aligning both edges of the fusing cleaning felt with the red lines on the bottom cover.

Note

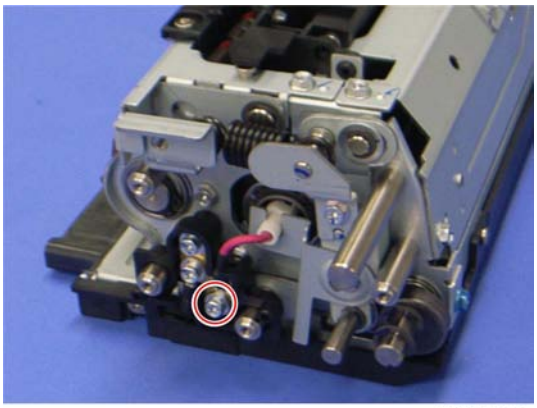
- Make sure that the fusing cleaning felt is correctly attached to the frame. Otherwise, dust from the IH coil unit may fall on the paper in the fusing unit and the output becomes dirty.

4.11.5 FUSING LAMP

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

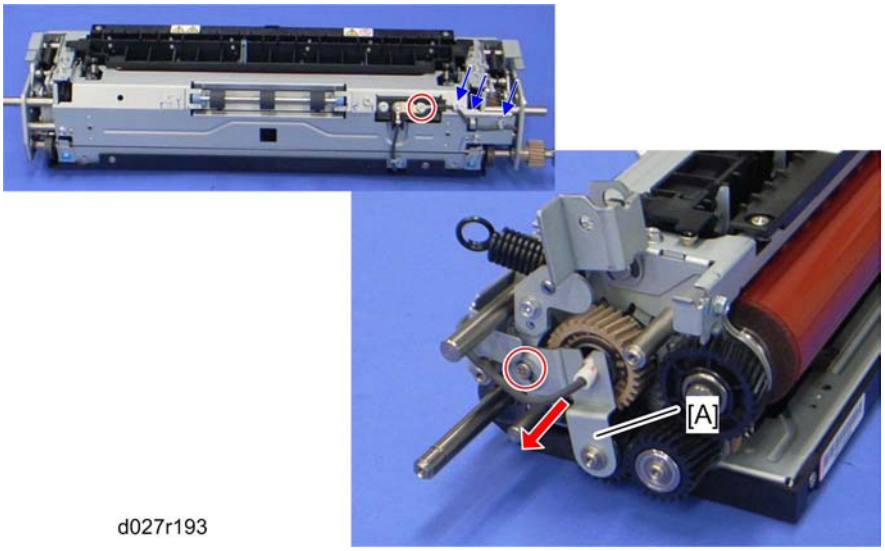
Fusing Unit")

2. Front bracket (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Rear bracket (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")



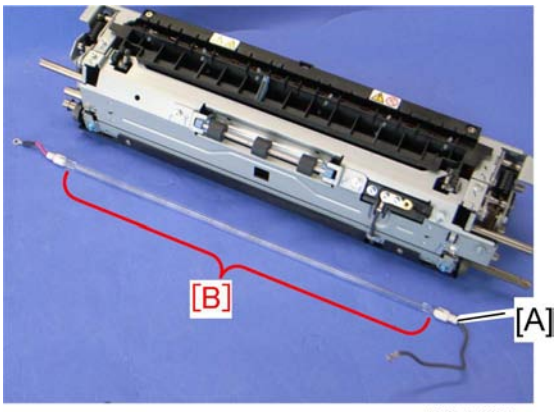
d027r192

4. Front terminal of the fusing lamp (☞ x 1)



d027r193

5. Rear terminal of the fusing lamp (☞ x 1, 🔩 x 3)
6. Fusing lamp rear bracket [A] (☞ x 1)



d027r193a

Fusing

7. Fusing lamp [A]

CAUTION

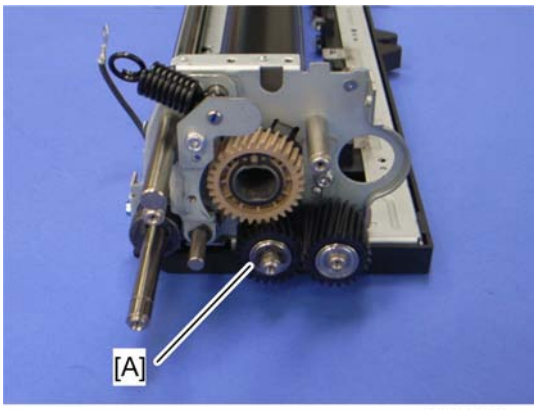
- Remove the fusing lamp without touching the glass part [B].
- Pay attention to the direction of the fusing lamp during the re-installation.

4.11.6 FUSING DRIVE GEAR

1. Heating roller (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
2. Fusing lamp rear bracket (☛ p.4-124 "

Fusing

Fusing Lamp")



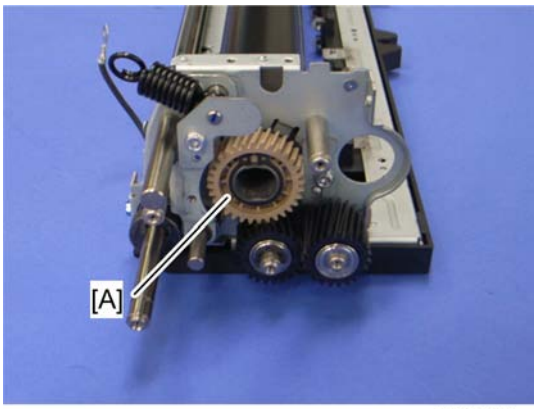
d027r201a

3. Fusing drive gear [A] (ℂ x 1)

4.11.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING

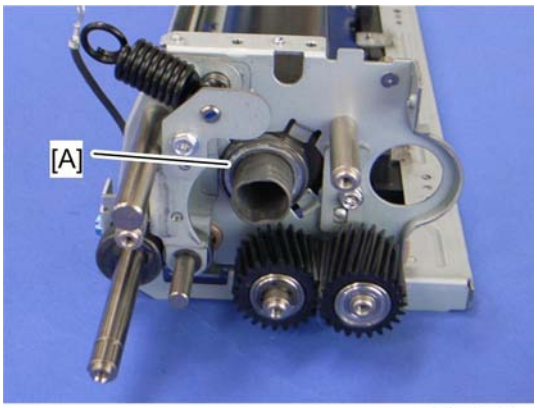
1. Heating roller(☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
2. Fusing lamp (☛ p.4-124 "

Fusing Lamp")



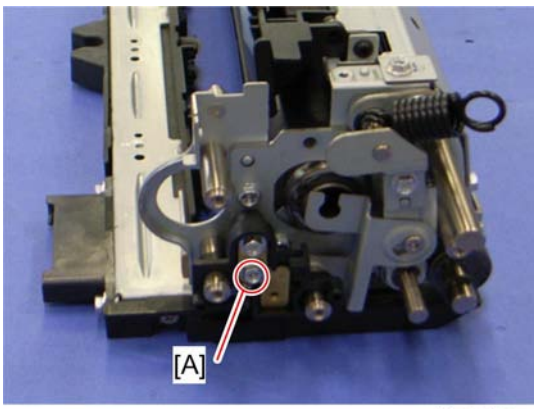
d027r201

3. Pressure roller gear [A] at the rear side (x 1)



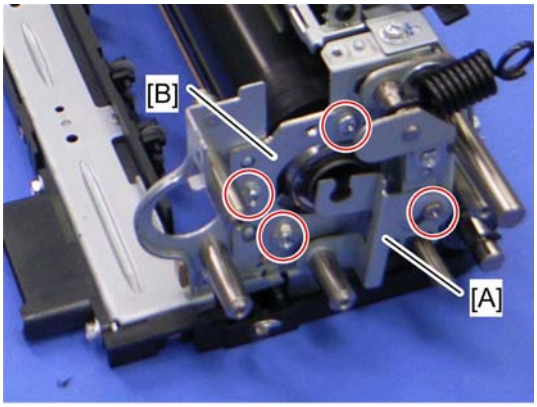
d027r216

4. Pressure roller bearing [A] at the rear side



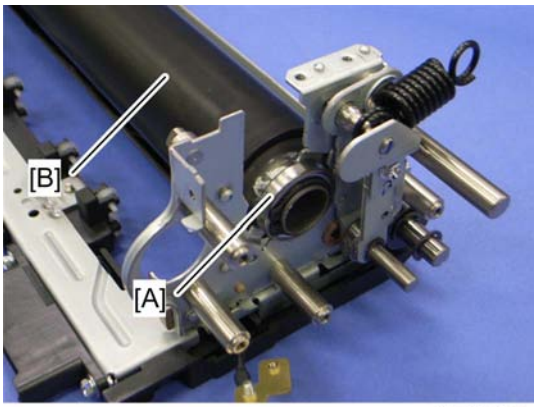
d027r198

5. Front terminal [A] (x 1)



d027r199

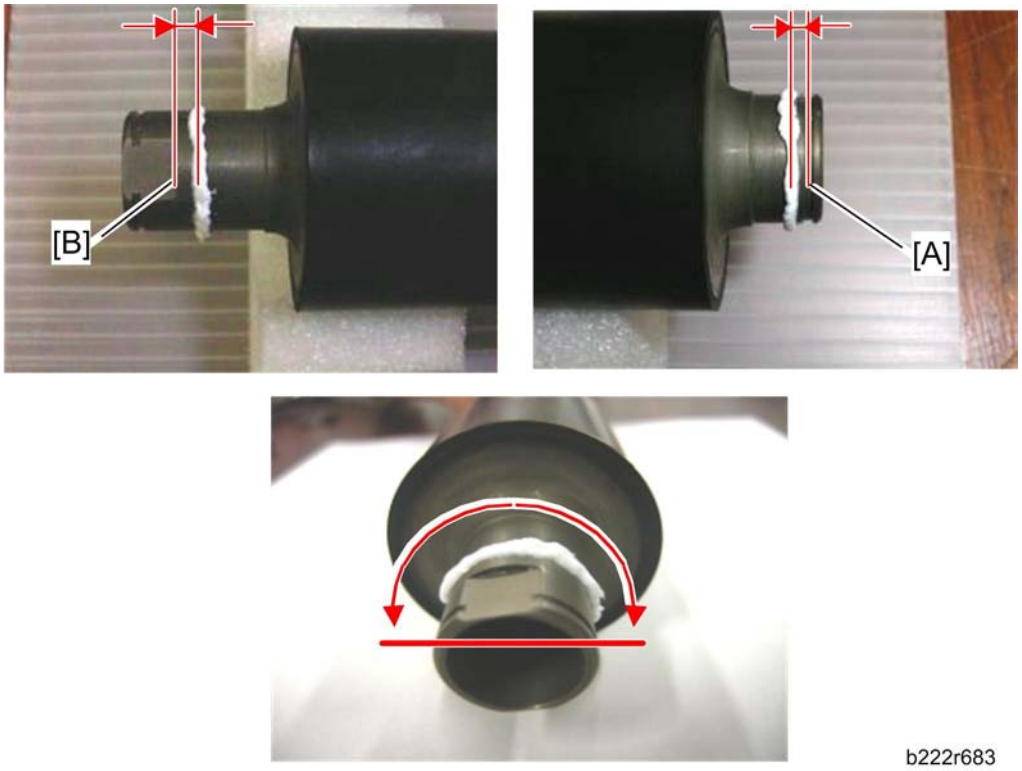
6. Lamp holder front bracket [A] (☞ x 1)
7. Pressure roller bracket [B] at the front side (☞ x 2, binding screw x 1)



d027r200

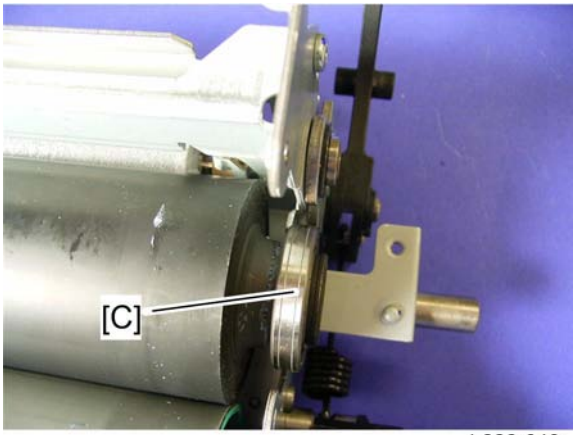
8. Pressure roller bearing [A] at the front side (ℂ x 1)
9. Pressure roller [B]

When re-installing the pressure roller



b222r683

1. Apply "Barrierta S552R" to the front shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the notch [A], and to the rear shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the edge [B]. (Apply the lubricant to half of the circumference of the pressure roller, as shown in the lower of the three above diagrams.)



b222r648

2. Make sure that pressure roller bearing [A] at the front side is set as shown above.

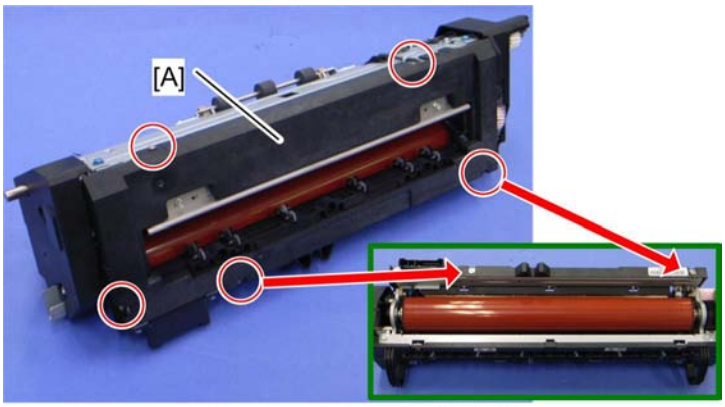
4.11.8 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")

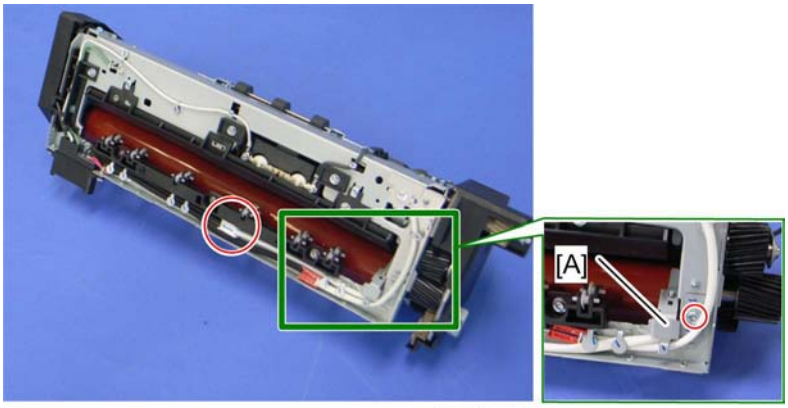
2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-124 "

Fusing Lamp")



d027r211

3. Fusing bottom cover [A] (x 5)



d027r212

4. Heating roller thermistor with bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)

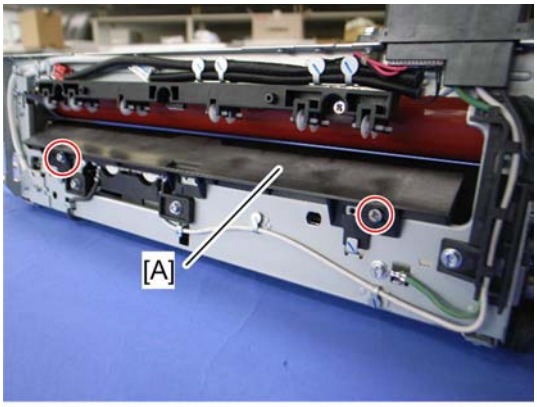
4.11.9 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing

Fusing Unit")

2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Fusing bottom cover (☛ p.4-132 "Heating Roller Thermistor")

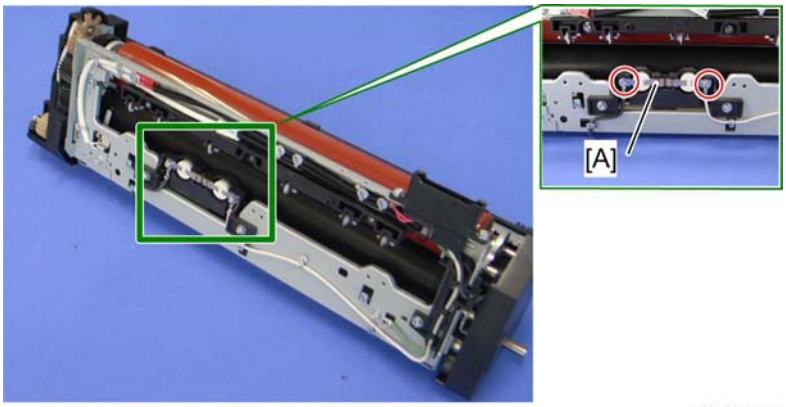


d027r213

4. Entrance guide plate [A] (🔩 x 2)

Note

- The entrance guide plate must be removed with the orientation of the fusing unit as shown above, to protect the surface of the heating roller from damage.



d027r214

5. Pressure roller thermostats [A] (🔩 x 4)

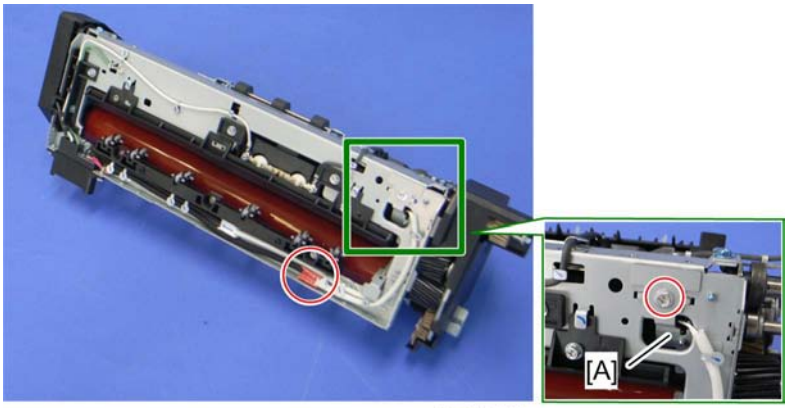
4.11.10 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing

Fusing Unit")

2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Fusing bottom cover (☛ p.4-132 "Heating Roller Thermistor")



d027r215

4. Pressure roller thermistor [A] (🔩 x 1)

4.11.11 ONE-WAY CLUTCH GEAR AND IDLE GEAR

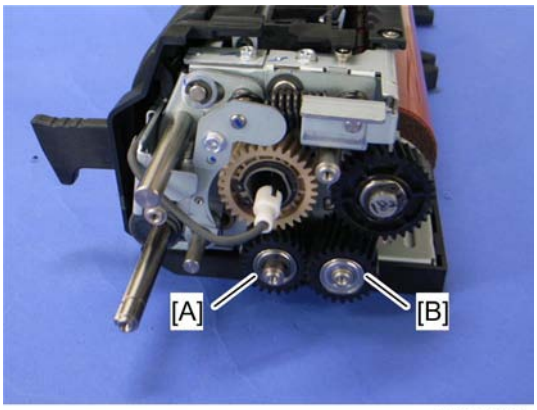
1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing

Fusing Unit")

2. Rear fusing cover (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Pressure roller contact shaft actuator and pressure roller contact shaft gear (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
4. Rear bracket (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
5. Fusing lamp rear bracket (☛ p.4-124 "

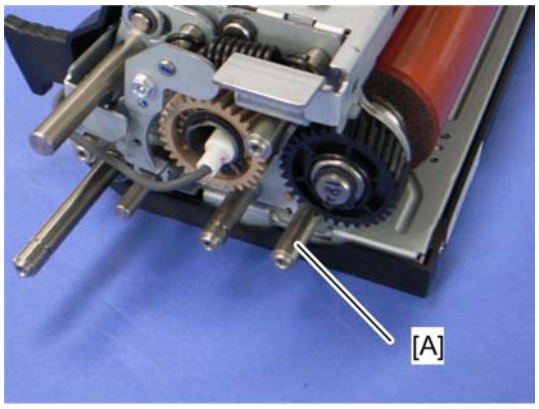
Fusing Lamp")



d027r218

6. One-way clutch gear [A] (ℂ x 1) and idle gear [B]

When re-installing the idle gear

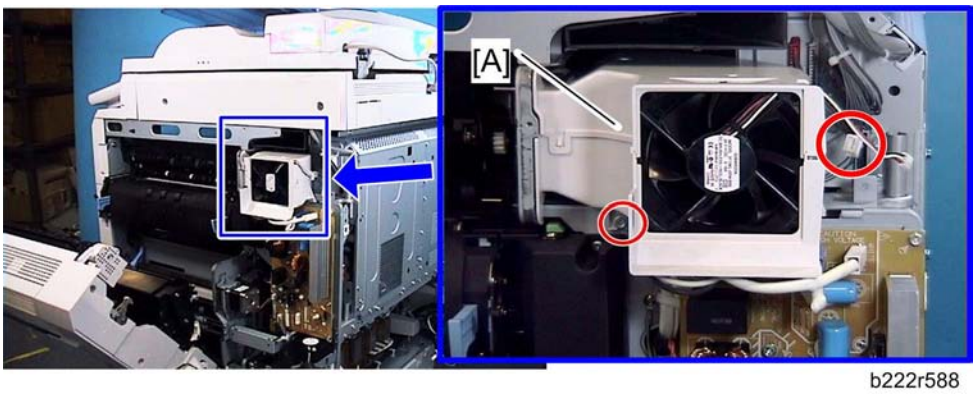


d027r218a

1. Apply one spot of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of the spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the idle gear shaft [A].

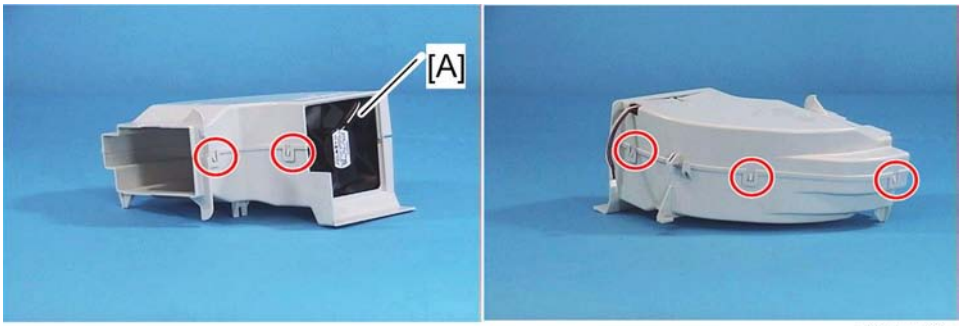
4.11.12 FUSING FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222r588

3. Fusing duct [A] (x 1, x 1)



d027r589

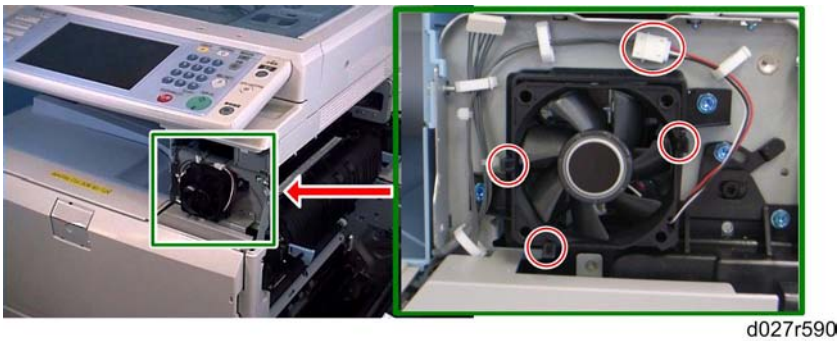
4. Fusing fan [A] (hook x 5)

When installing the fusing fan

Make sure that the fusing fan is installed with its decal facing the right side of the machine.

4.11.13 PAPER EXIT FAN

1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")



d027r590

3. Paper exit fan [A] (☜ x 1, hook x 3)

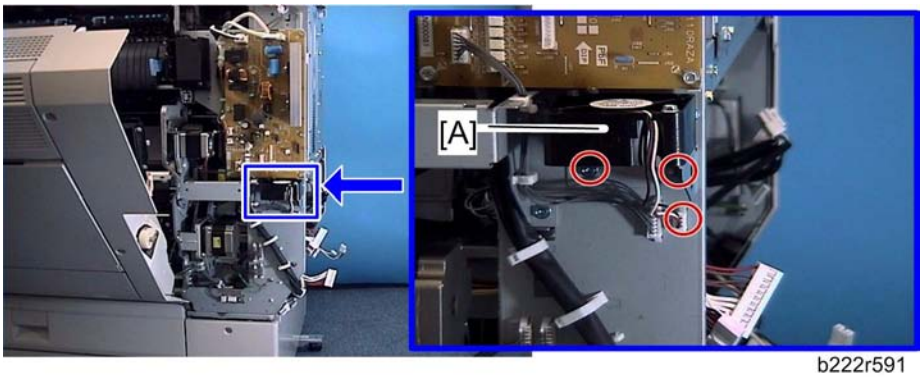
When installing the paper exit fan

Note

- Make sure that the paper exit fan is installed with its decal facing the rear of the machine.

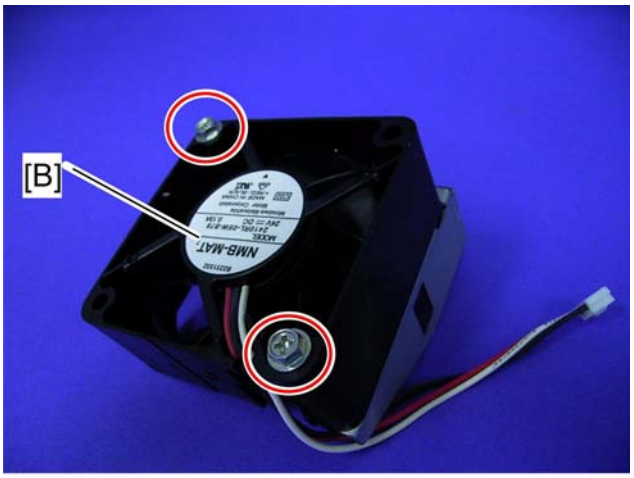
4.11.14 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222r591

3. IH inverter fan bracket [A] (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 1)



b222r592

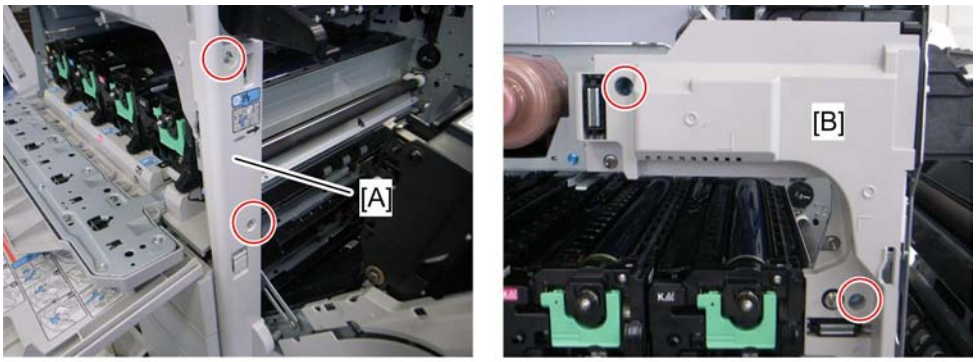
4. IH inverter fan [B] (🔩 x 2)

When installing the IH inverter fan

Make sure that the IH inverter fan is installed with its decal facing the upper side of the machine.

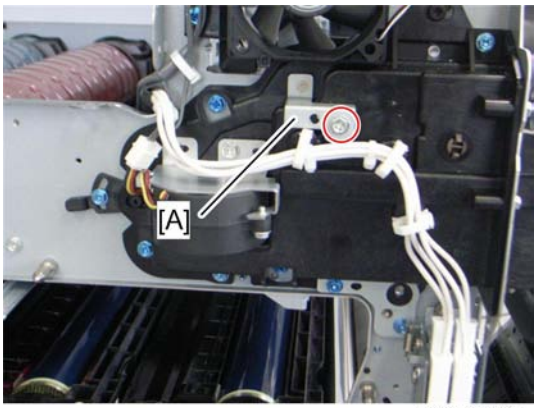
4.11.15 THERMOPILE

1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Pull out trays 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit.



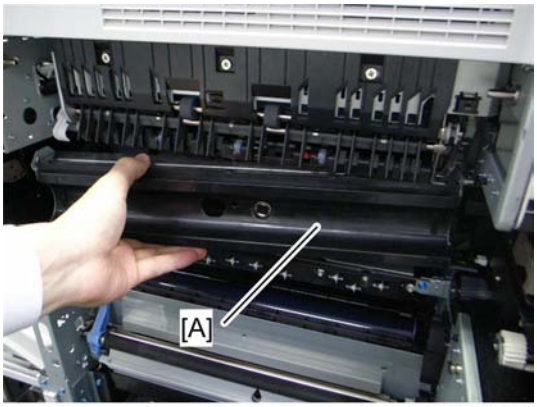
d027r219

4. Right front cover [A] and front inner cover [B]



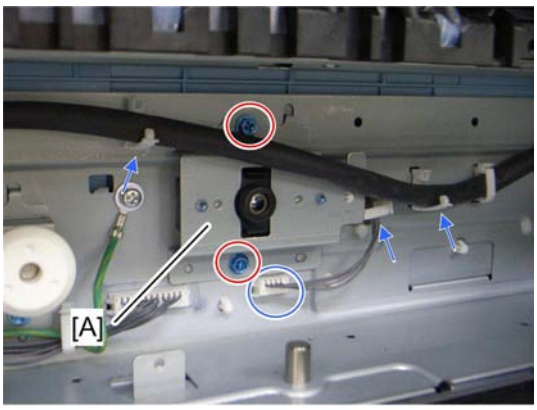
d027r220a

5. Bracket [A] (☞ x 1)



d027r223

6. IH coil unit [A]
   - First, release the front side of the IH coil unit.



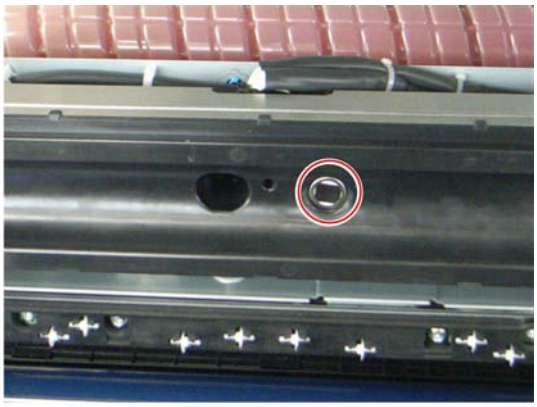
d027r224

7. Thermopile bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 3)
8. Thermopile (x 2)

When cleaning the lens of the thermopile

⚠CAUTION

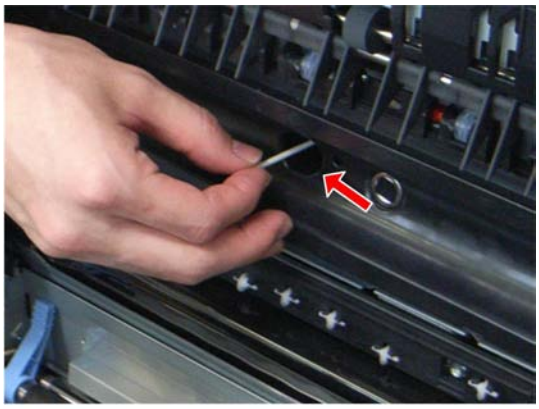
- Do this cleaning procedure after the fusing unit has completely cooled down. Otherwise, you may get a serious burn.
- Do not push the thermostats on the IH coil unit. If you do, the thermostats will be opened. In that case, the IH coil unit must be replaced.



d027r617

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")



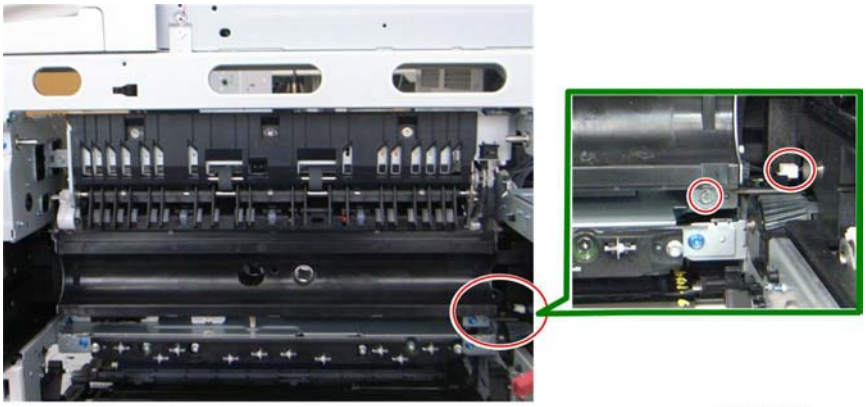
d027r415

2. Clean with a cotton-swab dipped in alcohol.

4.11.16 PRESSURE ROLLER HP SENSOR

1. Open the right door.
2. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")



d027r413

3. Pressure roller HP sensor (x 1, x 1)

4.11.17 IH COIL FAN

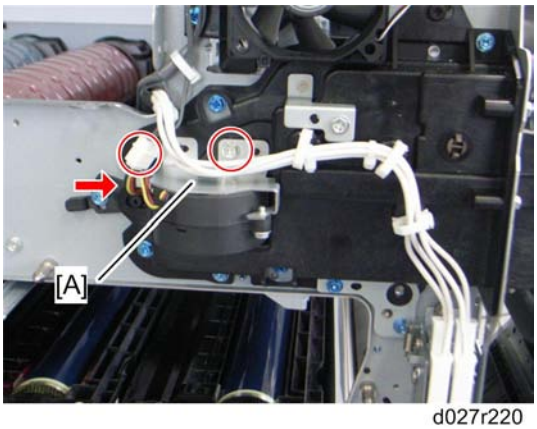
1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Pull out trays 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-145 "

Fusing

Thermopile")

4. Right front cover and front inner cover (☛ p.4-145 "

Thermopile")



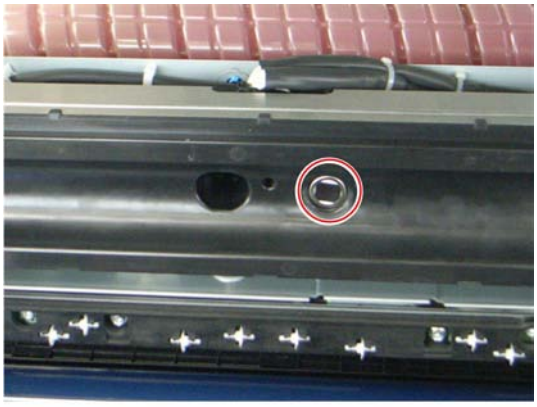
d027r220

5. IH coil fan bracket [A] (x 1, x 1, x 1)
6. IH coil fan (x 2)

4.11.18 IH COIL UNIT

⚠CAUTION

- Do not push the thermostats on the IH coil unit. If you do, the thermostats will be opened. In that case, the IH coil unit must be replaced.



d027r617

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")

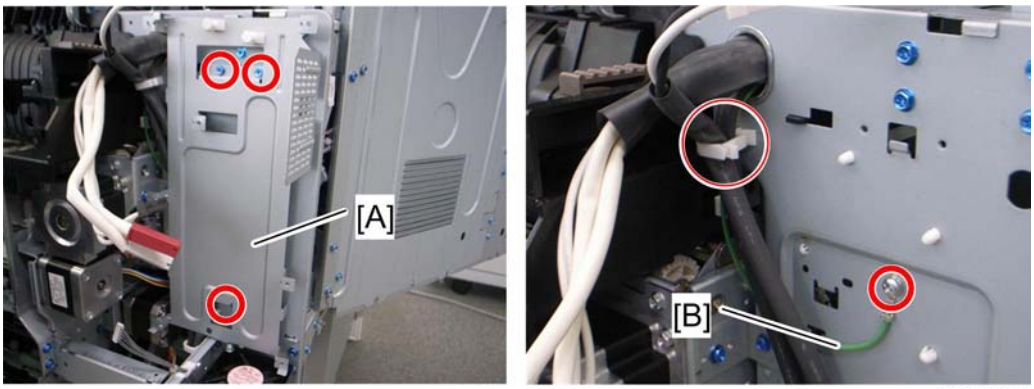
2. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
3. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
4. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").
5. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-142 "

Fusing

Fusing Fan")

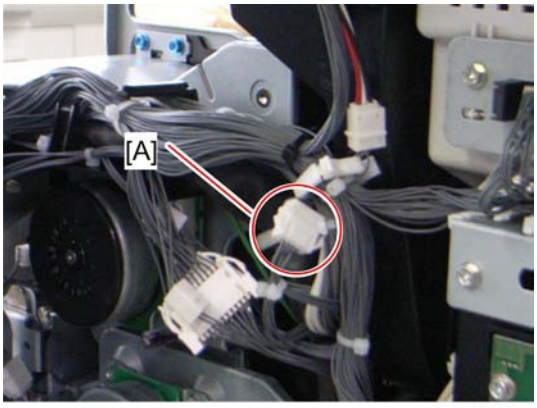
6. IH inverter (☛ p.4-198 "

IH Inverter")



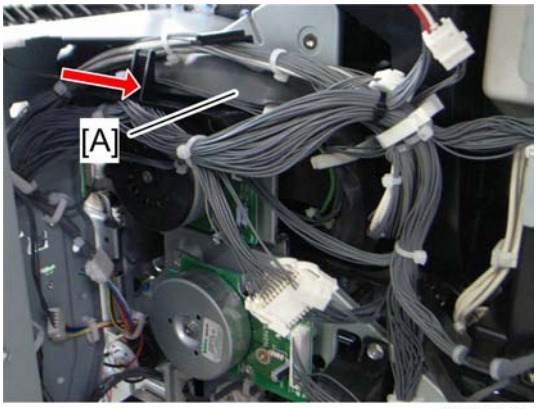
d027r618

7. IH inverter bracket [A] (x 3)
8. Ground cable [B] (x 1, x 1)



d027r221

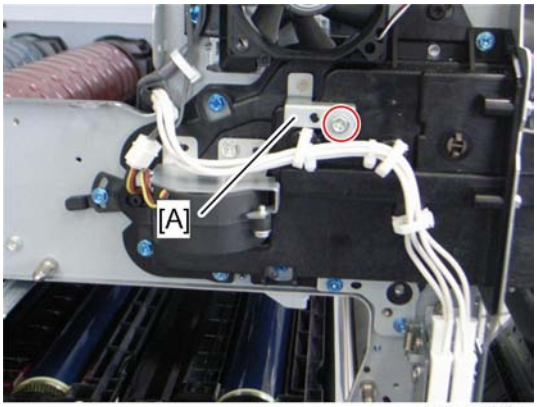
9. Remove the connector [A].



d027r222

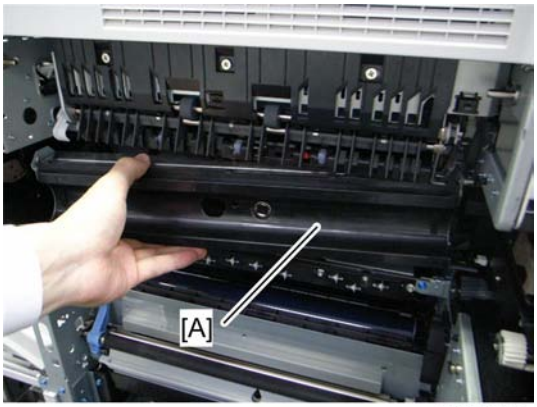
10. Pull the Harness [A] in the arrow direction.

Fusing



d027r220a

11. Bracket [A] (🔩 x 1)



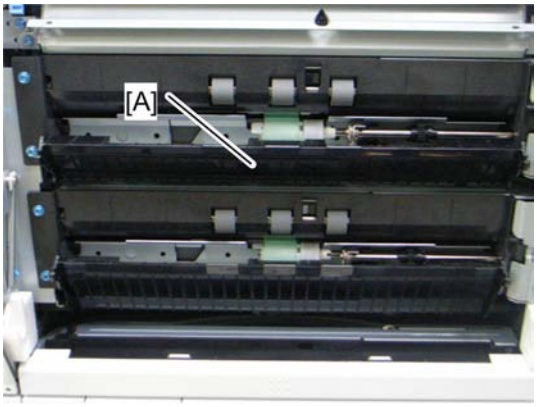
d027r223

12. IH coil unit [A] (First, release the front side of the IH coil unit.)

4.12 PAPER FEED

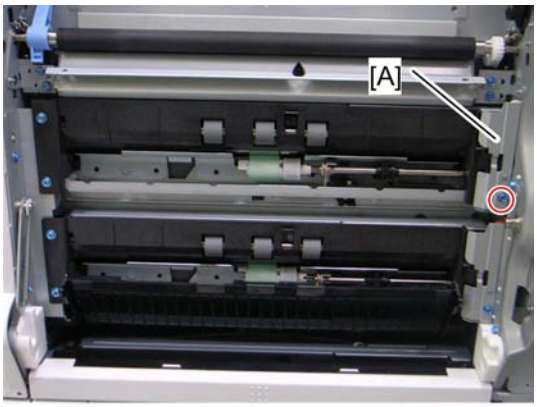
4.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Duplex unit (☛ p.4-178 "Duplex Unit")
4. Pull out tray 1 and tray 2.



d027r168

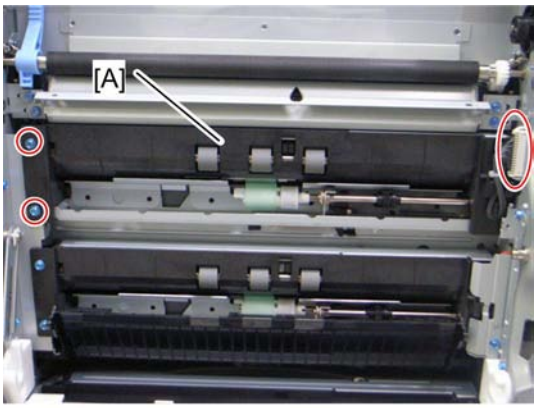
5. Paper guide plate [A] (hook x 2)



d027r169

6. Harness cover [A] (🔩 x 1)

Paper Feed



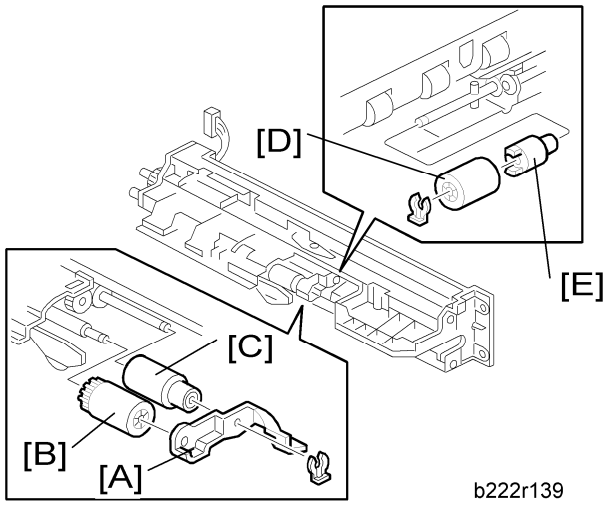
d027r170

7. Paper feed unit [A] (x 2, x 1)

4.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS

Tray 1 and Tray 2

1. Paper feed unit (☛ p.4-157 "Paper Feed Unit")



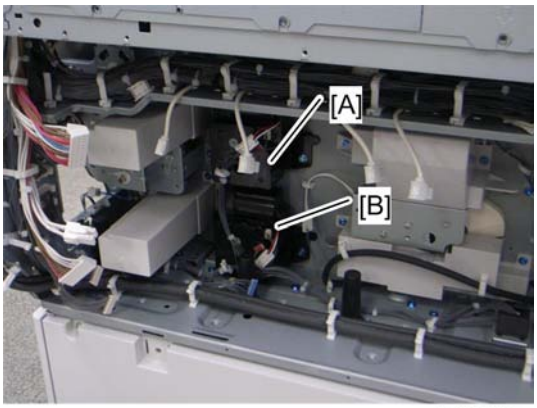
b222r139

2. Roller holder [A] (x 1)
3. Pick-up roller [B]
4. Feed roller [C]
5. Separation roller [D] and torque limiter [E] (x 1)

4.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")
3. High voltage supply board bracket (☛ p.4-197 "

High Voltage Supply Board Bracket")

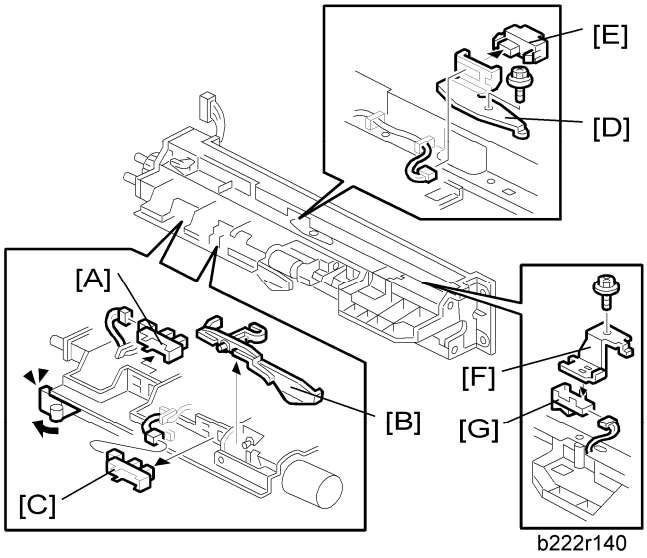


d027r173

4. Tray lift motor 1 [A] or 2 [B] (x 2, x 3, x 1 each)

4.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Paper feed unit (☛ p.4-157 "Paper Feed Unit")

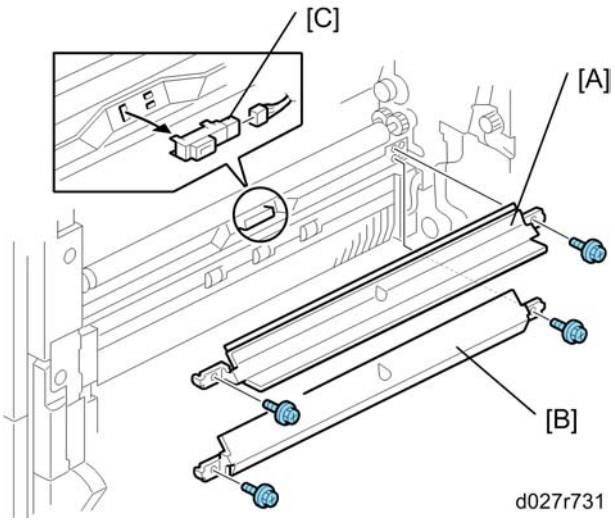


4. Paper overflow sensor [A]
5. Paper end feeler [B] and paper end sensor [C] (hook, x 1 each)
6. Vertical transport sensor bracket [D] (x 1, x 1)
7. Vertical transport sensor [E] (x 1, hook)
8. Paper feed sensor bracket [F] (x 1)
9. Paper feed sensor [G] (x 1, hook)

4.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR

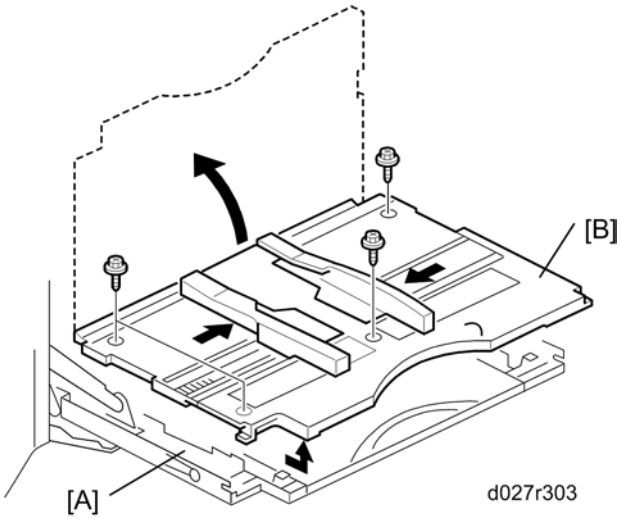
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")

Paper Feed

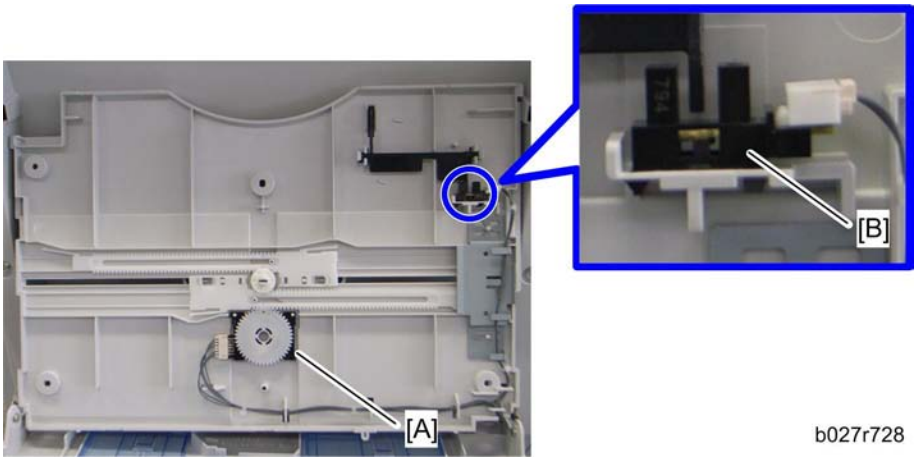


3. Paper guide plate 1 [A] and 2 [B] (🔩 x 2 each)
4. Registration sensor [C] (✋ x 1, hook)

4.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR AND BY-PASS PAPER LENGTH SENSOR

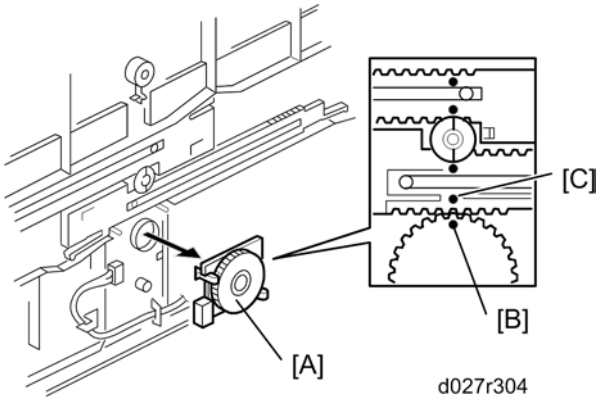


1. Open the by-pass tray [A].
2. Move the side fences to the center.
3. By-pass tray cover [B] (☞ x 4)



4. By-pass paper size sensor [A] (☞ x 1).
5. By-pass paper length sensor [B] (☞ x 1)

When reinstalling the by-pass paper size sensor



1. Adjust the projection [A] of the left side fence bar (it must be centered).
2. Install the by-pass paper size detection switch so that the hole [B] in this switch faces the projection [C] of the left side fence bar.
3. Reassemble the copier.
4. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
5. Check this switch operation with SP5803-011 (By-pass paper size < Input Check).

- Display on the LCD -

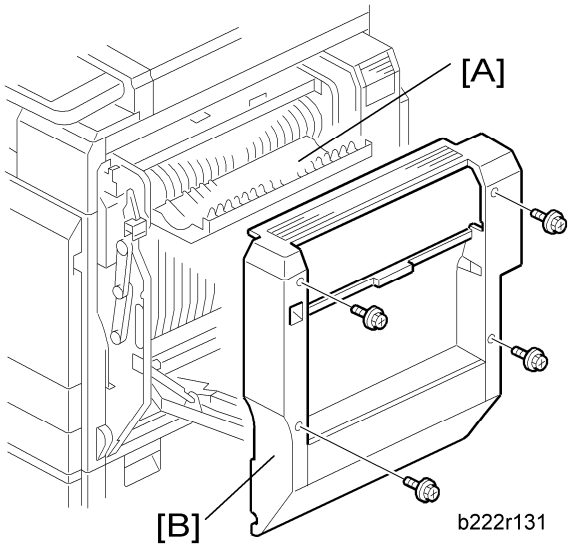
Paper Size	Display	Paper Size	Display
A3 SEF	00001110	A5 SEF	00001011
B4 SEF	00001100	B6 SEF	00000011
A4 SEF	00001101	A6 SEF	00000111
B5 SEF	00001001	Smaller A6 SEF	00001111

4.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY

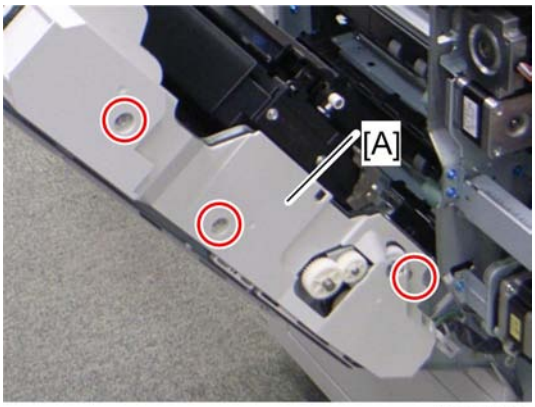
1. Open the right door.
2. By-pass tray cover (☛ p.4-163 "

Paper Feed

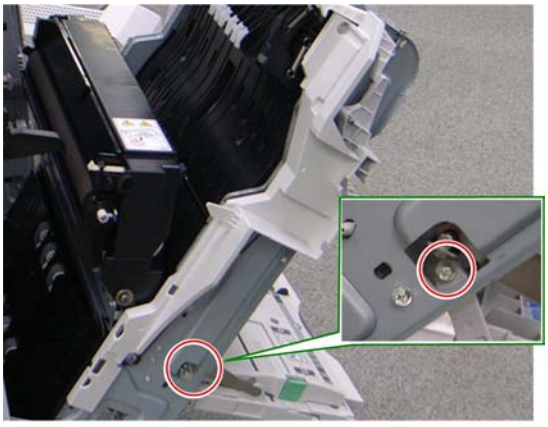
By-pass Paper Size Sensor and By-pass Paper Length Sensor")



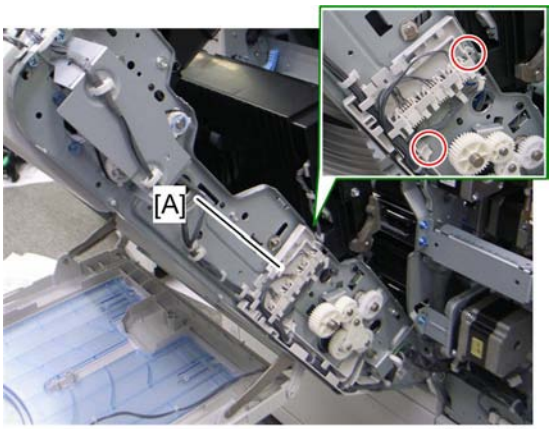
3. Open the duplex door [A].
4. Right door cover [B] (🔩 x 4)



5. Right door rear cover [A] (🔩 x 3)

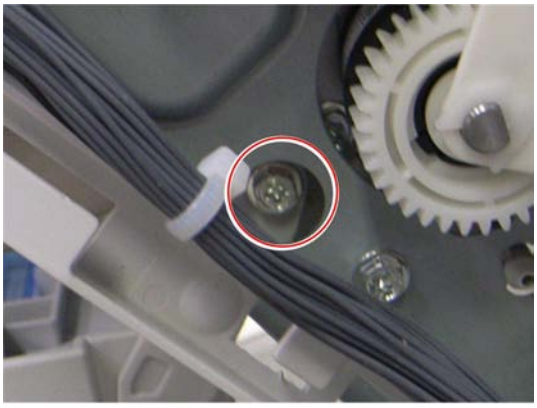


6. Remove the screw at the front side (🔩 x 1).



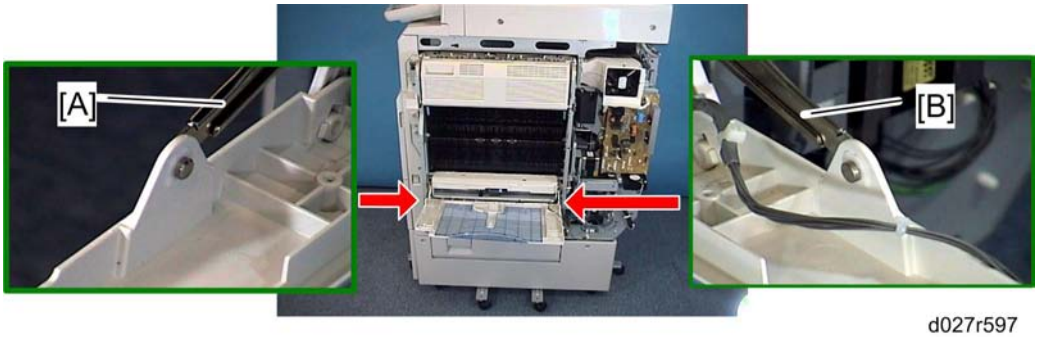
d027r177

7. Remove the cover [A] (2 hooks).



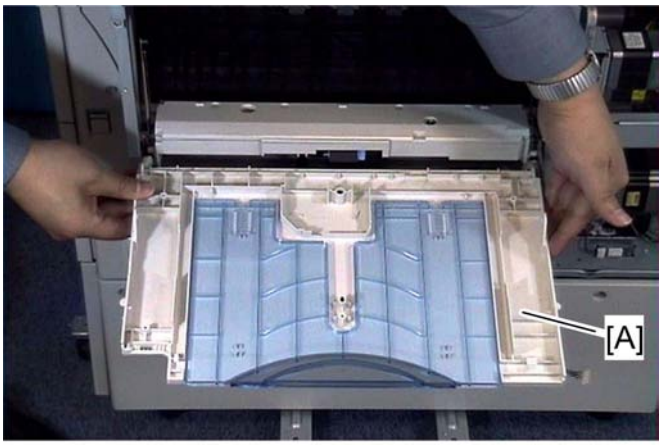
d027r178

8. Remove the screw at the rear side.



d027r597

9. Release the front [A] and rear [B] arms (⟲ x 1 each).



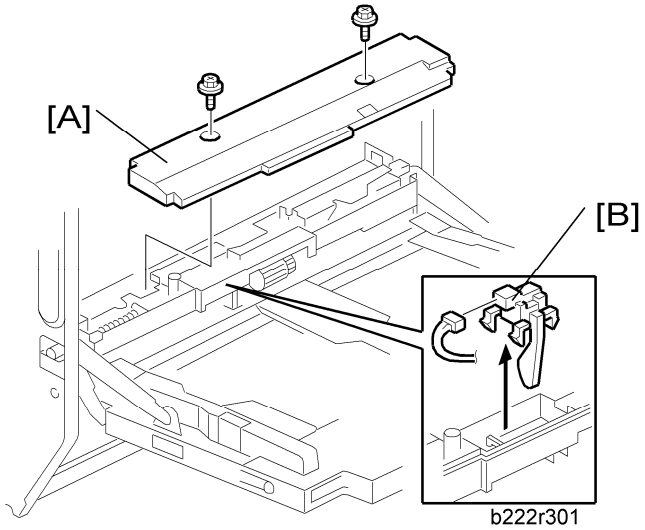
d027r598

10. By-pass bottom tray [A]

4.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR

1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-165 "

By-pass Bottom Tray")

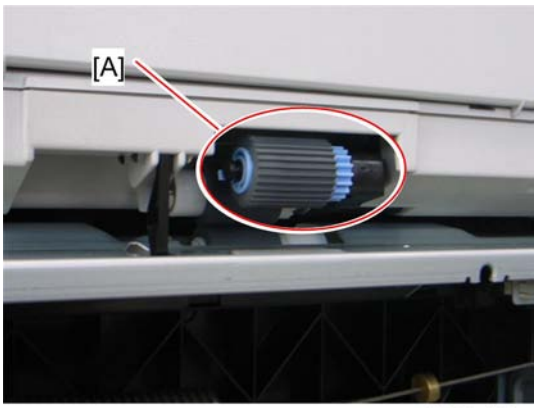


2. By-pass feed unit cover [A] (x 2).
3. By-pass paper end sensor [B] (x 1, hook)

4.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER

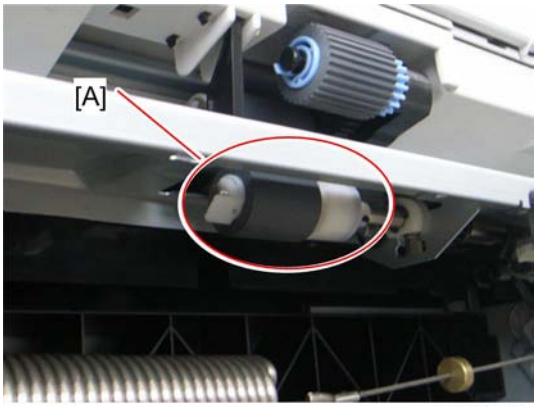
1. Right door cover (p.4-165 "

By-pass Bottom Tray")



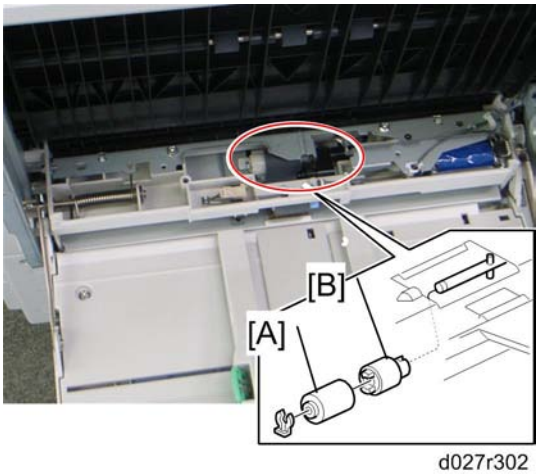
d027r179

2. By-pass pick-up roller [A] (hook)



d027r180

3. By-pass feed roller [A] (⟲ x 1)
4. By-pass feed unit cover (☛ p.4-168 "By-pass Paper End Sensor")



d027r302

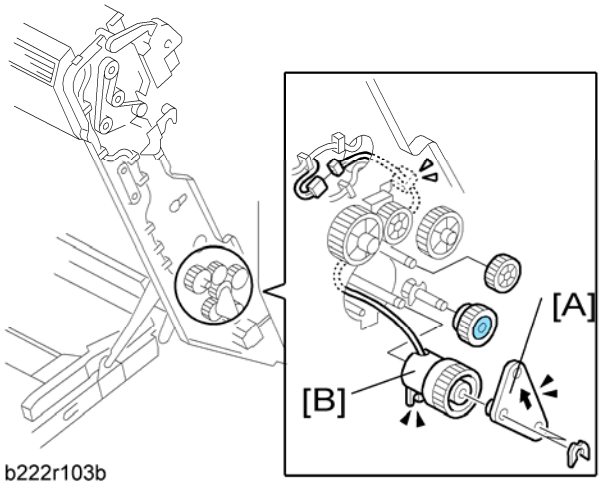
5. By-pass separation roller [A] (⟲ x 1)
6. Torque limiter [B]

4.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH

1. Open the right door.
2. Right door rear cover (☛ p.4-165 "

Paper Feed

By-pass Bottom Tray")



3. By-pass feed clutch holder [A] (x 2)
4. By-pass feed clutch [B] (x 1, x 1)

4.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT

1. Fusing Unit (☛ p.4-114 "

Fusing Unit")

2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-71 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
4. Inner Tray (☛ p.4-22 "Inner Tray")
5. Thermopile (☛ p.4-145 "

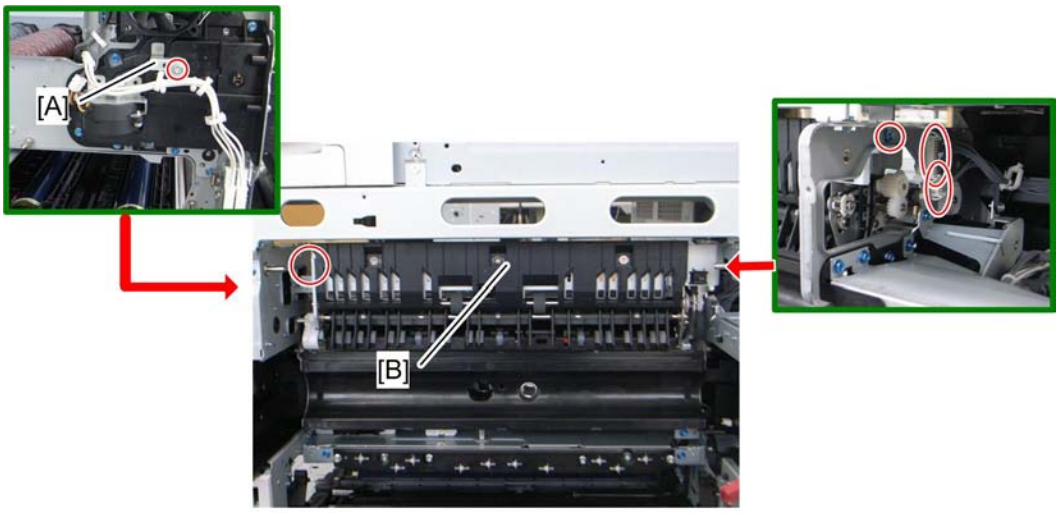
Paper Feed

Thermopile")

6. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
7. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
8. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-142 "

Fusing Fan")

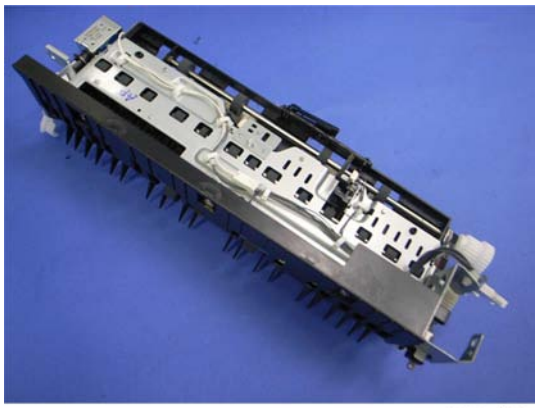
9. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box").



d027r181

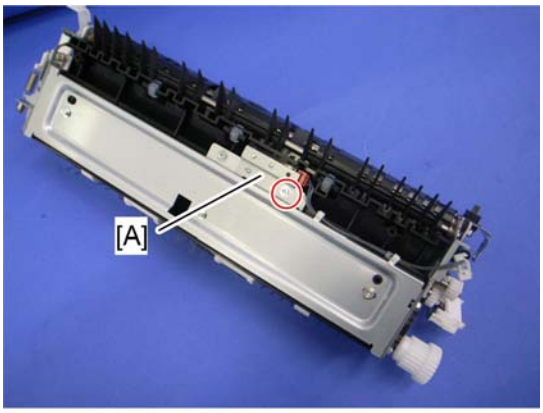
10. Gear cover [A] (🔩 x 1)
11. Paper exit unit [B] (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 2)

4.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR



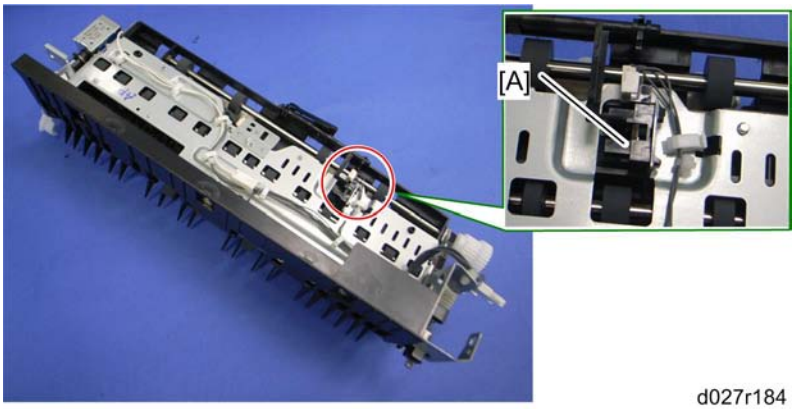
d027r182

1. Paper exit unit (☛ p.4-172 "Paper Exit Unit")



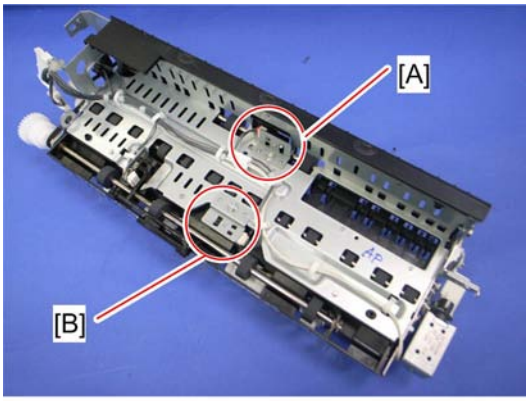
d027r183

2. Fusing exit sensor bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)
3. Remove the fusing exit sensor from the fusing exit sensor bracket (x 1)



d027r184

4. Paper overflow sensor [A] (x 1, hook)



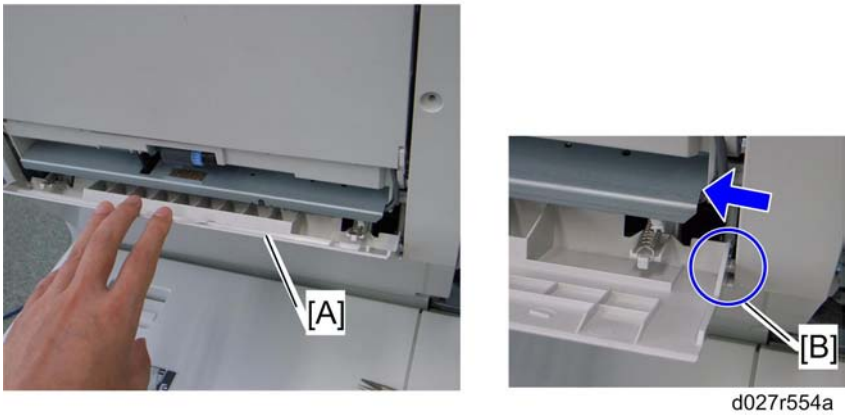
d027r185

5. Junction paper jam sensor bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)
6. Remove the junction paper jam sensor from the junction paper jam sensor bracket (hook)
7. Paper exit sensor bracket [B] (x 1, x 1)
8. Remove the paper exit sensor from the paper exit sensor bracket (hook)

4.13 DUPLEX UNIT

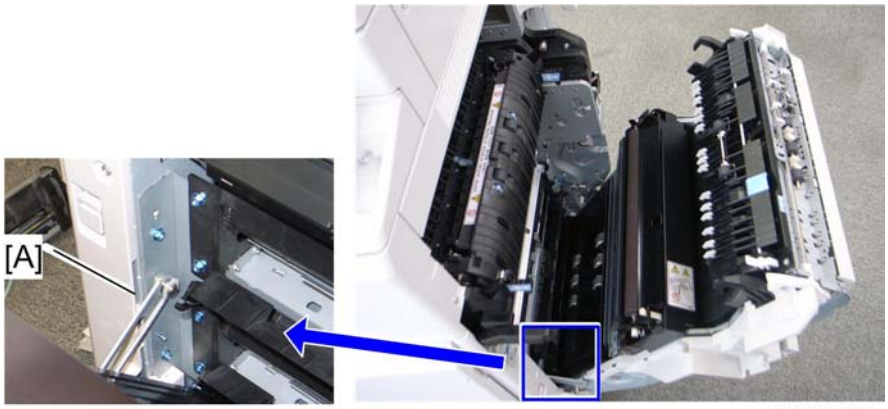
4.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



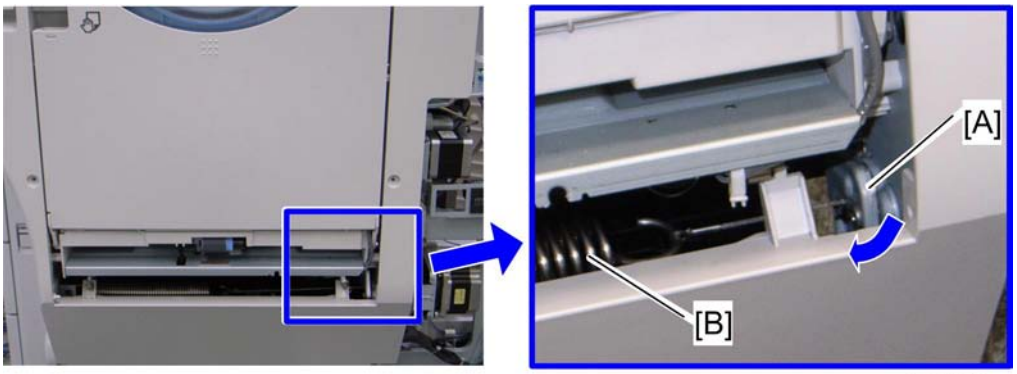
d027r554a

3. Open the lower door [A] of the duplex unit.
4. Release the tab [B] and remove the lower door (spring x 2).
5. Open the right door.



d027r555a

6. Release the front link [A] (x 1).
7. Keep the right door fully open.

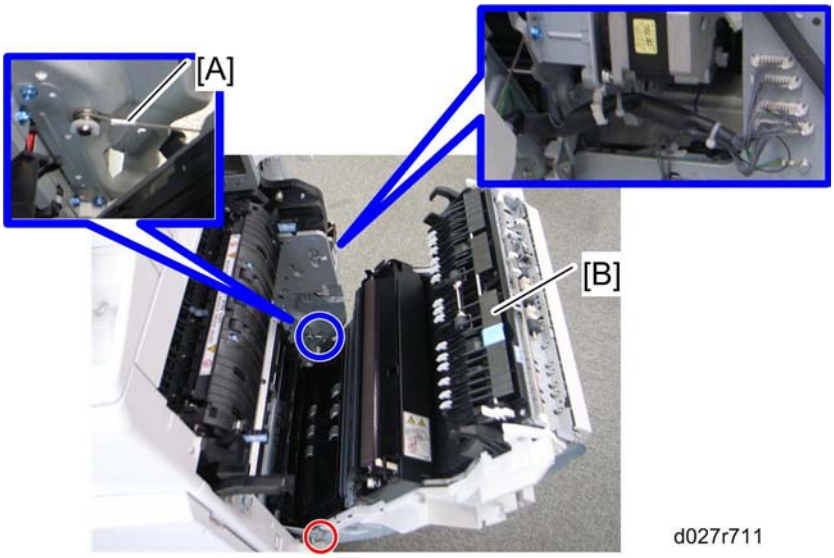


d027r556a

8. Push up the duplex unit a little bit, while pressing the bracket [A] to lock the spring [B].

Note

- Do not let the duplex unit open fully before releasing the wire (step 9). Otherwise, the lock for the spring [B] is released.

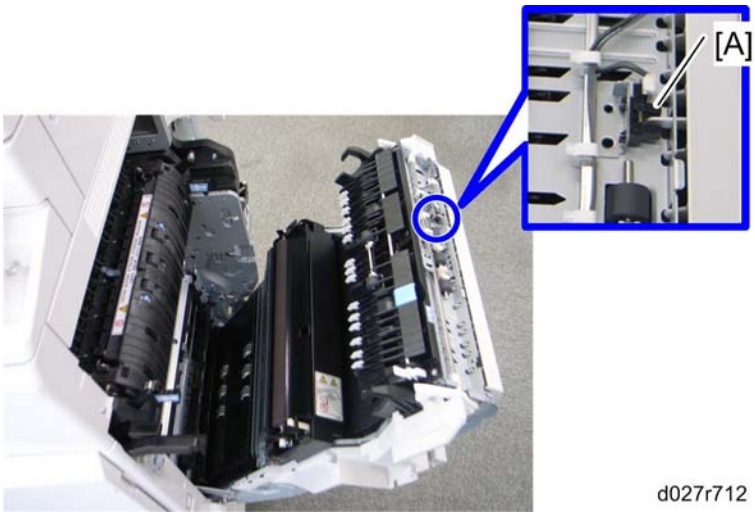


d027r711

9. Wire [A] (x 1)
10. Duplex unit [B] (x 1, Stud screw x 1, x 1, x 4, ground cable x 1)

4.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR

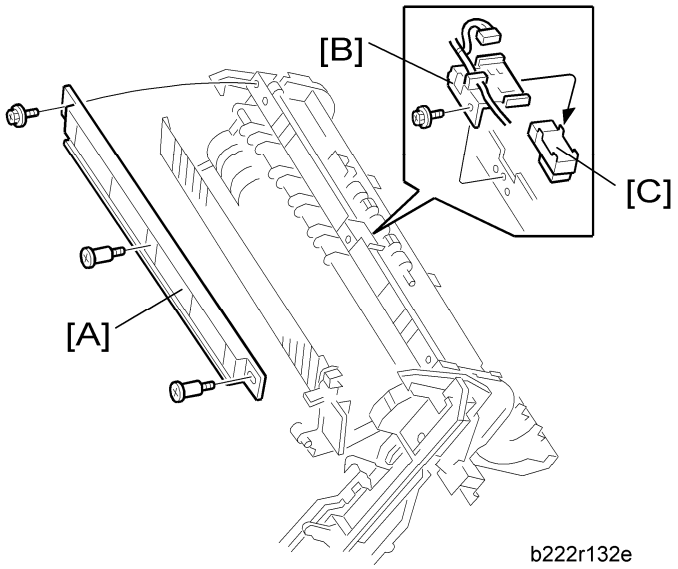
1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-178 "Duplex Unit")
2. Open the right door.



3. Duplex door sensor [A] (☞ x 1, hook)

4.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR

1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-178 "Duplex Unit")
2. Open the right door.



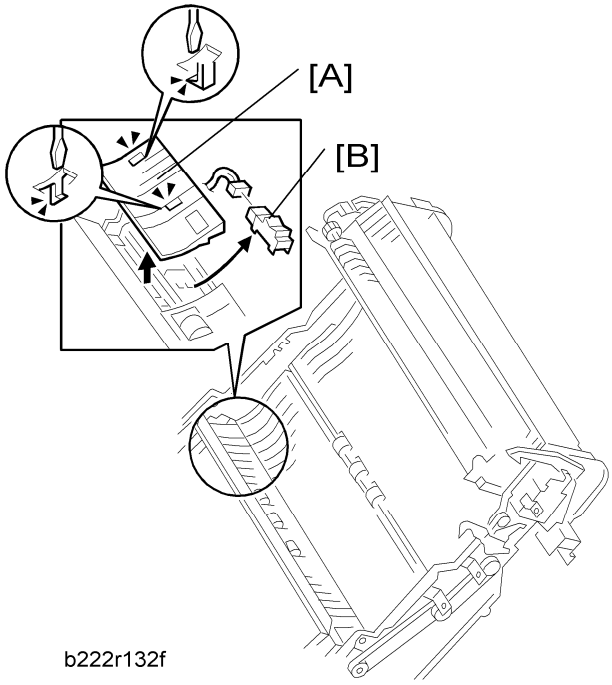
3. Duplex entrance guide [A] (☞ x1, stepped screw x 2)
4. Duplex entrance sensor bracket [B] (☞ x 1, ☞ x 1)
5. Duplex entrance sensor [C] (hook)

4.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR

1. Paper transfer unit (☛ p.4-79 "

Duplex Unit

Paper Transfer Unit")

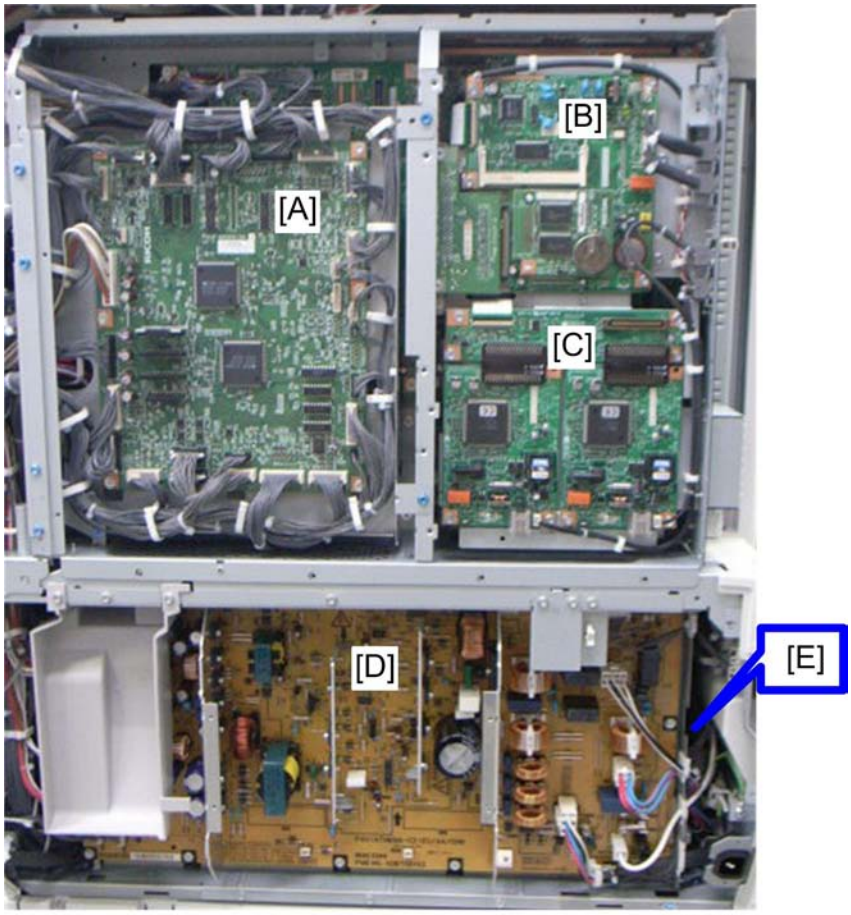


2. Guide plate [A] (two hooks)
3. Duplex exit sensor [B] (☞ x 1, hook)

4.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

4.14.1 BOARDS

Controller Box closed

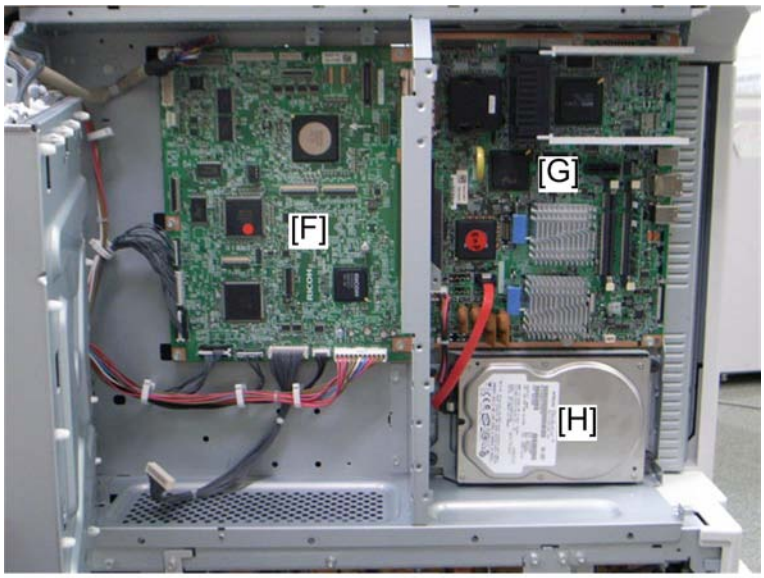


d027r729

[A]	IOB
[B]	FCU (Option)
[C]	G3 Interface Unit (Option)
[D]	PSU
[E]	High Voltage Supply Board (Behind the PSU [D])

Behind the IOB, FCU and G3 Interface Unit

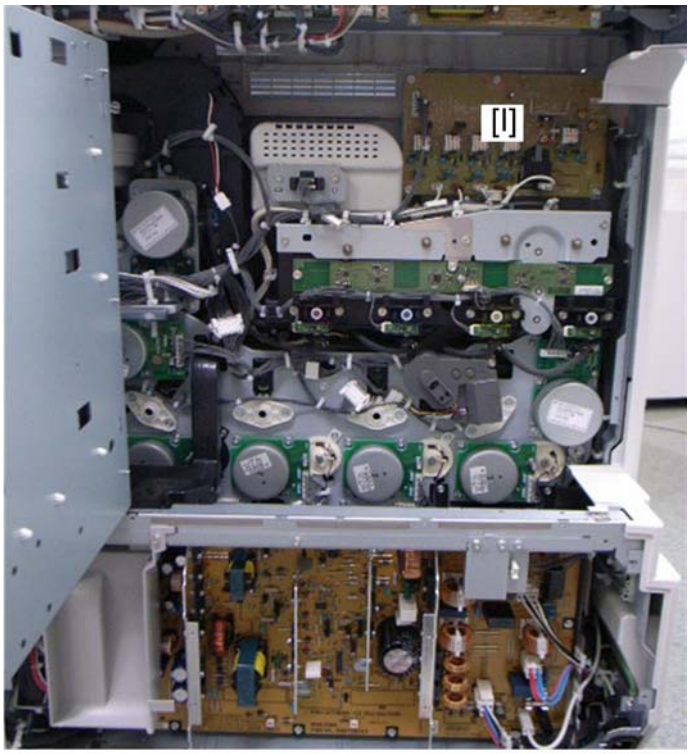
Electrical Components



d027r729a

[F]	BICU
[G]	Controller Board
[H]	HDD

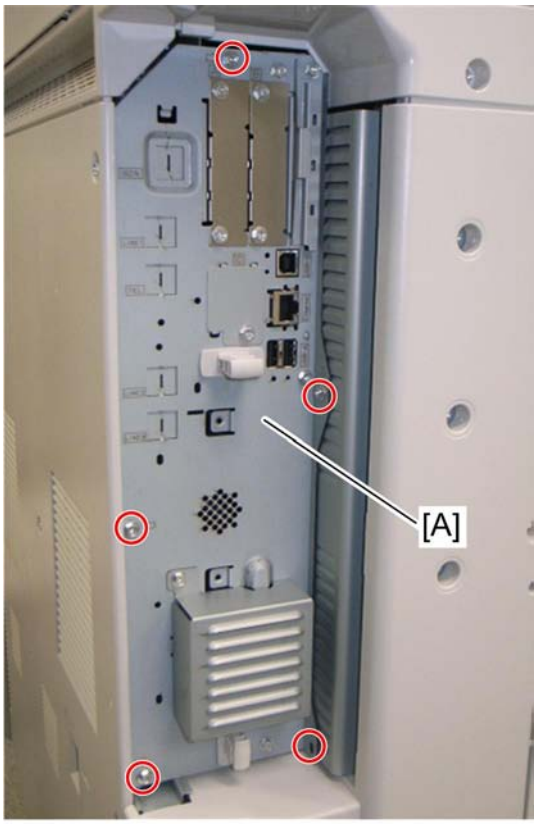
Controller Box Open



d027r730

[I]	ITB Power Supply Board

4.14.2 CONTROLLER UNIT

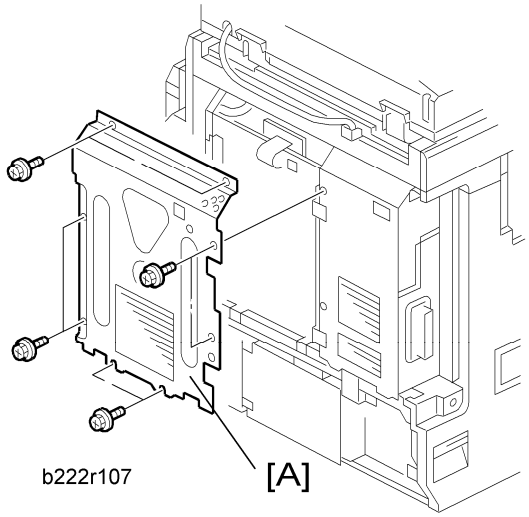


d027i075

1. Controller unit [A] (🔩 x 5)

4.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")

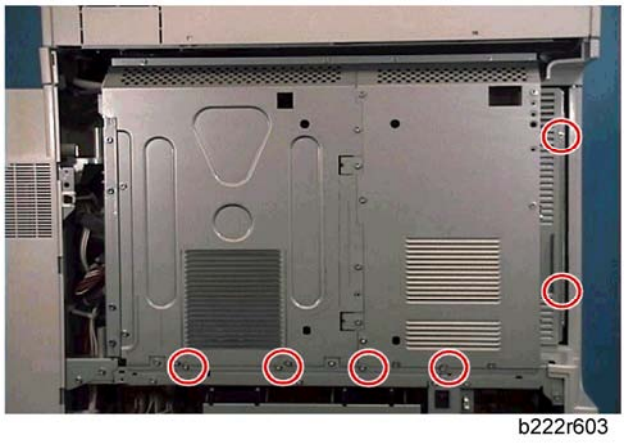


2. Controller box right cover [A] (☞ x 8)

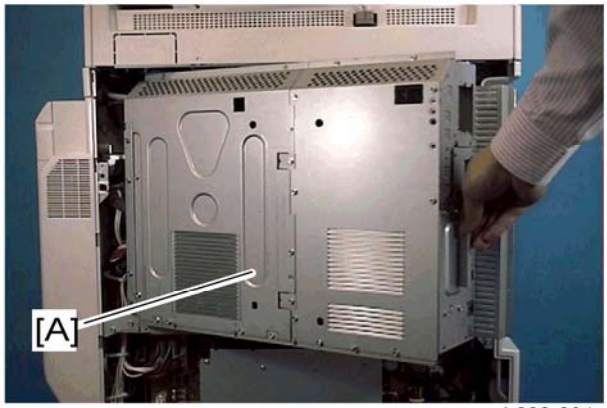
4.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX

When opening the controller box

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")



2. Remove six screws (red circles).



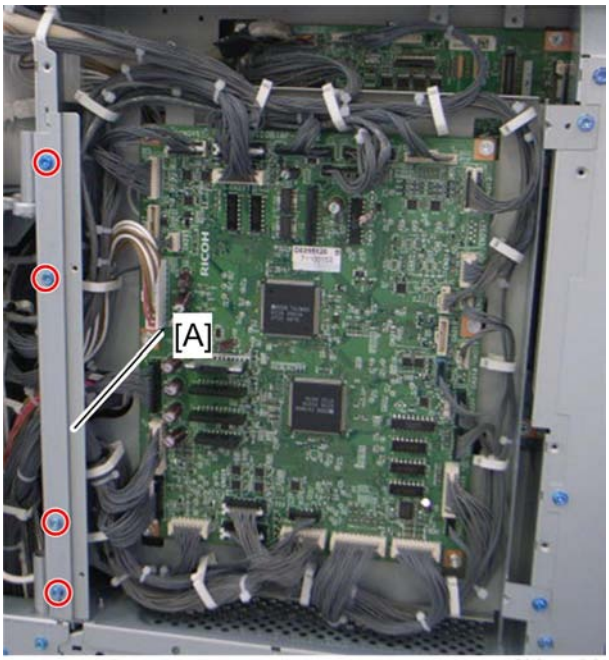
b222r604

3. Open the controller box [A].

When removing the controller box

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-187 "

Controller Box Right Cover ")

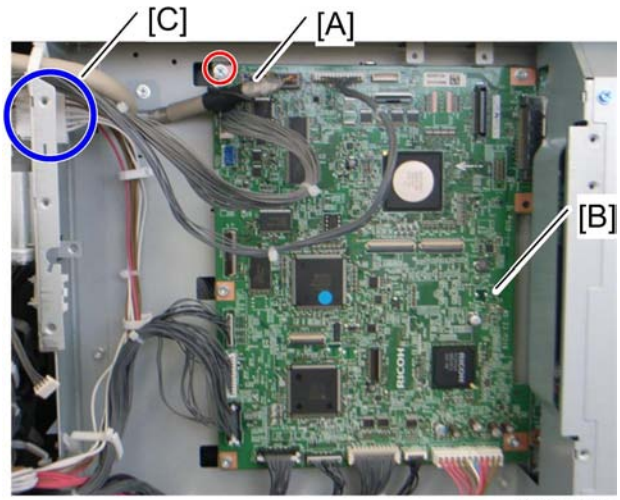


d027r714

4. Remove the controller box stay [A] (x 4).

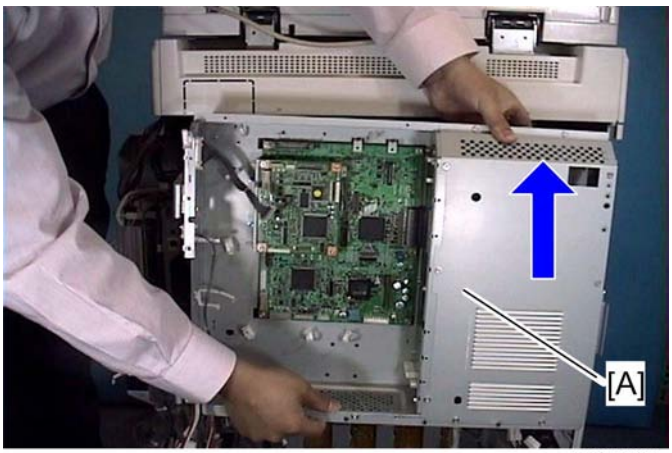
d027r713

5. Move the IOB bracket [A] aside (x 4, x All).



d027r715

6. Disconnect the scanner interface cable [A] (ground cable)
7. Release all clamps on the controller box frame.
8. Disconnect all connectors on the BICU [B] board.
9. Disconnect the connector [C] at the outer controller box and at the inner controller box.



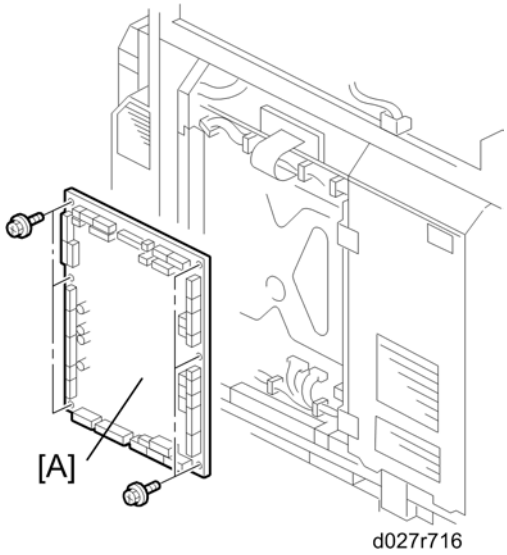
d027r607

10. Lift up the controller box [A], and then remove it.

4.14.5 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD)

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-187 "

Controller Box Right Cover ")



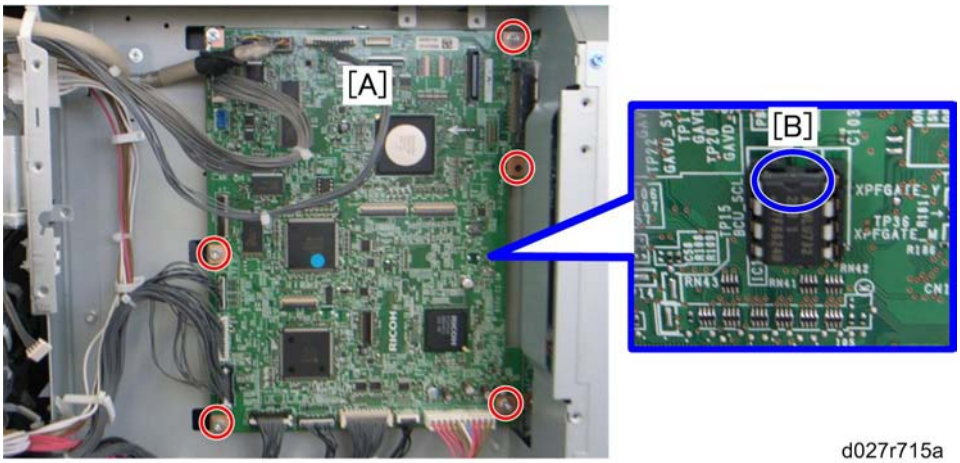
3. IOB [A] (🔩 x 6, All ✋s)

4.14.6 BICU

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-187 "

Controller Box Right Cover ")

3. Disconnect the harness (CN225) on the IOB board.
4. Move the IOB bracket aside (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



5. BICU [A] (🔧 x 5, ✋ x All)

Note

- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the BICU. Insert the NVRAM in the NVRAM slot with the "half-moon" pointing [B] to the upward side.

When installing the new BICU

Remove the NVRAM from the old BICU. Then install it on the new BICU after you replace the BICU. Replace the NVRAM (☛ p.4-204 "

NVRAM Replacement Procedure") if the NVRAM on the old BICU is defective.

Note

- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

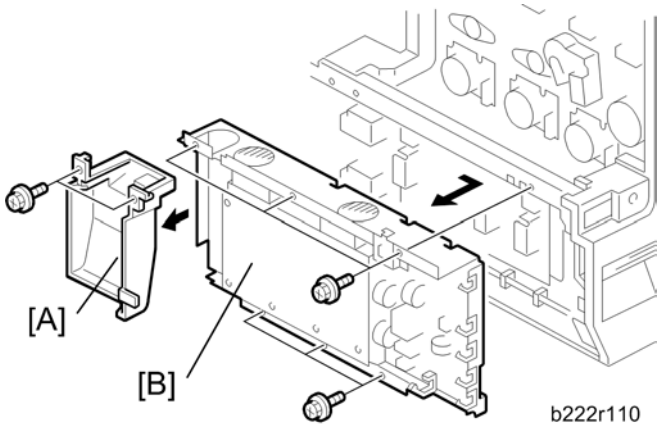
CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old BICU are the same for the new BICU when. Do not change the DIP switches on the BICU in the field.
- Make sure the serial number is input in the machine for the NVRAM data, if not, SC 995-001 occurs.

4.14.7 PSU

PSU bracket

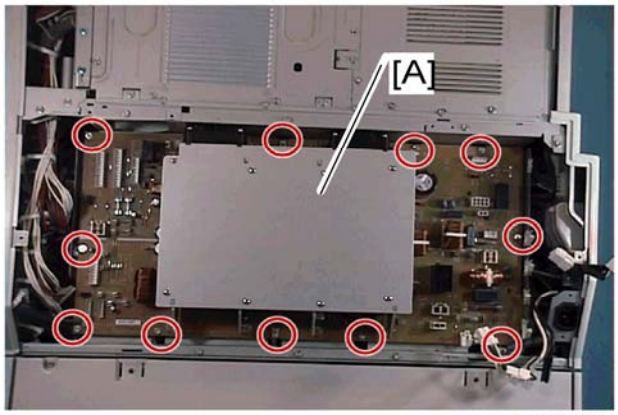
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")



2. Ventilation duct [A] (x 2)
3. PSU bracket [B] (x 6, x All, x All)

PSU board

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Ventilation duct (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")

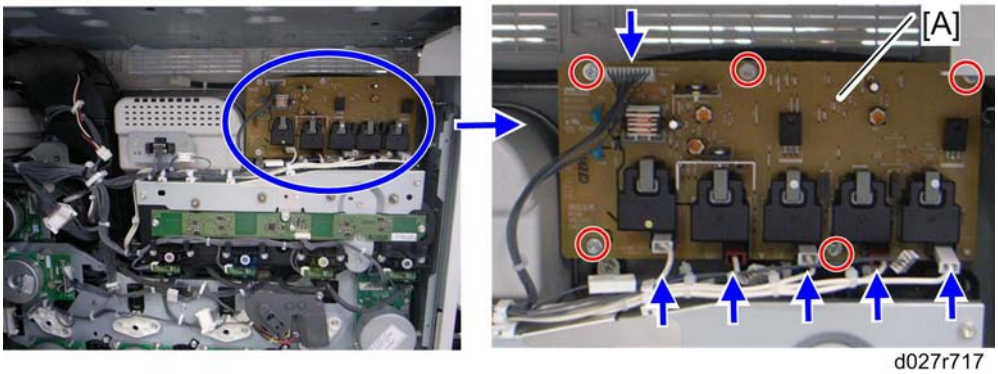


b222r608

3. PSU board [A] (x 11, all s, all s)

4.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD

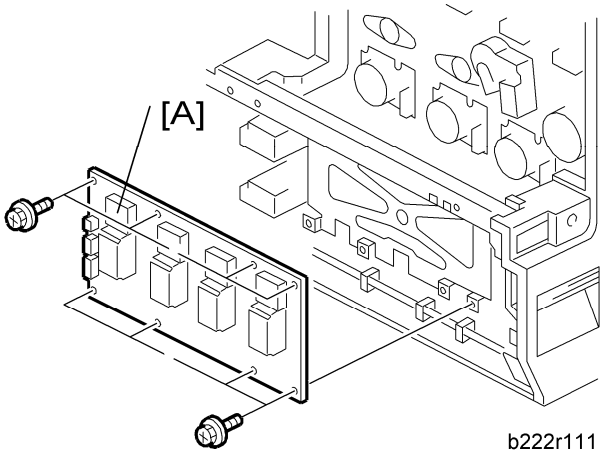
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-187 "Controller Box")



3. ITB power supply board [A] (x 5, x 6)

4.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD

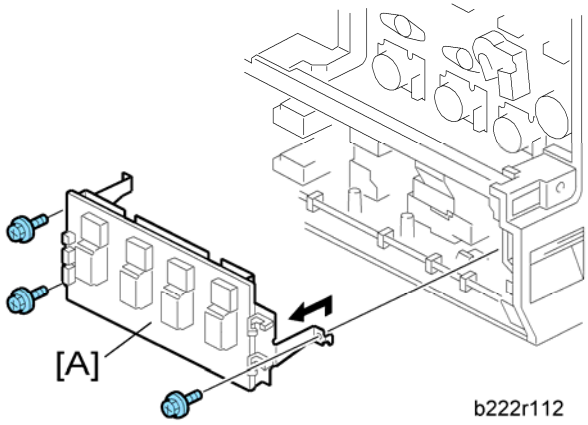
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")



3. High voltage supply board [A] (x 8, All s, x 2)

4.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-194 "PSU")

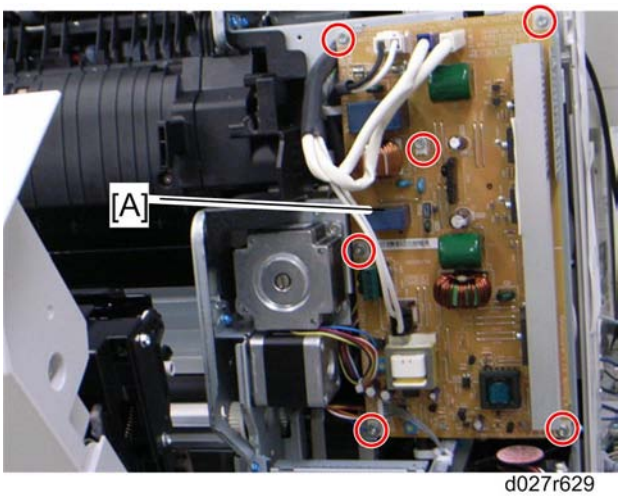


3. High voltage supply board bracket [A] (x 3, x All, x 2)

4.14.11 IH INVERTER

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-142 "

Fusing Fan"")

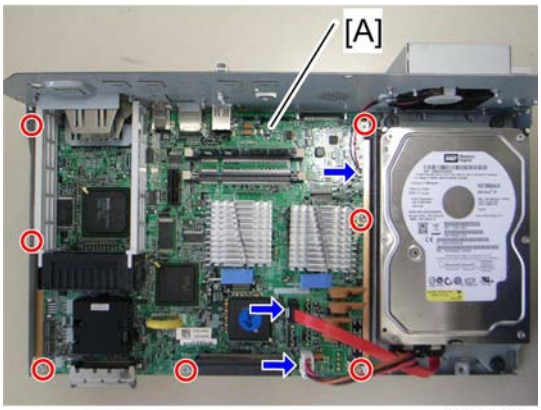


d027r629

4. IH inverter [A] (x 6, x 5)

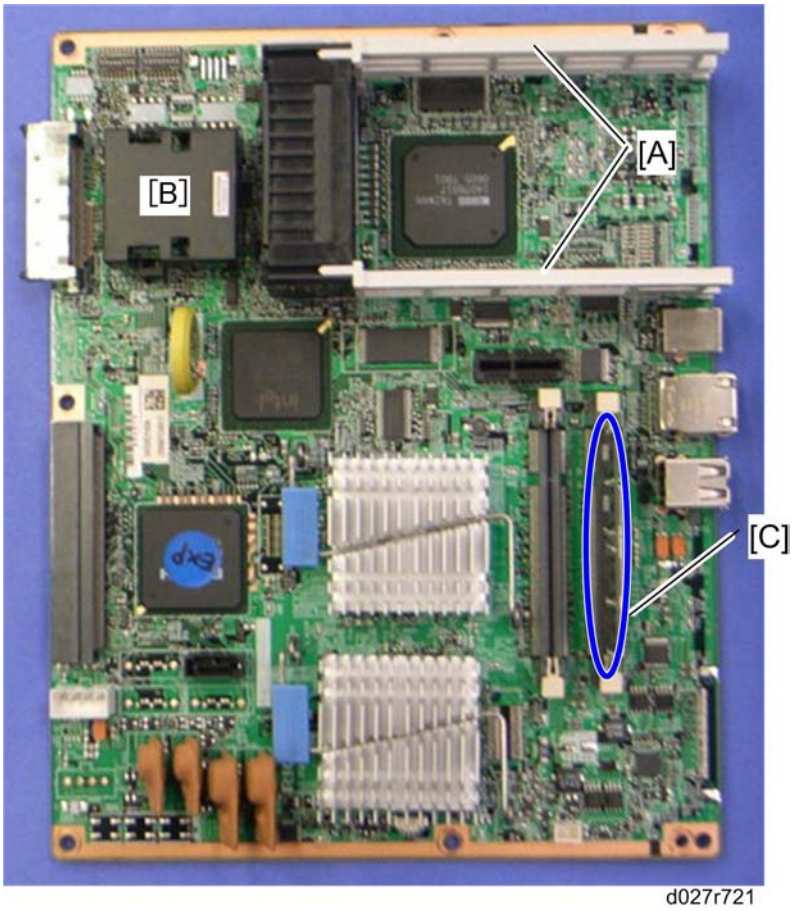
4.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD

1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-186 "Controller Unit")



d027r720

2. Controller board [A] (x 7, x 3)



3. Interface rails [A], NV-RAM [B], RAM-DIMM [C]

When installing the new controller board

Remove the NVRAM from the old controller board. Then install it on the new controller board after you replace the controller board. Replace the NVRAM (☛ p.4-204 "

NVRAM Replacement Procedure") if the NVRAM on the old controller board is defective.

Note

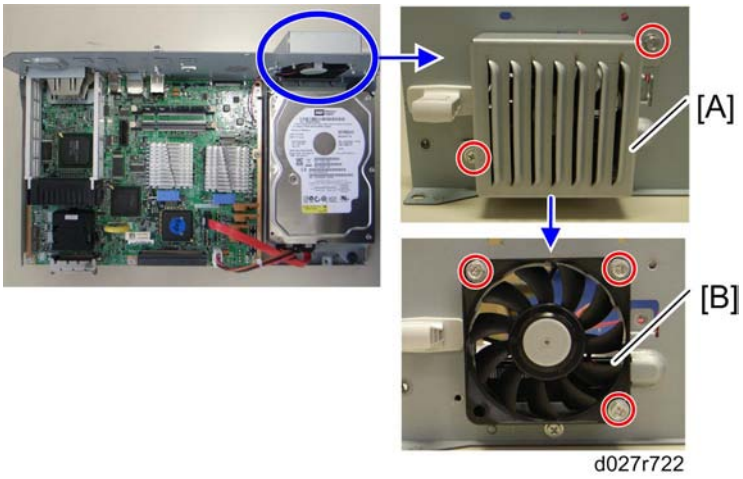
- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the controller board.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old controller board are the same for the new controller board. Do not change the DIP switches on the controller board in the field.

4.14.13 HDD FAN

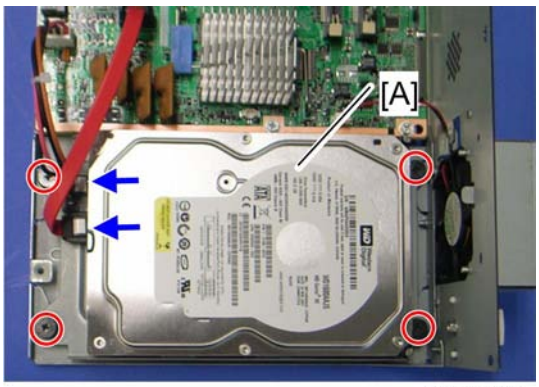
1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-186 "Controller Unit")



2. HDD fan cover [A] (x 2)
3. HDD fan [B] (x 3, x 1)

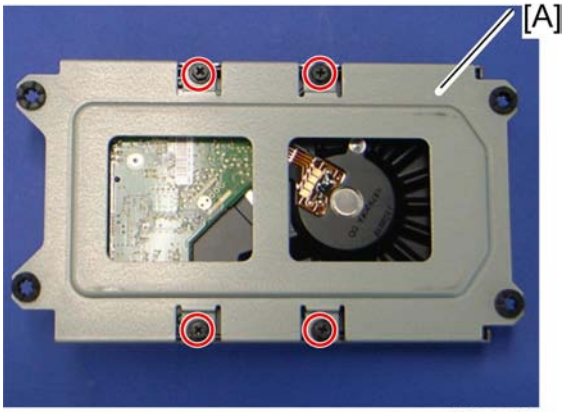
4.14.14 HDD

1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-186 "Controller Unit")



d027r718

2. Remove the HDD [A] with the bracket (🔩 x 4, 🖐 x 2).



d027r719

3. Remove the HDD from the bracket [A] (🔩 x 4).

When installing a new HDD unit

1. Turn the main power switch on. The disk is automatically formatted.
2. Install the stamp data using "SP5853".
3. Switch the machine off and on to enable the fixed stamps for use.

Disposal of HDD Units

- Never remove an HDD unit from the work site without the consent of the client.
- If the customer has any concerns about the security of any information on the HDD, the HDD must remain with the customer for disposal or safe keeping.
- The HDD may contain proprietary or classified (Confidential, Secret) information. Specifically, the HDD contains document server documents and data stored in temporary files created automatically during copy job sorting and jam recovery. Such

data is stored on the HDD in a special format so it cannot normally be read but can be recovered with illegal methods.

Reinstallation

Explain to the customer that the following information stored on the HDD is lost when the HDD is replaced:

- Document server documents
- Custom-made stamps
- Document server address book

The address book and document server documents (if needed) must be input again.

If you previously backed up the address book to an SD card with SP5846-051, you can use SP 5846-052 to copy the data from the SD card to the hard disk.

If the customer is using the DataOverwriteSecurity feature, the DOS function must be set up again. For more, see p.2-88 "Controller Options".

If the customer is using the optional Browser Unit, this unit must be installed again. For more, see p.2-88 "Controller Options".

4.14.15 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

NVRAM on the BICU

1. Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.
2. Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
3. Turn the main switch off.
4. Install an SD card into SD card slot 2. Then turn the main power on.
5. Copy the NVRAM data to an SD card (☛ SP5-824-001) if possible.
6. Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.
7. Replace the NVRAM on the BICU and reassemble the machine.
8. Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.
9. Select a paper-size type (☛ SP5-131-001).
10. Specify the serial number and destination code of the machine.

Note

- Contact your supervisor for details on how to enter the serial number and destination code.
- SC 195 or “Fusing Unit Setting Error” can be shown until the serial number and destination code are correctly programmed.

11. Turn the main switch off and on.
12. Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.
13. Turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
14. Turn the main switch on.
15. Specify the SP and UP mode settings.
16. Do the process control self-check.
17. Do ACC for the copier application program.
18. Do ACC for the printer application program.

NVRAM on the Controller

1. Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.
2. Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
3. Turn the main switch off. Then put a blank formatted SD card into SD card slot 2.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Copy the NVRAM data (☛ SP5-824-001) and the address book data in the HDD (SP5846-051) to an SD card if possible.

Note

- An error message shows if local user information cannot be stored in an SD card because the capacity is not enough.
- You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.

6. Enter SP mode. Then print out the SMC reports (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
7. Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.
8. Replace the NVRAM on the controller. Then reassemble the machine.
9. Check if the serial number shows on the operation panel. (SP5-811-002). Input the serial number if it does not show. (Contact your supervisor about this setting.)
10. Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.
11. Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) and HDD (SP5-846-52) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.

Note

- The counter data in the user code information clears even if step 11 is done correctly.
- An error message shows if the download is incomplete. However, you can still use the part of the address book data that has already been downloaded in step 11.
- An error message shows when the download data does not exist in the SD card, or, if it is already deleted.
- You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.

12. Go out of SP mode. Then turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
13. Turn the main switch on.
14. Specify the SP and UP mode settings.
15. Do ACC for the copier application program.
16. Do ACC for the printer application program.

4.15 USING DIP SWITCHES

4.15.1 CONTROLLER BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from Flash Memory	Boot-up from SD card
2 to 8	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

4.15.2 BICU BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1 and 2	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5. SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

⚠CAUTION

- Make sure that the data-in LED (⇨) is not on before you go into the SP mode. This LED indicates that some data is coming to the machine. When the LED is on, wait for the copier to process the data.

5.1.1 SP TABLES

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- System SP Tables
- Printer SP Tables
- Scanner SP Tables

5.1.2 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

Note

- The Service Program Mode is for use by service representatives only. If this mode is used by anyone other than service representatives for any reason, data might be deleted or settings might be changed. In such case, product quality cannot be guaranteed any more.

Entering SP Mode

1. Press the "Clear Mode" key (C/⊘).
2. Use keypad to enter "107" (1 0 7).
3. Hold down "Clear/Stop" (C/⊘) for 3 seconds at least.
4. Enter the Service Mode.

Exiting SP Mode

1. Press "Exit" on the LCD twice to return to the copy window.

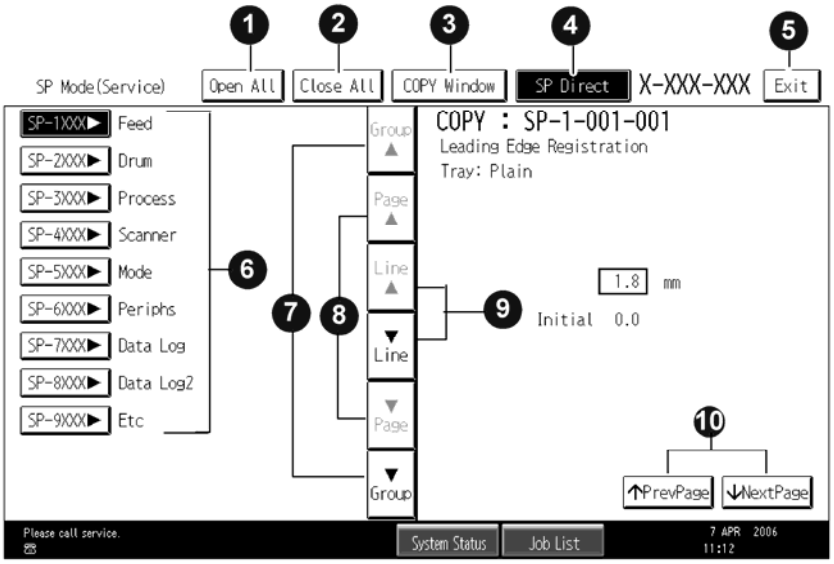
5.1.3 TYPES OF SP MODES

- System SP: SP modes related to the engine functions
- Printer SP: SP modes related to the controller functions
- Scanner SP: SP modes related to the scanner functions
- Fax SP: SP modes related to the fax functions

Select one of the Service Program modes (System, Printer, Scanner, or Fax) from the touch panel as shown in the diagram below after you access the SP mode. This section explains the functions of the System/Printer/Scanner SP modes. Refer to the Fax service manual for the Fax SP modes.

SP Mode Button Summary

Here is a short summary of the touch-panel buttons.



❶	Opens all SP groups and sublevels.
❷	Closes all open groups and sublevels and restores the initial SP mode display.
❸	Opens the copy window (copy mode) so you can make test copies. Press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode screen,
❹	Enter the SP code directly with the number keys if you know the SP number. Then press #. (The required SP Mode number will be highlighted when pressing #. If not, just press the required SP Mode number.)
❺	Press two times to leave the SP mode and return to the copy window to resume normal operation.
❻	Press any Class 1 number to open a list of Class 2 SP modes.
❼	Press to scroll the show to the previous or next group.
❽	Press to scroll to the previous or next display in segments the size of the screen display (page).
❾	Press to scroll the show the previous or next line (line by line).
❿	Press to move the highlight on the left to the previous or next selection in the list.

Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing

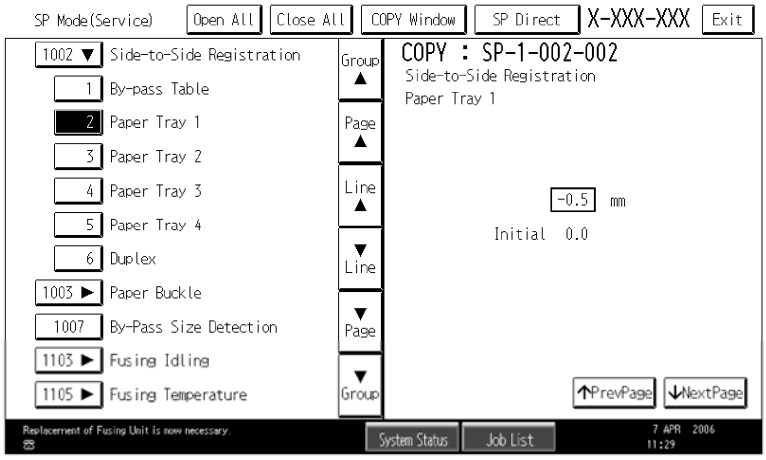
1. In the SP mode, select the test print. Then press "Copy Window".
2. Use the copy window (copier mode), to select the appropriate settings (paper size, etc.) for the test print.
3. Press Start ◇ to start the test print.
4. Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode screen and repeat from step 1.

Selecting the Program Number

Program numbers have two or three levels.

1. Refer to the Service Tables to find the SP that you want to adjust before you begin.
2. Press the Group number on the left side SP Mode window that contains the SP that you want to adjust.
3. Use the scrolling buttons in the center of the SP mode window to show the SP number that you want to open. Then press that number to expand the list.

4. Use the center touch-panel buttons to scroll to the number and title of the item that you want to set and press it. The small entry box on the right activates and shows the below default or the current settings.



Note

- Refer to the Service Tables for the range of allowed settings.

1. Do this procedure to enter a setting:
   - Press ⊛ to toggle between plus and minus and use the keypad to enter the appropriate number. The number you enter writes over the previous setting.
   - Press # to enter the setting. (The value is not registered if you enter a number that is out of range.)
   - Press “Yes” when you are prompted to complete the selection.
2. If you need to perform a test print, press Copy Window to open the copy window and select the settings for the test print. Press Start ◇ and then press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode display.
3. Press Exit two times to return to the copy window when you are finished.

Exiting Service Mode

Press the Exit key on the touch-panel.

Service Mode Lock/Unlock

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

1. If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set “Service Mode Lock” to OFF after he or she logs in:
   User Tools > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF
   - This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.

- The CE can service the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.

2. Go into the SP mode and set SP5169 to “1” if you must use the printer bit switches.
3. After machine servicing is completed:
   - Change SP5169 from “1” to “0”.
   - Turn the machine off and on. Tell the administrator that you have completed servicing the machine.
   - The Administrator will then set the “Service Mode Lock” to ON.

5.1.4 REMARKS

Display on the Control Panel Screen

The maximum number of characters which can show on the control panel screen is limited to 30 characters. For this reason, some of the SP modes shown on the screen need to be abbreviated. The following are abbreviations used for the SP modes for which the full description is over 20 characters.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Paper Weight
Thin paper: 52-59 g/m^2
Plain Paper: 60-90 g/m^2, 16-24lb.
Middle Thick: 91-105 g/m^2, 24-28lb.
Thick Paper 1: 106-169 g/m^2, 28.5-44.9lb.
Thick Paper 2: 170-220 g/m^2, 45-58lb.
Thick Paper 3: 221-256 g/m^{2,} 59lb-68lb</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper Type
N: Normal paper
MTH: Middle thick paper
TH: Thick paper</td><td>Paper Feed Station
P: Paper tray
B: By-pass table</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Color Mode [Color]
[K]: Black in B&W mode
[Y], [M], or [C]: Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in Full Color mode
[YMC]: Only for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan
[FC]: Full Color mode
[FC, K], [FC, Y], [FC, M], or [FC, C]: Black, Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in full color mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print Mode
S: Simplex
D: Duplex</td><td>Process Speed
L: Low speed (77 mm/s)
M: Middle speed (154 mm/s)
H: High speed (C2d: 230, C2c 205 mm/s)</td></tr>
</table>

Others

The following symbols are used in the SP mode tables.

FA: Factory setting

(Data may be adjusted from the default setting at the factory. Refer to the factory setting sheets enclosed. You can find it under the jammed paper removal decal.)

DFU: Design/Factory Use only

Do not touch these SP modes in the field.

A sharp (#) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that the main switch must be turned off and on to effect the setting change.

An asterisk (*) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that this mode is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM clear, this SP mode will be reset to the default value.

“ENG” and “CTL” show which NVRAM contains the data.

- ENG: NVRAM on the BICU board
- CTL: NVRAM on the controller board

The settings of each SP mode are explained in the right-hand column of the SP table in the following way.

[Adjustable range / **Default setting** / Step] Alphanumeric

- If “Alphanumeric” is written to the right of the bracket as shown above, the setting of the SP mode shows on the screen using alphanumeric characters instead of only numbers. However, the settings in the bracket in the SP mode table are explained by using only the numbers.

SSP: This denotes a “Special Service Program” mode setting.

5.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE

To update the firmware for this machine, you must have the new version of the firmware downloaded onto an SD (Secure Digital) Card. The SD Card is inserted into SD Card Slot 2 on the left rear side of the controller box.

5.2.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE

There are 19 types of firmware as shown below.

Type of firmware	**Function**	**Location of firmware**	**Message shown**
Engine	Printer engine control	BICU Flash ROM	Engine
System/Copy Application	Operating system	Flash ROM on the controller board	System/Copy
Netfile Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	NetworkDocBox
Printer Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	SD Printer
Scanner Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	SD Scanner
Fax Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Fax
NIB	Network Interface	Flash ROM on the controller board	Network
Operation Panel	Panel control	Operation Panel	OpePanel.
Jam Animation	Jam animation	Flash ROM on the controller board	Animation
Fax FCU	Fax control	FCU	GWFCU 3-3
Remote Fax	Fax control	Flash ROM on the	Fax (option)

		controller board	
Language (16 languages)	Language firmware Two languages can be selected from 16 languages.	Operation Panel	LANG
WebDocBox	Document server application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Web Uapl
WebSys	Web Service application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Web Support
PS3	Page description language (PostScript3)	PS3 SD card	Option PS3
PictBridge	PictBridge control	PictBridge SD card	Option PctBrgd
DESS	Security control	Flash ROM on the controller board	Security Module
ARDF	ARDF control	ARDF	ADF
Finisher (B804/805 only)	Finisher control	Finisher (B804/805only)	Finisher

5.2.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN

An SD card is a precision device. Always observe the following precautions when you handle SD cards:

- Always switch the machine off before you insert an SD card. Never insert the SD card into the slot with the power on.
- Do not remove the SD card from the service slot after the power has been switched on.
- Never switch the machine off while the firmware is downloading from the SD card.
- Keep SD cards in a safe location where they are not exposed to high temperature, high humidity, or exposure to direct sunlight.
- Always handle SD cards with care. Do not bend or scratch them. Do not let the SD card get exposed to shock or vibration.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked when you download an application to it. If not, downloading fails and a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade.

Keep the following points in mind when you use the firmware update software:

- “Upload” means to send data from the machine to the SD card. “Download” means to send data from the SD card to the machine.
- To select an item on the LCD, touch the appropriate button on the soft touch-screen of the LCD, or, press the appropriate number key on the 10-key pad of the operation panel. For example, when “Exit (0)” shows on the screen you can touch the Exit button on the screen, or, press the ⓪ button on the operation panel of the copier.
- Make sure that the machine is disconnected from the network to prevent a print job for arriving while the firmware update is in progress before you start the firmware update procedure.

5.2.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE

Preparation

- If the SD card is blank, copy the entire “romdata” folder onto the SD card.
- If the card already contains the “romdata” folder, copy the “D027” folder onto the card.

If the card already contains folders up to “D027”, copy the necessary firmware files (e.g. D027xxxx.fwu) into this folder.

Note

- Do not put multiple machine firmware programs on the same SD card. Copy the only model firmware you want.

Updating Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off.
2. Remove the slot cover (x 1).
3. Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 2. Make sure the label on the SD card faces the front side of the machine.
4. Slowly push the SD card into the slot so it locks in place. You will hear it click. Make sure the SD card locks in place.

   Note

   - To remove the SD, push it in to unlock the spring lock. Then release it so it pops out of the slot.
5. Disconnect the network cable from the copier if the machine is connected to a network.
6. Switch the main power switch on. After about 45 seconds, the initial version update screen appears on the LCD in English.
7. On the screen, touch the button or press the corresponding number key on the operation panel to select the item in the menu that you want to update.

ROM/NEW	What it means
ROM:	Tells you the number of the module and name of the version currently installed. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.
NEW:	Tells you the number of the module and name version on the SD card. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.

Note

- Controller, engine and operation panel firmware cannot be updated at the same time. It is recommended to update firmware modules one by one.

8. Touch “UpDate (#)” (or ⓗ) to start the update.

Note

- The progress bar does not show for the operation panel firmware after you touch “OpPanel”. The power on key flashes on and off at 0.5 s intervals when the LCDC firmware is updating. The power key flashes on and off at three seconds intervals when the update is finished.

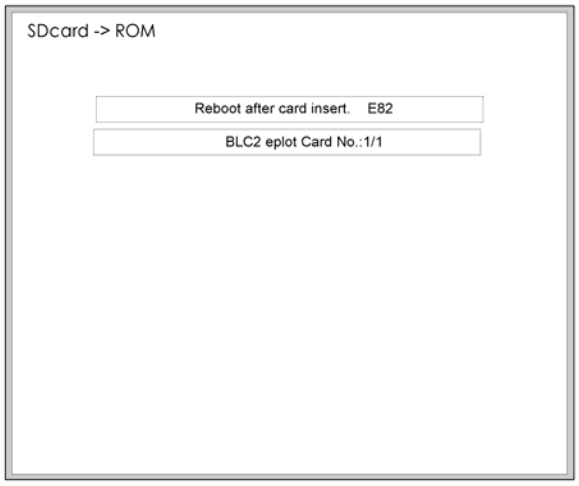
9. The "Update is Done" message appears on the operation panel after completing the updating. The message differs depending on the firmware that has been updated.
10. Switch the copier main power switch off when you see the “Update is Done” message or follow the procedure that is displayed on the operation panel.
11. Press in the SD card to release it. Then remove it from the slot.
12. Switch the copier on for normal operation.

Error Messages

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during the download.
The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number. The example above shows error “E24” displayed. For details, refer to the Error Message Table. (☛ "Handling Firmware Update Errors" in this section)

Firmware Update Error

If a firmware update error occurs, this means the update was cancelled during the update because the module selected for update was not on the SD card.



Recovery after Power Loss

If the ROM update is interrupted as a result of accidental loss of power while the firmware is updating, then the correct operation of the machine cannot be guaranteed after the machine is switched on again. If the ROM update does not complete successfully for any reason, then in order to ensure the correct operation of the machine, the ROM update error will continue to show until the ROM is updated successfully.
In this case, insert the card again and switch on the machine to continue the firmware download automatically from the card without the menu display.

5.2.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL

Do the following procedure to update the LCDC (LCD Control Board).

1. Turn the copier main switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (🖉 x 1).
3. Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main switch on.
5. The initial screen opens in English after about 45 seconds.
6. Touch “Ope Panel.xx”.
7. "xx" differs depending on the destination.
8. Touch “UpDate(#) or (#) to start the update.
9. Downloading starts after about 9 seconds.
10. The operation panel goes off and the main power on key flashes in red at 0.5 s intervals when the data is downloading. The same key starts flashing in green at 1 s intervals when the update is finished.
11. Switch the copier main power switch off and remove the SD card. Then switch the copier on.

5.2.5 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during a download. The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number (“E20”, for example).

Error Message Table

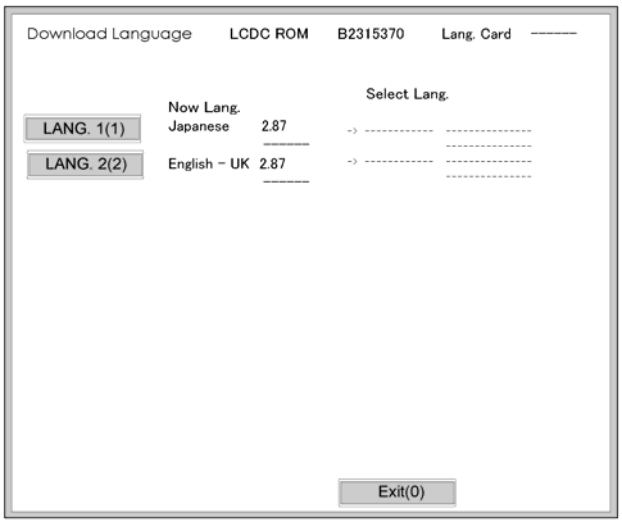
Code	Meaning	Solution
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is inserted correctly.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
22	Cannot decompress compressed data	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
23	Error occurred when ROM update program started	Controller program abnormal. If the second attempt fails, replace controller board.
24	SD card access error	Make sure SD card inserted correctly, or use another SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp data download	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
31	Data incorrect for continuous download	Insert the SD card with the remaining data required for the download, the re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download interrupted	Execute the recovery procedure for the intended module download, then repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
34	Module mismatch - Correct module is not on the SD card)	SD update data is incorrect. Acquire the correct data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install again.

Code	Meaning	Solution
35	Module mismatch – Module on SD card is not for this machine	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause other than E34, E35	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the BICU board.
42	Operation panel module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the hard disks.
44	Controller module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and tray again, or replace controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check failed	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.

5.3 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE

Many languages are available. But you can only switch between two languages at a time. Do the following procedure to select the two languages you want. You can select both of the languages you want from the user interface on the operation panel.

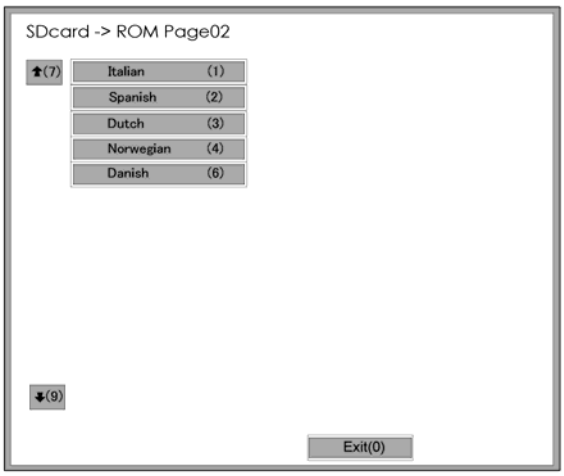
1. Switch the copier main power switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (🖉 x 1).
3. Insert the SD card with the language data into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main power switch on. The initial screen opens after about 45 seconds.
5. Touch "Language Data (2)" on the screen (or press ②).



6. Touch "LANG. 1(1)" or "LANG. 2(2)"

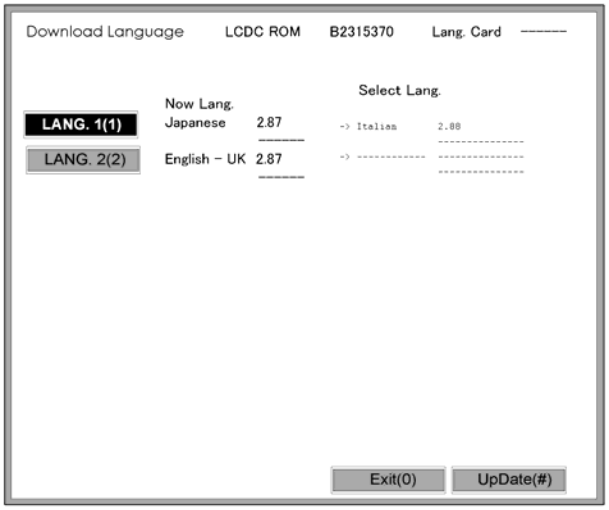
Key	What it does
LANG. 1(1)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ① on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 1st language.
LANG. 1(2)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ② on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 2nd language.
Exit (0)	Touch this key on the screen (or press ⓪ on the 10-key pad) to quit the update procedure and return to normal screen.

7. Touch "LANG 1(1)" to select the 1st Language. Touch "LANG (2)" to select the 2nd Language.



8. Touch the appropriate button on the screen (or press the number on the 10-keypad) to select a language as the 1st (or 2nd) language.
   - If a language is already selected, it will show in reverse.
   - Touching "Exit (0)" returns you to the previous screen.
9. If you do not see the language that you want to select, touch "↑(7)" or "↓(9)" on the screen (or press ⑦ or ⑨) to show more choices.
   The Download Screen opens after you select a language.
   The 1st or 2nd language selected for updating shows.
   The following show to right of the selection:
   - 1. The first column shows the language currently selected.
   - 2. The 2nd column shows the language selected to replace that language.

   The example below shows that the download will replace "Japanese" with "Italian" as the 1st language.



10. Touch "Update(#)" on the screen (or press ⑭) to start the download.
    Another screen with a progress bar does not show when the language is downloading.

Installing Another Language

The following occur at the time the language is downloading:

- The operation panel switches off.
- The LED on the power on key flashes rapidly.

11. After the message of installation completed has shown on the LCD, switch the copier main power switch off. Then remove the SD card from the slot.
12. Switch the copier main power switch on to resume normal operation.

5.4 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET

5.4.1 SOFTWARE RESET

You can reboot the software with one of the following two procedures:

1. Turn the main power switch off and on.
2. Press and hold down ⊙/✂ # together for over 10 seconds. When the machine beeps once, release both buttons. After “Now loading. Please wait” shows for a few seconds, the copy window will open. The machine is ready for normal operation.

5.4.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET

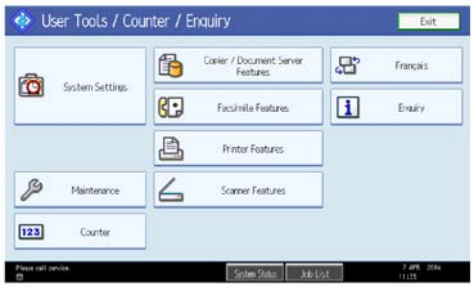
System Setting Reset

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults. Use the following procedure.

1. Press User Tools/Counter ◈/123.
2. Hold down # and then press System Settings.

Note

- You must press # first.



3. Press yes when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the system settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

Copier Setting Reset

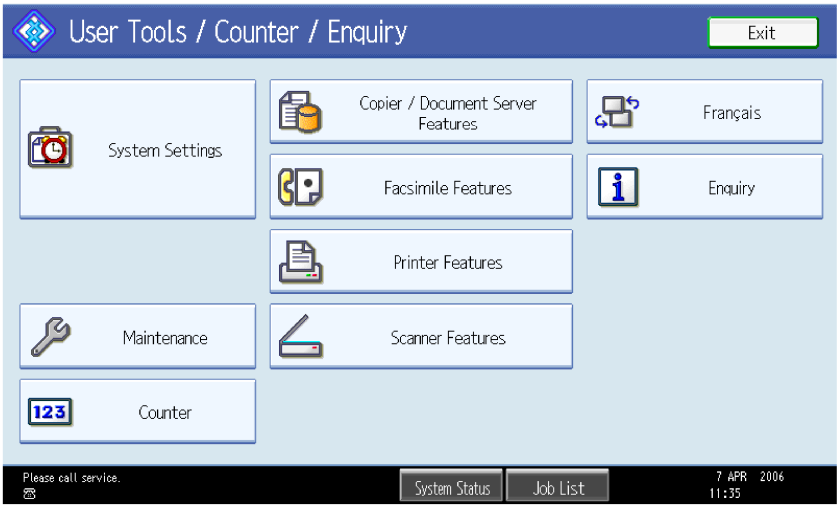
Use the following procedure to reset the copy settings in the UP mode to their defaults.

1. Press User Tools/Counter ◈/123.
2. Hold down # and then press Copier/Document Server Settings.

Reboot/System Setting Reset

Note

- You must press # first.



3. Press “Yes” when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the Copier Document Server settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

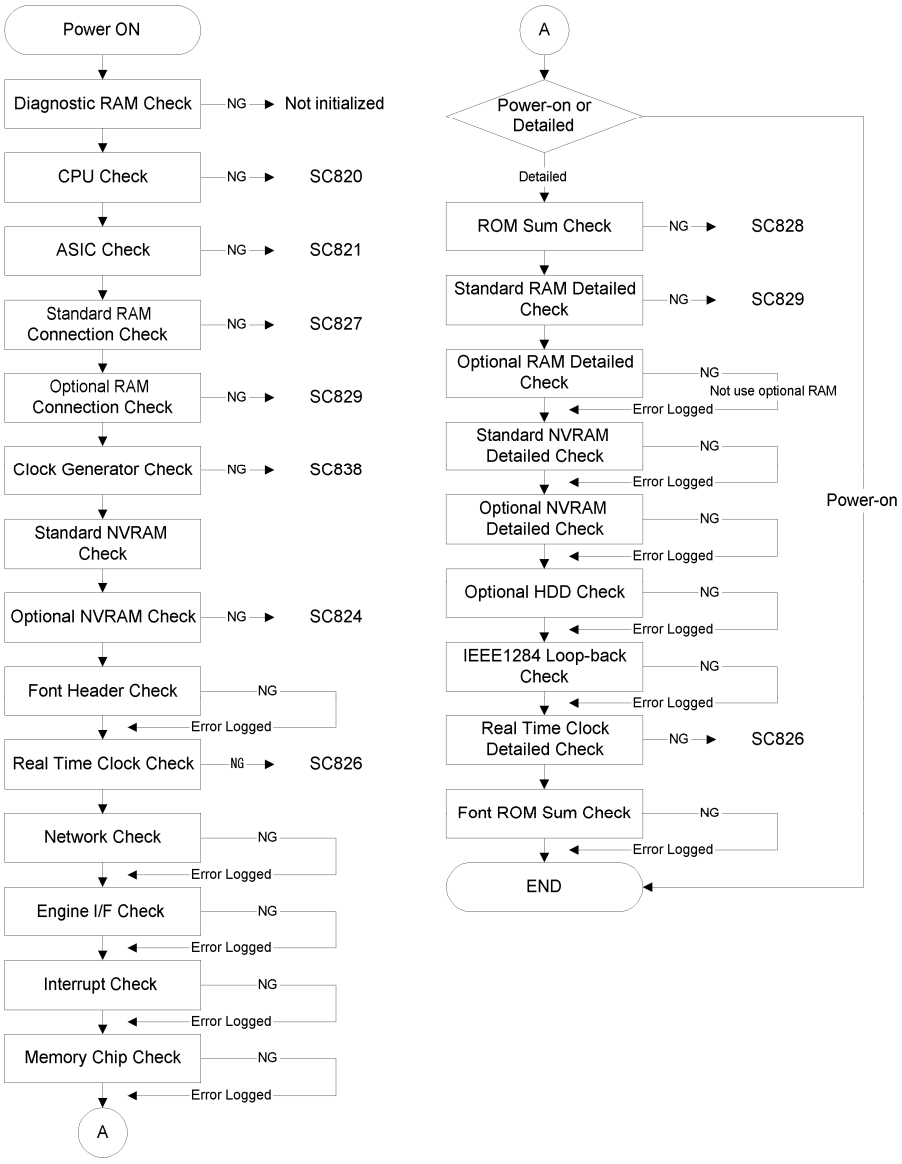
5.5 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

5.5.1 OVERVIEW

There are three types of self-diagnostics for the controller.

1. Power-on self-diagnostics: The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics just after the power has been turned on.
2. SC detection: The machine automatically detects SC conditions at power-on or during operation.

The following shows the workflow of the power-on and detailed self-diagnostics.



5.6 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

5.6.1 OVERVIEW

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you to copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 and Slot 2 are used to store application programs. However, more than two optional applications are supplied for this machine. In that case, you can move application programs from Slot 2 to Slot 1 with the following procedure.

Consider the following limitations when you try to merge SD cards.

- PostScript3 cannot be moved to the other SD card.
- The destination SD card should have the largest memory size of all the application SD cards. Refer to the following table for the memory size of each SD card.

Outline of SD Card Appli Move:

1. Choose a SD card with enough space.

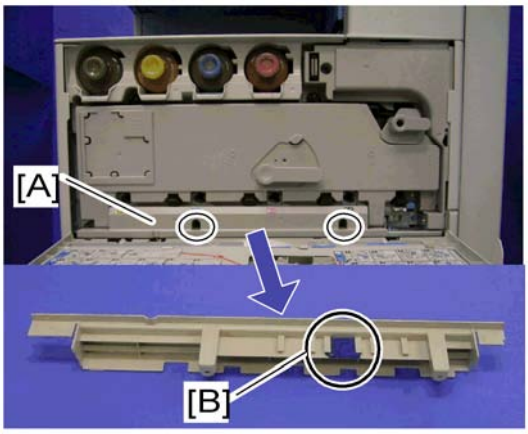
   Note

   - Do not use an SD card if it has been used on a computer. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.
2. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 2 to the card in slot 1.
3. Exit the SP mode

   Use caution when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

   Note

   - The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.



4. Remove the cover [A] (x 2).
5. Keep the SD card in the place [B] after you have copied the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
   - 1) The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
   - 2) You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

5.6.2 MOVE EXEC

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of an application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied into this SD card.
3. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

5.6.3 UNDO EXEC

The menu “Undo Exec” (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of an application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied back into this card.
3. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied back from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-002 “Undo Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.

   Note

   - This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

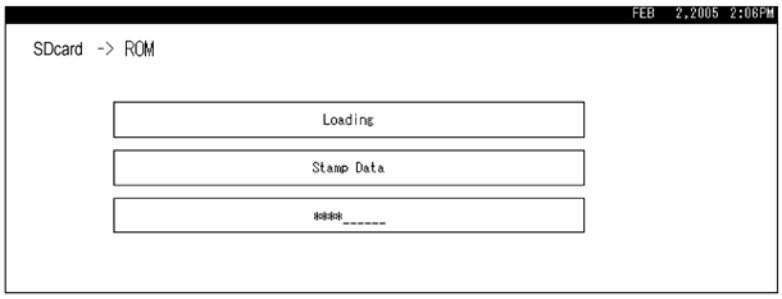
5.7 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA

The stamp data should be downloaded from the controller firmware to the hard disks at the following times:

- After the hard disks have been replaced.

The print data contains the controller software. Execute SP 5853 to download the fixed stamp data required by the hard disks.

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Select SP5853 and then press “EXECUTE”. The following screen opens while the stamp data is downloading.



The download is finished when the message prompts you to close.

3. Press the “Exit” button. Then turn the copier off and on again.

5.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

5.8.1 UPLOADING CONTENT OF NVRAM TO AN SD CARD

Do the following procedure to upload SP code settings from NVRAM to an SD card.

Note

- This data should always be uploaded to an SD card before the NVRAM is replaced.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked

1. Do SP5990-001 (SMC Print) before you switch the machine off. You will need a record of the NVRAM settings if the upload fails.
2. Switch the copier main power switch off.
3. Remove the SD slot cover (🖉 x 1).
4. Insert the SD card into SD card slot 2. Then switch the copier on.
5. Execute SP5824-001 (NVRAM Data Upload) and then press the “Execute” key.
6. The following files are coped to an NVRAM folder on the SD card when the upload procedure is finished. The file is saved to the path and the following filename:
   NVRAM¥<serial number>.NV
   Here is an example with Serial Number “K5000017114”:
   NVRAM¥K5000017114.NV
7. In order to prevent an error during the download, be sure to mark the SD card that holds the uploaded data with the number of the machine from which the data was uploaded.

   Note

   - You can upload NVRAM data from more than one machine to the same SD card.

5.8.2 DOWNLOADING AN SD CARD TO NVRAM

Do the following procedure to download SP data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine.

- The NVRAM data down load may fail if the SD card with the NVRAM data is damaged, or if the connection between the controller and BICU is defective.
- Do the download procedure again if the download fails.
- Do the following procedure if the second attempt fails:
- Enter the NVRAM data manually using the SMC print you created before uploading the NVRAM data.

1. Switch the copier main power switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (☞ x 1).
3. Insert the SD card with the NVRAM data into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main power switch on.
5. Do SP5825-001 (NVRAM Data Download) and press the “Execute” key.

Note

- The serial number of the file on the SD card must match the serial number of the machine for the NVRAM data to download successfully. The download fails if the serial numbers do not match.

This procedure does not download the following data to the NVRAM:

- Total Count
- C/O, P/O Count

5.9 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

5.9.1 INFORMATION LIST

The following information is possible to be uploaded and downloaded.

Information	
▪ Registration No. ▪ User Code ▪ E-mail ▪ Protection Code ▪ Fax Destination ▪ Fax Option ▪ Group Name ▪ Key Display	▪ Select Title ▪ Folder ▪ Local Authentication ▪ Folder Authentication ▪ Account ACL ▪ New Document Initial ACL ▪ LDAP Authentication

5.9.2 DOWNLOAD

1. Prepare a formatted SD card.
2. Make sure that the write-protection on the SD card is off.
3. Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.
4. Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (🖉 x 1).
5. Install the SD card into the SD card slot 2 (for service use).
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Enter the SP mode.
8. Do SP5-846-051 (Backup All Addr Book).
9. Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.
10. Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 2.
11. Install the SD slot cover.

Note

- If the capacity of SD card is not enough to store the local user information, an error message is displayed.
- Carefully handle the SD card, which contains user information. Do not take it back to your location.

5.9.3 UPLOAD

1. Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.
2. Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (☞ x 1).
3. Install the SD card, which has already been uploaded, into the SD card slot 2.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter the SP mode.
6. Do SP5-846-052 (Restore All Addr Book).
7. Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.
8. Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 2.
9. Install the SD slot cover.

Note

- The counter in the user code information is initialized after uploading.
- The information of an administrator and supervisor cannot be downloaded nor uploaded.
- If there is no data of address book information in the SD card, an error message is displayed.

5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG

5.10.1 OVERVIEW

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory. But this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

To capture this debug information, the Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

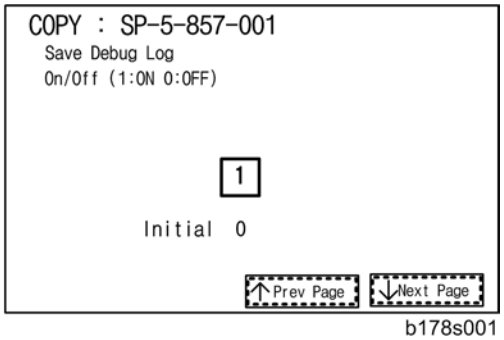
- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

Do the following procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD when a user has problems with the machine. Then ask the user to reproduce the problem.

5.10.2 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG

The debug information cannot be saved until the “Save Debug Log” function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

1. Enter the SP mode and switch the Save Debug Log feature on.
   - Press ⌨ then use the 10-key pad to enter ①⓪⑦.
   - Press and hold down C/⊘ for more than 3 seconds.
   - Touch “Copy SP”.
   - On the LCD panel, open SP5857.
2. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “1 On/Off”.



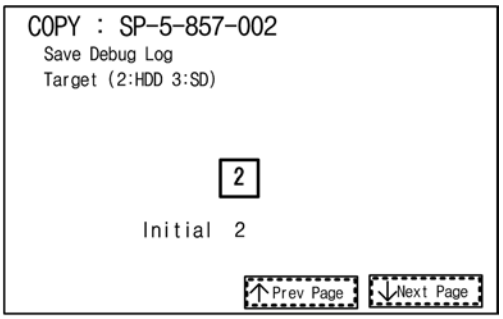
b178s001

3. On the control panel keypad, press “1”. Then press #. This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.

Using the Debug Log

Note

- The default setting is “0” (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.



b178s002

4. Select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “2 Target”, enter “2” with the operation panel key to select the hard disk as the target destination. Then press #.

Note

- Select “3 SD Card” to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in the service slot.

5. Now touch “5858” and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858 (Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.

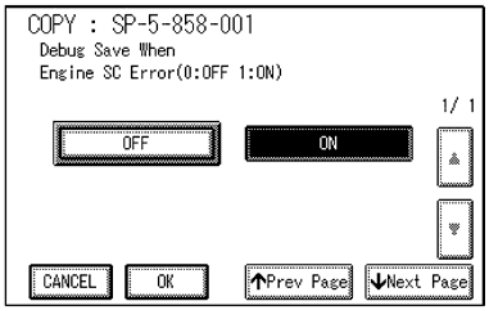
1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.

Note

- More than one event can be selected.

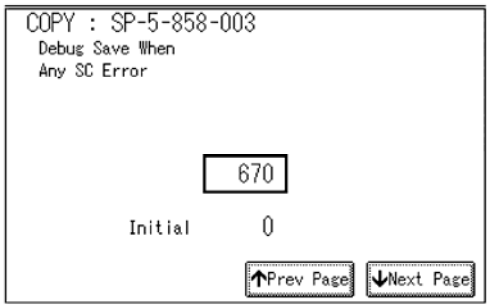
Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

Touch the appropriate items(s). Press “ON” for each selection. This example shows “Engine SC Error” selected.



Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch “3 Any SC Error”, enter the 3-digit SC code number with the control panel number keys. Then press #. This example shows an entry for SC670.



Note

- For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section 4. “Troubleshooting”.

6. Select one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information.

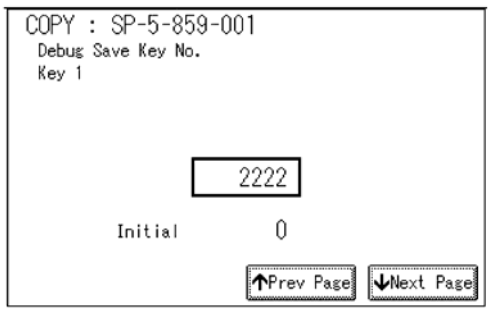
Touch “5859”.

Under “5859” press the necessary key item for the module that you want to record. Enter the appropriate 4-digit number. Then press #.

Note

- Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows “Key 1” with “2222” entered.



The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

System Maintenance Reference

4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

Key No.	Copy	Printer	Scanner	Web
1	2222 (SCS)			
2	14000 (SRM)			
3	256 (IMH)			
4	1000 (ECS)			
5	1025 (MCS)			
6	4848 (COPY)	4400 (GPS)	5375 (Scan)	5682 (NFA)
7	2224 (BICU)	4500 (PDL)	5682 (NFA)	6600 (WebDB)
8		4600 (GPS-PM)	3000 (UCS)	3300 (PTS)
9		2000 (NCS)	2000 (NCS)	6666 (WebSys)
10		2224 (BICU)	4126 (DCS)	2000 (NCS)

Note

- The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero (“0”).

Key to Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server
IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

1. The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the HDD (the target selected with SP5857-002) for the events that you selected with SP5858 and the memory modules selected with SP5859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you do this setting:

- Note that the number entries for Keys 1 to 5 are the same for the Copy, Printer, Scanner, and Web memory modules.
- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups (COPY, PRINTER, etc.) for 006 to 010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select the settings from the 9 available selections for the “PRINTER” column only.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

5.10.3 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD

Retrieve the debug log by copying it from the hard disk to an SD card.

1. Insert the SD card into slot 2 (service slot) of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857-009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)) to write the debugging data to the SD card.
3. Use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to your local Ricoh representative by email. You can also send the SD card by regular mail if you want.

5.10.4 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY

SC errors and jams only are recorded to the debug log automatically. Please instruct the user to do the following immediately after occurrence to save the debug data for any other errors that occur while the customer engineer is not on site. Such problems also include a controller or panel freeze.

Note

- You must previously switch on the Save Debug Feature (SP5857-001) and select the hard disk as the save destination (SP5857-002) if you want to use this feature.

1. Press (Clear Modes).on the operation panel when the error occurs.
2. On the control panel, enter “01”. Then hold down C/⊘ for at least 3 seconds until the machine beeps and then release it. This saves the debug log to the hard disk for later retrieval with an SD card by the service representatives.
3. Switch the machine off and on to resume operation.
   The debug information for the error is saved on the hard disk. This lets the service representative retrieve it on their next visit by copying it from the HDD to an SD card.

5.10.5 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES

SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key

This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. The copy operation is executed in the log directory of the SD card inserted in the same slot. (This function does not copy from one slot to another.) Each SD card can hold up to 4 MB of file data. Unique file names are created for the data during the copy operation to prevent overwriting files of the same name. This means that log data from more than one machine can be copied onto the same SD card. This command does not execute if there is no log on the HDD for the name of the specified key.

SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log

This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the HDD when the first log is stored on the HDD (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the HDD. With the file already created on the HDD for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded. A new log file does not need to be created. To create a new log file, do SP5857-011 to delete the debug log data from the HDD. Then do SP5857-016.

SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log

This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the SD card when the first log is stored on the SD card (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the SD card. With the file already created on the SD card for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, do SP5857-012 to delete the debug log data from the SD card. Then do SP5857-017.

5.11 CARD SAVE FUNCTION

5.11.1 OVERVIEW

Card Save:

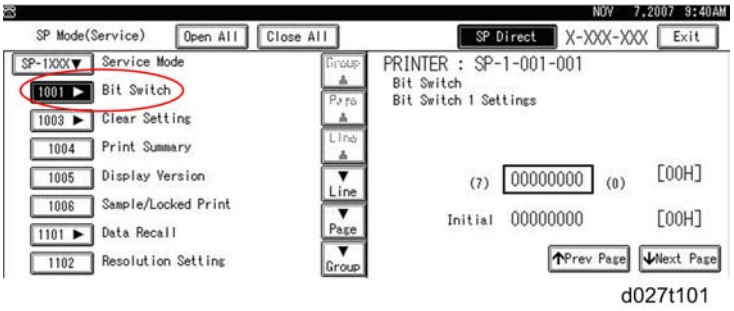
- The Card Save function is used to save print jobs received by the printer on an SD card with no print output. Card Save mode is toggled using printer Bit Switch #1 bit number 4. Card Save will remain enabled until the SD card becomes full, or until all file names have been used.
- Captures are stored on the SD card in the folder /prt/cardsave. File names are assigned sequentially from PRT00000.prn to PRT99999.prn. An additional file PRT.CTL will be created. This file contains a list of all files created on the card by the card save function.
- Previously stored files on the SD card can be overwritten or left intact. Card Save SD has “Add” and “New” menu items.
  - **Card Save (Add):** Appends files to the SD Card. Does not overwrite existing files. If the card becomes full or if all file names are used, an error will be displayed on the operation panel. Subsequent jobs will not be stored.
  - **Card Save (New):** Overwrites files in the card's /prt/cardsave directory.

Limitation:

- Card Save cannot be used with PJL Status Readback commands. PJL Status Readbacks will not work. In addition they will cause the Card Save to fail.

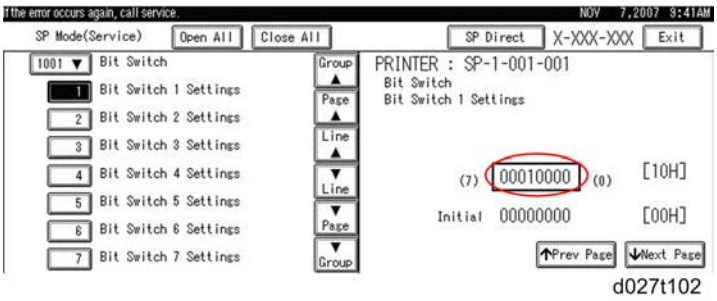
5.11.2 PROCEDURE

1. Turn the main power switch OFF.
2. Insert the SD card into slot 2. Then turn the power ON.
3. Enter SP mode.
4. Select the “Printer Sp”.
5. Select SP-1001 "Bit Switch”.



d027t101

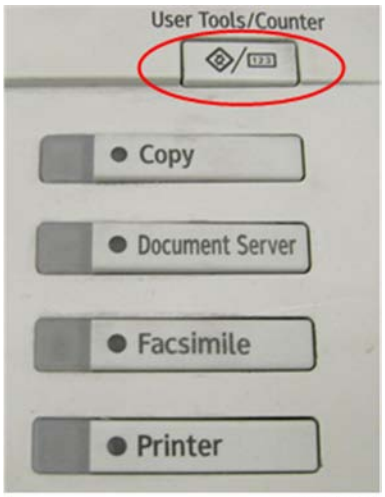
6. Select “Bit Switch 1 Settings” and use the numeric keypad to turn bit 4 ON and then press the “#” button to register the change. The result should look like: **00010000**. By doing this, Card Save option will appear in the “List/Test Print” menu.



d027t102

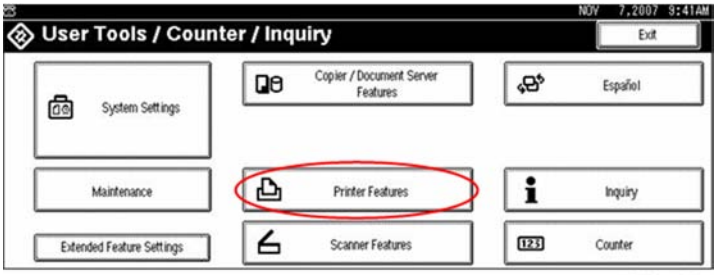
7. Press “Exit” to exit SP Mode.
8. Press the “User Tools/Counter” button.

Card Save Function



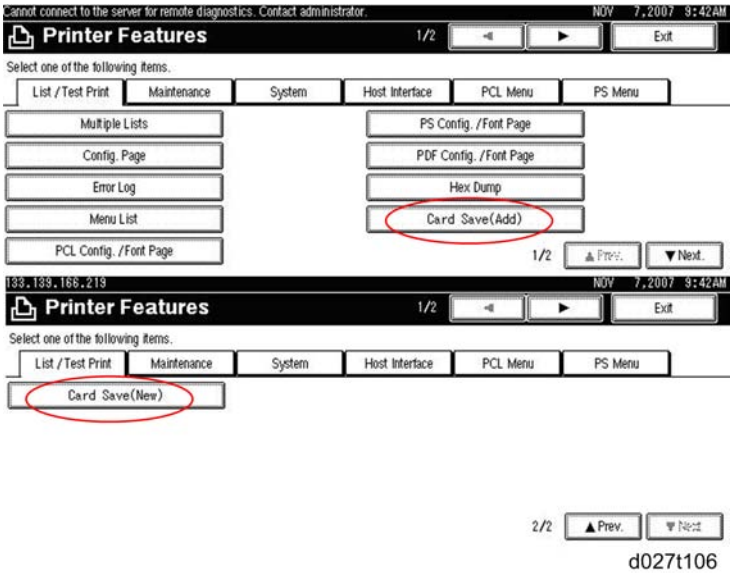
d027t103

9. Select “Printer Features”.



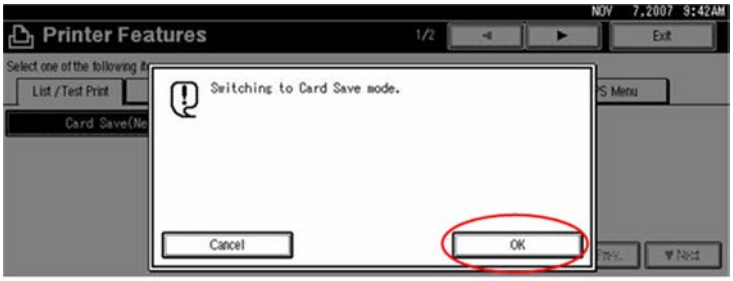
d027t105

10. Card Save (Add) and Card Save (New) should be displayed on the screen. Select Card Save (Add) or Card Save (New).



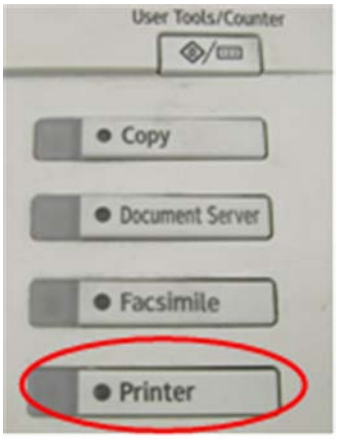
d027t106

11. Press “OK” and then exit the “User Tools/Counter” menu.



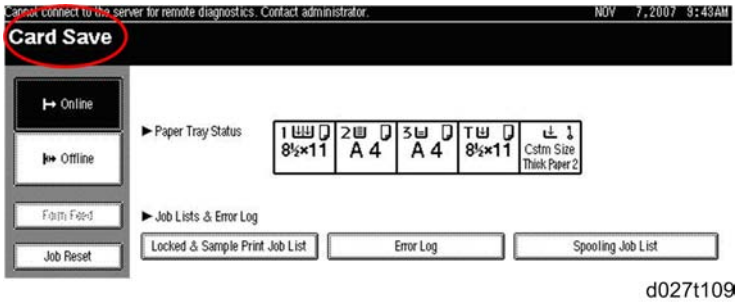
d027t107

12. Press the “Printer” button.



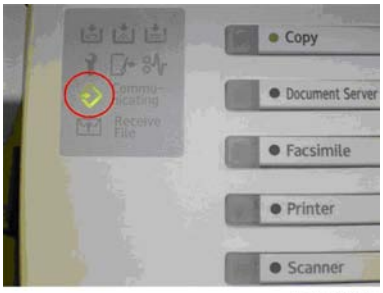
d027t108

13. Card Save should be displayed in the top left of the display panel.



d027t109

14. Send a job to the printer. The Communicating light should start blinking as shown below.

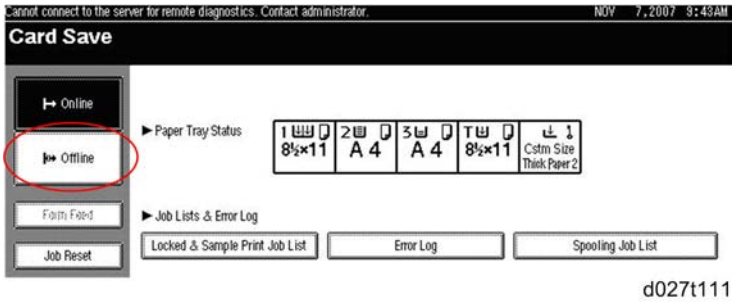


d027t110

15. As soon as the printer receives the data, it will be stored on the SD card automatically

with no print output. Nothing is displayed on the screen, indicating that a Card Save operation was successful.

16. Press “Offline” and then the “Clear/Stop” button to exit Card Save mode.



17. Change the Bit Switch Settings back to the default **00000000**. Press the “#” button in the numeric keypad to register the changes.
18. Remove the SD card after the main power switch is turned off.

5.11.3 ERROR MESSAGES

Card Save error messages:

- **Init error:** A card save process (e.g. card detection, change to kernel mode) failed to initialize.
- **Card not found:** Card cannot be detected in the slot.
- **No memory:** Insufficient working memory to process the job.
- **Write error:** Failed to write to the card.
- **Other error:** An unknown error occurred.

If an error occurs, pressing “OK” will cause the device to discard the job and return to the ready state.

TROUBLESHOOTING

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

6.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- SC Tables

6.2 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Developer Initialization Result
- Process Control Self-Check Result
- Line Position Adjustment Result

6.3 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Image Quality
- Line Position Adjustment

6.3.1 IMAGE PROBLEMS

Stain on the outputs

If a stain appears at the edge of the output, do the following procedure.

1. Execute the fusing cleaning mode with SP1123-002.

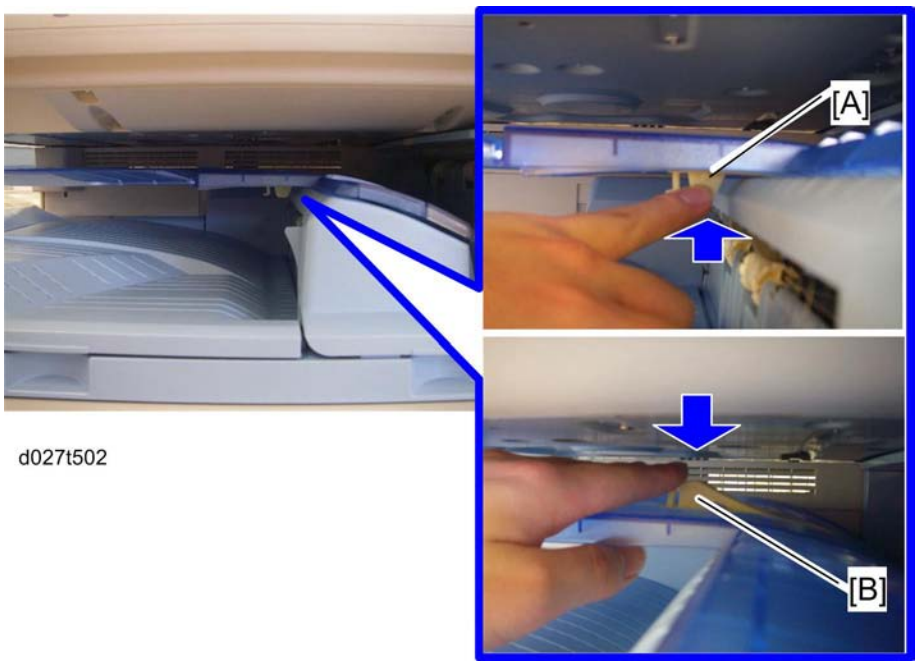
Note

- It takes 160 seconds to complete the fusing cleaning mode.

2. Make a sample copy, and then check if a stain appears on the output.

6.3.2 STACK PROBLEM IN THE 1-BIN TRAY

If a stack problem occurs on the 1-bin tray, raise the guide on the 1-bin tray.



d027t502

If a stack problem occurs;

- Push the guide to lift the guide [A].

If another type or size of paper is used;

- Press down the guide [B].

6.4 JAM DETECTION

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Paper Jam Display
- Jam Codes and Display Codes
  (Paper Size Code)
  (Sensor Locations)

6.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Sensors
- Blown Fuse Conditions
  (Power Supply Unit)
  (IH Inverter)

6.6 SCANNER TEST MODE

6.6.1 SBU TEST MODE

Output the SBU test pattern with SP4-807-001 to make sure the scanner SBU control operates correctly. The SBU test pattern prints out after you have set the SP mode settings and pressed the start key.

- The CCD on the SBU board may be defective if the copy is abnormal and the SBU test pattern is normal.
- The followings can be the cause if the copy is normal and the SBU test pattern is abnormal:
  - The harness may not be correctly connected between the SBU and the BICU.
  - The BICU or SBU board may be defective.

6.6.2 IPU TEST MODE

You can check the BICU board with the SP mode menu, SP4-904-1.
If no error is detected, the test ends. Then the completion code shows in the operation panel display. If an error is detected, the test is interrupted. Then an error code shows. The table below lists the completion and error codes.

SP4-904-1 Register Access

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates a different CPU. The error result is displayed on the operation panel as a decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error

SP4-904-2 Image Path

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates a different CPU path. The error result is displayed on the operation panel as a decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error
Errors may be caused by the following problems:

1. Short circuit on the signal lines
   - When the BICU board is installed, a pin or two on the ASIC is damaged.
   - Some conductive matter or object is trapped among the pins.
   - Condensation
2. Destruction of circuit elements
   - Over current or a defective element breaks the circuit.
3. Abnormal power supply

•The required voltage is not supplied to the devices.

4. Overheat/overcooling
   - The environment is inappropriate for the board (the scanner unit).
5. Static electricity
   - Static electricity of a high voltage occurs during the test.
6. Others
   - The scanner and BICU are incorrectly connected.

When you have completed a check, turn the main switch off and on before you do another check. When you have completed all necessary checks, turn the main switch off and on.

D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL
APPENDICES

D027/D029 FSM APPENDICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS 1-1

1.1 MAIN FRAME 1-1
1.2 PRINTER 1-5
1.3 SCANNER 1-7
1.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES 1-8
1.4.1 PAPER FEED 1-8
North America 1-8
Europe/ Asia 1-10
1.4.2 PAPER EXIT 1-13
2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher (B804/B805) 1-13
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 1-16
1.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION 1-19
1.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES 1-21
1.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS 1-21
1.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS 1-22
1.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE 1-23
1.6 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT 1-24
1.6.1 ARDF (B802) 1-24
1.6.2 PAPER FEED UNIT (D351) 1-25
1.6.3 LCT 2000-SHEET (D352) 1-25
1.6.4 LCT 1200-SHEET (D353) 1-26
1.6.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B805) 1-26
1.6.6 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER (B804) 1-28
1.6.7 PUNCH UNIT (B702) FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER 1-31
1.6.8 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408) 1-32
Upper Tray 1-32
Lower Tray 1-32

1.6.9 BRIDGE UNIT (D386) 1-33
1.6.10 SHIFT TRAY (D388) 1-34
1.6.11 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414) 1-34

2. APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-1
2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-1
2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS 2-1
Mainframe 2-1
ARDF (B802) 2-4
Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D351) 2-5
1200-sheet LCT (D353) 2-5
2000-sheet LCT (D352) 2-6
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804/B805) 2-6
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit (B702) 2-6
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 2-7
1 Bin Tray (D414) 2-7
Bridge Unit (D386) 2-7
Shift Tray (D388) 2-7
2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS 2-8
Mainframe 2-8
ARDF 2-8

3. APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 3-1
3.1 SC TABLES 3-1
3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 3-1
Summary 3-1
3.1.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 1 3-5
SC1xxx: Scanning 3-5
3.1.3 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 2 3-10
SC Codes Group 2: Exposure 3-10
3.1.4 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 3 3-16
SC3xx: Image Processing – 1 3-16
3.1.5 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 4 3-20
SC4xx: Image Processing - 2 3-20
3.1.6 SERVICE CALL TABLES – 5 3-25
SC5xx: Paper Feed and Fusing 3-25
3.1.7 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 6 3-41

SC6xx: Device Communication 3-41
3.1.8 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 7 3-50
SC7xx: Peripherals 3-50
3.1.9 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 8 3-61
SC8xx: Overall System 3-61
3.1.10 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 9 3-74
SC9xx: Miscellaneous 3-74

4. APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS 4-1
4.1 PROCESS CONTROL TABLES 4-1
4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT 4-1
4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT 4-2
Vsg Adjustment Result 4-4
4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT 4-6

5. APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 5-1
5.1 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 5-1
5.1.1 IMAGE QUALITY 5-1
5.1.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT 5-3
Test 5-3
Countermeasure list for color registration errors 5-3

6. APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION 6-1
6.1 JAM DETECTION 6-1
6.1.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY 6-1
6.1.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES 6-1
Paper Size Code 6-8
Sensor Locations 6-9

7. APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 7-1
7.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 7-1
7.1.1 SENSORS 7-1
7.1.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 7-8
Power Supply Unit 7-8
IH Inverter 7-8

8. APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES 8-1
8.1 SYSTEM SERVICE MODE 8-1

8.1.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE 8-1
SP1-XXX (Feed) 8-1
SP2-XXX (Drum) 8-29
SP3-XXX (Process) 8-119
SP4-XXX (Scanner) 8-167
SP5-XXX (Mode) 8-190
SP6-XXX (Peripherals) 8-254
SP7-XXX (Data Log) 8-264
SP8-xxx: Data Log2 8-297
SP9-XXX: Others 8-347
8.1.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE 8-351
Copier 8-352
ADF (B802) 8-356
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805) 8-358
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 8-362
Bridge Unit (D386) 8-363
Internal Shift Tray (D388) 8-364
1 Bin Tray (D414) 8-364
Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCIT 2000 (D352)/ LCIT 1200 (D353) 8-365
Table 1: Paper Height Sensor 8-366
Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2) 8-366
Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table) 8-368
Table 4: APS Original Size Detection 8-369
8.1.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE 8-370
Copier 8-370
ARDF (B802) 8-378
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 8-379
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher 8-380
Bridge Unit (D386) 8-382
Shift Tray (D388) 8-382
1 Bin Tray (D414) 8-382
Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCT 2000 (D352)/ LCT 1200 (D353) 8-383
8.1.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING 8-385
8.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE 8-387

8.2.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE) 8-387
8.3 SCANNER SP MODE 8-394
8.3.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS) 8-394
8.3.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY) 8-395

APPENDIX:

SPECIFICATIONS

1. APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 MAIN FRAME

Configuration:	Desktop
Print Process:	Laser beam scanning & Dry electrostatic transfer system 4 drums tandem method
Number of scans:	1
Resolution:	Scan: 600 dpi Print: 600 dpi
Gradation:	Scan: 600dpi / 10bits/pixel Print: 600dpi / 4 bits/pixel
Original type:	Sheets, book, objects
Maximum original size:	A3/11" x 17"
Original reference position:	Left rear corner, ad hoc lists
Copy speed:	Normal (ADF 1 to 1, LT/ A4 LEF) C2c: 40 cpm (color/black & white) C2d: 50 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 1 (169 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 25 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 25 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 2 (220 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 3 (256 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) OHP, Glossy (1200 dpi) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white)

Main Frame

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white)</td></tr>
<tr><td>First copy (normal mode):</td><td colspan="3">C2c
Color: 6.5 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
Black & white: 3.9 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
C2d
Color: 5.9 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
Black & white: 3.5 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Warm-up time:</td><td colspan="3">C2c: 34 seconds or less (20°C)
C2d: 51 seconds or less (20°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print Paper Capacity: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb)</td><td colspan="3">Standard tray: 550 sheets x 2
By-pass tray: 100 sheets (Normal), 40 sheets (Thick 1: 106 – 169 g/m^2), 20 sheets (Thick 2/3: 170 - 256 g/m^2), 35 sheets (Postcard)
Optional paper feed tray: 550 sheets x 2
2000-sheet LCT: 2000 sheets
1200-sheet LCT: 1200 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Print Paper Size:</td><td colspan="3">(Refer to “Supported Paper Sizes”.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>-</td><td>Minimum</td><td>Maximum</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray 1</td><td colspan="2">A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray 2</td><td>A5 (LEF)/
8.5" x 11"</td><td>A3/11" x 17"</td></tr>
<tr><td>By-pass</td><td>90 x 148 mm</td><td>305 x 600 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Optional Tray</td><td>A5 (LEF)/
8.5" x 11"</td><td>A3/11" x 17"</td></tr>
<tr><td>2000-sheet LCT</td><td colspan="2">A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1200-sheet LCT</td><td>B5 (LEF)/
257 x 182mm</td><td>A4 (LEF)/
297 x 210mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Printing Paper Weight:</td><td colspan="3">Standard tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)
Optional paper tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)</td></tr>
</table>

	By-pass tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.) Duplex unit: 60 to 169 g/m^2 (16 to 45 lb.) 1200-sheet LCT : 60 to 216 g/m^2 (10 to 571lb)	
Output Paper Capacity:	Standard exit tray: 500 sheets or more (face down)*1 Shift Tray: 250 sheets (80 g/m^2) 1-bin Tray: 125 (80 g/m^2) 1000-sheet finisher 250 + 1000 sheets (80 g/m^2) 2000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 2000 sheets (80 g/m^2) 3000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 3000 sheets (80 g/m^2) *1: T6200, A4 LEF	
Continuous copy:	Up to 999 sheets	
Zoom:	Arbitrary: From 25 to 400% (1% step)	
	Fixed:	
	North America	Europe
	25%	25%
	50%	50%
	65%	61%
	73%	71%
	78%	82%
	85%	87%
	93%	93%
	100%	100%
	121%	115%
	129%	122%
	155%	141%
	200%	200%

Main Frame

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="4">400%</td><td colspan="2">400%</td></tr>
<tr><td>Memory:</td><td colspan="6">Standard: 1024 MB</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Source:</td><td colspan="6">120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12A (for North America)
220 V – 240 V, 50/60 Hz: More than 8A (for Europe/ASIA)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Power Consumption:</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td>120V</td><td colspan="2">220 - 240V</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Maximum</td><td>1500 W or less</td><td colspan="2">1600 W or less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Energy Saver</td><td>2.5 W or less</td><td colspan="2">4.0 W or less</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Noise Emission:
(Sound Power Level)</td><td>Model</td><td colspan="2">State</td><td>Mainframe</td><td colspan="2">Complete system
(*1)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">C2c</td><td colspan="2">Standby</td><td>40 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">49 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>B/W: 70 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color:70dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">Color: 74 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">C2d</td><td colspan="2">Standby</td><td>40 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">52 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>B/W: 72 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color:72dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">Color: 76 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">(*1) The complete system consists of mainframe, ARDF, finisher, and LCT.
The above measurements were made in accordance with Ricoh standard methodology.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Dimensions (W x D x H):
Copier: 670 x 677 x 760 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 29.9")
Copier + PFU or LCT: 670 x 677 x 1020 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 40.2")</td></tr>
<tr><td>Weight:</td><td colspan="6">Less than 130 kg (286 lb.) [with ARDF excluding toner]</td></tr>
</table>

1.2 PRINTER

Printer Languages:	PCL 6/5c RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream) Adobe PostScript 3 (optional) PDF Direct (optional) PictBridge (optional)
Resolution and Gradation:	PCL 5c: 300 x 300 dpi : Available only in B/W mode 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) PCL 6: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) / 1200 x 1200 dpi RPCS: 600 x 600 dpi, 1,800 x 600 dpi*, 9600 dpi x 600 dpi* *1,800 x 600 dpi = 600 x 600 dpi (2 bits) *9600 dpi x 600 dpi* = 600 x 600 dpi (4 bits) PS3: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits)
Printing speed:	C2c: 40 ppm in Plain/Middle Thick mode 17.5 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type) C2d: 50 ppm in Plain mode 25 ppm in Middle Thick mode 17.5 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type)
Resident Fonts:	PCL 6/5c (Standard): 45 Compatible fonts 13 International fonts 1 Bitmap font Adobe PostScript 3 (Optional): 136 fonts (24 Type 2 fonts, 112 Type 14 fonts)

Printer

Host Interfaces:	USB2.0: Standard USB Host (PictBridge): Optional Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T): Standard Gigabit Ethernet (1000 Base-T): Optional IEEE1284 parallel x 1: Optional IEEE802.11a/g, g (Wireless LAN): Optional Bluetooth (Wireless): Optional
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6), IPX/SPX, AppleTalk (Auto Switching)

1.3 SCANNER

Standard Scanner Resolution:	Main scan/Sub scan 600 dpi
Available scanning Resolution Range:	Twain Mode: 100 to1200 dpi Delivery Mode: 100/200/300/400/600 dpi
Grayscales:	1 bit or 8 bits/pixel each for RGB
Scanning Throughput (ARDF mode):	Scan to E-mail / Folder: BW: 63 ppm (A4LEF / BW Text / Line Art / 200dpi /Compression: On (MH)) FC: 60 ppm (A4LEF / FC Text / Photo / 200dpi / Compression: Standard)
Interface:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T/1000 Base-T for TCP/IP), Wireless LAN, USB2.0/SD Slot
Compression Method:	B&W: TIFF (MH, MR, MMR) Gray Scale, Full Color: JPEG

1.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

1.4.1 PAPER FEED

North America

BT: By-pass Tray, T1: Tray 1, T2/3/4: Tray 2/3/4, LCT 2000: Large Capacity Tray: 2000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 W	12" x 18"	M	-	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	M	S	M	S	S	M
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	M	S	A	-	-	M
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	M	S	M	-	S	M
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	A	-	A	-	-	M
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	A	-	A	-	-	M
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	A	M	A	M	M	M
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	M	-	A	-	-	M
Government	8.25" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Legal SEF							
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	A	-	-	-	-	-
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	M	-	A	-	-	M
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	11" x 15"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	10" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	8" x 10"	M	-	M	-	-	M
8K	267 x 390mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K SEF	195 x 267mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K LEF	267 x 195mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
Custom		M	-	M	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220mm	M	-	-	-	-	-

Supported Paper Sizes

Remarks:

A	Supported: the sensor detects the paper size.
M	Supported: the user specifies the paper size.
S	Supported: depends on a technician adjustment
-	Not supported

Europe/ Asia

BT: By-pass Tray, T1: Tray 1, T2/3/4: Tray 2/3/4, LCT 2000: Large Capacity Tray: 2000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 W	12" x 18"	M	-	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	A	-	A	-	-	M
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	A	-	A	-	-	M
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	A	M	A	M	S	M
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	A	-	-	-	-	-
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	A	S	A	-	-	M
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	A	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	M	S	A	-	S	M
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	M	-	M	-	-	M

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	M	-	A	-	-	M
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	M	S	M	S	S	M
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	M	-	M	-	-	M
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	11" x 15"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	10" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	8" x 10"	M	-	M	-	-	M
8K	267 x 390mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K SEF	195 x 267mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K LEF	267 x 195mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
Custom		M	-	M	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220mm	M	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

A	Supported: the sensor detects the paper size.
M	Supported: the user specifies the paper size.
S	Supported: depends on a technician adjustment
-	Not supported

1.4.2 PAPER EXIT

2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher (B804/B805)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple, SS: Saddle Stitch,
2P: 2 Holes Punch, N2P: North Europe 2 Holes, 3P: 3 Holes Punch,
Punch 4 P: 4 Holes Punch, N4P: North Europe 4 Holes Punch

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	-	-	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	-	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
Custom		Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	Y*[1]	Y*[2]	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Y	Supported
15	Output up to 15 sheets
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

Supported Paper Sizes

*1: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

*2: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

- Longer paper (feed length) than DLT (432 mm) is not guaranteed in this mode.

*3: Minimum 100 mm for 2P, 230 mm for 3P, 255 mm for 4P, 125 mm for N4P

*4: Corner stapling is not available in this mode.

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	N
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Custom		Y	Y	-	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Supported Paper Sizes

Y	Supported
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

1.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

Size (width x length) [mm]	Platen	ARDF	Platen	ARDF
	Inches	Inches	Metric	Metric
A3 (297 x 420) SEF	-	Y	Y*[3]	Y
B4 (257 x 364) SEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
A4 (210 x 297) SEF	Y*[1]	Y	Y*[3]	Y
A4 (297 x 210) LEF	Y*[3]	Y	Y*[3]	Y
B5 (182 x 257) SEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
B5 (257 x 182) LEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
A5 (148 x 210) SEF	-	-	-*[1]	Y
A5 (210 x 148) LEF	-	-	-*[1]	Y
B6 (128 x 182) SEF	-	-	-	Y
B6 (182 x 128) LEF	-	-	-	Y
11" x 17" (DLT)	Y	Y*[2]	-	Y*[2]
11" x 15"	-	y*[2]	-	-
10" x 14"	-	Y	-	-
8.5" x 14" (LG)	Y	Y*[2]	-	-
8.5" x 13" (F4)	-	y*[2]	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8.25" x 13"	-	-	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8" x 13"(F)	-	-	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8.5" x 11" (LT)	Y*[3]	Y*[2]	Y*[3]	Y*[2]
11" x 8.5" (LT)	Y*[3]	Y*[2]	Y*[3]	Y*[2]

Supported Paper Sizes

8" x 10"	-	y*2	-	-
5.5" x 8.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8.5" x 5.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8K (267 x 390)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K L (195 x 267)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K S (267 x 195)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
7.25" x 10.5" (Executive)	-	Y	-	-
10.5" x 7.25" (Executive)	-	y*2	-	-

*1: Use SP4-303 to detect original sizes as A5 lengthwise/HLT when the message “Can-t detect original size” shows.

*2: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP6-016-1. In default setting, "Y" is detected. "y" can be detected if you change setting of SP6-016-1.

*3: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP4-305-1.

*4: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP5-126-1.

1.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

The printer drivers and utility software are provided as following two CD-ROMs

1: Printer Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM

2: Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.

An auto-run installer lets you to select the components you want to install.

1.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003/Vista	MacOS8.6 to 9.x, MacOSX10.1 or later
PCL5c / PCL6	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3 *2)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The PCL5c/6 and RPCS drivers are provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
- The PS drivers are provided on the Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.
- The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- The PS3 drivers are all genuine Adobe PS drivers, except for Windows 2000/XP/2003/Vista. Windows 2000 uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.
- The PS3 driver for Macintosh supports Mac OS X 10.1 or later versions.

1.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003/Vista	MacOS8.6 to 9.x, MacOSX10.1 or later
Network TWAIN	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
LAN-FAX	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The Network TWAIN and LAN Fax drivers are provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM.
- This software lets you fax documents directly form your PC. Address Book Editor and Cover Sheet Editor are to be installed as well. (These require the optional fax unit.)

1.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE

Software	Description
Font Manager 2000 (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
Smart Device Monitor for Admin (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder – SmartDeviceMonitor for Client (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista)	A printer management utility for client users. A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP/IP network. A peer-to-peer print utility over a TCP/IP network. This provides the parallel printing and recovery printing features. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
Printer Utility for Mac (Mac)	A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder Lite (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	DeskTopBinder Lite itself can be used as personal document management software and can manage both image data converted from paper documents and application files saved in each client's PC. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM

1.6 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

1.6.1 ARDF (B802)

Paper Size/Weight:	Simplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	40 to 128 g/m^2 (11 to 34 lb.)
	Duplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	52 to 128 g/m^2 (14 to 34 lb.)
Table Capacity:	100 sheets (81.4 g/m^2, 22 lb)		
Original Standard Position:	Rear left corner		
Separation:	Feed belt and separation roller		
Original Transport:	Roller transport		
Original Feed Order:	From the top original		
Supported Magnification Ratios:	Copy	-	32 to 200 %
	Fax	Color	32.6 to 200 %
		Black & white	48.9 to 200 %
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V from the scanner unit		
Power Consumption:	Less than 60W		
Dimensions (W × D × H):	570 mm x 520 mm x 135 mm (22.4”x20.5”x5.3”)		
Weight:	Less than 12kg (26.5 lb.)		

1.6.2 PAPER FEED UNIT (D351)

Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10% (Near end), and Empty)
Capacity:	500 sheets x 2 trays
Paper Weight:	60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)
Paper Size:	A3 SEF to A5, DLT SEF to HLT
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 60 W (Max.)/ Less than 35 W (Ave,)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)

1.6.3 LCT 2000-SHEET (D352)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/LT LEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2 (16 lb. to 68 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	2,000 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10%, Empty): Right Tray 4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Empty): Left Tray
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max.)/30 W (Ave.)
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")

1.6.4 LCT 1200-SHEET (D353)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/ LT LEF/ B5 LEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 57 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	1,200 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20lb)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 75%, 30%, 10%, End)
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max)/ 25 W (Ave.)
Weight:	14 kg (30.8 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	348 mm x 540 mm x 290 mm (13.7" x 21.3" x 11.4")

1.6.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B805)

Finisher		
Dimension (w x d x h)		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9” x 24.1” x 37.8”)
Weight		Less than 54 kg (119 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 56 kg (123.5 lb.) (with punch unit)
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W
Noise		Less than 75 db
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit
Power Source		From base-unit
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger
	Paper Size	A5-A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 SEF

		5.5” x 8.5”-11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF			
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)			
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	3,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF		
		1,500 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 8.5” x 11” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF		
		500 sheets	A5 LEF		
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5” SEF		
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5”- 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF			
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)			
Staples					
Paper Size		B5 - A3 8.5” x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”			
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 24 lb.)			
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant			
Stapling Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller		
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger		
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF + A3 SEF, B5 LEF + B4 SEF, 8.5" x11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF		

Staple Replenishment	Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge		
Stapled Stack Capacity (same size)	Paper Size	Pages/Set	Sets
	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF	20 - 50 pages	150 - 60 sets
		2 - 19 pages	150 sets
	A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF	15 - 50 pages	100 - 30 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
	Others	15 - 30 pages	100 - 33 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes)	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5” x11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF	2 - 30 pages	50 set

1.6.6 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER (B804)

Finisher		
Dimension W x D x H		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9 x 24.1 x 37.8")
Weight		Less than 63 kg (138.6 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 65 kg (143 lb.) (with punch unit)
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W
Noise		Less than 75 db
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit
Power Source		From base-unit
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger

	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 LEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12”x18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)	
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	2,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF
		1,000 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5" x 14” SEF, 8.5" x 11” SEF, 12”x18” SEF
		500 sheets	A5 LEF
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5" SEF
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)	

Staple			
Paper Size		B5-A3, 8.5" x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”	
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2, 17 lb. Bond - 28 lb. Bond	
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant	
Staples Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14” or larger
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF
	Booklet Stapling	15 sheets	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF 8.5" x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF

Optional Equipment

Staple Replenishment		Corner staple	5,000 staples per cartridge
		Booklet staple	2,000 staples per cartridge
Corner Staple Capacity	Same Size	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF	13 - 50 pages
			2 - 12 pages
		A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF	10 - 50 pages
			2 - 9 pages
		Others	10 - 30 pages
			2 - 9 pages
	Mixed Size	A4 LEF + A3 SEF B5 LEF + B4 SEF 8.5” x 11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF	2 - 30 pages
Booklet Staple Capacity	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF 8.5” x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF 12” x 18” SEF		2 - 5 pages
			6 - 10 pages
			11 - 15 pages

1.6.7 PUNCH UNIT (B702) FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER

Available Punch Units		NA	2/3 holes switchable
		EU	2/4 holes switchable
		Scandinavia	4 holes
Punch Waste Replenishment		NA 2-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		NA 3-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		EU 2-holes	Up to 14,000 sheets
		EU 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
		Scandinavia 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
Paper Weight		52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2, 14 lb Bond - 43 lb Bond	
Paper Sizes	NA 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5" , 8.5" x 11”
	NA 3-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11” x 17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	EU 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”
	EU 4-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11”x17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	Scandinavia 4-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”

1.6.8 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408)

Upper Tray

Paper Size:	A3 to A6 11" x 17" to 5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb.)
Paper Capacity:	250 sheets (A4 LEF/8.5" x 11" SEF or smaller) 50 sheets (A4, 8.5" x 11" or smaller) 30 sheets (B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger)

Lower Tray

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Paper Size:</td><td colspan="4">No staple mode:
A3 to B5, DLT to HLT
Staple mode:
A3, B4, A4, B5, DLT to LT</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">No staple mode: 60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb)
Staple mode: 64 to 90 g/m^2 (17 to 24 lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">30 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG)
50 sheets (A4, B5 LEF, LT)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">No staple mode:
1,000 sheets (A4/LT or smaller: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
500 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
Staple mode: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., number of sets)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Size</td><td rowspan="2">2 to 9</td><td colspan="2">10 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td>Size</td><td>10 to 30</td><td>31 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>A4/LT LEF
B5 LEF</td><td>100</td><td>100 to 20</td><td>100 to 20</td></tr>
</table>

	A4/LT SEF	100	50 to 10	50 to 10
	A3, B4, DLT, LG	50	50 to 10	-
Staple positions:	1 Staple: 2 positions (Front, Rear) 2 Staples: 2 positions (Upper, Left)			
Staple Replenishment:	Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge)			
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier/printer)			
Power Consumption:	50 W			
Weight:	25 kg (55.2 lbs)			
Dimensions (W x D x H):	527 x 520 x 790 mm (20.8" x 20.5" x 31.1")			

1.6.9 BRIDGE UNIT (D386)

Paper Size:	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 90 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 600 mm
Paper Weight:	52 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2, 16 lb. to 68 lb.
Paper Capacity:	250 sheet (A4/ $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or smaller: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs) 125 sheet (B4 $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or larger: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (form the copier/printer)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	415 mm x 412 mm x 111 mm (16.3" x 16.2" x 4.4")
Weight	5 kg (11 lb.)

1.6.10 SHIFT TRAY (D388)

Paper Capacity:	250 sheet (A4/ $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or smaller: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs) 125 sheet (B4 $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or larger: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs)
Paper Size:	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 90 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 600 mm
Paper Weight:	52-256 g/m^2/ 14 - 68 lbs
Power Consumption:	Max 10W (Power is supplied from the mainframe.)
Dimension (W x D x H):	423 mm x 468 mm x 114 mm (16.7" x 18.4" x 4.5")
Weight:	Approx. 2kg (4.4lbs)

1.6.11 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414)

Paper Size:	Standard Size: A3 /DLT to A5/ HLT SEF
Paper Weight:	60 to 169 g/m^2, 16 to 45 lb.
Tray Capacity:	125 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., A4)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	Less than 1 W
Weight:	1.7 kg
Size (W x D x H):	565 mm x 410 mm x 115 mm (22.2" x 16.1" x 4.5")

Appendix:

Maintenance Tables

2. APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Chart: A4 (LT)/5%

Mode: 4 copies / original (prints/job)

Ratio 30%

Environment: Normal temperature and humidity

Yield may change depending on circumstances and print conditions.

Symbol keys: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricant, I: Inspect

Mainframe

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Scanner							
Reflector	C						Optics cloth
1st/2nd/3rd mirrors	C						Optics cloth
Front and Rear Rails	C						Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C					C	Dry cloth; alcohol
ADF Exposure Glass	C					C	Dry cloth; alcohol
APS Sensor	C						Dry cloth
PCU							
Dev. Unit–K				R			

Maintenance Tables

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Drum Unit-K, C, M, Y	R						
Developer-K		R					
Transfer							
Image transfer belt-cleaning unit		R					
Paper Transfer Roller Unit			R				
Toner Collection Bottle	R						
Fusing							
Heating Roller		R					
-Bearing		R					S552R
Pressure Roller		R					
-Bearing		R/L					S552R
Idle Gear						R/L	S552R
Heating Roller Thermistor		C					
Pressure Roller Thermistor		C					
Lower Cover		C					
Stripper Plate		C					Alcohol
Entrance Guide Plate		C					Alcohol
Exit Guide Plate		C					Alcohol
Fusing Cleaning Felt		R					
Thermopile		C					Cotton

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
							swab with alcohol
Paper Path							
Registration Roller						C	Damp cloth
Registration Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Vertical Transport Roller						C	Damp cloth
Vertical Transport Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller						C	Dry cloth
Feed Roller						C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller						C	Dry cloth
Fusing Entrance Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Fusing Exit Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Paper Dust Container	C					C	
Duplex Unit							
Inverter Roller						C	Damp cloth
Transport Roller						C	Damp cloth
Duplex Entrance Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Duplex Exit Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Miscellaneous							

Maintenance Tables

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Dust Filter	R						
Dust Glass						C	
ID Sensor						C	Blower Brush

*1: Clean this thermistor only when it has paper dust.

ARDF (B802)

Item	120K	EM	Remarks
Sensors		C	Blower brush
Platen Sheet Cover		C	Damp cloth; alcohol (Replace if required.)
White Plate		C	Dry or damp cloth
Drive Gear		L	Grease G501
Transport Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Exit Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Inverter Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Idle Rollers		C	Damp cloth; alcohol

Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

1200-sheet LCT (D353)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

2000-sheet LCT (D352)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804/B805)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower brush

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit (B702)

Items	EM	Remarks
Punch Chads	C	Discard chads.

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower brush

1 Bin Tray (D414)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Tray	C	Damp cloth
Sensor	C	Blower brush
Bearing	C	S552R

Bridge Unit (D386)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth

Shift Tray (D388)

Items	EM	Remarks
Tray	C	Damp cloth

2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS

The parts mentioned in these tables have a target yield. However, the total copy/print volume made by the machine will not reach the target yield within the machine's targeted lifetime if the machine is used under the target usage conditions (ACV, color ratio, P/J, and C/O). So, these parts are categorized not as PM parts but as yield parts (EM parts).

Mainframe

Item	120K	240K	480K	600K	Remarks
Dev. Unit–C, M, Y			R		
Developer- C, M, Y		R			
ITB Unit				R	

ARDF

Item	80K	120K	240K	320K	Remarks
Pick-up Roller		R			Number of originals
Feed Belt		R			Number of originals
Separation Roller		R			Number of originals

APPENDIX:

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

3. APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

3.1 SC TABLES

3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Summary

The "SC Table" section shows the SC codes for controller errors and other errors. The latter (not controller errors) are put into four types. The type is determined by their reset procedures. The table shows the classification of the SC codes.

	Key	Definition	Reset Procedure
Controller errors	CTL	The error has occurred in the controller.	See “Troubleshooting Procedure” in the table.
Other errors	A	The error involves the fusing unit. The machine operation is disabled. The user cannot reset the error.	Turn the main switch off and on. Reset the SC (set SP5-810-1). Turn the main switch off and on.
	B	The error involves one or some specific units. The machine operates as usual, excluding the related units.	Turn the operation switch off and on.
	C	The error is logged. The SC-code history is updated. The machine operates as usual.	The SC will not show. Only the SC history is updated.
	D	The machine operation is disabled. You can reset the machine by turning the operation switch or main switch off and on. If the error occurs	Turn the operation switch or main power switch off and on.

SC Tables

	Key	Definition	Reset Procedure
		again, the same SC code is displayed.	

After you turn the main power switch off, wait for one second or more before you turn the main power switch on (☛ SC 672). All SCs are logged. The print log data (SP5-990-004) in SP mode can check the latest 10 SC codes detected and total counters when the SC code is detected.

Note

- If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before you replace the PCBs.
- If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before you replace motors or sensors.

SC Code Classification

The table shows the classification of the SC codes:

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
1XX	Scanning	100 -	Scanner
		190 -	Unique for a specific model
2XX	Laser exposure	200 -	Polygon motor
		220 -	Synchronization control
		230 -	FGATE signal related
		240 -	LD control
		280 -	Unique for a specific model
		290 -	Shutter
3XX	Image development 1	300 -	Charge
		330 -	Drum potential
		350 -	Development

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		380 -	Unique for a specific model
4XX	Image development 2	400 -	Image transfer
		420 -	Paper separation
		430 -	Cleaning
		440 -	Around drum
		460 -	Unit
		480 -	Others
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	500 -	Paper feed
		515 -	Duplex
		520 -	Paper transport
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	530 -	Fan motor
		540 -	Fusing
		560 -	Others
		570 -	Unique for a specific model
6XX	Communication	600 -	Electrical counters
		620 -	Mechanical counters
		630 -	Account control
		640 -	CSS
		650 -	Network
		670 -	Internal data processing
		680 -	Unique for a specific model
7XX	Peripherals	700 -	Original handling

SC Tables

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		720 -	Two-tray finisher
		740 -	Booklet finisher
8XX	Controller	800 -	Error after ready condition
		820 -	Diagnostics error
		860 -	Hard disk
		880 -	Unique for a specific model
9XX	Others	900 -	Counter
		920 -	Memory
		990 -	Others

3.1.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 1

SC1xxx: Scanning

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
101	D	Exposure lamp error
		The peak white level is less than 64/255 digits (8 bits) when scanning the shading plate.
		▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective ▪ Exposure lamp connector defective ▪ Standard white plate dirty ▪ Scanner mirror or scanner lens out of position or dirty
		1. Check and clean the scanner mirror(s) and scanner lens. 2. Check and clean the shading plate. 3. Replace the exposure lamp. 4. Replace the lamp stabilizer. 5. Replace the scanner mirror(s) or scanner lens.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
120	D	Scanner home position error 1
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “OFF” condition during operation.
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SIO and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Check the cable connection between the SIO and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
121	D	Scanner home position error 2
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “ON” condition during operation.
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SIO and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor. 2. Check the cable connection between the SIO and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
141	D	Black level detection error
		The black level cannot be adjusted within the target value during the zero clamp.
		▪ Harness disconnected ▪ Defective SBU
		1. Check the cable connection 2. Replace the SBU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
142	D	White level detection error
		The white level cannot be adjusted within the target during auto gain control.
		▪ Dirty exposure glass or optics section ▪ SBU board defective ▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective ▪ Scanner motor defective
		1. Clean the exposure glass, white plate, mirrors, and lens. 2. Check if the exposure lamp is lit during initialization. 3. Check the harness connection between SBU and BICU. 4. Replace the exposure lamp. 5. Replace the scanner motor. 6. Replace the SBU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
144	D	SBU communication error
		The SBU connection cannot be detected at power on or recovery from the energy save mode.
		▪ Defective SBU ▪ Defective harness ▪ Defective detection port on the BICU
		1. Replace the harness. 2. Replace the SBU. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
161		IPU error

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
001	D	The error result of self-diagnostic by the ASIC on the BICU is detected.
		▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective connection between BICU and SBU
		1. Check the connection between BICU and SBU. 2. Replace the BICU.
002	D	Detected an error during an access to the Ri.
		▪ Defective BICU board
		1. Replace the BICU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
165	D	Copy Data Security Unit error
		▪ The copy data security board is not detected when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting. ▪ A device check error occurs when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting.
		▪ Incorrect installation of the copy data security board ▪ Defective copy data security board
		1. Reinstall the copy data security board. 2. Replace the copy data security board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
195	D	Serial Number Mismatch
		▪ Serial number stored in the memory does not have the correct code.
		▪ NVRAM defective ▪ BICU replaced without original NVRAM

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the serial number with SP5-811-002. 2. If the stored serial number is incorrect, contact your supervisor.

3.1.3 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 2

SC Codes Group 2: Exposure

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
202	D	Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed within the specified time after turning on or changing speed
		▪ Defective or disconnected harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor.
		1. Replace the polygon motor. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the harness. 4. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
203	D	Polygon motor error 2: OFF timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does leave the READY status within 3 seconds after the polygon motor switches off.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
204	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The SCRDY_N signal goes HIGH (inactive) while the laser diode is firing.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
210	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [K]
211	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [Y]
212	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [M]
213	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [C]
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the end position of LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not detected for one second after the LDB unit turned on when detecting the main scan magnification.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to synchronizing detector for end position ▪ Defective synchronizing detector board ▪ Defective LD board or driver ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Replace the harness of the LD board. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
220	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD0

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
221	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD1
222	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD0
223	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD1
224	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD0
225	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD1
226	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD0
227	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD1
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not output for two seconds after LDB unit turns on while the polygon motor is rotating normally.
		▪ Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection ▪ Defective laser synchronizing detector ▪ Defective LDB ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Check the connectors. 2. Replace the laser-synchronizing detector. 3. Replace the LDB. 4. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
230	D	FGATE ON error: K
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [K].
		▪ Defective ASIC (Lupus) ▪ Poor connection between controller and BICU. ▪ Defective BICU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the connection between the controller board and the BICU. 2. Replace the BICU. 3. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
231	D	FGATE OFF error: K
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [K]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
232	D	FGATE ON error: Y
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [Y].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
233	D	FGATE OFF error: Y
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [Y]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
234	D	FGATE ON error: M

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [M].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
235	D	FGATE OFF error: M
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [M]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
236	D	FGATE ON error: C
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [C].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
237	D	FGATE OFF error: C
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [C]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
240	C	LD error: K

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
241	C	LD error: Y
242	C	LD error: M
243	C	LD error: C
-	-	The BICU detects LDB error a few times consecutively when LDB unit turns on after LDB initialization.
		▪ Worn-out LD ▪ Disconnected or broken harness of the LD
		1. Replace the harness of the LD. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
285	D	Line position adjustment (MUSIC) error
		Line position adjustment fails four consecutive times.
		▪ Pattern sampling error (insufficient image density) ▪ Defective ID sensors for the line position adjustment ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit ▪ Defective PCU(s) ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit
		1. Check and reinstall the image transfer belt unit and PCUs. 2. Check if each toner bottle has enough toner. 3. Replace the ID sensor. 4. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 5. Replace the PCU(s). 6. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

3.1.4 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 3

SC3xx: Image Processing – 1

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
300	D	AC charge output error [K]
301	D	AC charge output error [M]
302	D	AC charge output error [C]
303	D	AC charge output error [Y]
-	-	The measured voltage is not proper when IOB measures the charge output for each color.
		▪ Disconnected or broken high voltage cable ▪ Defective or not installed PCU ▪ Defective high voltage power supply
		1. Check or replace the connectors. 2. Replace the PCU for the affected color. 3. Replace the high voltage power supply.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
360	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: K
361	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: M
362	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: C
363	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: Y
-	-	▪ The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 4.7V) with SP3020-002 for twenty counts. ▪ The [Vt - Vtref] value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 5.0V) with SP3020-001.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor disconnected ▪ Harness between TD sensor and PCU defective ▪ Defective TD sensor.
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
364	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: K
365	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: M
366	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: C
367	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: Y
-	-	The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is below the specified value with SP3020-004 (default: 0.5V) for 10 counts.
		▪ TD sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ A drawer connector disconnected, loose, defective ▪ TD sensor defective
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
372	D	TD sensor adjustment error: K
373	D	TD sensor adjustment error: M
374	D	TD sensor adjustment error: C

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
375	D	TD sensor adjustment error: Y
-	-	During TD sensor initialization, the output value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is not within the range of the specified value with SP3238-001 to -004 (default: 2.5V) ± 0.2V
		▪ Heat seal not removed from a new developer pack ▪ TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective ▪ TD sensor defective ▪ Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective
		1. Remove the heat seal from each PCU. 2. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
380	C	Drum gear position sensor error: K
381	C	Drum gear position sensor error: M
382	C	Drum gear position sensor error: C
383	C	Drum gear position sensor error: Y
		The machine does not detect the drum position signal for 3 seconds at the drum phase adjustment.
▪ Dirty or defective drum gear position sensor		
1. Replace the drum gear		

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
position sensor. 2. Replace the PCU.		

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
396	D	Drum/Development motor error: K
397	D	Drum/Development motor error: M
398	D	Drum/Development motor error: C
399	D	Drum/Development motor error: Y
-	-	The machine detects a High signal from the drum/development motor for 2 seconds after the drum/development motor turned on.
		▪ Overload on the drum/development motor ▪ Defective drum/development motor ▪ Defective harness ▪ Shorted 24 V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock system
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum/development motor. 3. Replace the 24V fuse on the PSU.

3.1.5 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 4

SC4xx: Image Processing - 2

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
400	D	ID sensor adjustment error
		When the Vsg error counter reaches "3", the machine detects "SC400". The Vsg error counter counts "1" when the Vsg detected by ID sensor is more than the value (default: 4.5V) specified with SP3324-005 or less than the value (default: 3.5V) specified with SP3324-006.
		▪ Dirty or defective ID sensor ▪ Defective ID sensor shutter
		1. Check the harness of the ID sensor. 2. Clean or replace the ID sensor. Note ▪ After replacing the ID sensor, input the ID sensor correction coefficient with SP3362-013 to -018. For details, refer to "ID sensor board" in the Replacement and Adjustment section. 1. Replace the IOB. 2. Replace the image transfer belt unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
441	D	Image transfer unit motor error
		The motor LOCK signal is not detected for more than two seconds while the motor START signal is on.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 2. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
442	D	Image transfer belt contact motor error
		The image transfer belt contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Dirty image transfer belt contact sensor ▪ Defective image transfer belt contact motor ▪ Disconnected connector of image transfer belt contact sensor or motor ▪ Disconnected cable
		1. Replace the image transfer belt contact sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt contact motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
443	C	Image transfer unit error
		The machine detects the encoder sensor error.
		▪ Defective encoder sensor ▪ Image transfer unit installation error ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Check if the image transfer unit is correctly set. 2. Replace the image transfer unit motor. 3. Replace the image transfer unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
452	D	Paper transfer unit contact error
		The paper transfer unit contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact sensor ▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact motor

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Broken +24V fuse on PSU ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check the connection between the paper transfer unit and PSU. 2. Replace the paper transfer unit contact sensor. 3. Replace the paper transfer unit contact motor. 4. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
460	D	Separation power pack output error
		An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 20 ms. This SC is issued if the BICU detects a short in the power pack 10 times at D(ac).
		▪ Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable ▪ Damaged insulation around the high-voltage power supply.
		1. Replace the high-voltage supply cable. 2. Replace the high-voltage power supply unit. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
490	D	Toner transport motor error
		The LOCK signal is not detected for 2 seconds when the transport motor turns on.
		▪ Toner transport motor overload ▪ Disconnected or broken harness ▪ Defective toner transport motor ▪ Opened +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock switch

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the toner transport motor. 3. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 4. Replace the interlock switch.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
491	D	High voltage power: Drum/ development bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the drum or development.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective drum unit or development unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
492	C	High voltage power: Image transfer/ paper transfer bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the separation, image transfer bet or paper transfer roller.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
498	C	Temperature and humidity sensor error 2
		▪ The thermistor output of the temperature sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V). ▪ The thermistor output of the humidity sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.01V to 2.4V).
		▪ Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Temperature and humidity sensor defective
		1. Check the connector and harness. 2. Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.

3.1.6 SERVICE CALL TABLES – 5

SC5xx: Paper Feed and Fusing

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
501	B	Paper Tray 1 error
502	B	Paper Tray 2 error
-	-	▪ When the tray lift motor rotates counterclockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. ▪ When the tray lift motor rotates clockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 1.5 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. If one of these conditions occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
		▪ Disconnected or defective paper lift sensor ▪ Disconnected or defective tray lift motor ▪ Defective bottom plate lift mechanism ▪ Too much paper in the tray ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check if the paper is not loaded too much. 2. Check if the bottom plate smoothly moves up and down manually. 3. Check and / or replace the tray lift motor / paper lift sensor. 4. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-01	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds **For the LCT:**

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ SC 503-01 occurs if the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift or lower the tray.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective upper limit sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-02	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times. **For the paper feed unit:** ▪ When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. **For the LCT:** ▪ When the main switch is turned on or when the LCT is set, if the end fence is not in the home position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor stops. ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-01	B	Tray 4 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the two-tray paper feed unit When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated. **For the LCT** If the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up or lower the tray
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-02	B	Tray 4 error (3 Tray Paper Feed Unit)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times.

For the two-tray paper feed unit

- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		sec. **For the LCT** ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

505		5th tray lift malfunction (optional LCT)
-1	B	This SC is generated if the following condition occurs: ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go on after the tray lift motor has turned on to lift the paper tray. ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go off after the tray lift motor has turned on to lower the paper tray. ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go on after the pick-up roller solenoid has turned on at power on.
		▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected ▪ Tray lift sensor defective or disconnected
-2	B	Both tray lift sensor and lower limit sensor are turned on at the same time when the main power is turned on or the right door is closed.
		▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected ▪ Tray lift sensor defective or disconnected ▪ Lowe limit sensor defective or disconnected

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
530	D	Fusing fan error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		the fusing fan.
		▪ Defective fusing fan motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check the connector and/or replace the fusing fan motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
531	D	Ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front/rear error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 2 seconds after turning on the ventilation fan motor-front/rear.
		▪ Defective ventilation fan motor-front or rear
		1. Replace the ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front or rear.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
532	D	IH coil fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH coil fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH coil fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
533	D	IH inverter fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH inverter fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH inverter fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
534	D	Second duct fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the second duct fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the second duct fan motor ▪ Defective second duct motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the second duct fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
535	D	Paper exit fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the paper exit fan turns on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the paper exit fan motor ▪ Defective paper exit motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the paper exit fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
536	D	Controller fan error
		The motor lock signal error is detected for 10 seconds after the motor lock signal was first detected.
		▪ Defective controller fan motor ▪ Disconnected or defective harness ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Replace the controller fan motor. 2. Check or replace the harness. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
540	D	Fusing/Paper exit motor error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on the fusing/paper exit motor.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor
		1. Replace the fusing/paper exit motor.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
541	A	Heating roller thermopile error
		The temperature measured by the heating roller thermopile does not reach 0°C for 6 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the heating roller thermopile.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
542	A	Heating roller warm-up error 1
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 190 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 18 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Dirty or defective thermopile ▪ Defective IH coil unit
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermopile. 3. Replace the IH coil unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
543	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (software error)
		The detected fusing temperature stays at 215°C for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		Related SC code: SC 553
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
544	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (hardware error)
		During stand-by mode or a print job, the detected heating roller temperature reaches 220 °C.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
547	D	Zero cross error
		▪ The zero cross signal is detected three times even though the heater relay is off when turning on the main power. ▪ The zero cross signal is not detected for 3 seconds even though the heater relay is on after turning on the main power or closing the front door. ▪ The detection error occurs twice or more in the 11 zero cross signal detections. This error is defined when the detected zero cross signal is less than 39.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective fusing relay ▪ Defective fusing relay circuit ▪ Shorted +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Unstable power supply
		1. Check the power supply source. 2. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 3. Replace the PSU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
548	A	Fusing unit rotation error
		The fusing belt sensor does not detect change in the actuator for 0.5 seconds after the fusing/paper exit motor has turned on.
		▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor ▪ Deformed actuator for the fusing belt sensor ▪ Defective fusing belt sensor ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Incorrectly set fusing unit
		1. Check if the fusing unit is correctly set. 2. Check or replace the actuator for fusing belt sensor. 3. Replace the fusing belt sensor. 4. Replace the IH inverter. 5. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
551	A	Heating roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the pressure roller thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 7 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of pressure roller thermistor ▪ Defective pressure roller thermistor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		Related SC code: SC 541
		1. Check that the pressure roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the pressure roller thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
552	A	Heating roller warm-up error 2
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 90 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 13 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective IH inverter
		Related SC code: SC 542
		1. Check if the heating roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
553	A	Heating roller overheat (software error)
		The detected heating roller temperature stays at 230°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
554	A	Heating roller overheat (hardware error)
		The heating roller thermistor detects 240°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
557	C	Zero cross frequency error
		When the zero cross signal is 66 or more and it is detected 10 times or more in 11 detections, the machine determines that input 60 Hz and SC557 occurs.
		▪ Noise (High frequency)
		1. Check the power supply source.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
559	A	Consecutive fusing jam
		The paper jam counter for the fusing unit reaches 3 times. The paper jam counter is cleared if the paper is fed correctly. This SC is activated only when SP1159-001 is set to "1" (default "0").
		▪ Paper jam in the fusing unit.
		Remove the paper that is jammed in the fusing unit. Then make sure that the fusing unit is clean and has no obstacles in the paper feed path.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
561	A	Pressure roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 37 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
562	A	Pressure roller temperature error
		The temperature of the pressure roller does not reach the ready temperature for 120 seconds after the fusing lamp has turned on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective fusing lamp
		1. Replace the thermistor for the pressure roller. 2. Replace the fusing lamp.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
563	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (software error)
		The detected pressure roller temperature stays at 215°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
564	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (hardware error)
		The thermistor detects 220°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
565	A	Pressure roller fusing lamp consecutive full power 3
		When the fusing unit is not running in the ready condition, the pressure roller fusing lamp keeps ON full power for 180 seconds or more.
		▪ Broken pressure roller fusing lamp
		1. Replace the pressure roller lamp. 2. Replace the PSU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
569	D	Pressure roller contact sensor error
		Pressure roller contact sensor failed to detect 3 times.
		▪ Broken or defective pressure roller contact sensor ▪ Deformed or broken pressure roller contact sensor feeler

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective fusing unit
		1. Turn the main power switch ON/OFF.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
581	D	IH inverter input voltage error
		The IH inverter detects 70V or less/140V or more for 10 seconds.
		▪ Unusual input voltage ▪ Disconnected CN981 on the IH inverter ▪ Defective IH inverter
		1. Check CN981 on the IH inverter. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
582	D	IH inverter current error at power on
		The output current from the IH inverter does not reach the proper value when the IH inverter turns on.
		▪ Disconnected power input terminal 1 and 2 ▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IH coil unit ▪ Defective fusing unit
		1. Check the power input terminals 1 and 2. 2. Replace the IH inverter. 3. Replace the IH coil unit. 4. Replace the fusing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
585	A	IH coil unit full power (1250W) error

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The IH coil unit full power (1250W) continues for 220 seconds or more.
		▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Replace the IH inverter. 2. Replace the BICU. 3. Replace the IOB. 4. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB. 5. Replace the thermopile.

3.1.7 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 6

SC6xx: Device Communication

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
610	D	Mechanical counter error: K
611	D	Mechanical counter error: FC
-	-	This SC is only for NA models. The machine detects the mechanical counter error when SP5987-001 is set to "1".
		▪ Disconnected mechanical counter ▪ Defective mechanical counter
		1. Check or replace the mechanical counter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
620	D	ARDF communication error
		After the ARDF is detected, the break signal occurs or communication timeout occurs.
		▪ Incorrect installation of ARDF ▪ ARDF defective ▪ BICU board defective ▪ External noise
		1. Check the cable connection of the ARDF. 2. Shut out the external noise. 3. Replace the ARDF. 4. Replace the BICU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
621	D	Finisher communication error
622	D	Paper tray unit communication error
-	-	While the IOB communicates with an optional unit, an SC code is displayed if one of following conditions occurs. ▪ The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by the peripherals only just after the main switch is turned on. ▪ When the IOB does not receive an OK signal from a peripheral 100ms after sending a command to it. The IOB resends the command. The IOB does not receive an OK signal after sending the command 3 times.
		▪ Cable problems ▪ IOB problems ▪ BICU problems ▪ PSU problems in the machine ▪ Main board problems in the peripherals
		1. Check if the cables of peripherals are correctly connected. 2. Replace the IOB or main board of peripherals. 3. Replace the BICU if no power is supplied to peripherals.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
623	D	2nd Paper Bank communication error
		This SC is not issued for this machine. When a communication error signal between the 1st paper bank and 2nd paper bank is received.
		▪ Loose connector

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
632	CTL	Counter device error 1

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	B	After 3 attempts to send a data frame to the optional counter device via the serial communication line, no ACK signal was received within 100 ms.
		▪ Serial line between the optional counter device, the relay board and copier control board is disconnected or damaged ▪ Make sure that SP5113 is set to enable the optional counter device.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
633	CTL B	Counter device error 2
		After 3 attempts to send a data frame to the optional counter device via the serial communication line, no ACK signal was received within 100 ms.
		▪ Serial line between the optional counter device, the relay board and copier control board is disconnected or damaged ▪ Make sure that SP5113 is set to enable the optional counter device.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
634	CTL B	Counter device error 3
		A backup RAM error was returned by the counter device.
		▪ Counter device control board defective ▪ Backup battery of counter device defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
635	CTL B	Counter device error 4
		A backup battery error was returned by the counter device.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Counter device control board defective ▪ Backup battery of counter device defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
636	CTL D	SD Card Error
01	-	Expanded authentication module error
		There is no expanded authentication module in the machine. The SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module is broken. There is no DESS module in the machine.
		▪ No expanded authentication module ▪ Defective SD card ▪ No DESS module
		1. Install the expanded authentication module. 2. Install the SD card. 3. Install the DESS module.
02	-	Version error
		The version of the expanded authentication module is not correct.
		▪ Incorrect module version
		1. Install the correct file of the expanded authentication module.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
641	CTL D	BICU control data transfer abnormal
		A sampling of the control data sent from the BICU reveals an abnormality.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Controller board defective ▪ External noise ▪ BICU board defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
650	CTL B	Communication error of the remote service modem (Cumin-M)
-001	-	Authentication error
		The authentication for the Cumin-M fails at a dial up connection.
		▪ Incorrect SP settings ▪ Disconnected telephone line ▪ Disconnected modem board
		1. Check and set the correct user name (SP5816-156) and password (SP5816-157).
-004	-	Incorrect modem setting
		Dial up fails due to the incorrect modem setting.
		Same as -001
		1. Check and set the correct AT command (SP5819-160).
-005	-	Communication line error
		The supplied voltage is not sufficient due to the defective communication line or defective connection.
		Same as -001
		1. Consult with the user's local telephone company.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
651	CTL C	Incorrect dial up connection
		-001: Program parameter error
		-002: Program execution error
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Cumin-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		▪ Caused by a software bug
		No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
669	D	EEPROM error
		Retry of EEPROM communication fails three times after the machine has detected the EEPROM error.
		▪ Caused by noise
		Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
670	CTL D	Engine start up error
		The ready signal from the engine board is not detected.
		▪ Defective engine board.
		1. Replace the engine board.

671	CTL D	Engine board mismatch error
		Engine board and controller mismatch detected.

		▪ Wrong engine board installed. ▪ Wrong controller board installed. ▪ Check the type of engine board and controller board.
		1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
672	CTL D	Controller-to-operation panel communication error at startup
		After powering on the machine, the communication circuit between the controller and the operation panel is not opened, or communication with controller is interrupted after a normal startup.
		▪ Controller stall ▪ Controller board installed incorrectly ▪ Controller board defective ▪ Operation panel connector loose or defective
		1. Check the harness connection. 2. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
681	D	RFID: Communication error ▪ Communication error occurs when the RFID starts to communicate with the RFID receptor. ▪ Retry of RFID communication fails three times after the machine has detected the RFID communication error.
		▪ Defective RFID reader and writer ▪ Disconnected ASAP I/F ▪ No memory chip on the toner cartridge ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the RFID controller board. 2. Replace the toner cartridge.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
682	D	Memory chip at TD sensor: Communication error
		Retry of memory chip communication fails three times after the machine has detected the memory chip communication error.
		▪ Damaged memory chip data ▪ Disconnected inter face ▪ No memory chip on the development unit ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
683	B	RFID: Unit check error
		The machine gets RFID communication error even the toner cartridges have not been installed in the machine.
		Caused by noise
		1. Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
687	D	Memory address command error
		The BICU does not receive a memory address command from the controller 120 seconds after paper is in the position for registration.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective controller ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Check if the controller is firmly connected to the BICU. 2. Replace the controller. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
690	D	GAVD communication error
		▪ The I2C bus device ID is not identified during initialization. ▪ A device-status error occurs during I2C bus communication. ▪ The I2C bus communication is not established due to an error other than a buffer shortage.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective LD controller board
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Check the cable connection. 3. Replace the laser optics-housing unit. 4. Replace the BICU board.

3.1.8 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 7

SC7xx: Peripherals

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
700	D	Original stopper HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on clockwise, the original stopper HP sensor does not detect the home position of the original stopper.
		▪ Defective original stopper HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 3. Replace the original stopper HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
701	D	Pick-up roller HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on counterclockwise, the pick-up roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the pick-up roller.
		▪ Defective pick-up roller HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 1. Replace the pick-up roller HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
721	B	Finisher jogger motor error
		The jogger fences move out of the home position but the HP sensor output does not change within the specified number of pulses. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Jogger motor disconnected, defective ▪ Jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction ▪ Finisher main board and jogger motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
723	B	Stack feed-out motor error
		▪ The stack feed-out HP sensor does not detect the home position of the stack feed-out belt 3000ms after the stack feed-out belt has moved to its home position. ▪ The stack feed-out HP sensor does not turn off 200 ms after the stack feed-out belt has moved from its home position. ▪ The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		▪ Defective stack feed-out HP sensor ▪ Overload on the stack feed-out motor ▪ Defective stack feed-out motor ▪ Defective main board ▪ Disconnected or defective harness

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
725	B	Finisher exit guide plate motor error
		After moving away from the guide plate position sensor, the exit guide is not detected at the home position within the prescribed time. The 1st

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Guide plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction ▪ Guide plate position sensor disconnected, defective
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in the guide plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the guide plate position sensor and/or guide plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
730	B	Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error
		The shift roller HP sensor of the upper tray does not activate within the prescribed time after the shift tray starts to move toward or away from the home position. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Shift tray HP sensor of the upper tray disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray is disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray overloaded due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in shift motor mechanism. 3. Replace the shift tray HP sensor and/or shift motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
740	B	Finisher corner stapler motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished after a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit does not detect the home position after the staple unit moves to its home position. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit detects the home position after the staple unit moves from its home position.
		▪ Staple jam ▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective stapler motor
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Replace the HP sensor and/or stapler motor 3. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
741	B	Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error
		The stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Defective stapler rotation motor ▪ Overload to the stapler rotation motor ▪ Defective stapler rotation HP sensor
		1. Replace the stapler rotation motor. 2. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
742	B	Finisher stapler movement motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished for a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the stapler motor turned on. (First detection: jam error, consecutive twice detection SC code).
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the stapler home position sensor ▪ Loose connection of the stapler movement motor ▪ Defective stapler home position sensor ▪ Defective stapler movement motor
		1. Check the connection of the stapler movement motor. 2. Check the connection of the stapler home position sensor. 3. Replace the stapler home position sensor. 4. Replace the stapler movement motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
743	B	Booklet stapler motor error 1
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The front stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the front stapler motor ▪ Defective front stapler motor
		1. Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
744	B	Booklet staple motor error 2
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The rear stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the rear stapler motor ▪ Defective rear stapler motor
		1. Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
746	B	1000-sheet booklet finisher: Stack feed motor error
		▪ **This SC is not used in this machine.**

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
750	B	1000/2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher: Tray lift motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers.
		1. Check the connections to the shift tray motor. 2. Defective shift tray motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
753	B	Return roller motor error

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		This occurs during the operation of the lower tray pressure motor
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Motor overloaded ▪ Home position sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Home position defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
760	B	Finisher punch motor error
		The punch HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the punch motor turned on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Punch motor disconnected or defective ▪ Punch motor overload due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the punch motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the punch motor mechanism. 3. Replace the punch HP sensor and/or punch motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
761	B	Finisher folder plate motor error
		The folder plate moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Folder plate HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor overloaded due to obstruction.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the connections and cables for the folder plate motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the folder plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the folder plate HP sensor and/or folder plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
763	B	Punch movement motor error
		The punch unit moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the punch movement motor. 2. Defective punch movement motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
764	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
765	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
766	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
767	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
770	B	Shift motor error
		The shift motor HP sensor does not detect any change for 1.86 seconds after the shift motor has turned on at power on or during its operation.
		▪ Defective shift motor ▪ Defective shift motor HP sensor
		1. Check the connections to the shift motor and the shift motor HP sensor. 2. Defective shift motor or the shift motor HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
791	D	Bridge unit error
		The machine recognizes the finisher, but does not recognize the bridge unit.
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Broken harness
		1. Check the connections between the bridge unit and the machine. 2. Install a new bridge unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
792	B	Finisher error
		The machine does not recognize the finisher, but recognizes the bridge unit.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Defective harness ▪ Incorrect installation
		1. Check the connections between the finisher and the machine. 2. Install a new finisher.

3.1.9 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 8

SC8xx: Overall System

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
816	CTL D	Energy saving I/O sub-system error
		The energy saving I/O sub-system detects an error.
		▪ Controller board defective
		1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)	
819	CTL C	Fatal kernel error	
		Due to a control error, a RAM overflow occurred during system processing. One of the following messages was displayed on the operation panel.	
[0x5032]		HAIC-P2 error	▪ System program defective ▪ Controller board defective ▪ Optional board defective ▪ Replace controller firmware
[0x5245]		vm_pageout: VM is full	
[0x5355]		L2 status time out	
[554C]		USB error	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
820	CTL D	Self-diagnostics error: CPU [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0612]		Cut-in in ASIC occurs.
		▪ Defective ASIC ▪ Defective devices in which ASIC detects cut-in.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
833	CTL C	Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC
[0F30] [0F31]		▪ ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
		1. Replace the VBCU
[0F41]		▪ ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
		1. Replace the VBCU
[50B1]		Could not initialize or read the bus connection.
		▪ Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		1. Replace the mother board
[50B2]		Value of the SSCG register is incorrect.
		▪ Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		1. Replace the mother board

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
851	CTL B	IEEE1394 interface error
		The 1394 interface is unusable.
		▪ Defective IEEE1394 ▪ Defective controller.
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the IEEE1394 interface board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
853	CTL B	Wireless LAN card not detected
		The wireless LAN card is not detected before communication is established, though the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
854	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card not detected
		The wireless LAN/Bluetooth card is not detected after communication is established, but the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
855 856	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card error
		An error is detected in the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective wireless LAN/Bluetooth card
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
857	CTL B	USB interface error
		The USB interface cannot be used due to a driver error.
		▪ Defective USB driver ▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the USB board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
858	CTL C	HDD Encryption unit error 1
		A serious error occurs when data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit.
	[0]	Encryption key acquisition error: The controller fails to get a new encryption key.
▪ Defective controller board 1. Replace the controller board.		
[1]	Encryption key setting for HDD error: The controller fails to copy a new	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	encryption key to the HDD.	
	▪ Defective SATA chip on the controller board 1. Replace the controller board.	
[2]	Encryption key setting for HDD error: The controller fails to copy a new encryption key to the HDD.	
	▪ Defective SATA chip on the controller board 1. Replace	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	the controller board.	
[30]	NVRAM data encryption error 2: An error occurs before the NVRAM data is encrypted.	
	▪ Defective controller board 1. Replace the controller board.	
[0]	NVRAM data encryption error 2: An error occurs before the NVRAM data is encrypted.	
[31]	Other error: A serious error occurs while the data is	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	encrypted.	
	Same as SC991	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
859	CTL C	HDD Encryption unit error 2
		A serious error occurs when the HDD data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit.
		HDD check error: The HDD is not correctly installed.
	[8]	▪ No HDD installed ▪ Unformatted HDD ▪ The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD 1. Install the HDD correctly. 2. Initialize the HDD.
		Power failure during the data encryption: The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed.
	[9]	▪ Power failure during the data encryption 1. Initialize the HDD.
		Data read/write error: The DMAC error is detected twice or more.
	[10]	▪ Same as SC863

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
860	CTL	HDD: Initialization error

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	B	The controller detects that the hard disk fails.
		▪ HDD not initialized ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Reformat the HDD. 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
861	CTL D	HDD: Reboot error
		The HDD does not become ready within 30 seconds after the power is supplied to the HDD.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective cables ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the HDD and controller. 2. Check and replace the cables. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
863	CTL D	HDD: Read error
		The data stored in the HDD cannot be read correctly.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Replace the HDD. 2. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
864	CTL D	HDD: CRC error
		While reading data from the HDD or storing data in the HDD, data transmission fails.
		▪ Defective HDD
		1. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
865	CTL D	HDD: Access error
		An error is detected while operating the HDD.
		▪ Defective HDD
		1. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
866	CTL B	SD card authentication error
		A correct license is not found in the SD card.
		▪ SD-card data is corrupted.
		1. Store correct data in the SD card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
867	CTL D	SD card error
		The SD card is ejected from the slot.
		1. Install the SD card. 2. Turn the main switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
868	CTL D	SD card access error ▪ -13 to -3: File system error ▪ Other number: Device error
		An error report is sent from the SD card reader. ▪ An error is detected in the SD card.
		1. For a file system error, format the SD card on your PC. 2. For a device error, turn the mains switch off and on. 3. Replace the SD card. 4. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
870	CTL B	Address book error
		An error is detected in the data copied to the address book over a network.
		▪ Defective software program ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Incorrect path to the server
		1. Initialize the address book data (SP5-846-050). 2. Initialize the user information (SP5-832-006). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
872	CTL B	HDD mail data error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Turn the main switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-007). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
873	CTL B	HDD mail transfer error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-008). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
874	CTL D	Delete All error 1: HDD
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted physically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377).
		▪ Data Overwrite Security Unit (SD card) not installed ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
875	CTL D	Delete All error 2: Data area
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted logically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377).
		▪ The logical format for the HDD fails.
		1. Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
876	CTL D	Log Data Error
		An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating.
-001		Log Data Error 1
		▪ Damaged log data file in the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-002		Log Data Error 2
		▪ An encryption module not installed
		1. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
		1. Install the DESS module.
-003		Log Data Error 3
		▪ Invalid log encryption key due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. 2. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
-004		Log Data Error 4
		▪ Unusual log encryption function due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-005		Log Data Error 5
		▪ Installed NVRAM or HDD which is used in another machine
		1. Reinstall the previous NVRAM or HDD. 2. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-099		Log Data Error 99

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Other than the above causes
		1. Ask your supervisor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
877	CTL D	HDD Data Overwrite Security SD card error
		The 'all delete' function cannot be executed but the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377) is installed and activated.
		▪ Defective SD card (D377) ▪ SD card (D377) not installed
		1. Replace the NVRAM and then install the new SD card (D377). 2. Check and reinstall the SD card (D377).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
878	CTL D	TPM system authentication error
		The system firmware is not authenticated by TPM (security chip).
		▪ Incorrect updating for the system firmware ▪ Defective flash ROM on the controller board 1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
880	CTL D	File format converter error
		The file format converter does not respond.
		▪ Defective file format converter
		1. Replace the file format converter.

3.1.10 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 9

SC9xx: Miscellaneous

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
900	CTL D	Electric counter error
		Abnormal data in the counters.
		▪ Defective NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the NVRAM and controller. 2. Replace the NVRAM. 3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
910	CTL D	External Controller Error 1
911		External Controller Error 2
912		External Controller Error 3
913		External Controller Error 4
914		External Controller Error 5
-	-	The external controller alerted the machine about an error.
-	-	▪ Please refer to the instructions for the external controller (application).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
919	CTL D	External Controller Error 6
		While EAC (External Application Converter), the conversion module, was operating normally, the receipt of a power line interrupt signal from

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		the FLUTE serial driver was detected, or BREAK signal from the other station was detected.
		▪ Power outage at the EFI controller ▪ EFI controller was rebooted ▪ Connection to EFI controller loose

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
920	CTL D	Printer application error
		An error is detected in the printer application program.
		▪ Defective software ▪ Unexpected hardware resource (e.g., memory shortage)
		1. Software defective; switch off/on, or change the controller firmware if the problem is not solved 2. Insufficient memory

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
921	CTL D	Printer font error
		A necessary font is not found in the SD card.
		▪ A necessary font is not found in the SD card. ▪ The SD card data is corrupted.
		1. Check that the SD card has the correct data.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
990	CTL D	Software performance error
		The software makes an unexpected operation.
		▪ Defective software

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Reinstall the controller and/or engine main firmware.
		Note ▪ See Note 1 at the end of the SC table.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
991	CTL C	Software continuity error
		The software has attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC 990, the object of the error is continuity of the software.
		▪ Software program error ▪ Internal parameter incorrect, insufficient working memory.
		1. This SC is not displayed on the LCD (logging only).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
992	CTL D	Undefined error
		Defective software program
		▪ An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
994	CTL C	Operation panel management records exceeded
		An error occurred because the number of records exceeded the limit for images managed in the service layer of the firmware. This can occur if there if there are too many application screens open on the operation

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		panel.
		▪ No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
995	D	CPM setting error
-001		▪ Defective BICU ▪ NVRAM Replacement error
		1. Install the previous NVRAM. 2. Input the serial number with SP5811-004, and turn the main power switch off/on.
-002		▪ Defective NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Update the controller firmware. 2. Install a new NVRAM, and turn off and on the main power switch after SC995-002 has occurred.
-003		▪ Incorrect type controller installed ▪ Defective controller
		1. Replace the controller with the correct type.
-004		▪ Incorrect model controller installed.
		1. Replace the controller with the correct model.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
997	CTL B	Application function selection error ▪ The application selected by the operation panel key does not start or ends abnormally.

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Software (including the software configuration) defective ▪ An option required by the application (RAM, DIMM, board) is not installed ▪ Nesting of the fax group addresses is too complicated
		1. Check the devices necessary for the application program. If necessary devices have not been installed, install them. 2. Check that application programs are correctly configured. 3. For a fax operation problem, simplify the nesting of the fax group addresses. 4. Take necessary countermeasures specific to the application program. If the logs can be displayed on the operation panel, see the logs.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
998	CTL D	Application start error
		No applications start within 60 seconds after the power is turned on.
		▪ Loose connection of RAM-DIMM, ROM-DIMM ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software problem
		1. Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)". 2. Check if the RAM-DIMM and ROM-DIMM are correctly connected. 3. Reinstall the controller system firmware. 4. Replace the controller.

Note 1

If a problem always occurs in a specific condition (for example. printer driver setting, image file), the problem may be caused by a software error. In this case, the following data and information needs to be sent back to your product specialist. Please understand that it may take some time to get a reply on how to solve the problem, because in some cases the design staff in Japan must analyze the data.

- Symptom / Possible Causes / Action taken
- Summary sheet (SP mode “Printer SP”, SP1-004 [Print Summary])
- SMC - All (SP5-990-001)
- SMC - Logging (SP5-990-004)
- Printer driver settings used when the problem occurs
- All data displayed on the screen (SC code, error code, and program address where the problem is logged.)
- Image file which causes the problem, if possible

APPENDIX:

PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

4. APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

4.1 PROCESS CONTROL TABLES

4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT

SP-3-014-001 (Developer Initialization Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
1	Successfully completed	Developer initialization is successfully completed.	-
2	Forced termination	Developer initialization was forcibly terminated.	▪ A cover was opened or the main switch was turned off during the initialization. 1. Do the developer initialization again when done in SP mode. Reinstall the engine main firmware if the result is the same. 2. Turn the main switch off and on when done at unit replacement.
6	Vt error	Vt is more than 0.7V when Vcnt is 4.3V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed. 2. Defective TD sensor
7	Vcnt error 1	Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ±0.2V.	1. Defective TD sensor 2. Vt target settings are not correct. 3. Toner density error
8	Vcnt error 2	Vt is more than 0.7V when Vcnt is 4.3V and	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed.

Process Control Tables

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
		Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ±0.2V.	2. Defective TD sensor
9	Vcnt error 3	Vcnt is less than 4.7V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed 2. Defective TD sensor 3. Vt target settings are not correct. 4. Toner density error

Note

- The machine starts developer initialization after you set “Enable” in SP3-902-005, 006, 007, or 008. Developer initialization automatically resumes when you open and close the front door or turn the main switch off and on if an error other than Error 8 occurs.

4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT

Displayed number shows results of each color sensor check.

00000000 = YYCCMMKK

SP3-012-001 to -010 (Process Control Self-check Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
11	Successfully completed	Process control self-check successfully completed.	Check the Vsg adjustment. See the "Vsg Adjustment Result" following this table.
41	Vt error	Vt maximum or minimum error is detected.	▪ Defective development unit Vt maximum error and an image is faint: 1. Replace the toner supply pump unit. Vt maximum error and an image is O.K: 1. Replace the development unit. 2. Replace the IOB board. Vt minimum error:

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
			1. Replace the development unit. 2. Replace the IOB board.
53	ID sensor coefficient (K5) detection error	Not enough data can be sampled.	▪ Solid image is not sufficient density: 1. Retry the process control. 2. Replace the ID sensors. 3. Replace the IOB board. ▪ Solid image is O.K. 1. Replace the ID sensors. 2. Replace the IOB board. ▪ ID sensor is dirty: 1. Clean the ID sensors. 2. Retry the process control.
54	ID sensor coefficient (K5) maximum/ minimum error	When the K5 is more than the value of SP3-362-003 or less than the value of SP3-362-004, the error 54 is displayed.	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. ▪ ID sensor or shutter is defective. Same as 53
55	Gamma error: Maximum	Gamma is out of range. 5.0 < Gamma	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high. ▪ Hardware defective. Same as 53
56	Gamma error: Minimum	Gamma is out of range. Gamma < 0.15	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too low. ▪ Hardware defective. 1. Same as 53 2. Replace the toner supply pump unit.
57	Vk error: Maximum	Vk is out of range. 150 < Vk	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too low. ▪ Hardware defective. Same as 53
58	Vk error: Minimum	Vk is out of range. Vk < –150	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high. ▪ Background dirty ▪ Hardware defective

Process Control Tables

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
			Same as 53
59	Sampling data error during gamma correction	Not enough data can be sampled during the gamma correction.	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. ▪ Hardware defective Same as 53
99	Unexpected error	Process control fails.	▪ Power Failure Check the power source.

Vsg Adjustment Result

SP3-325-001 to -010 (Vsg Adjustment Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
1	O.K	Vsg adjustment is correctly done.	-
2	ID sensor adjustment error	Vsg cannot be adjusted within 4.0 ±0.5V.	▪ Dirty ID sensor (toner, dust, or foreign material) ▪ Dirty transfer belt ▪ Scratched image transfer belt ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Poor connection ▪ Defective IOB 1. Clean the ID sensor. 2. Check the belt cleaning. Clean or replace the transfer belt. 3. Replace the image transfer belt. 4. Replace the ID sensor. 5. Check the connection. 6. Replace the IOB board.
3	ID sensor output error	ID sensor output is more than	▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Poor connection

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
		"Voffset Threshold" (SP3-324-004)	▪ Defective IOB 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Check the connection. 3. Replace the IOB board.
9	Vsg Adjustment error	Vsg adjustment has not been completed.	▪ Other cases Retry SP3-321-010.

4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT

SP2-194-010 to -012 (Line Position Adjustment Result: M, C, Y)

This SP shows the number as a line position adjustment result on the LCD. It shows which color has an error (M, Y or C).

No.	Result	Description	Note
0	Not done	Line position adjustment has not been done.	-
1	Completed successfully	Line position adjustment has correctly been done,	-
2	Cannot detect patterns	ID sensors have not detected the patterns for line position adjustment.	See Note
3	Fewer lines on the pattern than the target	The patterns, which ID sensors have detected, are not enough for line position adjustment.	See Note
4	More lines on the pattern than the target	Not used in this machine.	-
5	Out of the adjustment range	ID sensors have correctly detected the patterns for line position adjustment, but a shift of patterns is out of adjustable range.	See Note
6-9	Not used	-	-

Note

- For details, see the "Troubleshooting Guide - Line Position Adjustment" section.

APPENDIX:

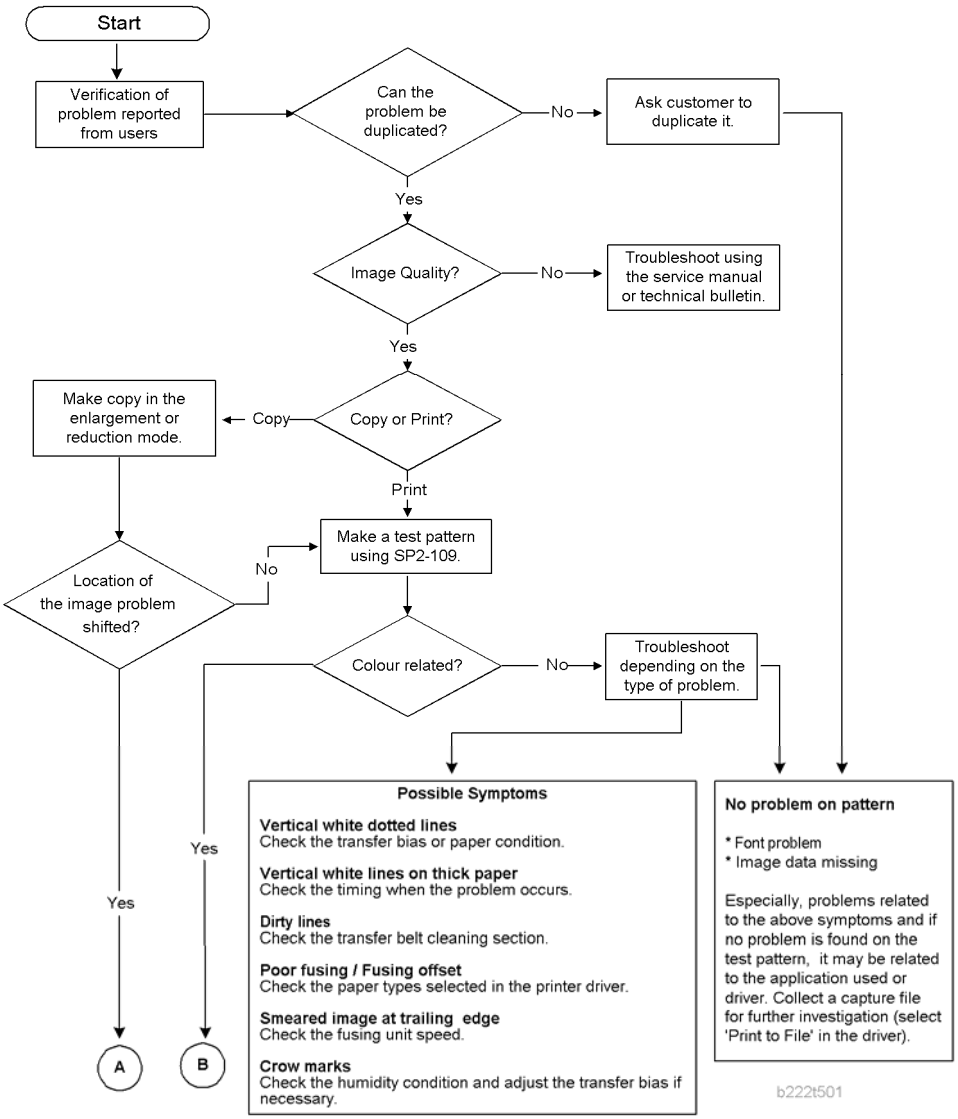
TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

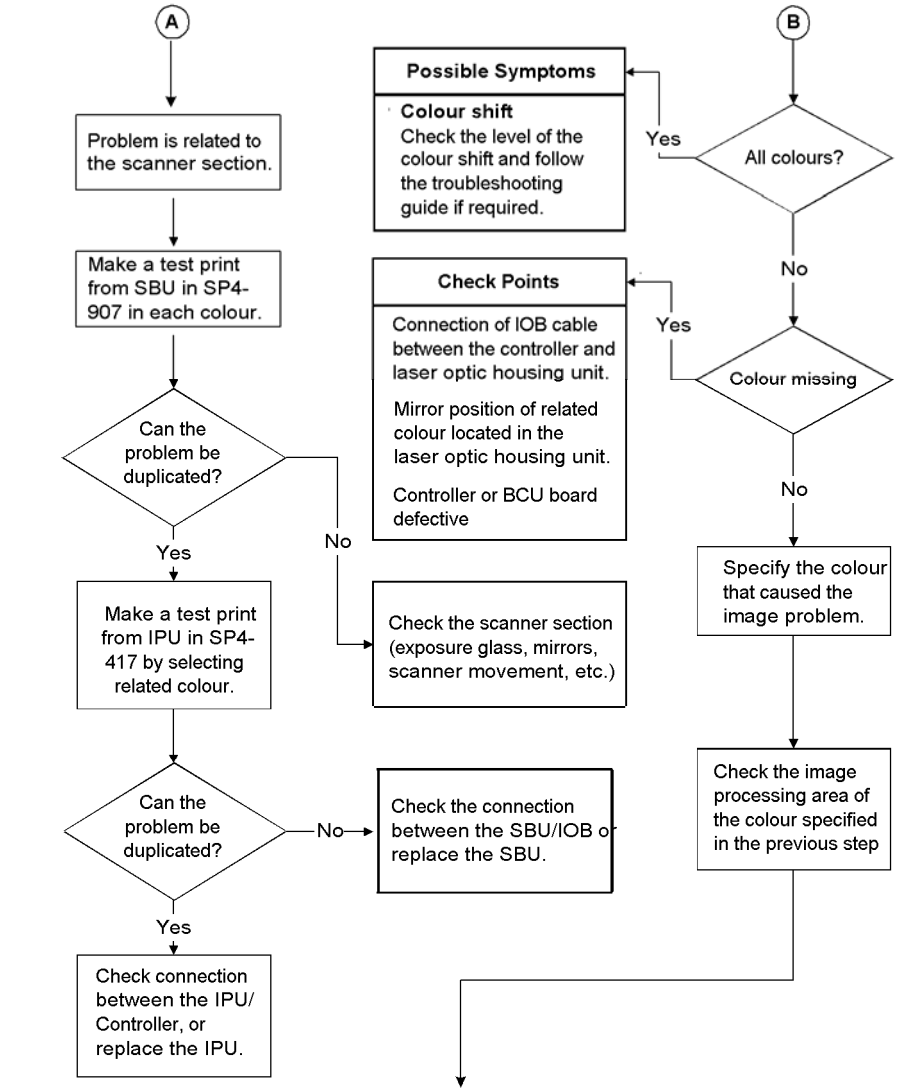
5. APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

5.1 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

5.1.1 IMAGE QUALITY

The following work-flow shows the basic troubleshooting steps for the image quality problems on this product.





Considerable Symptoms

Toner blasting
Check which colour is blasting and adjust the toner limit or transfer bias.
Image density change
Check when the problem is reported and follow the necessary steps.
Dirty Background
Check in which condition the problem is reported, and follow the required procedure.
Colour vertical bands/lines/dirty background
Check the OPC drum and/or development unit.
Colour shift
Check the level of the colour shift and follow the troubleshooting guide if required.
Colour lines/bands/dirty background
When the PCU/development unit is close to its life end, the developer or the cleaning blade of the PCU wears out, causing vertical colour lines, bands, or dirty background. Check the related colour unit and replace it if necessary.

b222t502

5.1.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT

When there are color registration errors on the output, do the line position adjustment as follows.

Note

- Use A3/DLT size paper for this adjustment.

Test

1. Do SP2-111-003 (Mode c: rough adjustment).
2. Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.
3. Do SP2-111-001 (Mode a: fine adjustment twice).
4. Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.
5. Put some A3/DLT paper on the by-pass tray.

   Note

   - When you print a test pattern, use the by-pass tray to feed the paper.
6. Print out test pattern "7" with SP2-109-003.
7. Check the printed output with a loupe.
8. If there are no color registration errors on the output, the line position adjustment is correctly done. If not, refer to the countermeasure list for color registration errors.

Countermeasure list for color registration errors

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the shutter motor.

Troubleshooting Guide

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit. 3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BICU.
Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU.

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- One of results: "5" (Out of adjustable range) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±15 mm from the main scan registration of K.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the BICU.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±20 mm from the sub scan registration of K.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the drum motor. 3. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registration is shifted by more than ±0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	3. Replace the BICU.
The skew for M, C, Y is more than ±0.75 mm from the main scan registration of K	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "0" in SP2-194-010, -011, -012.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	Do SP2-111-001 or -002.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the shutter motor. 2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit.

Troubleshooting Guide

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BICU.
Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "5" (Out of adjustable range) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±1.4 mm from the main scan registration of K.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±1.4mm from the sub scan registration of K.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BICU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the drum motor.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	4. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registration is shifted by more than ±0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BICU.
The skew for M, C, Y is more than ± 0.75 mm from the main scan registration of K. – at the end of the scan line?	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "0" in SP2-194-007
- Result: No color registration errors in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
The main scan registration of K is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan: K Adjust the value with SP2-101-001.
The main scan length of K is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan length detection: K Adjust the value with SP2-185-001.

After Executing SP2-111-001

Troubleshooting Guide

- Result: "0" in SP2-194-007
- Result: Color registration errors in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).
The main scan registration is shifted, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU. 4. Adjust the value with SP2-182-004 to -021.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the drum motor. 4. Replace the BICU. 5. Adjust the value with SP2-182-022 to -039.
The skew of M, C, Y is different.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	▪ Defective IOB 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the IOB.
The sub scan lines are shifted. Shifted lines appear cyclically.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective drive unit ▪ Drum phase adjustment error 1. Do SP1-902-001 (Drum phase adjustment); see Replacement and Adjustment – Drive Unit – Gear Unit for details. 2. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 3. Check or replace the drive unit.

APPENDIX:

JAM DETECTION

6. APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION

6.1 JAM DETECTION

6.1.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY

SP7-507 shows the paper jam history.

```
CODE :011
SIZE    :05h
TOTAL:000034
DATE  :Fri Feb 15 11:44:50 2006
```

- **CODE**: Indicates the jam code.
- **SIZE**: Indicates the paper Size Code.
- **TOTAL**: Indicates the total counter (SP7-502-001).
- **DATE**: indicates the date when the jam occurred.

6.1.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES

SP7-504 shows how many jams occurred at each location.

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 3	Tray 1: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 1.	A
7504 4	Tray 2: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 2.	A
7504 5	Tray 3: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 6	Tray 4: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 4.	Y
7504 7	LCT: ON	Paper is not fed from LCT.	U
7504 8	Bypass: ON	Paper is not fed from the by-pass tray.	A
7504 9	Duplex: ON	Paper is jammed at the duplex unit.	Z
7504 10	-	-	-

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 11	Vertical Transport 1: ON	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not detect paper from tray 1.	A
7504 12	Vertical Transport 2: ON	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not detect paper from tray 2.	A
7504 13	Bank Transport 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 or relay sensor does not detect paper from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 15	-	-	-
7504 16	-	-	-
7504 17	Registration: ON	Registration sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 18	Fusing Entrance: ON	Fusing entrance sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 19	Fusing Exit: ON	Fusing exit sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 20	Paper Exit: ON	Paper exit sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 21	Relay Exit: ON	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 22	Relay Transport: ON	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 23	-	-	-
7504 24	Junction Gate Feed: ON	Junction gate jam sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 25	Duplex Exit: ON	Duplex exit sensor does not detect paper.	Z
7504 26	Duplex Entrance: ON	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect	Z

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
	(In)	paper.	
7504 27	Duplex Entrance: ON (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect paper again after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 28	-	-	-
7504 51	SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not turn off.	A
7504 52	SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	A
7504 53	Bank SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor or relay sensor 1 does not turn off.	Y
7504 54	Bank SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	Y
7504 55	-	-	-
7504 56	-	-	-
7504 57	Regist Sensor	Registration sensor does not turn off.	B
7504 58	LCT Sensor	LCT sensor does not turn off.	U
7504 59	-	-	-
7504 60	Exit Sensor	Paper exit sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 61	Relay Exit Sensor	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 62	Relay Sensor	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 63	-	-	-

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 64	Junction Gate Feed: OFF	Junction gate jam sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 65	Duplex Exit Sensor	Duplex exit sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 66	Duplex Entrance: OFF (In)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 67	Duplex Entrance: OFF (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 68	-	-	-
7504 100	Finisher Entrance (B408)	Paper does not reach to the entrance sensor or stay at the entrance sensor.	R1-R2
7504 101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit (B408)	Paper does not reach to the lower tray exit sensor or stay at the lower tray exit sensor.	R1-R2
7504 102	Finisher Staple (B408)	Paper does not reach to the staple tray entrance sensor or stay at the staple tray entrance sensor.	R3-R5
7504 103	Finisher Exit (B408)	Lower tray exit sensor does not detect paper after the stack feed-out belt has fed paper. Lower tray exit sensor still detects paper after the stack feed-out belt has returned to the home position.	R3-R5
7504 104	-	-	-
7504 105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor (B408)	Stack height sensor does not detect paper after the lower tray has lifted up. Stack height sensor still detects paper after the lower tray has lifted down.	R1-R2

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 106	Finisher Jogger Motor (B408)	Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off after the jogger fence has moved from its home position. Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on after the jogger fence has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 107	Finisher Shift Motor (B408)	Shift roller HP sensor does not turn off after the shift roller has moved from its home position. Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on after the shift roller has returned to its home position.	R1-R2
7504 108	Finisher Staple Motor (B408)	Stapler HP sensor does not turn off after the stapler has moved from its home position. Stapler HP sensor does not turn on after the stapler has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 109	Finisher Exit Motor (B408)	Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn off after the stack feed-out belt has moved from its home position. Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn on after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 191	Finisher Entrance: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the finisher entrance sensor or stays at the finisher entrance sensor.	R1-R4
7504 192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the proof tray exit sensor or stays at the proof tray exit sensor.	R1-R4

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the upper tray exit sensor or stays at the upper tray exit sensor.	R1-R4
7504 194	Finisher Stapler Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn on after the finisher entrance sensor has turned on. Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn off after it has turned on.	R5-R7
7504 195	Finisher Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Upper tray exit sensor does not turn on while the stack feed-out belt is turned on. Upper tray exit sensor does not turn off after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R8-R12
7504 196	-	-	-
7504 197	-	-	-
7504 198	Finisher Folder: EUP (B804 only)	Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on after the fold roller motor has stopped. Fold unit exit sensor does not turn on after the fold rollers have stopped. Fold unit exit sensor does not turn off after the fold rollers have stopped.	R8-R12
7504 199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Upper tray limit sensor does not turn on after the upper tray has lifted up. Upper tray limit sensor does not turn off after the upper tray has moved down.	R1-R4
7504 200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the jogger motor has turned	R8-R12

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		on. Stack feed out belt HP sensor does not turn on/off after the feed out belt motor has turned on.	
7504 201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the shift roller motor has turned on. Exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the exit guide plate motor has turned on. Stacking roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stacking sponge roller motor has turned on.	R1-R4
7504 202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Corner stapler HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler movement motor has turned on. Stapler rotation HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler rotation motor has turned on.	R8-R12
7504 203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Corner stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time. Booklet stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time.	R8-R12
7504 204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP (B804 only)	Fold plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold plate motor has turned on. Clamp roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the clamp roller retraction motor has turned on. Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold unit bottom	R8-R12

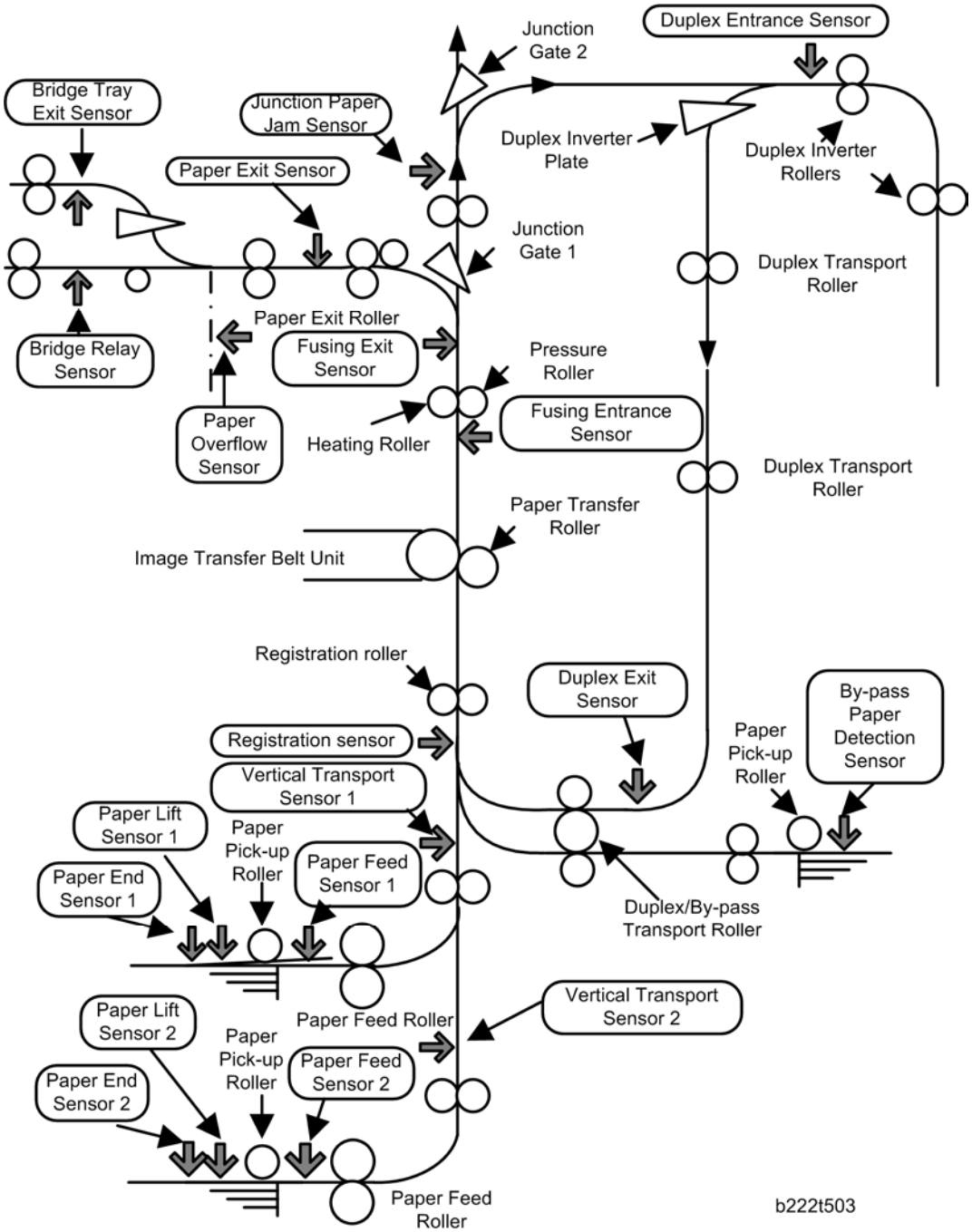
Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		fence lift motor has turned on. Stack junction gate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stack junction gate motor has turned on.	
7504 205	-	-	-
7504 206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Punch encoder sensor does not turn on/off after the punch drive motor has turned on. Punch movement HP sensor does not turn on/off after the punch movement motor has turned on. Paper position slide HP sensor does not turn on/off after the paper position sensor slide motor has turned on.	R1-R4

Paper Size Code

Size Code	Paper Size	Size Code	Paper Size
05	A4 LEF	141	B4 SEF
06	A5 LEF	142	B5 SEF
14	B5 LEF	160	DLT SEF
38	LT LEF	164	LG SEF
44	HLT LEF	166	LT SEF
132	A3 SEF	172	HLT SEF
133	A4 SEF	255	Others
134	A5 SEF	-	-

Sensor Locations



APPENDIX:

ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7. APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.1.1 SENSORS

Note

- The CN numbers in the following table are the connector numbers on the IOB.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
SW1	Right Door Open Switch	L	CN204/1	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed.
				Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.
S10	Duplex Door	L	CN232/B9	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed.
				Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.
S1	ID Sensor: M	A	CN211/ 7, 11	Open/ Shorted	SC400
	ID Sensor: C	A	CN211/ 8, 12	Open/ Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Y	A	CN211/ 9, 13	Open/ Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Front	A	CN211/1	Open/ Shorted	SC258
	ID Sensor: Center	A	CN211/2	Open/	SC400 / SC258

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
	and K			Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Rear	A	CN211/3	Open/ Shorted	SC258
S13	Registration Sensor	L	CN224/A2	Open	Jam A (Jam8, 17)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S31	Drum Gear Position Sensor-K	H	CN222/A2	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC396
S32	Drum Gear Position Sensor-M	H	CN222/ A5	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC397
S33	Drum Gear Position Sensor-C	H	CN222/ A8	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC398
S34	Drum Gear Position Sensor-Y	H	CN222/ A11	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC399
S27 S28 S29 S30	Toner End Sensor - K Toner End Sensor - Y Toner End Sensor - C Toner End Sensor - M	L	CN207/A1 CN207/B9 CN207/ B12 CN207/ B15	Open	Toner end cannot be detected.
				Shorted	Toner end is detected when there is enough toner.
S52	Image Transfer Belt Rotation Sensor	H/L	CN208/11	Open/ Shorted	SC443
S20	Vertical Transport Sensor 1	L	CN230/A7	Open	Jam A (Jam3, 11)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S21 S25	Paper End Sensor 1, 2	L	CN230/ A10, B10	Open	Paper end is not detected when there is no paper in the paper tray.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Paper end is detected when there is paper in the paper tray.
S22 S26	Paper Lift Sensor 1, 2	H	CN230/ A13, B13	Open/ Shorted	SC501, SC502
S24	Vertical Transport Sensor 2	L	CN230/B7	Open	Jam A (Jam4, 12)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S15 S16	Tray 1 Paper Height Sensor 1, 2	L	CN224/ B2, B5	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume on the LCD is wrong.
S17 S18	Tray 2 Paper Height Sensor 1, 2	L	CN224/ B10, B13	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume on the LCD is wrong.
S19	Tray 1 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN230/A4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B
S23	Tray 2 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN230/B4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B
SW4	Tray 1 Set Switch	L	CN224/A9	Open	Tray 1 is not detected when tray 1 is set.
				Shorted	Tray 1 is detected when tray 1 is not set.
S12	By-pass Paper Size Sensor	L	CN232/ B16, B17, B19, B20	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error
SW2	By-pass Paper Detection Sensor	L	CN232/ A15	Open	Paper on the by-pass tray is not detected when paper is set.

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Paper on the by-pass tray is detected when paper is not set.
S11	By-pass Paper Length Sensor	L	CN232/ B12	Open	Paper size error
				Shorted	
S9	Fusing Entrance Sensor	L	CN232/B6	Open	Jam C (Jam 18)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S7	Duplex Entrance Sensor	L	CN232/A8	Open	Jam Z (Jam 26/27)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S8	Duplex Exit Sensor	L	CN232/ A11	Open	Jam Z (Jam 25)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S35	TD Sensor - K	A	CN227/A7	Open/ Shorted	SC372
S36	TD Sensor - M	A	CN227/ A15	Open/ Shorted	SC373
S37	TD Sensor - C	A	CN227/B7	Open/ Shorted	SC374
S38	TD Sensor - Y	A	CN227/ B15	Open/ Shorted	SC375
S4	Fusing Exit Sensor	L	CN204/12	Open	Jam C (Jam 19)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S14	Waste Toner Sensor	H	CN224/A5	Open	Waste toner near full indicated when it is not near full.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Waste toner near full cannot be detected when the waste toner bottle is nearly full.
SW3	Waste Toner Bottle Set Switch	L	CN224/A7	Open	Waste toner bottle is not detected when the waste toner bottle is set.
				Shorted	Waste toner bottle is detected when the waste toner bottle is not set.
SW5	Tray 2 Paper Size Switch	L	CN224/ A11, A12, A13, A15	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error
S6	Temperature/ Humidity Sensor	A	CN231/ 25, 27	Open/ Shorted	SC498 Printed image has some problems such as rough image, dirty background, weak image or poor fusing.
S39	Thermopile	A	CN209/16	Open/ Shorted	SC541
TH2	Thermistor - Heating Roller	A	CN212/22	Open/ Shorted	SC551
TH1	Thermistor - Pressure Roller	A	CN212/18	Open/ Shorted	SC561
S3	Paper Exit Sensor	L	CN204/9	Open	Jam C (Jam 20)

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S5	Paper Overflow Sensor	L	CN204/15	Open	Paper overflow message is not displayed when the paper overflow condition still remains.
				Shorted	Paper overflow message is displayed when the paper overflow condition does not remain.
S48	Original Width Sensor 1	A	CN313/14 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S47	Original Width Sensor 2	A	CN313/11 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S46	Original Length Sensor 1	A	CN313/8 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S45	Original Length Sensor 2	A	CN313/5 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S44	Original Length Sensor 3	A	CN313/2 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S42	Scanner HP Sensor	H	CN318/2 SIO	Open	SC120
				Shorted	SC121
S43	Platen Cover Sensor	L	CN318/5 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Platen cover open cannot be detected.
-	Paper Transfer Contact Sensor	L	CN208/7	Open/ Shorted	SC452

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
-	Image Transfer Belt Contact Sensor	L	CN208/2	Open/ Shorted	SC442
S40	Heating Roller Rotation Sensor	H/L	CN210/2	Open/ Shorted	SC584
S41	Pressure Roller HP Sensor	L	CN210/5	Open/ Shorted	SC569
S2	Junction Paper Jam Sensor	L	CN204/6	Open/ Shorted	Jam C (Jam 24/64)

7.1.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Power Supply Unit

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	No response. (5V power to the PSU is not supplied.)
FU2	10A/125V	6.3A/250V	No response. (5V power to the BICU and controller is not supplied.)
FU3	2A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the scanner heater and tray heater is not supplied.
FU4	1A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the SIO and heater is not supplied.
FU5	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU6	2A/250V	2A/125V	5VS power to the BICU not supplied.
FU7	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU8	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU9	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU10	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the SIO not supplied.
FU11	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the BICU and MB not supplied.
FU12	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the PFU or LCT not supplied.
FU13	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the finisher not supplied.
FU14	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the BICU not supplied.

IH Inverter

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.
FU2	115°C		No response
FU3	115°C		No response
FU4	1A/250V		15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.

⚠CAUTION

- For continued protection against risk of fire, replace only with same type and rating of fuse.

APPENDIX

SP MODE TABLES

8. APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES

8.1 SYSTEM SERVICE MODE

8.1.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE

SP1-XXX (Feed)

1001	**[Leading Edge Registration]** Leading Edge Registration Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type, Color Mode), Paper Type -> Plain, Thick 1or Thick 2		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration motor operation timing for each mode.		
002	Tray: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
003	Tray: Middle Thick	*ENG	
004	Tray: Thick 1	*ENG	
005	Tray: Thick 2	*ENG	
007	By-pass: Plain	*ENG	
008	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
009	By-pass: Thick 1	*ENG	
010	By-pass: Thick 2	*ENG	
011	By-pass: Thick 3	*ENG	
013	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	
014	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	
015	Duplex: Thick 1	*ENG	
016	Tray: Thick 3	*ENG	

017	Tray: Plain:1200	*ENG	
018	Tray: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
019	Tray: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
020	By-pass: Plain:1200	*ENG	
021	By-pass: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
022	By-pass: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
023	Duplex: Plain:1200	*ENG	
024	Duplex: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
025	Duplex: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	

1002	**[Side to Side Reg.]** Side-to-Side Registration Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode.		
001	By-pass Table	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Paper Tray 1	*ENG	
003	Paper Tray 2	*ENG	
004	Paper Tray 3	*ENG	
005	Paper Tray 4	*ENG	
006	Duplex	*ENG	
007	Paper Tray 5	*ENG	
008	Large Capacity Tray	*ENG	

1003	**[Paper Buckle]** Paper Buckle Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type), Paper Type: N: Normal, TH: Thick
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle at the registration roller by changing the

	paper feed timing.		
002	Paper Tray1: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
003	Tray1: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-1** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Tray1: Thick1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
007	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Plain	*ENG	
008	Tray 2/3/4/5/LCT: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-1** / 1 mm/step]
009	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
012	By-pass: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
013	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
014	By-pass: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
018	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
019	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	
020	Duplex: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
021	Paper Tray1: Plain: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
022	Tray1: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
023	Tray 2/3/4/5LCT: Plain: 1200	*ENG	
024	Tray 2/3/4/5LCT: Mid: 1200	*ENG	
025	By-pass: Plain: 1200	*ENG	
026	By-pass: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
027	Paper Tray1: Thick1: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
028	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
029	By-pass: Thick 1: 1200	*ENG	
030	Duplex: Plain: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

031	Duplex: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
032	Duplex: Thick 1: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]

1007	**[By-Pass Size Detection]** By-Pass Size Detection Display		
001	LG	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
	Enables or disables the automatic paper size detection function of the by-pass tray. This SP determines what paper size the machine detects if the detected size is less than 8.5". 0: OFF (Letter/SEF), 1: ON (Legal/SEF)		

1103	**[Fusing Idling]** Fusing Idling Adjustment		
001	Extra Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**
	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed.		
014	Minimum Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
016	Extra Idling Time (L)	*ENG	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed for each environment. [0 to 250 / **60** / 1 sec/step] Each environment is determined with SP1112-001 and 002.
017	Extra Idling Time (H)	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 10, C2d: 25** / 1 sec/step]
018	Extra Idling Time (M)	*ENG	
019	Pressure TempThreshold	*ENG	[10 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]

1104	**[Idling Before Job]**		
001	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: FC	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **20** / 1 deg/step]

002	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: FC:PR	*ENG	
003	Feed: Pressure Temp: Mid: FC	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **C2c: 83, C2d: 95** / 1 deg/step]
004	Feed: Pressure Temp: Mid: FC	*ENG	
005	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: BW: PR	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
006	Feed: Pressure Temp: Carl: M-Humidity	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **90**/ 1 deg/step]
007	Feed: Pressure Temp: Carl: H-Humidity	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **100**/ 1 deg/step]
010	Feed: Plain1: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100**/ 1 deg/step]
011	Feed: Plain1: 2C: Offset	*ENG	
012	Feed: Plain1: 2C: Offset: P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10**/ 1 deg/step]
013	Feed: Plain: Standby: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5**/ 1 deg/step]
014	Feed: Middle Thick: Ready: Offset	*ENG	
015	Feed: Middle Thick: Standby: Offset	*ENG	
016	Feed: Thick: Ready: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
017	Feed: Thick: Standby: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5**/ 1 deg/step]
018	Feed: Plain1: Ready :3C: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 10** / 1 deg/step]

019	Feed: Plain1: Ready :3C: Offset:	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 10, C2d: 5** / 1 deg/step]
020	Fusing Temp: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
021	Fusing Temp: Mid Speed: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
022	Fusing Temp: Mid Speed: Standby	*ENG	
023	Feed: Plain2: Ready :Bw: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
024	Feed: Plain2: Ready :2C: Offset	*ENG	
025	Feed: Plain2: Ready :2C: Offset :P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
026	Feed: Plain2: Ready :3C: Offset	*ENG	
027	Feed: Plain2: Ready :3C: Offset :P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
030	Feed: F: Ready : U limit	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
031	Offset: Feed Start: F	*ENG	
032	Feed: Glossy: Ready : U limit	*ENG	
033	Offset: Feed Start: Glossy	*ENG	
040	1bin: Paper Feed: Pressure Temp	*ENG	[20 to 120 / **90** / 1 deg/step]
041	F :1bin: Paper Feed: Pressure Temp	*ENG	[20 to 120 / **80** / 1 deg/step]

1105	**[Fusing Temperature]** Fusing Temperature Adjustment		
	(Printing Mode, Roller Type, [Color], Simplex/Duplex) Roller Type –> Center and Ends: Heating roller, Pressure –> Pressure roller Paper Type -> Plain, Thin, Thick, OHP, Middle Thick, Special		
001	Fusing Ready Temp.	*ENG	[150 to 200 / **200** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the heating roller target temperature for the ready condition.		
002	Fusing Ready: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature for the printing ready condition. Ready temperature = (Target temperature specified in SP1-105-1) – Temperature specified in this SP mode		
007	Fusing Ready Temp: H	*ENG	[150 to 200 / **C2c: 170, C2d: 175** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
008	Ready Target Add Pressure	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **80** / 1 deg /step]
	Sets the upper limit temperature of the heating roller at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
012	Stand-By: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the pressure roller offset temperature. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
013	Panel Off Mode 2: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg /step]
	Sets the limit temperature of the pressure roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during the warm-up.		

014	Low Power: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the stand-by temperature for the pressure roller.		
030	Plain: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 160, C2d: 165** / 1 deg /step]
032	Plain: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
034	Plain: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
036	Plain: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
038	Thin: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 155, C2d: 160** / 1 deg/step]
042	Thin: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
044	Thin: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
046	Thick 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **175** / 1 deg /step]
048	Thick 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
050	Thick 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
052	Thick 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
054	Thick 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **160** / 1 deg /step]
055	Thick 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
056	OHP: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
057	OHP: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
058	Special 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
060	Special 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
062	Special 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
064	Special 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
066	Special 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
068	Special 2: FC: Duplex	*ENG	

070	Special 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
072	Special 2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
074	Special 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
076	Special 3: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
078	Special 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
080	Special 3: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
082	Target Temp. After Ready	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **C2c: 170, C2d: 180** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the maintain mode after the machine has reached the target temperature in warm-up mode.		
083	Recovery Target Temp.	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 175 C2d: 175** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the print mode without printing/copying job after the machine's recovery.		
089	Thick 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **170** / 1 deg/step]
091	Thick 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
093	Envelop: FC	*ENG	
094	Envelop: BW	*ENG	
095	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **165** / 1 deg /step]
097	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
097	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
099	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Simplex	*ENG	

101	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
103	Middle Thick: Constant Speed: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **C2c: 5, C2d: 10** / 1 deg /step]
106	Extra Rotation Temp.: L	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **165** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a low temperature environment. The low temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-003.		
107	Extra Rotation Temp.: M	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a medium temperature environment. The medium temperature is between the low temperature threshold (SP1112-003) and the high temperature threshold (SP1112-004).		
108	Extra Rotation Temp.: H	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a high temperature environment. The high temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-004.		
111	Thick: Small Size	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 175** / 1 deg/step]
113	Thick 4: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **175** / 1 deg/step]
114	Thick 4: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
115	Thick 5: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **170** / 1 deg/step]
116	Thick 5: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
117	Thick 6: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]
118	Thick 6: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
120	Plain2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
122	Plain2: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
124	Plain2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	

126	Plain2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
126	Plain2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
128	F: Plain1: FC : Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]
130	F: Plain1: BW : Simplex	*ENG	
132	F: Plain2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **140** / 1 deg /step]
134	F: Plain2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
136	F: Middle Thick: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **145** / 1 deg /step]
138	F: Middle Thick: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
140	F: Thick1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **150** / 1 deg/step]
141	F: Thick1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
142	Glossy: Plain1	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]
144	Glossy: Plain2	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **140** / 1 deg/step]
146	Glossy: Middle Thick	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **145** / 1 deg/step]
148	1bin: Plain	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 150, C2d: 155** / 1 deg/step]
150	F: 1bin: Plain	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]

1106	**[Fusing Temperature Display]** Fusing Temperature Display (Heating or Pressure)		
	Displays the current temperature of the heating and pressure rollers.		
001	Fusing: Center	-	[–20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg/step] The heating roller has two lamps. One heats the center of the heating roller and the other heats both ends of the heating

			roller.
002	Fusing: Ends	-	[–10 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg/step] The heating roller has two lamps. One heats the center of the heating roller and the other heats both ends of the heating roller.
003	Pressure	-	

1108	**[Forced Ready Setting]**		
	Japan use only		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Target Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[85 to 115 / **92** / 1 %/step]
003	Measured Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[70 to 120 / **100** / 1 %/step]
005	Temp: Threshold	*ENG	[10 to 32 / **17** / 1 deg/step]
006	Auto Off Timer	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 min/step]
007	Time	*ENG	[7 to 60 / **C2c: 14.0, C2d: 24.0** / 0.1 sec/step]
008	10s Forced Ready ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
009	10s Forced Ready Time	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **9.0** / 0.1 sec/step]

1109	**[Fusing Nip Band Check]**		
001	Execute	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] Executes the nip band measurement between fusing belt and pressure roller. If the nip band width is not 8 mm, and fusing is not good, replace the pressure roller or install a new fusing unit.
002	Pre-Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **240** / 1 sec/step]

	Specifies the fusing rotation time before executing SP1109-001.		
003	Stop Time	* ENG	[5 to 30 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for measuring the nip.		

1110	**[Pressure Release]**		
001	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 240 / **1** / 1 min/step]
002	Feed Pressure: 1	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
003	Feed Pressure: 2	* ENG	
004	Feed Pressure: 3	* ENG	
005	SC Detection	* ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]

1112	**[Environmental Correction: Fusing]**		
001	Temp.: Threshold: Low	*ENG	[10 to 23 / **17** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for low temperature condition.		
002	Temp.: Threshold: High	*ENG	[24 to 40 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for high temperature condition.		
003	Low Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the low temperature condition (specified with SP1112-001) is detected, the value of this SP is added to the heating roller temperature.		
004	High Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the high temperature condition (specified with SP1112-002) is detected, the value of this SP is subtracted from the heating roller temperature.		
005	Reference Temp	*ENG	[15 to 25 / **20** / 1 deg/step]

	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the high temperature condition (specified with SP1112-002) is detected, the value of this SP is subtracted from the heating roller temperature.		
006	Low Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
007	Reference Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
008	High Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
009	Low Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
010	Reference Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
011	High Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]

1113	**[Stand-by Time]**		
001	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **60** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the interval from the ready mode to the stand-by mode. If the machine does not do any printing job for the time specified with this SP after the heating roller has reached the ready temperature, the machine returns to the stand-by mode.		
003	After Recovery	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for keeping the target temperature after recovery (SP1105-083) without any jobs.		
004	Time After Paper Feed	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
006	Offset: Center and Ends	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]

1115	**[Stand-by Idling]**		
001	Interval	*ENG	[1 to 240 / **60** / 1 min/step]
	Specifies the interval between idling during stand-by mode. This idling during the stand-by mode prevents the roller deformation.		

002	Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0.7** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Specifies the length of each idling operation during stand-by mode.		

1117	**[Idling Time After Heater OFF]**		
002	SC Display	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

1118	**[Curl Temperature Correction]**		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1]
002	Humidity 1	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **60** / 1 %]
003	Humidity 2	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **80** / 1 %]

1120	**[Continues Print Mode Switch]**		
001	Paper Feed Condition	*ENG	[0 or 2 / **0** / 1]
	Selects the paper feed timing. 0: Productivity priority, 1: Fusing quality priory		

1121	**[Idling Time After Job]**		
001	Discontinues Job	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 sec/step]
002	Job End: Min	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
003	Job End: Max	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 sec/step]

1122	**[Repeat Print temp. Correction] DFU**		
001	JOB Interval: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
002	JOB Interval: M-Thick	*ENG	
003	Shift Time a	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **600**/ 1 sec/step]

004	Shift Time b	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **150** / 1 sec/step]
005	Shift Time c	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **300** / 1 sec/step]
006	Shift Time d	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **80** / 1 sec/step]
007	Shift Time e	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
008	Shift Time f	*ENG	[0 to 1200 /**50** / 1 sec/step]
009	Shift Time g	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
010	Shift Time h	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **40** / 1 sec/step]
011	Offset Value a	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
012	Offset Value b	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
013	Offset Value c	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
014	Offset Value d	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
015	Offset Value e	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
016	Offset Value f	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **EU/NA/AA** / 1 deg/step] **EU/AA: 0, NA: 5**
017	Offset Value g	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
018	Offset Value h	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

1123	**[Fuser Cleaning]**		
001	Select Operation	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
	Enables or disables the fusing cleaning mode. 0: Cleaning ON, 1: Cleaning OFF		
002	Compulsion execution	-	Execute the fusing cleaning mode.
003	Control temperature	*ENG	[0 to 185 / **185** / 1°C/step]
	Adjusts the temperature for the fusing cleaning mode.		

004	Continuance time	*ENG	[1 to 300 / **160** / 1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the execution time for the fusing cleaning mode.		
005	Operation interval	*ENG	[1 to 240 / **5** / 1 K/step]
	Adjusts the execution interval for the fusing cleaning mode. 1K= 100 sheets		
006	Count when operating	*ENG	[0 to 240,000 / **-** / 1 page/step]

1159	**[Fusing Jam Detection]**		
001	SC Display	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
	Enables or disables the fusing consecutive jam (three times) SC detection. 0: No detection, 1: Detection		

1801	**[Motor Speed Adj.] FA**		
001	Registration:Plain:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
002	Registration:Plain:High	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
003	Registration:Middle Thick:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
004	Registration:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
005	Registration:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
006	Registration:Thick 1:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
007	Registration:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
008	Registration:Thick 2:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
009	Registration:Thick 3:Low	*ENG	
010	Duplex CW:Plane:Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.0** / 0.1 %/step]
011	Duplex CW:Normal:High	*ENG	
012	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:Low	*ENG	

013	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
014	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
015	Duplex CW:Thick1:Low	*ENG	
016	Duplex CW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
017	Duplex CW:Thick2:Low	*ENG	
018	Duplex CW:Thick3:Low	*ENG	
019	Duplex CCW:Normal:High	*ENG	
020	Duplex CCW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
021	Duplex CCW:Middle Thick:high	*ENG	
023	Duplex CCW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
024	Reverse CW:Normal:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–0.5** / 0.1%/step]
025	Reverse CW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
026	Reverse CW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–0.5** / 0.1%/step]
028	Reverse CW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
029	Reverse CCW:Normal:High	*ENG	
030	Reverse CCW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
031	Reverse CCW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
033	Reverse CCW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
034	Feed:Plain:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
035	Feed:Plain:High	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
036	Feed:Middle thick:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
037	Feed:Middle thick:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
038	Feed:Middle thick:High	*ENG	

039	Feed:Thick 1:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
040	Feed:Thick 1:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
041	Feed:Thick 2:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
042	Feed:Thick 3:Low	*ENG	
043	Bridge Motor:Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
044	Bridge Motor:Mid	*ENG	
045	Bridge Motor:High	*ENG	
060	KOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.6** / 0.01 %/step]
061	KOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	
062	KOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	
063	MOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / 0 / 1 step/step]
064	MOpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
065	MOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / 0 / 1 step/step]
066	COpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 step/step]
067	COpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
068	COpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
069	YOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 step/step]
070	YOpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
071	YOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
072	Fusing: High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.9** / 0.01 %/step]
073	Fusing: Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.4** / 0.01 %/step]
074	Fusing: Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.7** / 0.01 %/step]
075	TransferMot:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.2** / 0.01 %/step]

076	TransferMot:Mid	*ENG	
077	TransferMot:Low	*ENG	
078	TonerMot	*ENG	[–30 to 30 / **10** / 5 %/step]
079	Fusing Exit Motor: 1200	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **2.1** / 0.01 %/step]
100	Drum Adjust	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
101	230mm/s:M	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **C2c: 0**/ 1 step/step] [–9 to 9 / **C2d: 0** / 1 step/step]
102	230mm/s:C	*ENG	
103	230mm/s:Y	*ENG	
104	205mm/s:M	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 step/step]
105	205mm/s:C	*ENG	
106	205mm/s:Y	*ENG	
107	154mm/s:M	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
108	154mm/s:C	*ENG	
109	154mm/s:Y	*ENG	
110	77mm/s:M	*ENG	[– 7 to 7 / **0** / 1 step/step]
111	77mm/s:C	*ENG	
112	77mm/s:Y		

1901	**[Recovery Temp. Ope. Time]**		
004	-	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**

1902	**[Amplitude Control]**		
001	Execute	-	Execute the drum phase adjustment.
002	Result	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1]

			Displays the result of the drum phase adjustment. 0: Successfully done 2: Sampling failure 3: Insufficient detection number
003	Auto Execution	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1] Turns the automatic drum phase adjustment on or off. 0: Off, 1: On

1907	**[Paper Feed Timing Adj.] DFU**		
002	Feed Solenoid ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
003	Feed Clutch OFF: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	
005	Inverter Stop Position	*ENG	
006	Reverse Stop Position	*ENG	
007	Re-Feed Stop Position	*ENG	
008	By-pass Solenoid OFF	*ENG	[0 to 40 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
009	By-pass Solenoid Re-ON	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
010	By-pass Feed Clutch ON	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
012	Feed Solenoid ON: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
013	Feed Clutch OFF: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
014	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	

1908	**[Paper Bank Feed Timing Adj.] DFU**		
008	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

009	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	
010	Bridge Junction Gate Sol-ON	*ENG	
011	Bridge Junction Gate Sol-OFF	*ENG	
012	1 Bin Junction Gate Sol-ON	*ENG	
013	1 Bin Junction Gate Sol-OFF	*ENG	
015	Junction Gate SOL1:ON:Plain	*ENG	
016	Junction Gate SOL1:ON:Thick	*ENG	
017	Junction Gate SOL1:OFF:Plain	*ENG	
018	Junction Gate SOL1:OFF:Thick	*ENG	

1910	**[Fusing Feed Start Time]**		
	Specifies the waiting time for feeding paper after the machine has entered the print ready mode.		
011	Plain FC: Ready: M	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
012	Plain FC: Standby: M	*ENG	
013	Plain FC: Ready: L	*ENG	
014	Plain FC: Standby: L	*ENG	
015	Middle Thick: Ready: M	*ENG	
016	Middle Thick: Standby: M	*ENG	
017	Middle Thick: Ready: L	*ENG	
018	Middle Thick: Standby: L	*ENG	
019	Thick Paper: Ready: M	*ENG	
020	Thick Paper: Standby: M	*ENG	
021	Thick Paper: Ready: L	*ENG	

022	Thick Paper: Standby: L	*ENG	

1912	**[Capacitor Condition Display] Not used**		
001	Latest Capacity	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **45** / 1 F/step]
002	Current Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Charge Time	*ENG	[0 to 50000 / **0** / 10 ms/step]
004	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step]
005	Charge Current	*ENG	[5 to 15 / **10** / 0.1 A/step]

1913	**[Capacitor Discharge Stop Voltage Setting] Not used**		
001	-	*ENG	[10 to 25 / **20** / 1 V/step]

1914	**[Capacitor Deterioration Detection Condition] Not used**		
001	AC Input Voltage Display	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **100** / 1 V/step]
002	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **30** / 1 /step]
003	AC Input Voltage	*ENG	[80 to 100 / **90** / 1 V/step]
004	Capacitor Capacity	*ENG	[20 to 130 / **35** / 1 F/step]

1915	**[After Ready Setting]**		
011	Offset: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **C2c: 35, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]
012	Offset: Plain: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
013	Offset: Middle Thick: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 25** / 1 deg/step]
014	Offset: Middle Thick: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

015	Offset: Thick: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
016	Offset: Thick: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
017	Time: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
018	Time: Plain: Standby	*ENG	
019	Time: Middle Thick: Ready	*ENG	
020	Time: Middle Thick: Standby	*ENG	
021	Time: Thick: Ready	*ENG	
022	Time: Thick: Standby	*ENG	
023	Coefficient: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 deg/sec/step]
024	Coefficient: Middle Thick	*ENG	
025	Coefficient: Thick	*ENG	

1916	**[CPM Down Setting]**		
026	Voltage Target	*ENG	[80 to 120 / **93** / 1 %/step]
031	On/Off	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1** / 1]
032	D1: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 25** / 1 deg/step]
033	D2: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 27** / 1 deg/step]
034	D3: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]
035	D1: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
036	D2: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **22** / 1 deg/step]
037	D3: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
038	D1: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]

039	D2: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 32** / 1 deg/step]
040	D3: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 35** / 1 deg/step]
041	D1: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
042	D2: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **22** / 1 deg/step]
043	D3: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
044	D1: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
045	D2: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
046	D3: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
047	D1: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
048	D2: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
049	D3: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
050	D1: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
051	D2: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
052	D3: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]

053	D1: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
054	D2: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
055	D3: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
056	Operation Time	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
057	Operation Time:D0	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
060	Ends Down ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]
061	Limit Temperature	*ENG	[200 to 250 / **250** / 1 deg/step]
062	D1: Paper Width1: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
063	D2: Paper Width1: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
064	D1: Paper Width2: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **35** / 1 deg/step]
065	D2: Paper Width2: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
066	D1: Paper Width3: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **35** / 1 deg/step]
067	D2: Paper Width3: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
068	D1: Paper Width1: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20** / 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
069	D2: Paper Width1: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
070	D1: Paper Width2: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 5 cpm/step]
071	D2: Paper Width2: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
072	D1: Paper Width3: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 5 cpm/step]

073	D2: Paper Width3: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
074	Ends: Sustained Time	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
075	Pressure Start Temp	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
076	D1: Paper Width4: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **45** / 1 deg/step]
077	D2: Paper Width4: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **40** / 1 deg/step]
078	D1: Paper Width4: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 1 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
079	D2: Paper Width4: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20** 1 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 1 cpm/step]

1917	**[Magnetic Field Roller HP Detection]**		
001	Position Replacement	*ENG	[5 to 100 / **40** / 1 times/step]
	Specifies the limit times of the ferrite roller rotation for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. After the ferrite roller rotates more than 40 times, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		
002	Continuous Feed Page	*ENG	[100 to 1000 / **500** / 10 sheets/step]
	Specifies the limit sheets of outputs for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. When the outputs are more than 500 sheets of paper, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		

1950	**[Fan Cooling Time Set]**		
002	Fusing Exit Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
006	Main Suction Fan	*ENG	
007	Paper Exit Fan	*ENG	
008	PSU Fan	*ENG	

009	Fusing IH Coil Fan	*ENG	
010	IH Power Supply Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / 3**0** / 1 sec/step]
011	Second Duct Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
012	Third Duct Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

SP2-XXX (Drum)

2005	**[Charge DC Voltage]** Charge Roller DC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the DC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (DC component) is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings does not effect while process control mode (SP3-041-1 Default: ON) is activated. When deactivating process control mode with SP3-041-1, the values in these SP modes are used for printing.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **690** / 10 –V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	
013	Correction Plain	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **C2c: –23, C2d: –16** / 1 –V/step]
014	Correction Thick 1	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **–24** / 1 –V/step]
015	Correction Thick 2&FINE	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **2** / 1 –V/step]

2006	**[Charge AC Voltage]** Charge Roller AC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the AC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (AC component) is adjusted by environment correction (SP2-007-xxx to SP2-011-xxx). These SPs are activated only when SP2-012-1 is set to "1: manual control".		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2.1** / 0.01 KV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2007	**[Charge AC Current: LL]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for LL (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for LL environment (Low temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.41, C2d: 1.59** / 0.01

002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2008	**[Charge AC Current: ML]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for ML environment (Meddle temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.49, C2d: 1.68** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2009	**[Charge AC Current: MM]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MM environment (Middle temperature and Middle humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.56, C2d: 1.76** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2010	**[Charge AC Current: MH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MH environment (Middle temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		

001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.64, C2d: 1.83** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2011	**[Charge AC Current: HH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for HH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for HH environment (High temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1. 66, C2d: 1.85** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2012	**[Charge Output Control]**		
001	AC Voltage	*ENG	Selects the AC voltage control type. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Process control 1: Manual control (AC voltages are decided with SP2006.)

2013	**[Environmental Correction: PCU]**		
001	Current Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / **–** / 1 /step] 1: LL (LL <= 4.3 g/m^3) 2: ML (4.3 < ML <= 11.3 g/m^3) 3: MM (11.3 < MM <= 18.0 g/m^3)

			4: MH (18.0 < MH <= 24.0 g/m^3) 5: HH (24.0 g/m^3 < HH)
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Selects the environmental condition manually. [0 to 5 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: The environmental condition is determined automatically. 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH
003	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 1	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between LL and ML. [0 to 100 / **4.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **11.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **18.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
007	Current Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the current temperature. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
008	Current Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the current relative humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1%RH/step]
009	Current Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
010	Previous Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / **–** / 1 /step] 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH

011	Previous Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous temperature. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
012	Previous Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous relative humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1%RH/step]
013	Previous Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2014	**[Charge AC Control: Setting]**		
001	Exec Interval: Power ON	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
002	Exec Interval: Print	*ENG	
003	Page Interval	*ENG	[0 to 500 / **10** / 5 page/step]
004	Temperature	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
005	Relative Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
006	Absolute Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **12** / 1 g/m^3/step]
007	Temp Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
008	RH Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
009	AH Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
010	Temp Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **1** / 0.1 deg/step]
011	RH Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 %RH/step]
012	AH Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **1** / 0.1 g/m^3/step]
013	Non-use Time	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 10 min/step]

2015	**[Charge AC Adj: Result]**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	M	*ENG	

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

2101	**[Color Registration Correction] FA**		
	These values are the parameters for the automatic line position adjustment and are adjusted at the factory. However, you must input a value for SP2101-001 after replacing the laser optics housing unit. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section. The value should be provided with the new laser optics housing unit.		
001	Main Dot: Bk	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
002	Main Dot: M	*ENG	
003	Main Dot: C	*ENG	
004	Main Dot: Y	*ENG	
005	Sub Line: Bk	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
006	Sub Line: M	*ENG	
007	Sub Line: C	*ENG	
008	Sub Line: Y	*ENG	

2102	**[Magnification Adjustment] DFU**		
001	Main Mag.: High Speed: Bk	*ENG	These are results of the main scan length adjustment. [0 to 560 / **280** / 1 /step]
002	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Bk	*ENG	
003	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	
004	Main Mag.: High Speed: M	*ENG	

005	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: M	*ENG	
006	Main Mag.: Low Speed: M	*ENG	
007	Main Mag.: High Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: C	*ENG	
009	Main Mag.: Low Speed: C	*ENG	
010	Main Mag.: High Speed: Y	*ENG	
011	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Y	*ENG	
012	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Y	*ENG	
013	Offset: Mag Bk1-2	*ENG	[-256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
014	Offset: Mag M1-2	*ENG	
015	Offset: Mag C1-2	*ENG	
016	Offset: Mag Y1-2	*ENG	

2103	**[Erase Margin Adjustment]** (Area, Paper Size)		
	Adjusts the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins.		
001	Lead Edge Width	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **4.2** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Trail. Edge Width	*ENG	
003	Left	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **2** / 0.1 mm/step]
004	Right	*ENG	
005	Lead Edge Width: Thin	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **5** / 0.1 mm/step]

006	Duplex Trail. L Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 mm/step]
007	Duplex Trail. M Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.8** / 0.1 mm/step]
008	Duplex Trail. S Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 mm/step]
009	Duplex Left Edge	*ENG	[0 to 1.5 / **0.3** / 0.1 mm/step]
010	Duplex Right Edge	*ENG	
011	Duplex Trail. L Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 mm/step]
012	Duplex Trail. M Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.8** / 0.1 mm/step]
013	Duplex Trail. S Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 mm/step]
014	Duplex Left Edge:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 1.5 / **0.3** / 0.1 mm/step]
015	Duplex Right Edge:Thick	*ENG	

2105	**[LD Power Adj.]** (Process Speed, Color)		
	Adjusts the LD power of each color for each process speed. Each LD power setting is decided by process control. High Speed: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Middle Speed: 154 mm/sec, Low Speed: 77 mm/sec		
001	High Speed: Bk	*ENG	[50 to 120 / **100** / 1%/step] Decreasing a value makes lines thinner on the output. Increasing a value makes lines thicker on the output.
002	High Speed: M	*ENG	
003	High Speed: C	*ENG	
004	High Speed: Y	*ENG	
005	Middle Speed: Bk	*ENG	
006	Middle Speed: M	*ENG	
007	Middle Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Middle Speed: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	

010	Low Speed: M	*ENG	
011	Low Speed: C	*ENG	
012	Low Speed: Y	*ENG	

2106	**[Polygon Rotation Time]**		
	Adjusts the time of the polygon motor rotation. **DFU**		
001	Warming-Up	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
002	Job End	*ENG	

2107	**[Image Parameter]**		
	DFU		
001	Image Gamma Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]
002	Shading Correction Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2109	**[Test Pattern]**		
	Generates the test pattern using "COPY Window" tab in the LCD.		
003	Pattern Selection	-	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step] 0 None 1: 1-dot line pattern (Vertical) 2: 2-dot line pattern (Vertical) 3: 1-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 4: 2-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 5: 1-dot grid pattern (Vertical) 6: 1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal) 7: 1-dot grid pattern (Fine) 8: 1-dot grid pattern (Rough) 9: 1-dot slant pattern (Fine) 10: 1-dot slant pattern (Rough)

			11. 1-dot pattern 12. 2-dot pattern 13. 4-dot pattern 14. 1-dot trimming pattern 15: Cross stitch: sub-scan 16: Cross stitch: main-scan 17: Belt pattern (Horizontal) 18: Belt pattern (Vertical) 19: Checkered flag 20: Gray scale (Vertical) 21: Gray scale (Horizontal) 22: Dual beams density pattern 23: Solid
005	Color Selection	-	Specifies the color for the test pattern. [1 to 4 / **1** / 1/step] 1: All colors, 2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan
006	Density: Bk	-	Specifies the color density for the test pattern. [0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step] 0: Lightest density 15: Darkest density
007	Density: M	-	
008	Density: C	-	
009	Density: Y	-	

2111	**[Forced Line Position Adj.]**		
001	Mode a	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment twice. If this SP is not completed (NG is displayed), do SP2111-003 first and then try this SP again.
002	Mode b	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment once. If this SP is not completed, do SP2111-003

			first and then try this SP again.
003	Mode c	-	Executes the rough line position adjustment once. After doing this SP, make sure to execute SP2111-001 or -002. Otherwise, the line position adjustment is not perfectly done.

2112	**[TM/ID Sensor Check]** ID Sensor Check **FA**		
001	Execute		[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] This SP is used to check the ID sensors at the factory. The results of this SP are displayed in SP2140 to SP2145.

2117	**[Skew Adjustment]**		
	Specifies a skew adjustment value for the skew motor M, C or Y. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.		
001	Pulse: M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Pulse: C	*ENG	
003	Pulse: Y	*ENG	

2118	**[Skew Adjustment]**		
001	Execute: M	*ENG	Changes the current skew adjustment values to the values specified with SP2117. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.
002	Execute: C	*ENG	
003	Execute: Y	*ENG	

2119	[Skew Adjustment Display]		
	Displays the current skew adjustment value for each skew motor.		
001	M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	C	*ENG	
003	Y	*ENG	

2120	[Thick Paper Skew Adj]		
	Selects the skew adjustment value for thick paper.		
001	On/Off	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Off, 1: On

2140	[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU		
	Displays the results of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2141	[ID Sensor Check Result: Ave.] DFU
	Displays the average result values of the ID sensor check.

	Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2142	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum: Rear	*ENG	

2143	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**
	Displays the minimum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment

001	Minimum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Minimum: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum: Rear	*ENG	

2144	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2145	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the minimum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Minimum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]

002	Minimum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2150	**[Area Mag. Correction]** LD Pulse Area Correction (Color, Area) **FA** Adjusts the magnification for each area. The main scan (297 mm) is divided into 8 areas. Area 1 is at the front side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 8 is at the rear side of the machine (right side of the image). Decreasing a value makes the image shift to the left side on the print. Increasing a value makes the image shift to the right side on the print. 1 pulse = 1/16 dot		
027	Area0: Bk	*ENG	[-256 to 255 / **0** / 1sub-dot/step]
028	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
029	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
030	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
031	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
032	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
033	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
034	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
035	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
036	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	Area10: Bk	*ENG	

038	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
039	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
040	Area0: Bk	*ENG	Not used
041	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
042	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
043	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
044	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
045	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
046	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
047	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
048	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
049	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
050	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
051	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
052	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
079	Area0: M	*ENG	Not used
080	Area1: M	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–255to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
081	Area2: M	*ENG	[–256to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
082	Area3: M	*ENG	
083	Area4: M	*ENG	
084	Area5: M	*ENG	
085	Area6: M	*ENG	
086	Area7: M	*ENG	

087	Area8: M	*ENG	
088	Area9: M	*ENG	Not used
089	Area10: M	*ENG	
090	Area11: M	*ENG	
091	Area12: M	*ENG	
092	Area0: Bk	*ENG	Not used
093	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
094	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
095	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
096	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
097	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
098	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
099	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
100	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
101	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
102	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
103	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
104	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
131	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
132	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
133	Area2: C	*ENG	
134	Area3: C	*ENG	
135	Area4: C	*ENG	

136	Area5: C	*ENG	
137	Area6: C	*ENG	
138	Area7: C	*ENG	
139	Area8: C	*ENG	
140	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used
141	Area10: C	*ENG	
142	Area11: C	*ENG	
143	Area12: C	*ENG	
144	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
145	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
146	Area2: C	*ENG	
147	Area3: C	*ENG	
148	Area4: C	*ENG	
149	Area5: C	*ENG	
150	Area6: C	*ENG	
151	Area7: C	*ENG	
152	Area8: C	*ENG	
153	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used
154	Area10: C	*ENG	
155	Area11: C	*ENG	
156	Area12: C	*ENG	
183	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
184	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0.

185	Area2: Y	*ENG	[–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
186	Area3: Y	*ENG	
187	Area4: Y	*ENG	
188	Area5: Y	*ENG	
189	Area6: Y	*ENG	
190	Area7: Y	*ENG	
191	Area8: Y	*ENG	
192	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
193	Area10: Y	*ENG	
194	Area11: Y	*ENG	
195	Area12: Y	*ENG	
196	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
197	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
198	Area2: Y	*ENG	
199	Area3: Y	*ENG	
200	Area4: Y	*ENG	
201	Area5: Y	*ENG	
202	Area6: Y	*ENG	
203	Area7: Y	*ENG	
204	Area8: Y	*ENG	
205	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
206	Area10: Y	*ENG	
207	Area11: Y	*ENG	

208	Area12: Y	*ENG	

2152	**[Area Shad. Correct. Setting] FA**		
	Adjusts the area correction value for each LD power. The main scan is divided into 16 areas. However, the image areas are limited from area 1 to area 14. For BK and Magenta, area 1 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 14 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image). For Cyan and Yellow, area 1 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image) and area 14 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image).		
001	Area 0: Bk	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
002	Area 1: Bk	*ENG	
003	Area 2: Bk	*ENG	
004	Area 3: Bk	*ENG	
005	Area 4: Bk	*ENG	
006	Area 5: Bk	*ENG	
007	Area 6: Bk	*ENG	
008	Area 7: Bk	*ENG	
009	Area 8: Bk	*ENG	
010	Area 9: Bk	*ENG	
011	Area 10: Bk	*ENG	
012	Area 11: Bk	*ENG	
013	Area 12: Bk	*ENG	
014	Area 13: Bk	*ENG	
015	Area 14: Bk	*ENG	
016	Area 15: Bk	*ENG	This is out of the image area.

			[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
033	Area 0: M	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board.
034	Area 1: M	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
035	Area 2: M	*ENG	
036	Area 3: M	*ENG	
037	Area 4: M	*ENG	
038	Area 5: M	*ENG	
039	Area 6: M	*ENG	
040	Area 7: M	*ENG	
041	Area 8: M	*ENG	
042	Area 9: M	*ENG	
043	Area 10: M	*ENG	
044	Area 11: M	*ENG	
045	Area 12: M	*ENG	
046	Area 13: M	*ENG	
047	Area 14: M	*ENG	
048	Area 15: M	*ENG	This is out of the image area. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
065	Area 0: C	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
066	Area 1: C	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
067	Area 2: C	*ENG	
068	Area 3: C	*ENG	

069	Area 4: C	*ENG	
070	Area 5: C	*ENG	
071	Area 6: C	*ENG	
072	Area 7: C	*ENG	
073	Area 8: C	*ENG	
074	Area 9: C	*ENG	
075	Area 10: C	*ENG	
076	Area 11: C	*ENG	
077	Area 12: C	*ENG	
078	Area 13: C	*ENG	
079	Area 14: C	*ENG	
080	Area 15: C	*ENG	This is out of the image area. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
097	Area 0: Y	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
098	Area 1: Y	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
099	Area 2: Y	*ENG	
100	Area 3: Y	*ENG	
101	Area 4: Y	*ENG	
102	Area 5: Y	*ENG	
103	Area 6: Y	*ENG	
104	Area 7: Y	*ENG	
105	Area 8: Y	*ENG	

106	Area 9: Y	*ENG	
107	Area 10: Y	*ENG	
108	Area 11: Y	*ENG	
109	Area 12: Y	*ENG	
110	Area 13: Y	*ENG	
111	Area 14: Y	*ENG	
112	Area 15: Y	*ENG	This is out of the image area.

2160	**[Vertical Line Width] DFU**		
001	600dpi:Bk	*ENG	[10 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
002	600dpi:Ma	*ENG	
003	600dpi:Cy	*ENG	
004	600dpi:Ye	*ENG	
005	1200dpi:Bk	*ENG	
006	1200dpi:Ma	*ENG	
007	1200dpi:Cy	*ENG	
008	1200dpi:Ye	*ENG	

2180	**[Line Position Adj. Setting Clear]**		
001	Color Regist.	-	**DFU**
002	Main Scan Length Detection	-	**DFU**
003	MUSIC Result	-	**DFU**
004	Area Magnification Correction	-	**DFU**

2181	[Line Position Adj. Result]		
	Displays the values for each correction. ▪ "Paper Int. Mag: Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value between two sheets of paper. ▪ "Mag.Cor. Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value. ▪ "M. Scan Erro." indicates the shift correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "S. Scan Erro." Indicates the shift correction value in the sub scan direction. ▪ "M. Cor.: Dot" indicates the dot correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "M. Cor.: Subdot" indicates the sub dot correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ Bk: Black, M: Magenta, C: Cyan, Y: Yellow		
001	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
003	Skew: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
004	Bent: M	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
006	M. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
008	S. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	
009	S. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
010	S. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
011	M. Cor.: Dot: M	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
012	M. Cor.: Subdot: M	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
013	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: M	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / 0 / 1 pulse/step]
014	Mag.Cor. Subdot: M	*ENG	

015	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
016	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
017	S. Cor.: 600 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
018	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
019	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
020	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
021	Skew: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
022	Bent: C	*ENG	
023	M. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
024	M. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
025	M. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
026	S. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	
027	S. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
028	S. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
029	M. Cor.: Dot: C	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
030	M. Cor.: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
031	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
032	Mag.Cor. Subdot: C	*ENG	
033	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
034	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
035	S. Cor.: 600 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
036	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
037	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]

038	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
039	Skew: Y	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
040	Bent: Y	*ENG	
041	M. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	
042	M. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
043	M. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	
044	S. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	
045	S. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
046	S. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	
047	M. Cor.: Dot: Y	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
048	M. Cor.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
049	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
050	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Y	*ENG	
051	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
052	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
053	S. Cor.: 600 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
054	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
055	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
056	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]

2182	**[Line Position Adj. Offset]** (Color) M. Scan: Main scan, S. Scan: Sub-scan High: 205 (C2c)/ 230 (C2d) mm/sec, Medium: 154 mm/sec, Low: 77 mm/sec		
001	M Magnification	*ENG	Adjusts the line position

002	C Magnification	*ENG	manually. [-1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001%/step]
003	Y Magnification	*ENG	When line shifts are not corrected by the automatic line position adjustment, do this SP. Increasing a value reduces the image in the main scan direction. Decreasing a value enlarges the image in the main scan direction.
004	M. Scan: High: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
005	M. Scan: High: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
006	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
007	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
008	M. Scan: Low: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
009	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
010	M. Scan: High: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
011	M. Scan: High: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
012	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
013	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
014	M. Scan: Low: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
015	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
016	M. Scan: High: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
017	M. Scan: High: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
018	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
019	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
020	M. Scan: Low: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]

021	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
022	S. Scan: High: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
023	S. Scan: High: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
024	S. Scan: Medium: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
025	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
026	S. Scan: Low: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
027	S. Scan: Low: Subline: M	*ENG	Not used
028	S. Scan: High: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
029	S. Scan: High: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
030	S. Scan: Medium: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
031	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
032	S. Scan: Low: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
033	S. Scan: Low: Subline: C	*ENG	Not used
034	S. Scan: High: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
035	S. Scan: High: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
036	S. Scan: Medium: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
037	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
038	S. Scan: Low: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
039	S. Scan: Low: Subline: Y	*ENG	Not used

2183	**[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU**		
001	Execute: High: Bk	-	Executes the adjustment for the main scan length detection manually.
002	Execute: Medium: Bk	-	
003	Execute: Low: Bk	-	

004	Execute: High: M	-	
005	Execute: Medium: M	-	
006	Execute: Low: M	-	
007	Execute: High: C	-	
008	Execute: Medium: C	-	
009	Execute: Low: C	-	
010	Execute: High: Y	-	
011	Execute: Medium: Y	-	
012	Execute: Low: Y	-	

2184	**[Main Scan Length Detection Target] DFU**		
001	Execute: Bk	-	Executes the target value for the main scan length detection.
002	Execute: M	-	
003	Execute: C	-	
004	Execute: Y	-	

2185	**[Main Scan Length Detection Disp.]**		
	Displays/adjusts the target value for the main scan magnification correction of the line position adjustment. After replacing the laser optics housing unit, input the standard value for Bk provided with the new unit. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement Adjustment" section. It is not necessary to input the values for the other colors; these are automatically adjusted after doing the line position adjustment.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 266667 / **249449** / 1 sub-dot/step]
002	M	*ENG	

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

2186	**[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU**		
001	Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables or disables the main scan length detection for the laser.		
002	Paper Interval	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **1** / 1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the interval of the main scan length detection for the laser.		

2190	**[Line Position Adj.]**		
001	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step]
002	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
003	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
004	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Disable correction, 1: Enable correction
006	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
008	Area Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step]
009	Area Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
010	Area Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
011	S. Scan Cor. Setting	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Adjusted with Bk 1: Adjusted in minimum shift among four colors

012	1 Line Shift Control	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]

2191	**[MUSIC Coefficient Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Coefficient Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
002	ch 0: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
003	ch 0: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
004	ch 0: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
005	ch 0: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
006	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
007	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
008	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
009	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
010	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
011	ch 1: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
012	ch 1: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
013	ch 1: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
014	ch 1: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
015	ch 1: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
016	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
017	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
018	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
019	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]

020	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
021	ch 2: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
022	ch 2: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
023	ch 2: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
024	ch 2: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
025	ch 2: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
026	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
027	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
028	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
029	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
030	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
031	Q Format Selection	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1/step]

2192	**[MUSIC Threshold Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Threshold Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: 1st	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
002	ch 0: 2nd	*ENG	
003	ch 0: 3rd	*ENG	
004	ch 0: 4th	*ENG	
005	ch 1: 1st	*ENG	
006	ch 1: 2nd	*ENG	
007	ch 1: 3rd	*ENG	
008	ch 1: 4th	*ENG	
009	ch 2: 1st	*ENG	

010	ch 2: 2nd	*ENG	
011	ch 2: 3rd	*ENG	
012	ch 2: 4th	*ENG	

2193	**[MUSIC Condition Set]** Line Position Adjustment: Condition Setting		
001	Auto Execution	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables/disables the automatic line position adjustment		
002	Page: Job End: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **500** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode after job end.		
003	Page: Job End: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode after job end.		
004	Page: Interrupt: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode during job.		
005	Page: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode during jobs.		
006	Page: Stand-By: BW	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in BW printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
007	Page: Stand-By: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]

	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for FC printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in color printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
008	Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1deg/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
009	Time	*ENG	[1 to 1440 / **300** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
010	Magnification	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **1** / 0.01%/step]
	Adjusts the magnification threshold for line position adjustment. If the length of the main scan is changed by this amount since the previous MUSIC, then MSUIC is done again.		
011	Temp. 2	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1deg/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
012	Time 2	*ENG	[1 to 9999 / **600** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
013	Page: Power ON:BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and FC printing mode at power-on. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in BW and color printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP		

	and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.

2194	**[MUSIC Execution Result]** Line Position Adjustment: Execution Result		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 year/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1 month/step]
003	Day	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1 day/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1 hour/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1 minute/step]
006	Temperature	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
007	Execution Result	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Completed successfully, 1: Failed
008	Number of Execution	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 times/step]
009	Number of Failure	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 times/step]
010	Error Result: M	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not done 1: Completed successfully 2: Cannot detect patterns 3: Fewer lines on the pattern than the target 4: Not used 5: Out of the adjustment range 6 to 9: Not used
011	Error Result: C	*ENG	
012	Error Result: Y	*ENG	

2197	**[MUSIC Start Time]**		
	DFU		
001	MUSIC Start Time (EDT)	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **20** / 10ms/step]
002	TM Sensor Position	*ENG	[50 to 500 / **105.5** / 0.1mm/step]

2198	**[Music A/D Interval]**		
	ADC Trigger Counter		
001	ADC Trigger Counter	*ENG	[7.5 to 20 / **10** / 0.1 μs/step]

2199	**[Music Error Time Setting]**		
	DFU		
001	Error Detection Counter	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **2.5** / 0.1 sec /step]

2221	**[LD Power] LD Power Control**		
	Adjusts the fixed LD power for each line speed and color. These SPs are activated only when SP3-041-002 is set to "0". Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1%/step] Increasing this value makes the image density darker.
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2229	**[Development DC Vias]** Development DC Bias Adjustment		
	Adjusts the development bias. Development bias is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings has no effect while Process Control (SP3-041-001 Default: ON) is activated. After deactivating Process Control with SP3-041-001, the values in these SP modes are used for printing. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 800 / **550** / 10 –V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2: Y	*ENG	
013	Fine: Bk	*ENG	
014	Fine: M	*ENG	
015	Fine: C	*ENG	
016	Fine: Y	*ENG	

2241	**[Temperature/Humidity: Display]**		
	Displays the environment temperature and humidity.		
001	Temperature	-	[–1280 to 1270 / - / 0.1deg/step]
002	Relative Humidity	-	[0 to 1000 / - / 0.1 %RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	-	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2302	**[Environmental Correction: Transfer]** Environmental Correction: Image Transfer Belt Unit		
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Sets the environment condition manually. [0 to 6 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Automatic environment control 1: LL (Low temperature/ Low humidity) 2: ML (Middle temperature/ Low humidity) 3: MM (Middle temperature/ Middle humidity) 4: MH (Middle temperature/ High humidity) 5: HH (High temperature/ High humidity)
003	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 1	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between LL and ML. [0 to 100 / **4** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **8** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **16** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
007	Temp Threshold	*ENG	[–5 to 30 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

2308	**[Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the threshold value for the paper size correction.		
001	Threshold 1	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **297** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 1 ≤ paper: Paper is detected as "S1" size.
002	Threshold 2	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **257** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 2 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 1: Paper is detected as "S2" size.
003	Threshold 3	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **210** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 3 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 2: Paper is detected as "S3" size.
004	Threshold 4	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **148** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 4 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 3: Paper is detected as "S4" size. Paper ≤ Threshold 4: Paper is detected as "S5" size.

2311	**[Non Image Area: Bias]**		
001	Image Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the image transfer belt between images. This value is added to the value of the image transfer belt bias. [10 to 250 / **100** / 5 %/step]
002	Paper Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the paper transfer roller between images. [0 to 130 / **5** / 1 –μA/step]

2326	**[Transfer Roller CL: Bias]** Transfer Roller Cleaning: Bias Adjustment		
001	Positive	*ENG	[0 to 2100 / **500** / 100 V /step]
	Adjusts the positive voltage of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper		

	transfer roller.		
002	Negative	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **300** / 10 %/step]
	Adjusts the negative current of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
003	Positive	*ENG	[0 to 2100 / **2000** / 100 V/step]
	Adjusts the negative current limit of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
004	Negative	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 10 %/step]

2351	**[Common: BW: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: B/W: Bias Adjustment Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	ITB unit: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 37** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for plain paper.		
002	1TB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 1 paper.		
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 2 paper or FINE mode.		

2357	**[Common: FC: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: Full Color: Bias Adjustment Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	1TB unit: Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 33** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for plain paper.		

002	1TB unit: Plain: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 33** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for plain paper.		
003	1TB unit: Plain: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 37** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for plain paper.		
004	1TB unit: Plain: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 38, C2d: 42** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for plain paper.		
005	1TB unit: Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **22** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
006	1TB unit: Thick 1: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **22** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
007	1TB unit: Thick 1: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
008	1TB unit: Thick 1: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **28** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
009	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
010	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]

	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
011	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
012	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **14** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		

2360	**[Common: BW Environment Correction]**		
001	ITB unit: Plain	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
002	ITB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	
003	ITB unit: Thick 2	*ENG	
004	ITB uni: Plain: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **13**/ 1 /step]
005	ITB unit: Plain: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
006	ITB unit: Plain: C	*ENG	
007	ITB unit: Plain: Y	*ENG	
008	ITB unit: Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **31** / 1 /step]
009	ITB unit: Thick 1: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
010	ITB unit: Thick 1: C	*ENG	
011	ITB unit: Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
012	ITB unit: Thick 2: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **31** / 1 /step]
013	ITB unit: Thick 2: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
014	ITB unit: Thick 2: C	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
015	ITB unit: Thick 2: Y	*ENG	

002	ITB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 1 paper.		
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 2 paper or fine mode.		

2401	**[Plain: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for plain paper. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]

2403	**[Plain: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **7** / 1 –μA /step]

	Side		
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2407	**[Plain: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 36, C2d: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45, C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2411	**[Plain: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain : 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 2nd side:	*ENG	

	1200: S1		
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step]
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	
012	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **300** / 5%/step]
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **115** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)

016	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S44	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **340** / 5%/step]
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **300** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **400** / 5%/step]

2421	**[Plain: Leading Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
2421	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2401 is multiplied by these SPs values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2422	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200:	*ENG	

	2nd side		

2423	**[Plain: Trailing Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2424.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2424	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image

	area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2430	**[Plain: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **39** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: FC: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
010	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 2	*ENG	
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **49** / 1 /step]
012	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 2	*ENG	

2451	**[Thin: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thin paper. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	

2453	**[Thin: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2457	**[Thin: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40, C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2461	**[Thin: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)

005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Pape r width)
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

2471	**[Thin: Leading Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
2471	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2472	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge		

	plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2473	**[Thin: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2474.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2474	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	

2480	**[Thin: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2481	**[Glossy: Bias]**		
001	Separation DC: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2482	**[Glossy: Bias: BW]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2483	**[Glossy: Bias: FC]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2484	[Glossy: Paper Size Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step]
009	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step]
013	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step]
017	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

2485	[Grossy: Leading Edge Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]]

2486	[Grossy: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	

2487	[Grossy: Trailing Edge Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5 %/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st	*ENG	

	Page		

2488	**[Grossy: Trailing Edge Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	

2489	**[Glossy: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Glossy: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2501	**[Thick 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 1 paper. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2502	**[Thick 1: Bias: BW]**
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec

001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **24** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2507	**[Thick 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in full color mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / –μA /step]

2511	**[Thick 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm

			(Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **115** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **190** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

	Side: S5		148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2521	**[Thick 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2522.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2522	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	

003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2523	**[Thick 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2524.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2524	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2530	**[Thick 1: Environment Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2551	**[Thick 2: Bias]**
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 2 paper.

001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2553	**[Thick 2: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **7** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2558	**[Thick 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **16** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2561	**[Thick 2: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step]

			275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2571	**[Thick 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2571	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2572	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2573	**[Thick 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2574.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2574	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	

004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2580	**[Thick 2 Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **53** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: FC: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]

2601	**[OHP: Bias]**		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 40000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]

2601	**[OHP: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for OHP.		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]

2603	**[OHP: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2608	**[OHP: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2611	**[OHP: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **330** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2621	**[OHP: Leading Edge Correction]** OHP: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2621	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2622	**[OHP: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge

	plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	

2623	**[OHP: Trailing Edge Correction]** OHP: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2624.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	

2624	**[OHP: Trailing Edge Correction]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]

2630	**[OHP: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: BW	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FC	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2650	**[Thick 3: Bias]**
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick paper 3.

001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2651	**[Thick 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2652	**[Thick 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2653	**[Thick 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)

004	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2654	**[Thick 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
2654	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge		

	in each mode. SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
003	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2655	**[Thick 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2656	**[Thick 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2657.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2st Page	*ENG	

2657	**[Thick 3: Trailing Edge Correction]**
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge

	plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2660	**[Thick 3: Environment Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	-	*ENG	
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **55** / 1 /step]

2661	**[Thick 3: MH]** Thick 3 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
2661	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		

003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]

2662	**[Thick 3: HH]** Thick 3 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
2662	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]

2751	**[Special 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 1. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2753	**[Special 1: Bias: BW]**
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec

001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2757	**[Special 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40, C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45, C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2761	**[Special 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step]

			210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2771	**[Special 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2771	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2772	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2773	**[Special 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2774.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2774	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2780	**[Special 1: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2801	**[Special 2: Bias]**

	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 2. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2803	**[Special 2: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30/ C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2807	**[Special 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45/ C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2811	**[Special 2: Paper Size Correction]**

	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2821	**[Special 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2821	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2822	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]

002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2823	**[Special 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2824.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2824	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	

003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2830	**[Special 2: Environment Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2851	**[Special 3: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 3. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2852	**[Special 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2857	**[Special 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in full color mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45/ C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2861	**[Special 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side:	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step]

	S2		297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2871	**[Special 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.

001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2872	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2873	**[Special 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction

	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2874.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2874	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2880	**[Special 3: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]

002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2901	**[OPC Drum Brake Time]**		
	Adjusts the time when the OPC drum motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain	*ENG	[300 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
002	Thick 1	*ENG	
003	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2902	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the OPC drum motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
001	All: BW	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]
002	All: FC	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]

2903	**[Image Transfer Roller Brake Time]**
	Adjusts the time when the image transfer belt motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU**

	Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
003	Plain	*ENG	[300 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
004	Thick 1	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2904	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the image transfer belt motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
003	All	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]

2906	**[Phase Angle]**		
	DFU		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 359 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	
003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	
005	Stop Position	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 6 deg/step]
2906	**[Amplitude Setting]**		
	DFU		
006	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0.0** / 0.1 μm/step]
007	C Drum		
008	M Drum		
009	K Drum		

2907	**[ACS Setting (FC to Bk)]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for moving away the image transfer belt from the color PCUs. This SP moves the image transfer belt away from the color PCUs when the number of B/W image printouts reaches the number of sheets specified with this SP after consecutive full color image printouts in the full color mode. If this SP is set to "0", the image transfer belt does not move away.		
001	Continuous Bk Pages	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

2908	**[Gain Adjust]** Gain Adjustment of Image Transfer Belt Motor		
	DFU		
001	230 mm/sec	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: High speed (Low level) 1: Low speed (High level)
002	205 mm/sec	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: High speed (Low level) 1: Low speed (High level)
003	115 mm/sec	*ENG	
004	77 mm/sec	*ENG	

2911	**[Offset Angle] DFU**		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 359 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	
003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	

2912	**[Offset Amplitude Setting] DFU**		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0.0** / 0.1 μm/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	

003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	

2913	**[Drum Control] DFU**		
001	Rotation Direction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2914	**[Sutter Motor] Not used**		
001	Delay Time Open	*ENG	**DFU** [1 to 50 / **38** / 1 msec/step]
002	Delay Time Close	*ENG	
003	Sutter Open	*ENG	Opens the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.
004	Sutter Close	*ENG	Closes the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.
005	Brake Open	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 10 msec/step]
006	Brake Close	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 10 msec/step]
007	Existence	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 msec/step]

2920	**[Transfer Motor Control]**		
001	0: Encorder 1 :FG	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	SC443 Count	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step]

2930	**[SecondaryFB: Threshold]** Paper Transfer Roller Feed-back: Threshold Adjustment		
	Adjusts the threshold between high resistance (division 1) and low resistance (division 2) at the paper transfer roller. This SP affects SP2931 to SP2939.		
001	Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]

2960	**[Process Interval]**		
001	Additional Time	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

2970	**[Cleaning After JOB]**		
001	No Refresh	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Refresh	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2971	**[T1 Non Image Area ON Timing]**		
001	-	*ENG	[–270 to 180 / **C2c: 10/ C2d: 20** / 10 msec/step]

SP3-XXX (Process)

3011	**[Process Cont. Manual Execution]**		
001	Normal	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the normal process control manually (potential control). Check the result with SP3-325-001 and 3-012-001 after executing this SP.
002	Density Adjustment	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the toner density adjustment manually.
003	Pre-ACC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done before ACC. The type of process control is selected with SP3-041-004.
004	Full MUSIC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) twice.
005	Normal MUSIC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) once.

3012	**[Process Cont. Check Result]** Process Control Self-check Result
	Displays the result of the latest process control self-check. All colors are displayed. The results are displayed in the order “Y C M K” e.g., 11 (Y) 99 (C) 11 (M) 11 (K): The self-check for Cyan failed but the others

	were successful. See the "Error Condition Tables" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" section for details.		
001	History: Latest	*ENG	[1111 to 99999999 / 99999999 / 1/step]
002	Result: Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Result: Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Result: Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Result: Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Result: Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Result: Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Result: Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Result: Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Result: Latest 9	*ENG	

3013	**[T Sensor Initial Set: Execution]** Developer Initialization Setting		
001	Execution: ALL	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]
002	Execution: COL	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3014	**[T Sensor Initial Set Result: Display]** Developer Initialization Result: Display		
001	Display: YCMK	*ENG	[0 to 9999 / 9999 / 1 /step]

			1: Success, 2 to 9: Failure
	Displays the developer initialization result. See section "Developer Initialization Result" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" section for details on the meaning of each code. All colors are displayed. Values are displayed in the order Y C M Bk. e.g., 1 (Y) 2 (C) 1 (M) 1 (Bk): Initialization of Cyan failed but the others succeeded.		

3015	**[Forced Toner Supply: Execute]** Forced Toner Supply ([Color])		
001	Execution: ALL	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the manual toner supply to the development unit.
002	Execution: COL	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3016	**[Forced Toner Supply: Setting]** Forced Toner Supply Setting ([Color])		
	Specifies the manual toner supply time for each color.		
001	Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **4** / 1 sec/step]
002	Supply Time: M	*ENG	
003	Supply Time: C	*ENG	
004	Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3020	**[Vt Limit Error]**		
	DFU		
001	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **5** / 0.01 V/step]

002	Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.7** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Threshold Number of Upper counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **20** / 1 time/step]
004	Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Number of Lower counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1 times/step]
006	Upper Counter: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 times/step]
007	Upper Counter: M	*ENG	
008	Upper Counter: C	*ENG	
009	Upper Counter: Y	*ENG	
010	Lower Counter: Bk	*ENG	
011	Lower Counter: M	*ENG	
012	Lower Counter: C	*ENG	
013	Lower Counter: Y	*ENG	

3021	**[TD Sensor Initial Set]** Developer Initialization Setting		
	Specifies the developer agitation time for each color at the developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Agitation Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
002	Agitation Time: M	*ENG	
003	Agitation Time: C	*ENG	
004	Agitation Time: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag of the developer initialization for each color. **DFU**		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	

007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	
009	Prohibition	*ENG	Enables or disables developer initialization. **DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Enable, 1: Disable

3022	**[Toner Replenishment Mode] DFU**		
	Specifies the toner supply time for each color in the toner supply mode.		
001	Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **8** / 1 sec/step]
002	Number: M	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **6** / 1 sec/step]
003	Number: C	*ENG	
004	Number: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag for the toner supply mode for each color.		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	
007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	

3041	**[Process Control Type]**		
001	Voltage Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (Use the fixed values for the charge DC bias and development DC bias set with SP2-005 and SP2-229.) 1: CONTROL
	Enables or disables potential control.		

002	LD Power Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (at the value in SP2221-xxx) 1: CONTROL (adjusted by process control)
	Selects the LD power control mode.		
004	Pre-ACC	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **2** / 1/step] 0: Not Executed 1: Process Control 2: TC Control (TD Adjustment) 3: Not used
	Selects the process control mode that is done before ACC.		

3043	**[TD Adjustment Mode]**		
001	Repeat Number: Power ON	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at power on. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
002	Repeat Number: Initialization	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at the developer initialization. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
003	Repeat Number: Non-use	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment in		

	stand by mode. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
004	Repeat Number: ACC	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at ACC. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
005	Repeat Number: Recovery	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Not used		
006	Repeat Number: Job End	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at job end. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
007	Repeat: Interrupt	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment during printing. **DFU**		
008	Toner Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 25.5 / **10** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the time for the toner supply mode when a toner density is detected to be low.		

009	Consumption pattern: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the black toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
010	Consumption pattern: M	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the magenta toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
011	Consumption pattern: C	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the cyan toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
012	Consumption pattern: Y	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the yellow toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
013	T1 Bias: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 30** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Black.		
014	T1 Bias: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 30**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Magenta.		
015	T1 Bias: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 33**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Cyan.		
016	T1 Bias: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 45** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Yellow.		
017	Developer Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the developer mixing time at the toner density adjustment.		
018	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment.		

	In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-001) exceed the target values (SP3611-005) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
019	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: M	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-002) exceed the target values (SP3611-006) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
020	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: C	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-003) exceed the target values (SP3611-007) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
021	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Y	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-004) exceed the target values (SP3611-008) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		

3044	**[Toner Supply Type]** Toner Supply Type ([Color])		
	Selects the toner supply method type.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (with the supply rates stored with SP 3401) 1: PID (Vtref_Fixed) 2: PID (Vtref_Control) 3: Not used
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3045	**[Toner End Detection: Set]**		
	Enables/disables the toner alert display on the LCD.		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Detect, 1: Not Detect

3101	**[Toner End/Near End]**		
	Displays the amount of each color toner. **DFU**		
001	Toner Replenishment: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **510** / 1 g/step]
002	Toner Replenishment: M	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **400** / 1 g/step]
003	Toner Replenishment: C	*ENG	
004	Toner Replenishment: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the consumed amount of each color toner.		
005	Toner Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
006	Toner Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	Toner Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	Toner Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays the remaining amount of each color toner. These are calculated by the operating times of the toner supply pumps.		
009	Toner Remaining: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
010	Toner Remaining: M	*ENG	
011	Toner Remaining: C	*ENG	
012	Toner Remaining: Y	*ENG	
013-016	Adjusts the threshold of toner near end for each color. The toner near end message appears on the LCD when the remaining toner amount reaches this threshold. When one of these SPs (SP3-101-009 to 012 or -032 to -035) reaches this threshold, toner near end is detected.		

013	Near End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 600 / **50** / 1 g/step]
014	Near End Threshold: M	*ENG	
015	Near End Threshold: C	*ENG	
016	Near End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
017-020	**DFU**		
017	Cartridge Error Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 0 / **–50000** / 1 g/step]
018	Cartridge Error Threshold: M	*ENG	
019	Cartridge Error Threshold: C	*ENG	
020	Cartridge Error Threshold: Y	*ENG	
021	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
	This SP is the threshold for toner end. Delta Vt: Vt-Vtref When both this SP and SP3-101-026 occur at same time, toner end is determined.		
022-025	Displays the total delta Vt (Vt-Vtref) value for each color.These are calculated by pixel counting.		
022	Delta Vt Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 655 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
023	Delta Vt Sum: M	*ENG	
024	Delta Vt Sum: C	*ENG	
025	Delta Vt Sum: Y	*ENG	
026	Delta Vt Sum Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / 10 / 1 V/step]
027	Gamma Threshold: Coefficient	*ENG	Not used
028-031	Displays the consumed toner amount calculated with the pixel count for each color.		
028	Pixel: Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
029	Pixel: Consumption: M	*ENG	

030	Pixel: Consumption: C	*ENG	
031	Pixel: Consumption: Y	*ENG	
032-035	Displays the remaining toner amount for each color, using pixel count.		
032	Pixel: Remaining : Bk	*ENG	[-50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
033	Pixel: Remaining : M	*ENG	
034	Pixel: Remaining : C	*ENG	
035	Pixel: Remaining : Y	*ENG	
036-039	Adjusts the threshold of toner end for each color.		
036	End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	End Threshold: M	*ENG	
038	End Threshold: C	*ENG	
039	End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
040-043	Displays the pixel M/A for each color.		
040	Pixel M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.4** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
041	Pixel M/A: M	*ENG	
042	Pixel M/A: C	*ENG	
043	Pixel M/A: Y	*ENG	
044	Delta Vt Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
045	Delta Vt Sum Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the total delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 255 / **10** / 1 V/step]

046-049	Displays the latest mohno-pump off time.		
046	Mohno Off Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 0 x FFFFFFFF / **0** / 1 sec/step]
047	Mohno Off Time: M	*ENG	
048	Mohno Off Time: C	*ENG	
049	Mohno Off Time: Y	*ENG	

3102	**[Toner End Recovery]**		
	Adjusts the number of times toner supply is attempted for each color when the TD sensor continues to detect toner end during toner recovery.		
001	Repeat: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 20 / **5** / 1 time/step]
002	Repeat: M	*ENG	
003	Repeat: C	*ENG	
004	Repeat: Y	*ENG	

3131	**[TE Count m: Display]**		
	Display the number of toner end detections for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 time/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3201	**[TD Sensor: Vt Display]**		
	Display the current voltage of the TD sensor for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0.01** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	

003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	

3211	**[Vt Shift: Display/Set]**		
	Adjusts the Vt correction value for each line speed. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Thick 1 Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **C2c: 0.28, C2d: 0.39** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Thick 1 Shift: M	*ENG	
003	Thick 1 Shift: C	*ENG	
004	Thick 1 Shift: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **C2c: 0.74, C2d: 0.85** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Y	*ENG	

3221	**[Vtcnt: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtcnt value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **3.86** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtcnt value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **3.86** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	

007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	

3222	**[Vtref: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtref value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtref value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	
007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays and adjusts Vtref correction by pixel coverage for each color. **DFU**		
009	Pixel Correction: Bk	*ENG	[-5 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
010	Pixel Correction: M	*ENG	
011	Pixel Correction: C	*ENG	
012	Pixel Correction: Y	*ENG	

3223	**[Vtref Upper Lower: Set] DFU**		
	Adjusts the lower or upper limit value of Vtref for each color.		
001	Lower: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2** / 0.01 V/step]

002	Lower: M	*ENG	
003	Lower: C	*ENG	
004	Lower: Y	*ENG	
005	Upper: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Upper: M	*ENG	
007	Upper: C	*ENG	
008	Upper: Y	*ENG	
009	Initial TC	*ENG	Adjusts the initial toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **7** / 0.1 wt%/step]
010	Upper: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **9.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
011	Lower: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **4** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.44** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
013	Lower Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.209** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
014	Toner Density Between H and M	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **3.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
015	Toner Density Between M and L	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **3.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]

3224	**[Vtref Correction: Pixel] DFU**

	Adjusts the coefficient of Vtref correction for each coverage and color.		
001	Low Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
002	Low Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Low Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Low Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	High Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
006	High Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
007	High Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
008	High Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the low coverage. [0 to 20 / **3** / 0.1 %/step]
010	High Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the high coverage. [0 to 100 / **60** / 1 %/step]
011	TC Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Limit TC: Display: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 15 / **10** / 0.1 wt% /step]
013	Upper Limit TC: Display: M	*ENG	
014	Upper Limit TC: Display: C	*ENG	
015	Upper Limit TC: Display: Y	*ENG	
016	Process Control Execution Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **50** / 1 time/step]

3231	**[Toner Supply: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the coefficient of the toner supply time for each color. **DFU**		
001	Replacement Coefficient:Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66** / 0.01 /step]

002	Replacement Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66**/ 0.01 /step]
003	Replacement Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.6** / 0.01 /step]
004	Replacement Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66** / 0.01 /step]

3232	**[Toner Supply Coefficient: Setting] DFU**		
001	Vt Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **50** / 1 /step]
002	Vt Proportion: M	*ENG	
003	Vt Proportion: C	*ENG	
004	Vt Proportion: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.47** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion: M	*ENG	
007	Pixel Proportion: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Control: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **500** / 1 /step]
010	Vt Integral Control: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Control: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Control: Y	*ENG	
013	Vt Sum Times: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **20** / 1 time/step]
014	Vt Sum Times: M	*ENG	
015	Vt Sum Times: C	*ENG	
016	Vt Sum Times: Y	*ENG	

3233	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 2: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Coefficient: 1	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]

002	Correction Coefficient: 2	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: 3	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: 4	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.25** / 0.01 /step]
005	Correction Coefficient: 5	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]

3234	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 3: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Value 1	*ENG	[-0.1 to 0 / -**0.01** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Value 2	*ENG	[0 to 0.1 / **0.01** / 0.01 /step]

3235	**[Toner Supply Coefficient: Display] DFU**		
001	Pixel Proportion 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Pixel Proportion 2: M	*ENG	
003	Pixel Proportion 2: C	*ENG	
004	Pixel Proportion 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion 3: Bk	*ENG	[0.7 to 1.3 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion 3: M	*ENG	
007	Pixel Proportion 3: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion 3: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Value: Bk	*ENG	[-255 to 255 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
010	Vt Integral Value: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Value: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Value: Y	*ENG	

3236	**[Toner Supply Consumption: Display] DFU**

	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 40000 / **0** / 0.1 mg/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3237	**[Developer Mixing Setting]**		
	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color. **DFU**		
001	Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **5** / 1 sec/step]

3238	**[Vt Target: Setting]**		
	Displays the Vt target value at developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.01 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3239	**[Vtref Correction: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the parameter for Vtref correction at the process control.		
001	(+)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 V/step]
002	(+)Consumption: M	*ENG	
003	(+)Consumption: C	*ENG	
004	(+)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
005	(-)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	

006	(-)Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	(-)Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	(-)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Threshold for development gamma rank.		
009	P Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.2** / 0.1 /step]
010	P Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.1** / 0.1 /step]
011	P Rank 3 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.1** / 0.1 /step]
012	P Rank 4 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.1 /step]
013-014	Threshold for image density rank on the image transfer belt.		
013	T Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[-1 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.01 V/step]
014	T Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 V/step]

3241	**[Background Potential Setting]**		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	These are parameters for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [-1000 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x these vales) + SP3-241-005 to -008
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	These are additional values for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [0 to 255 / **140** / 1 V/step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x SP3-241-001 to -004) + these values
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

3242	**[LD Power Setting]**		
	Adjusts the coefficient for LD power control value at the process control.		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **79** / 1 /step]
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **62** / 1 /step]
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

3251	**[Coverage]**		
	These (-001 to -016) are coefficients for SP3-222-009 to -012.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	Displays the latest coverage for each color. [0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average S" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-017.		
005	Average S: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
006	Average S: M	*ENG	
007	Average S: C	*ENG	
008	Average S: Y	*ENG	

009-012	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average M" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-018.		
009	Average M: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
010	Average M: M	*ENG	
011	Average M: C	*ENG	
012	Average M: Y	*ENG	
013-016	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average L" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3-251-019.		
013	Average L: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
014	Average L: M	*ENG	
015	Average L: C	*ENG	
016	Average L: Y	*ENG	
017-019	Adjusts the threshold for SP3-251-005 to -016.		
017	Total Page Setting: S	*ENG	[1 to 100 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
018	Total Page Setting: M	*ENG	[1 to 500 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
019	Total Page Setting: L	*ENG	[1 to 999 / **50** / 1 sheet/step]
020-023	Adjusts the threshold for SP3-251-024 to -027.		
020	Total Page Setting: S2	*ENG	[1 to 100 / **20** / 1 sheet/step]
021	Total Page Setting: M2	*ENG	[1 to 500 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
022	Total Page Setting: L2	*ENG	[1 to 999 / **50** / 1 sheet/step]
024-027	Displays the latest coverage ratio for each color.		
024	Latest Coverage: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 %/step]
025	Latest Coverage: M	*ENG	

026	Latest Coverage: C	*ENG	
027	Latest Coverage: Y	*ENG	
028	Displays the threshold of whether to perform developer churning or not.		
	DevMix Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 %/step]

3311	**[ID Sensor Detection Value: Vofset]**		
	Displays the ID sensor (regular) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
001	Voffset reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Voffset reg: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Voffset reg: C	*ENG	
004	Voffset reg: Y	*ENG	
005-007	Displays the ID sensor (diffusion) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
005	Voffset dif: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Voffset dif: C	*ENG	
007	Voffset dif: Y	*ENG	
008-010	Displays the ID sensor offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
008	Voffset TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
009	Voffset TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Voffset TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3321	**[Vsg Adjustment: Execution]**		
010	P/TM Sensor All	-	Execute the ID sensor initialization setting for all sensors

3322	**[Vsg Adjustment Result: Vsg]**

	Displays the result value of the Vsg adjustment for each sensor.		
001	Vsg reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Vsg reg: M	*ENG	
003	Vsg reg: C	*ENG	
004	Vsg reg: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg dif: M	*ENG	
006	Vsg dif: C	*ENG	
007	Vsg dif: Y	*ENG	
008	Vsg TM (Front)	*ENG	
009	Vsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Vsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3323	**[Vsg Adjustment Result: Ifsg] DFU**		
001	Ifsg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.1 mA/step]
002	Ifsg: M	*ENG	
003	Ifsg: C	*ENG	
004	Ifsg: Y	*ENG	
005	Ifsg TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.1 mA/step]
006	Ifsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
007	Ifsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3324	**[Vsg Adjustment: Set] DFU**		
001	SC Detection	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 1p]
003	Vofset Error Counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 0.1 time/step]

004	Vofset Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Vsg Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.5** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Vsg Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3.5** / 0.01 V/step]

3325	**[Vsg Adjustment Result]**		
	Displays the result of the Vsg adjustment. The displayed numbers mean the result of each sensor (sensor for Front, sensor for Bk, sensor for Cyan, sensor for Center, sensor for Magenta, sensor for Yellow and sensor for Rear).		
001	Latest	*ENG	[111111 to 999999 / **999999** / 1 /step] 9: Unexpected error 3: Offset voltage error 2: Vsg adjustment value error 1: O.K
002	Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Latest 9	*ENG	

3361	**[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Display] Not Used**		
001	K2K (Latest)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / - / 0.0001 /step]
002	K5K (Latest)	*ENG	
003	K2M (Latest)	*ENG	
004	K5M (Latest)	*ENG	

005	K2C (Latest)	*ENG	
006	K5C (Latest)	*ENG	
007	K2Y (Latest)	*ENG	
008	K5Y (Latest)	*ENG	

3362	**[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Setting] DFU**		
001	K2: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.32** / 0.01 /step]
002	K2: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.22** / 0.01 /step]
003	K5: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 0.01 /step]
004	K5: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
005	Kn: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Kn: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
007	K5 Edit Point	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.15** / 0.01 /step]
008	K5 Target Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.63** / 0.01 V/step]
009	K5 Approximate Method	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0:Linear, 1: Curve
010	K2: Upper/Lower Limit Coefficient 1	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
011	K2: Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **0.07** / 0.01 /step]
012	K2: Lower Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **–0.07** / 0.01 /step]
013	Diffusion Correction: M	*ENG	[0.75 to 1.35 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
014	Diffusion Correction: C	*ENG	
015	Diffusion Correction: Y	*ENG	
016	K2: Check: M	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.001 /step]

017	K2: Check: C	*ENG	
018	K2: Check: Y	*ENG	

3363	**[ID Pattern Timing Setting] DFU**		
001	Scan YCMBk	*ENG	Adjusts the detection timing for the process control pattern. [-500 to 500 / **13.7** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer Release Start Time	*ENG	Adjusts the timing when the paper transfer unit is kept away from the image transfer belt. [0 to 2500 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
003	Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the process control pattern. [0 to 2500 / **880** / 1 msec/step]
004	MUSIC Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the pattern that is used for the line position adjustment. [-2500 to 2500 / **300** / 1 msec/step]

3371	**[M/A Calculation] DFU**		
001	Correction Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **0.95** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1.02** / 0.01 /step]

3401	**[Fixed Supply Mode]**		
	Adjusts the toner supply rate in the fixed toner supply mode.		
001	Fixed Rate: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1 %/step]

002	Fixed Rate: M	*ENG	These SPs are used only when SP3-044 is set to "1".
003	Fixed Rate: C	*ENG	
004	Fixed Rate: Y	*ENG	

3411	**[Toner Supply Rate: Display]**		
	Displays the current toner supply rate.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **-** / 1 %/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3421	**[Toner Supply Range]**		
001	Upper Limit: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the toner supply rate during printing. [0 to 100 / **100** / 1%/step]
002	Upper Limit: M	*ENG	
003	Upper Limit: C	*ENG	
004	Upper Limit: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the minimum toner supply time. [0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
006	Minimum Supply Time: M	*ENG	
007	Minimum Supply Time: C	*ENG	
008	Minimum Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3451	**[Toner Supply Carry Over: Display] DFU**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
002	M	*ENG	

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3452	**[Toner Supply Carry Over: Setting] DFU**		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 msec/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	

3501	**[Process Control Target M/A]**		
	Adjusts the target M/A.		
001	Maximum M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.444** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
002	Maximum M/A: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum M/A: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum M/A: Y	*ENG	

3510	**[Pixel Adj. Sheet Counter: Display]**		
	Displays the total page counter for each adjustment mode.		
001	Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]
002	Potential Control: FC	*ENG	
003	Power ON: BW	*ENG	
004	Power ON: FC	*ENG	
005	MUSIC: BW	*ENG	
006	MUSIC: FC	*ENG	

007	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	
008	Charge AC Control	*ENG	
009	MUSIC: Power ON: BW	*ENG	
010	MUSIC: Power ON: FC	*ENG	

3511	**[Execution Interval: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for each adjustment mode.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **250** / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
005	Initial: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **250** / 1 page/step]
006	Initial: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
007	Vsg Adj. Counter	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]
008	Charge AC Control Counter	*ENG	
009	Interrupt: Vtref Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
010	Interrupt: Vtref Correction: FC	*ENG	
011	Initial: Vtref Correction: FC	*ENG	
012	Initial: Vtref Correction: BW	*ENG	
013	Job End: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **1000** / 1 page/step]
014	Job End: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	
015	Interrupt: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]

016	Interrupt: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	
017	Initial: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **1000** / 1 page/step]
018	Initial: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	
019	Environmental Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
020	Gamma Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
021	Non-use Time Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
022	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 page/step]
023	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
024	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.5** / 0.01/step]
025	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
026	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01/step]
027	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
028	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.01/step]
029	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]

030	Max. Number Correction Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **5** / 1/step]
031	Max. Number Correction Counter	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1/step]

3512	**[Image Quality Adj.: Interval]**		
	Adjusts the timing for execution of process control and line position adjustment.		
001	During Job	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **30** / 1 page/step]
002	During Stand-by	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 minute/step]

3513	**[PCU Motor Stop Time: Bk]**		
	Displays the last time that the PCU motors stopped. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1/step]
003	Date	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1/step]

3514	**[Environmental Display: Job End]**		
	Displays the environmental conditions for the last job. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Temperature	*ENG	[-1280 to 1270 / **0** / 0.1°C/step]
002	Relative Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1%RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1 g/cm^3/step]

3515	**[Execution Interval: Display]**		
	Displays the current interval for process control execution. When the machine calculates the timing for process control, it uses a number of conditions. These are the results after considering all the conditions.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]

3516	**[Refresh Mode] DFU**		
	While making prints with low coverage, the developer is agitated with less toner consumption and the toner carrier attraction tends to increase. This may cause low image density or poor transfer (white dots). To prevent this, the coagulated toner or overcharged toner has to be consumed by performing the refresh mode.		
001	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 0.1 m/step]
002	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: M	*ENG	
003	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: C	*ENG	
004	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Y	*ENG	
005	Rotation Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **1** / 1 m/step]
006	Pixel Coverage Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
007	Pixel Coverage Sum: M	*ENG	

008	Pixel Coverage Sum: C	*ENG	
009	Pixel Coverage Sum: Y	*ENG	
010	Required Area: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
011	Required Area: M	*ENG	
012	Required Area: C	*ENG	
013	Required Area: Y	*ENG	
014	Refresh Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **34** / 1 cm^2/m/step]
015	Refresh Threshold: M	*ENG	
016	Refresh Threshold: C	*ENG	
017	Refresh Threshold: Y	*ENG	
018	Pattern Generation Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
019	Pattern Generation Number: M	*ENG	
020	Pattern Generation Number: C	*ENG	
021	Pattern Generation Number: Y	*ENG	
022	Pattern Generation Number: Upper limit	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
023	Toner Consumption Pattern Area	*ENG	[10 to 2550 / **300** / 10 cm^2/step]
024	Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01/step]
025	Job End Area Coefficient	*ENG	[0.1 to 25.5 / **1** / 0.1/step]
026	Job End Vb Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **40** / 1%/step]
027	Job End Length	*ENG	[0 to 56 / **25** / 1mm/step]
028	Job End Supply	*ENG	[0 to 1 / 0.45 / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]

3517	**[Blade damage prevention mode]**		
	Adjusts the threshold temperature for preventing the cleaning blade at the drum unit from being damaged. If the temperature is above this value, the drum reverses briefly at the end of the job to prevent the blade from flipping over.		
001	Execution Temp. Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 50/ **40** / 1°C/step]

3518	**[Image Quality Adj. Execution Flag] DFU**		
001	Toner End Recovery: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
002	Toner End Recovery: M	*ENG	
003	Toner End Recovery: C	*ENG	
004	Toner End Recovery: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
006	Developer Mixing	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
007	Process Control	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON (once), 2: ON (twice)
008	MUSIC	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON (once), 2: ON (twice)
009	Drum Phase Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
010	Charge AC Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
011	Blade Damage Prevention	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON

3519	[Toner End Prohibition Setting]		
	Enables or disables each adjustment at toner near end.		
001	Process Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Permit (adjustment is done even toner near end condition) 1: Forbid (adjustment is not done at toner near end condition)
002	MUSIC	*ENG	
003	TC Adj.	*ENG	

3520	[ITB Idling Number]		
001	Temperature: H	*ENG	[0 or 3 / **0** / 1 revolution/step]
002	Temperature: M	*ENG	
003	Temperature: L	*ENG	
004	Temperature: L: Power ON	*ENG	

3521	[Temperature Threshold]		
001	Threshold: t2	*ENG	[20 or 30 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
002	Threshold: t1	*ENG	[0 or 15 / **15** / 1 deg/step]

3522	[Initial Process Control Setting]		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at power on. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at power on is executed.		
001	Fusing Temp. Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **60** / 1°C/step]
002	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
003	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
004	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]

005	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
100	[Rapi_timer]		
	Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **30** / 1 sec/step]

3531	**[Non-use Time Process Control Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at stand-by. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at stand-by is executed.		
001	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
002	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
003	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
004	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
005	Maximum Execution Number	*ENG	Adjusts the maximum execution time for the process control at stand-by. [0 to 99 / **10** / 1 time/step]

3611	**[Development Gamma: Display/Set]**		
001	Bk (Current)	*ENG	Displays the current development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / - / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
002	M (Current)	*ENG	
003	C (Current)	*ENG	
004	Y (Current)	*ENG	
005	Bk (Target Display)	*ENG	Displays the target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.85** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
006	M (Target Display)	*ENG	
007	C (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]

008	Y (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.77** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
009	Bk (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	Displays the standard target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.9** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
010	M (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
011	C (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
012	Y (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
013	Environmental Correction	*ENG	Turns on or off the environmental correction for target development gamma. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Correct, 1: Correct
014	K (Max Correction)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.1** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kv/step]
015	M (Max Correction)	*ENG	
016	C (Max Correction)	*ENG	
017	Y (Max Correction)	*ENG	
018	K (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	[1 to 99 / **15** / 1 g/m^3/step]
019	M (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	
020	C (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	
021	Y (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	

3612	**[Vk Display]**		
	Displays Vk for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[-300 to 300 / - / 1 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	

004	Y	*ENG	

3621	**[Development DC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the development DC bias adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3631	**[Charge DC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the charge DC voltage adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]

002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
006	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3641	**[Charge AC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec		
	Displays the charge AC voltage adjusted with the process control for each color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1.75** / 0.01 kV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	

3651	**[LD Power Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the LD power adjusted for each environment.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]

002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3710	**[HST Concentration Control: Set]** TD Sensor: Toner Concentration Control Setting		
	Selects the toner concentration control method by HST memory, which is in the TD sensor.		
001	Control Method: Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Use, 1: Use

3711	**[HST Concentration Control: Bk]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the black PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	

006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3712	**[HST Concentration Control: M]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the magenta PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]

012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3713	**[HST Concentration Control: C]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the cyan PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3714	**[HST Concentration Control: Y]**

	Displays the factory settings of the yellow PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3800	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Displays/ adjusts the toner collection bottle detection settings. These SPs are used for NRS.		
001	Condition	*CTL	[0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Detection Times	*CTL	[0 to 50 / **-** / 1 /step]
003	Print Page After Near Full	*CTL	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
004	Pixel Count After Near	*CTL	[0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]

	Full		
005	Pixel Count After Replacement	*CTL	Displays the pixel counter after replacement of toner collection bottle. [0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]
008	Coefficient	*ENG	[0.5 to 1.5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
011	Notice Setting	*ENG	Enables or disables the calling for @Remote. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Enable @Remote calling 1: Disable @Remote calling
	NOTE: If the toner collection bottle has been replaced before the machine detects used toner near full when this setting is set to "0", the machine cannot detect toner collection bottle near full. In that case, set SP3-902-017 to "1".		
012	Day Threshold: Toner Collection bottle:NF	*ENG	[1 to 30 / **5** / 1 day/step]
	Sets the threshold days for the near-full display. The near-full of the toner collection bottle is displayed after the toner collection full sensor has detected the actuator in the toner collection bottle.		
013	Total:Toner Collection Bottle	*ENG	Displays the total amount of the used toner. [0 to 999999999 / **1** / 1]
014	Mechanism Full Detection Date	*ENG	Displays the date of the full detection fot the toner collection bottle.

3900	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Turns toner collection bottle full detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3901	**[New PCU Detection]**		
	Turns new PCU detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3902	**[Manual New Unit Set]**		
	Turns the new unit detection flag for each PM unit on or off. The use of these counters is explained in the PM section and in the relevant parts of section 3 (Replacement and Adjustment).		
001	Development Unit: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Development Unit: Y	*ENG	
003	Development Unit: C	*ENG	
004	Development Unit: M	*ENG	
005	Developer: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
006	Developer: Y	*ENG	
007	Developer: C	*ENG	
008	Developer: M	*ENG	
009	PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
010	PCU: Y	*ENG	
011	PCU: M	*ENG	
012	PCU: C	*ENG	
013	Image Transfer Unit	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON Do not use 3902-013 if you only change the cleaning unit. 3902-015: This is for the image transfer
014	Fusing Unit	*ENG	
015	Cleaning Unit	*ENG	
016	Paper Transfer Unit	*ENG	

017	Toner Collection Bottle	*ENG	belt cleaning unit.

SP4-XXX (Scanner)

4008	**[Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the sub-scan magnification by changing the scanner motor speed.		
001	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment	*ENG	[-1.0 to 1.0 / **0** / 0.1%/step] **FA**

4010	**[Leading Edge Registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the scanning start timing in the sub-scan direction.		
001	-	*ENG	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4011	**[Side-to-Side registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the scanning start timing in the main scan direction.		
001	-	*ENG	[-2.5 to 2.5 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4012	**[Scanner Erase Margin: Scale]** Scanner: Erase Margin: Scale		
	Sets the blank margin at each side for erasing the original shadow caused by the gap between the original and the scale.		
001	Book: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
002	Book: Trailing Edge		
003	Book: Left		
004	Book: Right		
005	ADF: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
007	ADF: Right		

008	ADF: Left		

4013	**[Scanner Free Run]**		
	Performs the scanner free run with the exposure lamp on or off in the following mode. Full color mode / Full Size / A3 or DLT		
001	Lamp: ON	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Lamp: OFF		

4014	**[Scan]**		
	Execute the scanner free fun with each mode.		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	Scanner free run with HP sensor check.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	Scanner free run without HP sensor check.

4020	**[Dust Check]**		
001	Detection: ON/OFF	*ENG	Turns the ADF scan glass dust check on/ off. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Dust Detect: Level	*ENG	Selects the detect level. [0 to 8 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: lowest detection level 8: highest detection level
003	Correction Level	*ENG	Selects the level of the sub scan line correction when using the ARDF. [0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Off 1: Weakest 2: Weak

			3: Strong 4: Strongest

4301	**[APS Operation Check]**		
	Displays a code that represents the original size detected by the original sensors. (See "Input Check Table" in this section.)		
001	APS Operation Check	-	-

4303	**[APS Min Size (A5/HLT/16K)]**		
	Specifies the result of the detection when the outputs from the original sensors are all OFF.		
001	APS Min. Size **(A5/HLT/16K)**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: No Original 1: A5-Lengthwise (16K SEF if 4305 is set to 3) 2: A5-Sideways (16K LEF if 4305 is set to 3)

4305	**[8K/16K Detection]**	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Normal Detection (the machine detects A4/LT size as A4 or LT, depending on the paper size setting) 1: A4-Sideways LT-Lengthwise 2: LT-Sideways A4-Lengthwise 3: 8K 16K
001	This program enables the machine to automatically recognize the 8K/16K size.		

4400	**[Scanner Erase Margin]**	*ENG	
	Set the Mask for Original. These SPs set the area to be masked during platen (book) mode scanning.		

001	Book: Leading Edge	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Book: Trailing Edge	
003	Book: Left	
004	Book: Right	
005	ADF: Leading Edge	
007	ADF: Right	
008	ADF: Left	

4417	**[IPU Test Pattern]**		
	Selects the IPU test pattern.		
001	Test Pattern Selection	[0 to 24 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Scanned image 1: Gradation main scan A 2: Gradation main scan B 3: Gradation main scan C 4: Gradation main scan D 5: Gradation sub scan (1) 6: Grid pattern 7: Slant grid pattern 8: Gradation RGBCMYK 9: UCR pattern 10: Color patch 16 (1) 11: Color patch 16 (2) 12: Color patch 64	13: Grid pattern CMYK 14: Color patch CMYK 15: Gray pattern (1) 16: Gray pattern (2) 17: Gray Pattern (3) 18: Shading pattern 19: Thin line pattern 20: Scanned + Grid pattern 21: Scanned + Gray scale 22: Scanned + Color patch 23: Scanned + Slant Grid C 24: Scanned + Slant Grid D

4429	**[Illegal Copy Output]**		
001	Copy	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1 /step]
002	Scanner		

003	Fax		

4440	**[Saturation Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the level of saturation for copying.		
001	Saturation Adj. 1	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: High 1: Lowest 2: Lower 3: Default 4: Higher 5: Highest

4450	**[Scan Image Path Selection]**	
001	Black Subtraction ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Uses or does not use the black reduction image path.	
002	SH ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Uses or does not use the shading image path.	

4460	**[Digital AE Set] DFU**		
	Specifies the level of deleting the background in the ADS mode. You can adjust its level for each scanning method (platen, ADF).		
001	Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **364** / 4 digit/step]
002	Background Level	*ENG	[512 to 1532 / **932** / 1 digit/step]

4501	**[ACC Target Density]**		
	Selects the ACC result.		
001	Copy: Bk: Text	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step]

002	Copy: C: Text	*ENG	10: Darkest density
003	Copy: M: Text	*ENG	
004	Copy: Y: Text	*ENG	
005	Copy: Bk: Photo	*ENG	
006	Copy: C: Photo	*ENG	
007	Copy: M: Photo	*ENG	
008	Copy: Y: Photo	*ENG	

4505	**[ACC Offset: Light]**		
	Adjusts the offset correction for light areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	
004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4506	**[ACC Offset: Dark]**		
	Adjusts the offset correction for dark areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	

004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4540	**[Printer Vector Correction]**		
	This SP corrects the printer coverage of 12 hues (RY, YR, YG, etc. x 4 Colors [R, G, B, Option]) for a total of 48 parameters.		
001-004	RY Phase: Option/R/G/B	*ENG	Specifies the printer vector correction value. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
005-008	YR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
009-012	YG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
013-016	GY Phase: Option/R/G/B		
017-020	GC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
021-024	CG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
025-028	CB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
029-032	BC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
033-036	BM Phase: Option/R/G/B		
037-040	MB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
041-044	MR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
045-048	RM Phase: Option/R/G/B		

4550	**[Scanner Application: text/Printing] DFU**
4551	**[Scanner Application: text] DFU**

4552	**[Scanner Application: text (Drop Out Coor)] DFU**		
4553	**[Scanner Application: text-Photo] DFU**		
4554	**[Scanner Application: Photo] DFU**		
4565	**[Scanner Application: GrayScale] DFU**		
4570	**[Scanner Application: Color: Text-Photo] DFU**		
4571	**[Scanner Application: Color: Glossy Photo] DFU**		
4572	**[Scanner Application: AutoColor] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		

4580	**[FAX Application: Text/Chart] DFU**
4582	**[FAX Application: Text/Photo] DFU**

4583	**[FAX Application: Photo] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Selects the contrast level for B/W the Text mode. Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		
-010	Texture Erase: 0	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of textures. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. This SP (suffix "-010") only exists in SP4580, 4582 and 4583. 0: Not activated		

4581	**[FAX Application: Text] DFU**		
4584	**[FAX Application: Original 1] DFU**		
4585	**[FAX Application: Original 2] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off

	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Selects the contrast level for B/W the Text mode. Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		

4600	**[SBU Version Display]**		
001	SBU_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step] Displays the ID of the SBU.
002	GASBU-N_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step]
003	VSP5100_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step]

4602	**[Scanner Memory Access]**		
001	Scanner Memory Access	-	Enables the read and write check for the SBU registers.
002	Address Set	-	Not used
003	Data Set	-	

4603	[AGC Execution]		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] Executes the AGC.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] **DFU**

4604	[FGATE Open/Close] DFU		
001	-	-	Opens or closes the FGATE signal. This SP automatically returns to the default status (close) after exiting this SP. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

4609	[Gray Balance Set: R]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-46** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-46** / 1 digit/step]

4610	[Gray Balance Set: G]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-20** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read		

4611	[Gray Balance Set: B]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-28** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read		

4623	[Black Level Adj. Display] RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the

			CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4624	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4625	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4628	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**

	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Latest: R Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4629	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Latest: G Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4630	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Latest: B Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4631	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	

4632	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	

4633	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	

4645	**[Scan Adj. Time Out Error]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	White Offset Correction	-	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Black Offset Correction	-	

4647	**[Read Hard Error]**		
	Displays the result of the SBU connection check.		
001	Power-ON	-	[0 to 35535 / **0** / 1digit /step] 0: OK, Other: SBU connection check failure If the SBU connection check fails, SC144 occurs.

4654	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4655	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing

			speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4656	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4658	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Last Correct Value: R Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4659	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Last Correct Value: G Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4660	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.

001	Last Correct Value: B Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4661	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	

4662	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	

4663	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	

4673	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).. [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4674	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4675	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4677	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Red.		
001	Factory Setting: R Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4678	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Green.		
001	Factory Setting: G Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4679	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Blue.		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4680	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	

4681	**[Gain Adjustment Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	

4682	**[Gain Adjustment Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	

4688	**[DF: Density Adjustment]**
	Adjusts the white shading parameter when scanning an image with the ARDF.

	Adjusts the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.		
001	-	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1%/ step]

4690	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	

4691	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	

4692	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	

4693	**[Black Level Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	

4694	**[Black Level Read]**

	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	

4695	**[Black Level Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	

4802	**[DF Shading FreeRun]**		
001	Lamp ON	-	Executes the scanner free run of shading movement with exposure lamp on or off. Press "OFF" to stop this free run. Otherwise, the free run lasts.
002	Lamp OFF		

4803	**[Home Position Adjustment]**		
001	-	-	[-1 to 1 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]

4804	**[Home Position]**		
001	-	-	Executes the scanner HP detection.

4806	**[Carriage Save]**		
001	-	-	Moves the carriage from the scanner home position. Dust may fall through the DF exposure glass. Therefore, do this SP when you transport the machine a long distance.

4807	[SBU Test Pattern Change]		
001	-	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]

4902	[ACC Data Display]		
	This SP outputs the final data read at the end of ACC execution. A zero is returned if there was an error reading the data. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]		
001	R DATA1	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
002	G DATA1	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
003	B DATA1	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
004	R DATA2	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 17 (8-bit)
005	G DATA2	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 17(8-bit)
006	B DATA2	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 17 (8-bit)

4904	[Scanner IPU Board Test]		
001	Test1	-	Bit0: TAURUS register Bit1: ORION register Bit2: LUPUS register Bit3 to 11: Not used Bit12: Ri20 Bit13 to 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs a write and read check of the ASICs on the IPU board and displays the result.		
002	Test2	-	Bit0: Image path from SBU to TAURUS Bit1: Image path from TAURUS to ORION Bit2: Image path from ORION to TAURUS Bit3: Image path from TAURUS to LUPUS

			Bit4 to 11: Not used Bit12: Image path from LUPUS to Ri20 Bit13: Image path from Ri20 to GAVD Bit14 and 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs an image path check on the IPU board and displays the result.		

4905	**[Dither Selection] DFU**		
	Changes the parameters for error diffusion.		
001	Dither Selection	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**

4918	**[Manual Gamma Adj.]**		
	Adjusts the offset data of the printer gamma for yellow in Photo mode. See “Printer Gamma Correction" in the Replacement and Adjustment for how to use.		
009	Change	-	Enter the manual gamma adjustment screen (-001 to 008). For details, see the "Printer Gamma Correction" in the section "Replace and Adjustment".

4954	**[Standard Chart Scan: Clear Setting]**		
001	Execution	-	Execute the scanning of the A4 chart.
002	Clear Setting	-	Clear the data of the scanned A4 chart.
004	Rewrite Target	-	Overwrite the standard data.

4991	**[IPU Image Pass Selection]**
	Selects the image path. Enter the number to be selected using the 10-key pad.

001	RGB Frame Memory	*ENG	[0 to 11 / **2** / 1 /step]
	0: Scanner input RGB images 1: Scanner I/F RGB images 2: RGB images done by Shading correction (Shading ON, Black offset ON) 3: Shading data 4: Inner pattern data: Gray scale 5: RGB images done by Line skipping correction 6: RGB images done by Digital AE 7: RGB images done by Vertical line correction 8: RGB image done by Scanner gamma correction 9: RGB image done by Filtering correction 10: RGB images done by Full color ADS 11: RGB image done by Color correction		

4993	**[High Light Correction]**		
001	Sensitivity Selection	*ENG	Selects the Highlight correction level. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest sensitivity 9: strongest sensitivity
002	Range Selection	*ENG	Selects the range level of Highlight correction. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest skew correction, 9: strongest skew correction

4994	**[Text/Photo Detection Level Adj.]**		
	Selects the definition level between Text and Photo for high compression PDF.		
001	PDF Sensitivity Level text/photo	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Text priority 1: Normal 2: Photo priority

SP5-XXX (Mode)

5024	**[mm/inch Display Selection]**		
	Display units (mm or inch) for custom paper sizes.		
001	0:mm 1:inch	*CTL	0: mm (Europe/Asia) 1: inch (USA)

5045	**[Accounting Counter]**		
	Selects the counting method. **NOTE:** The counting method can be changed only once, regardless of whether the counter value is negative or positive.		
001	Counter Method	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Developments 1: Prints

5047	**[Paper Display]**		
	Turns on or off the printed paper display on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5051	**[Toner Refill Detection Display]**		
	Enables or disables the toner refill detection display.		
5051 1	Toner Refill Detection Display	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] Alphanumeric 0: ON 1: OFF

5055	**[Display IP Address]**
	Display or does not display the IP address on the LCD.

001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON

5056	**[Coverage Counter Display]**		
	Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5061	**[Toner Remaining Icon Display]**		
	Display or does not display the remaining toner display icon on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5062	**[Parts PM Display Setting]**		
	Display or does not display the PM part yield on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5067	**[Parts PM System Setting]**		
	Selects the service maintenance or user maintenance for each PM parts. If the user service is selected, PM alart is displayed on the LCD.		
001	PCU:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
002	PCU:M	*CTL	
003	PCU:C	*CTL	
004	PCU:Y	*CTL	
005	Dev Unit:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]

006	Dev Unit:M	*CTL	
007	Dev Unit:C	*CTL	
008	Dev Unit:Y	*CTL	
009	Developer:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
010	Developer:M	*CTL	
011	Developer:C	*CTL	
012	Developer:Y	*CTL	
013	Int Trans Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
014	Belt Cleaning Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
015	Fusing Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
016	Transfer Roller	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
017	WasteToner Bottle	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]

5104	**[A3/DLT Double Count] SSP**		
	Specifies whether the counter is double clicked for A3/DLT size prints. When you have to change this SP, ask your supervisor.		
5104 1	Double Count	*CTL	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: NO (Normal count) 1: YES (Double count) 2: YES except By-pass (Normal count for unknown size)

5112	**[Non-Std. Paper Sel.]** Non-Standard Paper Selection
001	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, and Optional paper tray unit trays 1 and 2) [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: OFF

	1: ON, If “1” is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.

5113	**[Optional Counter Type]**		
001	Default Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the counter type. **0**: **None**, 1: Key card (RK 3, 4) 2: Key card (down), 3: Prepaid card 4: Coin rack, 5: MF key card 8: Key counter + Vendor 9: Bar-code Printer
002	External Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the external counter type. **0**: **None** 1: Expansion Device 1 2: Expansion Device 2 3: Expansion Device 3

5114	**[Optional Counter I/F]**		
001	MF Key Card Extension	*CTL	[**0: Not installed/** 1: Installed (scanning accounting)]

5118	**[Disable Copying]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables copying.		

5120	**[Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal]**	*CTL	[**0**: **Yes (removed)**/ 1: Standby (installed but not used)/ 2: No (not removed)]
001	This program updates the information on the optional counter. When you install or remove an optional counter, check the settings.		

5121	**[Counter Up Timing]**	*CTL	[**0: Feed**/ 1: Exit]

001	This program specifies when the counter goes up. The settings refer to “paper feed” and “paper exit” respectively.

5126	**[F Size Original Setting]**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: 8 1/2" x 13" (Foolscap) 1: 8 1/4" x 13" (Folio) 2: 8" x 13" (F)
001	Selects F size original setting.		

5127	**[APS Mode]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables the APS.		

5128	**[Code Mode With Key/Card Option]**	*CTL	-
001	**DFU**		

5131	**[Paper Size Type Selection]**	*ENG	[0: JP (Japan)/ 1: NA / 2: EU]
001	The program selects a paper size system from the following alternatives: the AB system (0), the LT system (1), and the AF system (2).		

5150	**[By-Pass Length Setting]**	*CTL	[**0**: OFF/ 1: ON]
001	Determines whether the transfer sheet from the by-pass tray is used or not. Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm.		

5162	**[App. Switch Method]**	*CTL	[**0**: Soft Key Set/ 1: Hard Key Set]
001	This program specifies the switch that selects an application program.		

5167	**[Fax Printing Mode at Optional]**		
	Enables or disables the automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is accounted by an external accounting device.		
001	Fax Printing Mode at Optional Counter Off	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Automatic printing 1: No automatic printing

5169	**[CE Login]**		
	If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode.		
001	CE Login	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

5179	**[By-pass Size Error Detection]**		
	Turns on or off the by-pass tray size error message.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF 1: ON (Paper size error message is displayed when the paper jam occurs due to the wrong direction of set paper in by-pass mode.)

5181	**[Size Adjust]**		
	Adjusts the paper size for each tray.		
001	TRAY 1	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / 1 /step] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF, 2: B5 LEF, 3: A5 LEF
002	TRAY 2: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -]

			0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
003	TRAY 2: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
004	TRAY 2: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
005	TRAY 2: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
006	TRAY 3/T-LCT: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
007	TRAY 3: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
008	TRAY 3: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
009	TRAY 3: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
010	TRAY 4: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
011	TRAY 4: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
012	TRAY 4: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
013	TRAY 4: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
018	LCT	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4LEF, 1: LTLEF, 2: B5LEF

5186	**[RK 4]**
	Enables or disables the prevention for RK4 (accounting device) disconnection.

	If the RK4 is disconnected for 10 seconds when this SP is set to "1 (Enable)", the machine automatically jams a sheet of paper and stops.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5188	**[Copy NV Version]**		
	Displays the version number of the NVRAM on the controller board.		
001	-	-	-

5191	**[Mode Set] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5193	**[External Controller Info. Settings] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5195	**[Limitless SW] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5212	**[Page Numbering]**	*CTL	
	This program adjusts the position of the second side page numbers. A "– value" moves the page number positions to the left edge. A "+ value" moves the page number positions to the right edge.		
003	Duplex Printout Right/Left Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	
004	Duplex Printout High/Low Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	

5302	**[Set Time]**		
	Adjusts the RTC (real time clock) time setting for the local time zone. Examples: For Japan (+9 GMT), enter 540 (9 hours x 60 min.) DOM: +540 (Tokyo) NA: -300 (New York) EU: + 60 (Paris) CH: +480 (Peking) TW: +480 (Taipei) AS: +480 (Hong Kong)		
002	Time Difference	*CTL #	[-1440 to 1440 / **Area** / 1 min./step]

5307	**[Summer Time]**		
001	Setting		[0 to 1 / **NA, EU, ASIA** / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled NA and EUR: 1, ASIA: 0
	Enables or disables the summer time mode. Note ▪ Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".		
003	Rule Set (Start)		
	Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] 7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step] 8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step] For example: 3500010 (EU default)		

	The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		
004	Rule Set (End)	-	-
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 7 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] The 7th and 8 digits must be set to "00". ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		

5401	**[Access Control]**		
	When installing the SDK application, SAS (VAS) adjusts the following settings. **DFU**		
103	Default Document ACL	*CTL	Whenever a new login user is added to the address book in external certification mode (for Windows, LDAP, RDH), the default document ACL is updated according to this SP setting. [0 to 3 / **0** / 1] 0: View 1: Edit 2: Edit/Delete 3: Full control Note: This SP setting is ignored on a machine that is not using document server.
200	SDK1 Unique ID	*CTL	"SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when installed or uninstalled. **(DFU)**
201	SDK1 Certification Method	*CTL	

210	SDK2 Unique ID	*CTL	
211	SDK2 Certification Method	*CTL	
220	SDK3 Unique ID	*CTL	
221	SDK3 Certification Method	*CTL	
230	SDK certification device		

5404	**[User Code Counter Clear]**		
001	UCodeCtrClr		Clears all counters for users.

5411	**[LDAP Certification]**		
004	Easy Certification	*CTL	Determines whether easy LDAP certification is done. [0 to 1/1/1] 1: On, 0: Off
005	Password Null Not Permit	*CTL	This SP is referenced only when SP5411-4 is set to "1" (On). [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Password NULL not permitted. 1: Password NULL permitted.

5501	**[PM Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	PM Alarm Level	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Alarm off 1 to 9999: Alarm goes off when **Value (1 to 9999) x 1000** ≥ **PM counter**	
002	Original Count Alarm	[0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals	

		passing through the ARDF ≥ 10,000

5413	**[Lockout Setting]**		
001	Lockout On/Off	*CTL	Switches on/off the lock on the local address book account. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: Off, 1: On
002	Lockout Threshold	*CTL	Sets a limit on the frequency of lockouts for account lockouts. [1 to 10 / **5** /1]
003	Cancellation On/Off	*CTL	Determines whether the system waits the prescribed time for input of a correct user ID and password after an account lockout has occurred. [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Off (no wait time, lockout not cancelled) 1: On (system waits, cancels lockout if correct user ID and password are entered.
004	Cancellation Time	*CTL	Determines the length of time that the system waits for correct input of the user ID and password after a lockout has occurred. This setting is used only if SP5413-3 is set to "1" (on). [1 to 999/60/1 min.]

5414	**[Access Mitigation]**		
001	Mitigation On/Off	*CTL	Switches on/off masking of continuously used IDs and passwords that are identical. [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Off 1: On

002	Mitigation Time	*CTL	Sets the length of time for excluding continuous access for identical user IDs and passwords. [0 to 60/15/1 min.]

5415	**[Password Attack]**		
001	Permissible Number	*CTL	Sets the number of attempts to attack the system with random passwords to gain illegal access to the system. [0 to 100/30/1 attempt]
002	Detect Time	*CTL	Sets the time limit to stop a password attack once such an attack has been detected. [1 to 10/5/1 sec.]

5416	**[Access Information]**		
001	Access User Max Number	*CTL	Limits the number of users used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions. [50 to 200/200/1 users]
002	Access Password Max Number	*CTL	Limits the number of passwords used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions. [50 to 200/200/1 passwords]
003	Monitor Interval	*CTL	Sets the processing time interval for referencing user ID and password information. [1 to 10/3/1 sec.]

5417	**[Access Attack]**		
001	Access Permissible	*CTL	Sets a limit on access attempts when an

	Number		excessive number of attempts are detected for MFP features. [0 to 500/100/1]
002	Attack Detect Time	*CTL	Sets the length of time for monitoring the frequency of access to MFP features. [10 to 30/10/1 sec.]
003	Productivity Fall Waite	*CTL	Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [0 to 9/3/1 sec.]
004	Attack Max Number	*CTL	Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [50 to 200/200/1 attempt]

5420	**[User Authentication]**		
	These settings should be done with the System Administrator. **Note**: These functions are enabled only after the user access feature has been enabled.		
001	Copy	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the copy applications. [0 to 1 / **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
011	Document Server	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the document server. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off

021	Fax	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the fax application. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
031	Scanner	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the scan applications. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
041	Printer	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer applications. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
051	SDK1	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: ON. 1: OFF Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the SDK application.
061	SDK2		
071	SDK3		

5481	**[Authentication Error Code]**		
	These SP codes determine how the authentication failures are displayed.		
001	System Log Disp	*CTL	Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: Off 1: On
002	Panel Disp	*CTL	Determines whether an error code appears on the operation panel after a user

			authentication failure occurs. [0 to 1/ **1** /1] 1: On 0: Off

5490	**[MF Key Card (Japan only)]**		
001	-	*CTL	Sets up operation of the machine with a keycard. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Disabled. Cancels operation without a user code. 1: Enabled. Allows operation without a user code.

5504	**[Jam Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0 to 3 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (2.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams)		

5505	**[Error Alarm]**		
	Sets the error alarm level. The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when an SC is not detected during a set number of copied sheets (for example, default 1500 sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5".		
001	-	*CTL	[0 to 255 / **C2c: 50, C2d: 100** / 100 copies /step]

5507	**[Supply Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Paper Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
002	Staple Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **Japan only**	
003	Toner Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
080	Toner Call Timing	Changes the timing of the “Toner Supply Call” via the NRS, when the following conditions occur. 0: Toner is replaced 1: Toner near end or End	
128	Interval :Others	[250 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 /step] **DFU**	
132	Interval :A3		
133	Interval :A4		
134	Interval :A5		
141	Interval :B4		
142	Interval :B5		
160	Interval :DLT		
164	Interval :LG		
166	Interval :LT		
172	Interval :HLT		

5508*	**[CC Call]**	*CTL	-
001*	Jam Remains	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for an unattended paper jam.		
002*	Continuous Jams	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for consecutive paper jams.		
003*	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	

	Enables/disables initiating a call when the front door remains open.	
011*	Jam Detection: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 minute /step]
	Sets the time a jam must remain before it becomes an “unattended paper jam”. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".	
012*	Jam Detection: Continuous Count	[2 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of consecutive paper jams required to initiate a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".	
013*	Door Open: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of time the door remains open before the machine initiates a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5-508-004 is set to "1".	

5515	**[SC/Alarm Setting]**	*CTL	-
	With NRS (New Remote Service) in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.		
001	SC Call		[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On
002	Service Parts Near End Call		
003	Service Parts End Call		
004	User Call		
006	Communication Test Call		[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On
007	Machine Information Notice		
008	Alarm Notice		
009	Non Genuine Toner Alarm		
010	Supply Automatic Ordering Call		

011	Supply Management Report Call	
012	Jam/Door Open Call	

5516	**[Individual PM Part Alarm Call]**	*CTL	-
001	Disable/ Enable Setting	Enables or disables the PM part alarm call. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Send, 1: Send	

5610	**[Base Gamma Control Point: Command]**		
004	Factory Setting	-	-
	Recalls the factory settings.		
005	Restore	-	-
	Overwrites the current values onto the factory settings.		
006	Restore	-	-
	Recalls the previous settings.		

5611	**[Toner Color in 2C]**		
001	B-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
002	B-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
003	G-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density

	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
004	G-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
005	R-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
006	R-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		

5618	**[Color Mode Display Selection]**		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: ACS, Colour, Black & White, Two Colour, Single colour 1: ACD, Full Colour, Black & White
	Selects the color selection display on the LCD.		

Note

- Memory Clear (SP5-801)
- The following tables list the items that are cleared. The serial number information, meter charge setting and meter charge counters (SP8-581, 582, 583, 584, and 586) are not cleared.

5801	**[Memory Clear]**	
001	All Clear	Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their default values.
002	ENG All	Clears the engine settings.

System Service Mode

003	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.
006	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
007	Fax application	Initializes the fax reset time, job login ID, all TX/RX settings, local storage file numbers, and off-hook timer.
008	Printer application	The following service settings: ▪ Bit switches ▪ Gamma settings (User & Service) ▪ Toner Limit The following user settings: ▪ Tray Priority ▪ Menu Protect ▪ System Setting except for setting of Energy Saver ▪ I/F Setup (I/O Buffer and I/O Timeout) ▪ PCL Menu
009	Scanner application	Initializes the scanner defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP modes.
010	Netfile application	Deletes the network file application management files and thumbnails, and initializes the job login ID.
011	NCS	All setting of Network Setup (User Menu) (NCS: Network Control Service)
012	R-Fax	Initializes the job login ID, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, job history, and local storage file numbers.
014	Clear DCS Settings	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
015	Clear UCS Settings	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.

016	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
017	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.
018	SRM Memory Check	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.
020	Web Uapli	Initializes the web user application settings.
021	ECS	Initializes the ECS settings.

5802	**[Free Run]** Performs a free run on the copier engine. Note ▪ The machine starts free run in the same condition as the sequence of A4/LT, A3 or A4 SEF printing from the 1st or 2nd tray. Therefore, the correct paper should be loaded in the 1st tray or 2nd tray, but paper is not fed. ▪ The main switch has to be turned off and on after using the free run mode for a test.		
001	TRAY1: A4LEF: FC	-	-
002	TRAY2: A3: FC	-	
003	TRAY2: A4SEF: FC	-	

5803	**[Input Check]**	-	See "Input Check Table" in this section.
5804	**[Output Check]**	-	See "Output Check Table" in this section.

5805	**[Anti-Condensation Heater]**		
002	0:OFF / 1:ON	*ENG	-

5810	**[SC Reset]**		
	Resets a type A service call condition. Note ▪ Turn the main switch off and on after resetting the SC code.		
001	Fusing SC Reset	-	-

5811	**[Machine Serial]** Machine Serial Number Display		
001	Set	*ENG	Sets the machine serial number.
002	Display		Displays the machine serial number.
004	Set:BICU		Same as SP5-811-001

5812	**[Service Tel. No. Setting]**		
001	Service	*CTL	-
	Sets the telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List, which can be printed with the user's "Counter" menu. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
002	Facsimile	*CTL	-
	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
003	Supply	*CTL	-
	Use this to input the telephone number of your supplier for consumables. Enter the number and press #.		
004	Operation	*CTL	-

	Use this to input the telephone number of your sales agency. Enter the number and press #.

5816	**[Remote Service]**	*CTL	**-**
001	I/F Setting		
	Selects the remote service setting. [0 to 2 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: Remote service off 1: CSS remote service on 2: NRS remote service on		
002	CE Call		
	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Start of the service 1: End of the service **NOTE:** This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to “2”.		
003	Function Flag		
	Enables or disables the remote service function. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled		
006	Device Information Call Display Setting		
	Displays or does not display the device information call content. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed		
007	SSL Disable		
	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Uses the RCG certification		

	1: Does no use the RCG certification	
008	RCG Connect Timeout	
	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 90 / **10** / 1 second /step]	
009	RCG Write Timeout	
	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]	
010	RCG Read Timeout	
	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]	
011	Port 80 Enable	-
	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	
021	RCG – C Registed	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation end flag. 0: Installation not completed 1: Installation completed	
022	RCG – C Registed Detail	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation status. 0: Basil not registered 1: Basil registered 2: Device registered	
023	Connect Type (N/M)	
	This SP displays and selects the Cumin connection method. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step 0: Internet connection	

	1: Dial-up connection	
061	Cert. Expire Timing **DFU**	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.
062	Use Proxy	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.
063	Proxy Host	
	This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored. ▪ This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
064	Proxy Port Number	
	This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
065	Proxy User Name	
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name. Note ▪ The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
066	Proxy Password	

	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password. Note ▪ The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
067	CERT: Up State	
	Displays the status of the certification update.	
	0	The certification used by Cumin is set correctly.
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.
	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being

		notified of the failure of this event.
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.
068	CERT: Error	
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.	
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.
	1	Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.
	2	An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.
	4	Notification of a common certification without ID2.
	5	Notification that no certification was issued.
	6	Notification that GW URL does not exist.
069	CERT: Up ID	The ID of the request for certification.
083	Firmware Up Status	Displays the status of the firmware update.
084	Non-HDD Firm Up	This setting determines if the firmware can be updated, even without the HDD installed. 0: Not allowed update 1: Allowed update
085	Firm Up User Check	This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before

		the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.
086	Firmware Size	Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.
087	CERT: Macro Version	Displays the macro version of the NRS certification.
088	CERT: PAC Version	Displays the PAC version of the NRS certification.
089	CERT: ID2 Code	Displays ID2 for the NRS certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes () indicate that no NRS certification exists.
090	CERT: Subject	Displays the common name of the NRS certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
091	CERT: Serial Number	Displays serial number for the NRS certification. Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
092	CERT: Issuer	Displays the common name of the issuer of the NRS certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes () indicate that no DESS exists.
093	CERT: Valid Start	Displays the start time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
094	CERT: Valid End	Displays the end time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
150	Selection Country	
	Select from the list the name of the country where Cumin-M is installed in the machine. After selecting the country, you must also set the following SP codes for Cumin-M:	

	▪ SP5816-153 ▪ SP5816-154 ▪ SP5816-161 0: Japan, 1: USA, 2: Canada, 3: UK, 4: Germany, 5: France, 6: Italy, 7: Netherlands, 8: Belgium, 9: Luxembourg, 10: Spain
151	Line Type Authentication Judgment
	Touch [Execute]. Setting this SP classifies the telephone line where Cumin-M is connected as either dial-up or push type, so Cumin-M can automatically distinguish the number that connects to the outside line. ▪ The current progress, success, or failure of this execution can be displayed with SP5816-152. ▪ If the execution succeeded, SP5816-153 will display the result for confirmation and SP5816-154 will display the telephone number for the connection to the outside line.
152	Line Type Judgment Result
	Displays a number to show the result of the execution of SP5816 151. Here is a list of what the numbers mean. 0: Success 1: In progress (no result yet). Please wait. 2: Line abnormal 3: Cannot detect dial tone automatically 4: Line is disconnected 5: Insufficient electrical power supply 6: Line classification not supported 7: Error because fax transmission in progress – ioctl() occurred. 8: Other error occurred 9: Line classification still in progress. Please wait.
153	Selection Dial/Push
	This SP displays the classification (tone or pulse) of the telephone line to the access point for Cumin-M. The numbered displayed (0 or 1) is the result of the execution of SP5816 151. However, this setting can also be changed

	manually. [0 to 1/ **0** / 1 /step] 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone Inside Japan "2" may also be displayed: 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone 10PPS 2: Pulse Dialing Phone 20PPS
154	Outside Line/Outgoing Number
	The SP sets the number that switches to PSTN for the outside connection for Cumin-M in a system that employs a PBX (internal line). ▪ If the execution of SP5816 151 has succeeded and Cumin-M has connected to the **external** line, this SP display is completely blank. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an **internal** line, then the number of the connection to the external line is displayed. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an external line, a comma is displayed with the number. The comma is inserted for a 2 sec. pause. ▪ The number setting for the external line can be entered manually (including commas).
156	Dial Up User Name
	Use this SP to set a user name for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
157	Dial Up Password
	Use this SP to set a password for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
161	Local Phone Number

	Use this SP to set the telephone number of the line where Cumin-M is connected. This number is transmitted to and used by the Call Center to return calls. Limit: 24 numbers (numbers only)	
162	Connection Timing Adjustment: Incoming	
	When the Call Center calls out to a Cumin-M modem, it sends a repeating ID tone (*#1#). This SP sets the line remains open to send these ID tones after the number of the Cumin-M modem is dialed up and connected. [0 to 24 / **1** / 1 /step] The actual amount of time is this setting x 2 sec. For example, if you set "2" the line will remain open for 4 sec.	
163	Access Point	
	This is the number of the dial-up access point for Cumin-M. If no setting is done for this SP code, then a preset value (determined by the country selected) is used. Default: 0 Allowed: Up to 16 alphanumeric characters	
164	Line Connecting	
	This SP sets the connection conditions for the customer. This setting dedicates the line to Cumin-M only, or sets the line for sharing between Cumin-M and a fax unit. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Sharing Fax 1: No Sharing Fax Note ▪ If this setting is changed, the copier must be cycled off and on. ▪ SP5816 187 determines whether the off-hook button can be used to interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction.	
173	Modem Serial Number	This SP displays the serial number registered for the Cumin-M.

174	Retransmission Limit		
	Normally, it is best to allow unlimited time for certification and ID2 update requests, and for the notification that the certification has been completed. However, Cumin-M generates charges based on transmission time for the customer, so a limit is placed upon the time allowed for these transactions. If these transactions cannot be completed within the allowed time, do this SP to cancel the time restriction.		
187	FAX TX Priority	-	
	This SP determines whether pushing the off-hook button will interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. This SP can be used only if SP5816 164 is set to "0". [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable		
200	Manual Polling	-	Executes the manual polling.
201	Regist: Status		
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the NRS service device. 0: Neither the NRS device nor Cumin device are set. 1: The Cumin device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 2: The Cumin device is set. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 3: The NRS device is being set. In this status the Cumin device cannot be set. 4: The NRS module has not started.		
202	Letter Number	Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the Cumin device.	
203	Confirm Execute	Executes the inquiry request to the NRS GW URL.	
204	Confirm Result		
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816 203. 0: Succeeded		

	1: Inquiry number error 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Inquiry executing	
205	Confirm Place	
	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL.	
206	Register Execute	Executes Cumin Registration.
207	Register Result	
	Displays a number that indicates the registration result. 0: Succeeded 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Registration executing	
208	Error Code	
	Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816-204 or SP5816-207 was executed.	

Cause	**Code**	**Meaning**
Illegal Modem	-11001	Chat parameter error

	Parameter	-11002	Chat execution error
		-11003	Unexpected error
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.
		-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.
		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.
	Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.
		-2387	Not supported at the Service Center
		-2389	Database out of service
		-2390	Program out of service
		-2391	Two registrations for same device
		-2392	Parameter error
		-2393	Basil not managed
		-2394	Device not managed
		-2395	Box ID for Basil is illegal
		-2396	Device ID for Basil is illegal
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format
		-2398	Incorrect request number format
209	@Remote Setting Clear	Releases the machine from its Cumin setup.	
250	CommLog Print	Prints the communication log.	

5821	**[Remote Service Address]**		
002	RCG IP Address	*CTL	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center.

5824	**[NV-RAM Data Upload]**		
	Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from the NVRAM to an SD card. For details, see the "NVRAM Data Upload/Download" in this section.		
001	NV-RAM Data Upload	#	-

5825	**[NV-RAM Data Download]**		
	Downloads the UP and SP mode data from an SD card to the NVRAM. For details, see the "NVRAM Data Upload/Download" in this section.		
001	NV-RAM Download	#	-

5828	**[Network Setting]**	*CTL	**-**
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables or disables 1284 Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
052	ECP (Centro)	Enables or disables ECP Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SP5-828-50 is set to "1".	
065	Job Spooling	Enables/disables Job Spooling. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 / step]	

		0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time	Treatment of the job when a spooled job exists at power on. 0: ON (Data is cleared) **1**: OFF (Automatically printed)
069	Job Spooling (Protocol)	Validates or invalidates the job spooling function for each protocol. **0**: Validates 1: Invalidates bit0: LPR bit1: FTP bit2: IPP bit3: SMB bit4: BMLinkS bit5: DIPRINT bit6: sftp bit7: (Reserved)
090	TELNET (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Telnet protocol. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
091	Web (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Web operation. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
145	Active IPv6 Link Local Address	This is the IPv6 local address link referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Link Local Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
147	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 1	These SPs are the IPv6 status addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Status Address" + "Prefix Length"
149	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 2	

151	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 3	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
153	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 4	
155	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5	
156	IPv6 Manual Address	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
158	IPv6 Gateway Address	This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
160	Action Mode (IPv6)	
161	IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting	Enables or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
236	Web Item visible	Displays or does not display the Web system items. [0 x 0000 to 0 x ffff / **0 x ffff**] 0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed bit0: Net RICOH bit1: Consumable Supplier bit2-15: Reserved (all)
237	Web shopping link visible	Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display

238	Web supplies Link visible	Displays or does not display the link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display
239	Web Link1 Name	This SP confirms or changes the URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL name are 31 characters.
240	Web URL	This SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters.
241	Web visible	Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display
242	Web Link2 Name	Same as "-239"
243	Web Link2 URL	Same as "-240"
244	Web Link2 visible	Same as "-241"

5832	**[HDD]** HDD Initialization	*CTL	**-**
001	HDD Formatting (ALL)	Initializes the hard disk. Use this SP mode only if there is a hard disk error.	
002	HDD Formatting (IMH)		
003	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)		
004	HDD Formatting (Job Log)		
005	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)		
006	HDD Formatting (User Info)		
007	Mail RX Data		

008	Mail TX Data	
009	HDD Formatting (Data for a Design)	
010	HDD Formatting (Log)	
011	HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F)	

5836	**[Capture Settings]**	*CTL	-	
001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)		**0**: Disable, 1: Enable	
	With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, or selected.			
002	Panel Setting		**0**: Displayed, 1: Not displayed	
	Displays or does not display the capture function buttons.			
	5836-71 to 5836-78, Copier and Printer Document Reduction The following 6 SP modes set the default reduction for stored documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.			
071	Reduction for Copy Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
072	Reduction for Copy B&W Text		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
073	Reduction for Copy B&W Other		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
074	Reduction for Printer Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
075	Reduction for Printer B&W		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
076	Reduction for Printer B&W HQ		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
077	Reduction for Printer Color 1200		1: 1/2, 3: 1/4, **4: 1/6**, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	
078	Reduction for Printer B&W 1200		**1: 1/2**, 3: 1/4, 4: 1/6, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	
	5836-81 to 5836-86, Stored document format The following 6 SP modes set Sets the default format for stored documents			

	sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.		
081	Format for Copy Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.	
082	Format for Copy B&W Text	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
083	Format Copy B&W Other	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
084	Format for Printer Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.	
085	Format for Printer B&W	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
086	Format for Printer B&W HQ	0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, **2: TIFF/MH**, 3: TIFF/MR	
091	Default for JPEG	[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to the document management server via the MLB with JPEG selected as the format. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.		
101	Primary srv IP address	Sets the IP address for the primary capture server. This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
102	Primary srv scheme	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
103	Primary srv port number	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	

104	Primary srv URL path	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
111	Secondary srv IP address	Sets the IP address for the secondary capture server. This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
112	Secondary srv scheme	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
113	Secondary srv port number	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
114	Secondary srv URL path	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
120	Default Reso Rate Switch	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
121	Reso: Copy (Color)	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for color copy mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 300dpi/ 2: 150dpi/ 3: 75dpi		
122	Reso: Copy (Mono)	[0 to 5 / **3** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for BW copy mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 400dpi/ 2: 300dpi/ 3: 200dpi/ 4: 150dpi/ 5: 100dpi		
123	Reso: Print (Color)	This is basically adjusted by the remote system. [0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for color print mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 300dpi/ 2: 150dpi/ 3: 75dpi		
124	Reso: Print (Color)	This is basically adjusted by the remote system. [0 to 5 / **3** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for BW print mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 400dpi/ 2: 300dpi/ 3: 200dpi/ 4: 150dpi/ 5: 100dpi		

5839	**[IEEE1394]**	*CTL	-
007	Cycle Master	Turns the cycle master function on/off. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: OFF 1: ON	
008	BCR mode	Selects either ‘Standard’, 'IRM Color Copy', or **'Always Effective'.**	
009	IRM 1394a Check	Turns the IRM 1394a check on/off. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON If the IRM is not defined as 1394a standard, its node is used as IRM.	
010	Unique ID	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON	
011	Logout	Prevents initiators from logging on or makes initiators log off. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (Prevents the initiators, having already logged on, to log on if they try to log on.) 1: ON (Makes initiators, having already logged on, to log off if they try to log on.)	
012	Login	Allows/disallows an initiator to exclusively log on. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF (Disallows) 1: ON (Allows)	
013	Login MAX	Specifies the maximum initiators able to log on. [0 to 63 / **8** / 1 /step]	

5840	**[IEEE 802.11b]**		
006	Channel Max	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **11 or 13** / 1 /step] Europe/Asia: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the maximum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the maximum end of the range for each area. Adjust the upper 4 bits to set the maximum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
007	Channel Min	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **1** / 1 /step] Europe: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the minimum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the minimum end of the range for each area. Adjust the lower 4 bits to set the minimum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
008	Transmission Speed	*CTL	0 x 00 to 0 x FF / **0 x FF to Auto** / -] **0 x FF to Auto** [Default] 0 x 11 - 55M Fix 0 x 10 - 48M Fix 0 x 0F - 36M Fix 0 x 0E - 18M Fix 0 x 0D - 12M Fix 0 x 0B - 9M Fix 0 x 0A - 6M Fix 0 x 07 - 11M Fix 0 x 05 - 5.5M Fix 0 x 08 - 1M Fix 0 x 13 - 0 x FE (reserved) 0 x 12 - 72M (reserved)

			0 x 09 - 22M (reserved)
011	WEP key Select	*CTL	Selects the WEP key. [00 to 11 / **00** / 1 binary] 00: Key #1 01: Key #2 (Reserved) 10: Key #3 (Reserved) 11: Key #4 (Reserved)
042	Fragment Thresh	*CTL	Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card. [256 to 2346 / **2346** / 1] This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
043	1g CTS to Self	*CTL	Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Off, 1: On This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
044	11g Slot Time	*CTL	Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: 20 μm, 1: 9 μm
045	WPA Debug Lvl	*CTL	Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application. [1 to 3 / **3** / 1] 1: Info, 2: warning, 3: error This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.

5841	**[Supply Name Setting]**		
001	Toner Name Setting: Black	*CTL	Specifies supply names. These appear on the screen when the user presses the Inquiry button in the user tools screen.
002	Toner Name Setting: Cyan		
003	Toner Name Setting: Yellow		
004	Toner Name Setting: Magenta		

007	OrgStamp		
011	Staple Std1		
012	Staple Std2		
013	Staple Std3		
021	Staple Bind 1		

5842	**[GWWS Analysis Mode] DFU**		
001	Setting 1	*CTL	Default: **00000000** – do not change Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
002	Setting 2	*CTL	Adjusts the debug program modesetting. Bit7: 5682 mmseg-log setting 0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second 1: Minute/Second/Msec. 0 to 6: Not used

5844	**[USB]**		
001	Transfer Rate	*CTL	0x01: Full speed **0x04: Auto Change**
	Adjusts the USB transfer rate.		
002	Vendor ID	*CTL	Displays the vendor ID. **DFU**
003	Product ID	*CTL	Displays the product ID. **DFU**
004	Device Release Number	*CTL	Displays the development release version number. **DFU**

5845	**[Delivery Server Setting]**	*CTL	-

	Provides items for delivery server settings.		
001	FTP Port No.	[0 to 65535 / **3670** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server.		
002	IP Address (Primary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting.		
006	Delivery Error Display Time	[0 to 999 / **300** / 1 second /step]	
	Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.		
008	IP Address (Secondary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Specifies the IP address assigned to the computer designated to function as the secondary delivery server of Scan Router. This SP allows only the setting of the IP address without reference to the DNS setting.		
009	Delivery Server Model	[0 to 4/ **0** / 1 /step]	
	Allows changing the model of the delivery server registered by the I/O device. 0: Unknown 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package		
010	Delivery Svr Capability	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]	
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exits		Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible		
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible		
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists		
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists		

	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists	registered.
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists	
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to “0”)	
011	Delivery Svr Capability (Ext)	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device registered.	
	Bit7 = 1 Address book usage limitation (Limitation for each authorized user) Bit6 = 1 RDH authorization link Bit5 to 0: Not used	
013	Server Scheme (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
014	Server Port Number (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
015	Server URL Path (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
016	Server Scheme (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
017	Server Port Number (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
018	Server URL Path (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
019	Capture Server Scheme **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
020	Capture Server Port Number **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	

021	Capture Server URL Path **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
022	Rapid Sending Control
	Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending error. [0 to 1 / **0** / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5846	**[UCS Settings]**	*CTL	-
001	Machine ID (For Delivery Server)		Displays ID
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary.		
002	Machine ID Clear (For Delivery Server)		Clears ID
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.		
003	Maximum Entries	[2000 to 20000/ **2000** /1 /step]	
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.		
006	Delivery Server Retry Timer		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
007	Delivery Server Retry Times		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire		

	the delivery server address book.	
008	Delivery Server Maximum Entries	[2000 to 50000 / **2000** / 1/step]
	Sets the maximum number account entries of the delivery server user information managed by UCS.	
010	LDAP Search Timeout	[1 to 255 / **60** / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of the timeout for the search of the LDAP server.	
040	Addr Book Migration (SD => HDD)	
	Not used in this machine.	
041	Fill Addr Acl Info.	
	This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. Procedure 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the new HDD. 3. Turn the machine on. 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. 5. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator. 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846-041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book.	
043	Addr Book Media	Displays the slot number where an address book data is in. [0 to 30 / **-** /1] 0: Unconfirmed 1: SD Slot 1

		2: SD Slot 2 4: USB Flash ROM 20: HDD 30: Nothing
047	Initialize Local Addr Book	Clears the local address book information, including the user code.
048	Initialize Delivery Addr Book	Clears the distribution address book information, except the user code.
049	Initialize LDAP Addr Book	Clears the LDAP address book information, except the user code.
050	Initialize All Addr Book	Clears all directory information managed by UCS, including all user codes.
051	Backup All Addr Book	Uploads all directory information to the SD card.
052	Restore All Addr Book	Downloads all directory information from the SD card.
053	Clear Backup Info	Deletes the address book data from the SD card in the service slot. Deletes only the files that were uploaded from this machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected. Note ▪ After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, and then turn the power off. ▪ Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
060	Search Option	
	This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. Bit: Meaning 0: Checks both upper/lower case characters	

	1: Japan Only 2: Japan Only 3: Japan Only 4 to 7: Not Used	
062	Complexity Option 1 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to **upper case** and sets the length of the password. [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 /step] Note ▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment. ▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.	
063	Complexity Option 2 **DFU**	
064	Complexity Option 3 **DFU**	
065	Complexity Option 4 **DFU**	
091	FTP Auth Port Setting	Specifies the FTP port for getting a distribution server address book that is used in the identification mode. [0 to 65535 / **3671** / 1 /step]
094	Encryption Stat	Shows the status of the encryption function for the address book data.

5847	**[Rep Resolution Reduction]**	*CTL	-
	SP5847-1 through SP5847-8 changes the default settings of image data transferred externally by the Net File page reference function. [0 to 5 / **2** / 1 /step] SP5847-21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files handled by NetFile. “Net files” are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software.		

001	Rate for Copy Color	0: 1x 1: 1/2x **2: 1/3x** 3: 1/4x 4: 1/6x 5: 1/8x
002	Rate for Copy B&W Text	
003	Rate for Copy B&W Other	
004	Rate for Printer Color	
005	Rate for Printer B&W	
021	Network Quality Default for JPEG	
	Sets the default value for the quality of JPEG images sent as NetFile pages. This function is available only with the MLB (Media Link Board) option installed. [5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]	

5848	**[Web Service]**	*CTL	-
	5848 2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. 5848 100 sets the maximum size allowed for downloaded images. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte.		
002	Access Ctrl: Repository (only Lower 4 bits)	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. **0010**: No writing control	
003	Access Control: Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 bits)	Switches access control on and off. **0000**: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.	
004	Access Control: User Directory (only Lower 4 bits)		
007	Access Ctrl: Comm. Log Fax (Lower 4 bits)		
009	Access Ctrl: Job Ctrl (Lower 4 bits)		
011	Access Ctrl: Device		

	management (Lower 4 bits)	
021	Access Ctrl: Delivery (Lower 4 bits)	
022	Access Ctrl: uAdministration (Lower 4bits)	
100	Repository: Download Image Max. Size	Specifies the max size of the image data that the machine can download. [1 to 1024 / **1024** / 1 MB /step]
210	Setting: LogType: Job1	NIA
211	Setting: LogType: Job2	
212	Setting: LogType: Access	
213	Setting: Primary Srv	
214	Setting: Secondary Srv	
215	Setting: Start Time	
216	Setting: Interval Time	
217	Setting: Timing	

5849	**[Installation Date]**	*CTL	-
5849 1	Display	The “Counter Clear Day” has been changed to “Installation Date” or “Inst. Date”.	
5849 2	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (No Print) 1: ON (Print)	
003	Total Counter	-	

5850	**[Address Book Function]**	*CTL	-
003	Replacement of Circuit Classification **Japan Only**		
	The machine is sold ready to use with a G3 line. This SP allows you to switch all at once to convert to G4 after you add a G4 line. Conversely, if for some reason the G4 line becomes unusable, you can easily switch back to G3.		

5851	**[Bluetooth Mode]**
	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key. [0:Public] [1: Private]

5853	**[Stamp Data Download]**
	Use this SP to download the fixed stamp data stored in the firmware of the ROM and copy it to the HDD. This SP can be executed as many times as required. This SP must be executed after replacing or formatting the hard disks. Note ▪ This SP can be executed only with the hard disks installed.

5856	**[Remote ROM Update]**		
	Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a local port (IEEE1284) when updating the remote ROM.		
002	Local Port	*CTL	[0 to 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5857	**[Save Debug Log]**	*CTL	-
001	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)	**0**: OFF, 1: ON	
	Switches the debug log feature on and off. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.		

002	Target (2: HDD 3: SD)	**2**: HDD, 3: SD Card
	Selects the storage device to save debug logs information when the conditions set with SP5-858 are satisfied. [2 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step]	
005	Save to HDD	
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the HDD. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.	
006	Save to SD Card	
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the SD card.	
009	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)	
010	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB Any Key)	
011	Erase HDD Debug Data	
012	Erase SD Card Debug Data	
013	Free Space on SD Card	
014	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB)	
015	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB Any Key)	
016	Make HDD Debug	
017	Make SD Debug	

5858	**[Debug Save When]**	*CTL	-
	These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-002. SP5858-3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes.		

001	Engine SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by copier engine errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Controller SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by GW controller errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
003	Any SC Error	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 /step]
004	Jam	Turns on/off the debug save for jam errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5859	**[Debug Save Key No.]**	*CTL	**-**
001	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. [–9999999 to 9999999 / **0** / –]	
002	Key 2		
003	Key 3		
004	Key 4		
005	Key 5		
006	Key 6		
007	Key 7		
008	Key 8		
009	Key 9		
010	Key 10		

5860	**[SMTP/POP3/IMAP4]**	*CTL	**-**
020	Partial Mail Receive Timeout		[1 to 168 / **72** / –]

	Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.	
021	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance	[0 to 1 / **1** / –]
	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. 0: No **1**: Yes	
022	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement	[0 to 1 / **0** / –]
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. **0**: No. “From” item not switched. 1: Yes. “From item switched.	
025	SMTP Auth. Direct Setting	[0 or 1 / **0** / –]
	Selects the authentication method for SMPT. **Bit switch:** • Bit 0: LOGIN • Bit 1: PLAIN • Bit 2: CRAM MD5 • Bit 3: DIGEST MD5 • Bit 4 to 7: Not used Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SMTP authorization is enabled by UP mode.	

026	S/MIVE: MIME Header Setting	-	Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME. [0 to 2 / **0** / 1] 0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard 1: Internet Draft standard 2: RFC standard

5866	**[E-mail Alert] Not Used**

005	Add Date Field	*CTL	Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Not added, 1: Added

5870	**[Common Key Info Writing]**		
001	Writing	*CTL	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications.

5873	**[SD Card Appli Move]**	
001	Move Exec	This SP copies the application programs from the original SD card in SD card slot 2 to an SD card in SD card slot 1.
002	Undo Exec	This SP copies back the application programs from an SD card in SD Card Slot 2 to the original SD card in SD card slot 1. Use this menu when you have mistakenly copied some programs by using "Move Exec" (SP5873-1).

5875	**[SC Auto Reboot]**		
001	Reboot Setting	*CTL	Enables or disables the automatic reboot function when an SC error occurs. [0 or 1/ **0** / –] 0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot. 1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs. The reboot is not executed for Type A or C SC codes.
002	Reboot Type	*CTL	Selects the reboot method for SC.

			[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Manual reboot, 1: Automatic reboot

5878	**[Option Setup]**		
001	Option Setup	-	Enables the Data Overwrite Security unit. Press "EXECUTE" on the operation panel. Then turn the machine off and on.
002	HDD Encryption	-	Installs the HDD Encryption unit.

5881	**[Fixed Phrase Block Erasing]**		
001	-	-	Deletes the fixed phrase.

5883	**[Line Speed Selection]**		
	Selects the line speed for middle thick paper.		
001	Middle Thick	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: MID CARD: Half Speed (115 mm/sec) 1: MID CARD: Normal Speed (C2c: 154, C2d: 205 mm/sec)

5885	**[WIM Settings]** Web Image Monitor Settings		
	Close or disclose the functions of web image monitor.		
020	Document Server ACC Ctrl	*CTL	0: OFF, 1: ON Bit Meaning 0: Forbid all document server access (1) 1: Forbid user mode access (1) 2: Forbid print function (1) 3: Forbid fax TX (1) 4: Forbid scan sending (1) 5: Forbid downloading (1)

			6: Forbid delete (1) 7: Reserved
050	DocSvr Format		Selects the display type for the document box list. [0 to 2 / **0** / 1] 0: Thumbnail, 1: Icon, 2: Details
051	DocSvr Trans		Sets the number of documents to be displayed in the document box list. [5 to 20 / **10** / 1]
101	Set Encryption		Determines whether the scanned documents with the WIM are encrypted when they are transmitted by an e-mail. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Not encrypted, 1:Encryption

5886	**[Permit ROM Updating] DFU**		
	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: ON, 1: OFF

5887	**[**SD Get Counter**]**		
	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.		
001	-	*CTL	This SP sends a text file to an SD card inserted in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot). The operation stores. The file is stored in a folder created in the root directory of the SD card called SD_COUNTER. The file is saved as a text file (*.txt) prefixed with the number of the machine. 1. Insert the SD card in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot).

			2. Select SP5887 then touch [EXECUTE]. Touch [Execute] in the message when you are prompted.

5888	**[Personal Information Protect]**		
001	-	*CTL	Selects the protection level for logs. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1} 0: No authentication, No protection for logs 1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs)

5894	**[External Charge Unit Setting]**		
	-		
001	Switch Charge Mode	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step]

5907	**[Plug & Play Maker/Model Name]**
	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again. After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.

5913	**[Switchover Permission Time]**		
002	Print Application Timer	*CTL	[3 to 30 / **3** / 1 second /step]
	Sets the amount of time to elapse while the machine is in standby mode (and the operation panel keys have not been used) before another application can gain control of the display.		

5967	**[Copy Server Set Function]**	*CTL	**0**: ON, 1: OFF
	Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.		

5974	**[Cherry Server]**		
	Specifies which version of ScanRouter, “Lite” or “Full”, is installed.		
001	Cherry Server	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Lite, 1: Full

5985	**[Device Setting]**	
	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".	
001	On Board NIC	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited only for the NRS or LDAP/NT authentication. Note ▪ Other network applications than NRS or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2". Even though you can change the initial settings of those network applications, the settings do not work.
002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5987	**[Mech. Counter]**	
001	0: OFF / 1: ON	This SP detects that a mechanical counter device is removed. If it is detected, SC610 occurs.

5990	**[SP print mode]**		
	Prints out the SMC sheets.		
001	All (Data List)	-	-
002	SP (Mode Data List)	-	
003	User Program	-	
004	Logging Data	-	
005	Diagnostic Report	-	
006	Non-Default	-	
007	NIB Summary	-	
008	Capture Log	-	
021	Copier User Program	-	
022	Scanner SP	-	
023	Scanner User Program	-	

5998	**[Fusing Cont mode]** Fusing Control Mode		
	Turns the silent fusing warm-up mode on or off.		
001	fast/silent	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Silent (less noise) 1: Fast (less time)

SP6-XXX (Peripherals)

6006	**[ADF Adj.]** ADF Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side and leading registration of originals with the ARDF.		
001	Side-to-Side Registration	*ENG	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Side-to-Side Registration (2nd side)		
003	Leading Edge Registration	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle to correct original skew for the front and rear sides.		
005	Buckle: Duplex Front	*ENG	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
006	Buckle: Duplex Rear		[-2.5 to 2.5 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the erase margin at the original trailing edge.		
007	Rear Edge Erase	*ENG	[-10 to 10 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]

6007	**[ADF Input Check]**
	Displays the signals received from the sensors and switches of the ARDF. Only Bit 0 is used for ADF input check (☛ “Input Check Table” in this section).

6008	**[ADF Output Check]**
	Activates the electrical components for functional check. It is not possible to activate more than one component at the same time (☛ “Output Check Table” in this section).

6009	**[ADF Free Run]**
	Performs a DF free run in simplex, duplex mode or stamp mode.

001	Free Run Simplex Motion	-	-
002	Free Run Duplex Motion	-	
003	Free Run Stamp Motion	-	

6010	**[Stamp Position Adj.]** Fax Stamp Position Adjustment		
	Adjusts the horizontal position of the stamp on the scanned originals.		
6010 1	Stamp Position Adj.	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

6016	**[Original Size Detection Priority]** Original Size Detection Priority			
	Specifies the original size for a size detected by the original sensor, since original sensors cannot recognize all sizes.			
001	Original Size Detection Priority	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Setting 1, 1: Setting 2	
		NA	Setting 1	Setting 2
			DLT SEF	Folio SEF 11" x 15"
			LG SEF	Foolscap SEF
			LT SEF	US EXE 8" x 10"
			LT LEF	US EXE LEF
		EU/ ASIA	DLT SEF	8K 267 x 390 mm
			LT SEF	16K 195 x 267 mm
			LT LEF	16K 267 x 195 mm

6017	**[DF Magnification Adj.]** DF Magnification Adjustment		
	Adjusts the magnification in the sub-scan direction for the ARDF.		
001	DF Magnification Adj.	*CTL	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]

6020	[Skew Correction Moving Setting]		
	Turns the original skew correction in the ARDF for all original sizes on or off.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Off (only for small original sizes) 1: On (for all original sizes)

6128	[Punch Position: Sub Scan]		
	Adjusts the punching position in the sub scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-7.5 to 7.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

6129	[Punch Position: Main Scan]		
	Adjusts the punching position in the main scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.4 mm/step]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

6130	[Skew Correction: Buckle Adj.]
	Adjusts the paper buckle for each paper size.

001	A3T	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.25 mm/step]
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	
009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

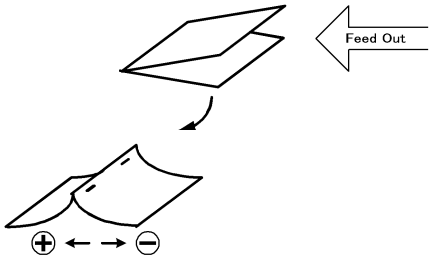
6131	**[Skew Correction Control]**		
	Selects the skew correction control for each paper size. These are only activated for B804/B805.		
001	A3T	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: No (No skew correction) 1: Roller Stop Skew Correction
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	

009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

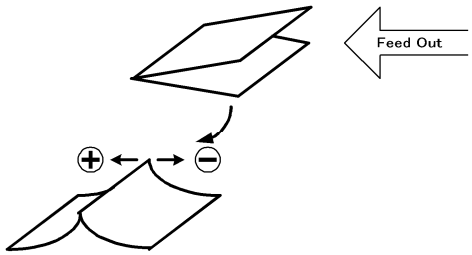
6132	**[Jogger Fence Fine Adj]**		
	This SP adjusts the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray in the (Booklet) Finisher B804/B805. The adjustment is done perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.		
001	A3T	*ENG	[-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step] + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack.
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	
009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

6133	**[Staple Position Adjustment]**
	Adjusts the staple position for each finisher (B408/B804/B805). + Value: Moves the staple position to the rear side.

	- Value: Moves the staple position to the front side.		
001	Finisher (B408/B804/B805)	*ENG	[-3.5 to 3.5 / **0** / 1/step]

6134	**[Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment]**	
	Use this SP to adjust the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3T	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. 
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	B5T	
005	DLT-T	
006	LG-T	
007	LT-T	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

6135	**[Folder Position Adj.]**	
	This SP corrects the folding position when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3T	[-3.0 to 3.0 / 0 / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	B5T	
005	DLT-T	

006	LG-T	
007	LT-T	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

6136	**[Folding Number]**	
	Sets the number of times that folding is done in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	-	[2 to 30 / **2** / 1 time/step]

6137	**[Finisher Free Run] Not used**	
	These SPs are used only for B793 finisher.	
001	Free Run 1	Free run for paper edge stapling.
002	Free Run 2	Free run for booklet stapling.
003	Free Run 3	Shipping free run. Simulates standby conditions during shipping.
004	Free Run 4	**DFU**

6138	**[FIN (TIG) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Input Check
	Not Used in this machine

6139	**[FIN (KIN) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Input Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section)

6140	**[FIN (EUP) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Input Check

	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛"Input Check Table" in this section)

6143	**[FIN (TIG) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Output Check
	Not Used in this machine

6144	**[FIN (KIN) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛"Output Check Table" in this section)

6145	**[FIN (EUP) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛"Output Check Table" in this section)

6147	**[FIN (JAK) OUPUT Check]**
	Not used in this machine.

6148	**[Jogger Fine Adj]**	*ENG	Fine Adjust Output Jogger Unit Fences
001	A3T	This SP corrects the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack when the output jogger unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they exit the finisher. + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. [-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]	
002	B4T		
003	A4T		
004	A4Y		
005	B5Y		
006	A5Y		
007	DLT-T		
008	LG-T		

009	LT-T	
010	LT-Y	
011	HLT-Y	
012	Other	

6149	**[Max. Pre-Stack Sheet]**	*ENG	Number of Pre-Stack Sheets
	This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. **Note**: You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick paper.		
001	-	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1 sheet/step]	

6150	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the bridge unit (D386) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6151	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the brisge unit (D386) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section).

6152	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the shift tray (D388) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6153	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the shift tray (D388) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section).

6154	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the 1 bin tray (D414) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6155	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the 1 bin tray (D414) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section)
001	1 bin: Junction Solenoid

6157	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Not used in this machine

6160	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the two-tray paper feed unit (D351), LCT 2000 (D352) and LCT 1200 (D353) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section)

6161	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the two-tray paper feed unit (D351), LCT 2000 (D352) and LCT 1200 (D353) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section)

SP7-XXX (Data Log)

7401	**[Total SC Counter]**		
	Displays the number of SC codes detected.		
001	SC Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1/step]

7403	**[SC History]**		
	Logs the SC codes detected. The 10 most recently detected SC Codes are not displayed on the screen, but can be seen on the SMC (logging) outputs.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest 1		
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7502	**[Total Paper Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of jams detected.		
001	Total Jam	* CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

7503	**[Total Original Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of original jams.		
001	Original Jam counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 original/step]

7504	**[Paper Jam Location]** ON: On check, OFF: Off Check		
	Displays the number of jams according to the location where jams were detected. **NOTE:** The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
001	At Power On	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
003	Tray 1: ON	*CTL	
004	Tray 2: ON	*CTL	
005	Tray 3: ON	*CTL	
006	Tray 4: ON	*CTL	
008	Bypass: ON	*CTL	
009	Duplex: ON	*CTL	
011	Vertical Transport 1: ON	*CTL	
012	Vertical Transport 2: ON	*CTL	
013	Bank Transport 1	*CTL	
017	Registration: ON	*CTL	
018	Fusing Entrance: ON	*CTL	
019	Fusing Exit: ON	*CTL	
020	Paper Exit: ON	*CTL	
021	Relay Exit: ON	*CTL	
022	Relay Transport: ON	*CTL	

025	Duplex Exit: ON	*CTL	
026	Duplex Reverse: ON	*CTL	
027	Duplex Entrance: ON	*CTL	
028	1 Bin Exit Sensor	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
051	SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
052	SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
053	Bank SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
054	Bank SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
057	Regist Sensor	*CTL	
059	Fusing Exit Sensor	*CTL	
060	Exit Sensor	*CTL	
061	Relay Exit Sensor	*CTL	
062	Relay Sensor	*CTL	
065	Duplex Exit Sensor	*CTL	
066	Duplex Entrance Sensor	*CTL	
068	1-Bin Exit: ON	*CTL	
100	Finisher Entrance: KIN	*CTL	
101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: KIN	*CTL	
102	Finisher Staple: KIN	*CTL	
103	Finisher Exit: KIN	*CTL	
104	Finisher Drive Motor: KIN	*CTL	
105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor: KIN	*CTL	
106	Finisher Jogger Motor: KIN	*CTL	

107	Finisher Shift Motor: KIN	*CTL	
108	Finisher Staple Motor: KIN	*CTL	
109	Finisher Exit Motor: KIN	*CTL	
191	Finisher Entrance: EUP	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP	*CTL	
193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP	*CTL	
194	Finisher Stapler Exit: EUP	*CTL	
195	Finisher Exit: EUP	*CTL	
196	Finisher Staple: EUP	*CTL	
197	Finisher Saddle Stitch Staple: EUP	*CTL	
198	Finisher Folder: EUP	*CTL	
199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP	*CTL	
200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP	*CTL	
201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP	*CTL	
202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP	*CTL	
203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP	*CTL	
204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP	*CTL	
205	Finisher Exit Motor: EUP	*CTL	
206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP	*CTL	
230	Finisher Exit No Response	*CTL	
231	Finisher Communication Error	*CTL	

7505	[Original Jam Detection]		
	Displays the total number of original jams by location.		
001	At Power On	*CTL	-
003	Separation: ON		
004	Skew Correction: ON		
005	Reading Entrance Sensor: ON		
006	Registration: ON		
007	Reading Exit Sensor: ON		
008	Paper Exit: ON		
053	Separation: OFF		
054	Skew Correction: OFF		
055	Reading Entrance Sensor: OFF		
056	Registration: OFF		
057	Reading Exit Sensor: OFF		
058	Paper Exit: OFF		

7506	[Jam Count by Paper Size]		
	Displays the number of jams according to the paper size.		
005	A4 LEF	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
006	A5 LEF		
014	B5 LEF		
038	LT LEF		
044	HLT LEF		
132	A3 SEF		

133	A4 SEF		
134	A5 SEF		
141	B4 SEF		
142	B5 SEF		
160	DLT SEF		
164	LG SEF		
166	LT SEF		
172	HLT SEF		
255	Others		

7507	**[Plotter Jam History]**		
	Displays the 10 most recently detected paper jams.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest 1		
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7508	**[Original Jam History]**

	Displays the 10 most recently detected original jams.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest-1		
003	Latest-2		
004	Latest-3		
005	Latest-4		
006	Latest-5		
007	Latest-6		
008	Latest-7		
009	Latest-8		
010	Latest-9		

7801	**[ROM No]**		
002	Engine	*ENG	-
005	ADF	*ENG	-
007	Finisher	*ENG	-
009	Bank	*ENG	-
019	Bank2	*ENG	-
026	IH Fusing	*ENG	-
7801	**[Firmware Version]**		
102	Engine	*ENG	-
105	ADF	*ENG	-
107	Finisher	*ENG	-
110	LCT	*ENG	-

255	Engine	*CTL	Displays all versions and ROM numbers in SP7-910 and SP7-911.

7803	**[PM Counter Display]** (Page, Unit, [Color])		
	Displays the number of sheets printed for each current maintenance unit. PM counters click up based on the number of A4 (LT) LEF size sheets printed. Therefore, the A3 (DLT) Double Count is activated. The Double Count cannot be deactivated. When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-1 to 10) and is reset to “0”. The total number of sheets printed with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-1 to 10. NOTE: The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
002	Page: PCU: Bk	-	-
003	Page: PCU: M		
004	Page: PCU: C		
005	Page: PCU: Y		
006	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
007	Page: Development Unit: M		
008	Page: Development Unit: C		
009	Page: Development Unit: Y		
010	Page: Developer: Bk		
011	Page: Developer: M		
012	Page: Developer: C		
013	Page: Developer: Y		

014	Page: Image Transfer		
015	Page: Cleaning Unit		
016	Page: Fusing Unit		
017	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
018	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions of motors or clutches for each current maintenance unit. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 revolution/step] When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-11 to 20) and is reset to “0”. The total number of revolutions made with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-11 to 20.		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 999999999 / - / 1 mm/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		

044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current revolution ÷ Target revolution) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Rotation% counter is based on rotations, not prints. If the number of rotations reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the print count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the R% counter is still less than 100%.		
061	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
062	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
063	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
064	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
065	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
066	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
067	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
068	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Y		
069	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
070	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
071	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
072	Rotation (%): Developer: Y		
073	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
074	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		

075	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
076	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		
077	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current printouts ÷ Target printouts) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Page% counter is based on printouts, not revolutions. If the number of printouts reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the revolution count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the Page% counter is still less than 100%.		
091	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
092	Page (%): PCU: M		
093	Page (%): PCU: C		
094	Page (%): PCU: Y		
095	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
100	Page (%): Developer: M		
101	Page (%): Developer: C		
102	Page (%): Developer: Y		
103	Page (%): Image Transfer		
104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		

106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7804	**[PM Counter Reset]** PM Counter Clear (Unit, [Color])		
	Clears the PM counter. Press the Enter key after the machine asks “Execute?”, which will store the PM counter value in SP7-906 (PM Counter - Previous) and reset the value of the current PM counter (SP7-803) to “0”.		
002	PCU: K		
003	PCU: M		
004	PCU: C		
005	PCU: Y		
006	PCU: All		
007	Development Unit: Bk		
008	Development Unit: M		
009	Development Unit: C		
010	Development Unit: Y		
011	Development Unit: All		
012	Developer: Bk		
013	Developer: M		
014	Developer: C		
015	Developer: Y		
016	Developer: All		
017	Image Transfer Belt		
018	Cleaning Unit		

019	Fusing Unit		
020	Paper Transfer Unit		
021	Toner Collection Bottle		
0100	All		

7807	**[SC/Jam Counter Reset]**		
	Clears the counters related to SC codes and paper jams.		
001	SC/Jam Clear	-	-

7826	**[MF Error Counter] Japan Only**
001	Error Total
002	Error Staple

7827	**[MF Error Counter Clear] Japan Only**

7832	**[Self-Diagnose Result Display]**		
	Displays the result of the diagnostics.		
001	Diag. Result	*CTL	-

7836	**Total Memory Size**
	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.

7852	**[DF Scan Glass Dust Check Counter]**
	Counts the number of occurrences (0 to 65,535) when dust was detected on the scanning glass of the ADF or resets the dust detection counter. Counting is done only if SP4-020-1 (ADF Scan Glass Dust Check) is switched on.

001	Dust Detection Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]
002	Dust Detection Clear Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]

7853	**[Replacement Counter]**		
	Displays the PM parts replacement number.		
001	PCU: Bk	*CTL	[0 to 255 / - / 1 /step]
002	PCU: M	*CTL	
003	PCU: C	*CTL	
004	PCU: Y	*CTL	
005	Development Unit: Bk	*CTL	
006	Development Unit: M	*CTL	
007	Development Unit: C	*CTL	
008	Development Unit: Y	*CTL	
009	Developer: Bk	*CTL	
010	Developer: M	*CTL	
011	Developer: C	*CTL	
012	Developer: Y	*CTL	
013	Image Transfer	*CTL	
014	Cleaning Unit	*CTL	
015	Fusing Unit	*CTL	
016	Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	
017	Toner Collection Bottle	*CTL	

7855	**[Coverage Range]**

	Sets the color coverage threshold. Coverage rate = Coverage per page / A4 full coverage (dots) x 100 There are three coverage counters: Color 1, Color 2, and Color 3 ▪ [A] 5% (default) is adjustable with SP7855-001. ▪ [B] 20% (default) is adjustable with SP7855-002. Note ▪ The setting value [B] must be set larger than [A]. The total numbers of printouts (BW printing plus color printing) for each coverage range are displayed with the following SPs. ▪ Color1 counter: SP8601-021 ▪ Color2 counter: SP8601-022 ▪ Color3 counter: SP8601-023		
001	Coverage Range 1	*CTL	[1 to 200 / **5** /1]
002	Coverage Range 2	*CTL	[1 to 200 / **20** /1]

7901	**[Assert Info]**		
	Records the location where a problem is detected in the program. The data stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. **DFU**		
001	File Name	*CTL	-
002	Number of Lines		
003	Location		

7906	**[Prev. Unit PM Counter]**		
	(Page or Rotations, Unit, [Color]), Dev.: Development Unit		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance units.		
001	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 page/step]

002	Page: PCU: M		
003	Page: PCU: C		
004	Page: PCU: Y		
005	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
006	Page: Development Unit: M		
007	Page: Development Unit: C		
008	Page: Development Unit: Y		
009	Page: Developer: Bk		
010	Page: Developer: M		
011	Page: Developer: C		
012	Page: Developer: Y		
013	Page: Image Transfer		
014	Page: Cleaning Unit		
015	Page: Fusing Unit		
016	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
017	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions for motors or clutches in the previous maintenance units.		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		

037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance unit or toner cartridge.		
061	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
062	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
063	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
064	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
065	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
066	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
067	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
068	Rotation (%): Development Unit:		

	Y		
069	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
070	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
071	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
072	Rotation (%): Developer: Y		
073	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
074	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		
075	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
076	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		
077	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current count ÷ Yield count) x 100, where “Current count” is the current values in the counter for the part, and “Yield count” is the recommended yield.		
091	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
092	Page (%): PCU: M		
093	Page (%): PCU: C		
094	Page (%): PCU: Y		
095	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
100	Page (%): Developer: M		

101	Page (%): Developer: C		
102	Page (%): Developer: Y		
103	Page (%): Image Transfer		
104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		
106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7931	**[Toner Bottle Bk]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Bk.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7932	**[Toner Bottle M]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for M.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7933	**[Toner Bottle C]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for C.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7934	**[Toner Bottle Y]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Y.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7935	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Bk]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Bk.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Bk.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Bk.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Bk.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		

041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Bk.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7936	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: M]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for M.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for M.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for M.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for M.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for M.
042	Attachment Date		

043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7937	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: C]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for C.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for C.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for C.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for C.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for C.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7938	[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Y]		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Y.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Y.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Y.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Y.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Y.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7950	[Unit Replacement Date]

	Displays the replacement date of each PM unit.		
001	Image Transfer Belt	*ENG	
002	Cleaning Unit		
003	Paper Transfer Unit		
004	Fusing Unit		
005	Toner Collection Bottle		
006	K PCU		
007	M PCU		
008	C PCU		
009	Y PCU		

7951	**[Remaining Day Counter]**		
	Displays the remaining unit life of each PM unit.		
001	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
002	Page: PCU: M		
003	Page: PCU: C		
004	Page: PCU: Y		
005	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
006	Page: Development Unit: M		
007	Page: Development Unit: C		
008	Page: Development Unit: Y		
009	Page: Developer: Bk		
010	Page: Developer: M		
011	Page: Developer: C		

012	Page: Developer: Y		
013	Page: Image Transfer Belt		
014	Page: Cleaning Unit		
015	Page: Fusing Unit		
016	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		

7952	**[PM Yield Setting]**		
	Adjusts the unit yield of each PM unit.		
001	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **256597000** / 1 mm/step]
002	Rotation: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **128299000** / 1 mm/step]
003	Rotation: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **155595000** / 1 mm/step]
004	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **192448000**/ 1 mm/step]
011	Page: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **320000** / 1 sheet/step]
012	Page: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
013	Page: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
014	Page: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **240000**/ 1 sheet/step]
021	Day Threshold: PCU: Bk	*CTL	Adjusts the threshold day for the near end fro each PM unit. [1 to 30 / **15** / 1 day/step] These threshold days are used for NRS alarms.
022	Day Threshold: PCU: M		
023	Day Threshold: PCU: C		
024	Day Threshold: PCU: Y		
025	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Bk		
026	Day Threshold: Development Unit: M		
027	Day Threshold: Development Unit: C		
028	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Y		
029	Day Threshold: Developer: Bk		

030	Day Threshold: Developer: M		
031	Day Threshold: Developer: C		
032	Day Threshold: Developer: Y		
033	Day Threshold: Image Transfer Belt		
034	Day Threshold: Cleaning Unit		
035	Day Threshold: Fusing Unit		
036	Day Threshold: Paper Transfer Unit]		
037	Day Threshold: Toner Collection Botte		
038	Rotation: PCU: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
039	Rotation: PCU: M		
040	Rotation: PCU: C		
041	Rotation: PCU: Y		
042	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
043	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
044	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
045	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		

046	Rotation: Developer: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
047	Rotation: Developer: M		
048	Rotation: Developer: C		
049	Rotation: Developer: Y		
050	Page: PCU: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
051	Page: PCU: M		
052	Page: PCU: C		
053	Page: PCU: Y		
054	Page: Development Unit: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
055	Page: Development Unit: M		
056	Page: Development Unit: C		
057	Page: Development Unit: Y		
058	Page: Developer: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
059	Page: Developer: M		
060	Page: Developer: C		
061	Page: Developer: Y		

7953	**[Operation Env. Log: PCU: Bk]**		
	Displays the PCU rotation distance in each specified operation environment. T: Temperature (°C), H: Relative Humidity (%)		
001	T<=5: 0<=H<30	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / - / 1 mm/step]

002	T<=5: 30<=H<55		
003	T<=5: 55<=H<80		
004	T<=5: 80<=H<=100		
005	5<T<15: 0<=H<30		
006	5<T<15: 30<=H<55		
007	5<T<15: 55<=H<80		
008	5<T<15: 80<=H<=100		
009	15<=T<25: 0<=H<30		
010	15<=T<25: 30<=H<55		
011	15<=T<25: 55<=H<80		
012	15<=T<25: 80<=H<=100		
013	25<=T<30: 0<=H<30		
014	25<=T<30: 30<=H<55		
015	25<=T<30: 55<=H<80		
016	25<=T<30: 80<=H<=100		
017	30<=T: 0<=H<30		
018	30<=T: 30<=H<55		
019	30<=T: 55<=H<80		
020	30<=T: 80<=H<=100		

7954	**[Operation Env. Log Clear]**
	Clears the operation environment log.

001			

SP8-xxx: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8211 to SP8216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8401 to SP8406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8691 to SP8696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an “application”). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

<table>
<tr><th>Prefixes</th><th colspan="2">What it means</th></tr>
<tr><td>T:</td><td>Total: (Grand Total).</td><td>Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.).</td></tr>
<tr><td>C:</td><td>Copy application.</td><td rowspan="4">Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was not stored on the document server.</td></tr>
<tr><td>F:</td><td>Fax application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>P:</td><td>Print application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>S:</td><td>Scan application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>L:</td><td>Local storage (document server)</td><td>Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server</td></tr>
</table>

		mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case.
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

Abbreviation	What it means
/	“By”, e.g. “T:Jobs/Apl” = Total Jobs “by” Application
>	More (2> “2 or more”, 4> “4 or more”
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
C	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine

Abbreviation	What it means
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
IFax	Internet Fax
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
K	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
MC	One color (monochrome)

Abbreviation	What it means
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. “NRS” is used overseas, “CSS” is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail

Abbreviation	What it means
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

Note

- All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear.

8 001	T:Total Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.
8 002	C:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 003	F:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 004	P:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 005	S:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 006	L:Total Jobs	*CTL	

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either “Delete Data” or “Specify Output” is specified.

- A job is counted as a fax job when the job is stored for sending.
- When a fax is received to fax memory, the F: counter increments but the L: counter does not (the document server is not used).
- A fax broadcast counts as one job for the F: counter (the fax destinations in the broadcast are not counted separately).
- A fax broadcast is counted only after all the faxes have been sent to their destinations. If one transmission generates an error, then the broadcast will not be counted until the transmission has been completed.
- A printed fax report counts as one job for the F: counter.
- The F: counter does not distinguish between fax sending or receiving.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L: counters both increment.
- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments. However, for fax reports and reports executed from the fax application, the F: counter increments.

8 011	T:Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of jobs stored to the document server by each application, to reveal how local storage is being used for input. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 012	C:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 013	F:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 014	P:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 015	S:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 016	L:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 017	O:Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When a fax is sent to the document server, the F: counter increments.

8 021	T:Pjob/LS	*CTL	These SPs reveal how files printed from the document server were stored on the document server originally. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 022	C:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 023	F:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 024	P:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 025	S:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 026	L:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 027	O:Pjob/LS	*CTL	

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application (Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.

System Service Mode

- When a fax on the document server is printed, the F: counter increments.

8 031	T:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs reveal what applications were used to output documents from the document server. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 032	C:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 033	F:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 034	P:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 035	S:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 036	L:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 037	O:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

8 041	T:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 042	C:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 043	F:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 044	P:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 045	S:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 046	L:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 047	O:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

8 051	T:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs count the applications used to send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 052	C:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 053	F:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 054	P:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 055	S:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 056	L:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 057	O:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	

- If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

8 061	T:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 062	C:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 063	F:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for fax jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. **Note**: Finishing features for fax jobs are not available at this time.		
8 064	P:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 065	S:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		

	Note: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time.		
8 066	L:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode.		
8 067	O:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 06x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8 066 1)	
8 06x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.	
8 06x 3	Staple	Number of jobs started in Staple mode.	
8 06x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.	
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).	
8 06x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8 064 6.)	
8 06x 7	Other	Reserved. Not used.	

8 071	T:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.		
8 072	C:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on		

	the number of pages in the job.		
8 073	F:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of fax jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 074	P:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 075	S:Jobs/PGS		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 076	L:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by the number of pages in the job.		
8 077	O:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of “Other” application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.		

8 07x 1	1 Page	8 07x 8	21 to 50 Pages
8 07x 2	2 Pages	8 07x 9	51 to 100 Pages
8 07x 3	3 Pages	8 07x 10	101 to 300 Pages
8 07x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11	301 to 500 Pages
8 07x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12	501 to 700 Pages
8 07x 6	6 to 10 Pages	8 07x 13	701 to 1000 Pages
8 07x 7	11 to 20 Pages	8 07x 14	1001 to Pages

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document

server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.

- Printing a fax report counts as a job and increments the F: counter (SP 8073).
- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8 111	T:FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 113	F: FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax directly on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 11x 1	B/W		
8 11x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- This SP counts fax jobs sent over a telephone line with a fax application, including documents stored on the document server.
- If the mode is changed during the job, the job will count with the mode set when the job started.
- If the same document is faxed to both a public fax line and an I-Fax at a destination where both are available, then this counter increments, and the I-Fax counter (8 12x)

also increments.

- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 121	T:IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 123	F: IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent (not stored on the document server), as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 12x 1	B/W		
8 12x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The counters for color are provided for future use; the color fax feature is not available at this time.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 131	T:S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to an e-mail, regardless of whether the document server was used or not.		
8 135	S: S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to e-mail, without storing the original on the document server.		
8 13x 1	B/W		
8 13x 2	Color		

System Service Mode

8 13x 3	ACS

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be color or black-and-white then counted.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

8 141	T:Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 145	S: Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned in scanner mode and sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 14x 1	B/W		
8 14x 2	Color		
8 14x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a “Color” job.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.

- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 151	T:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC). **Note**: At the present time, 8 151 and 8 155 perform identical counts.		
8 155	S:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC.		
8 15x 1	B/W		
8 15x 2	Color		
8 15x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 161	T:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of PC Fax transmission jobs. A job is counted from when it is registered for sending, not when it is sent. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 163	F:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	

- This counts fax jobs started from a PC using a PC fax application, and sending the data out to the destination from the PC through the copier.

8 191	T:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to scan images. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 192	C:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 193	F:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 195	S:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 196	L:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	

- SP 8 191 to 8 196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 201	T:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		
8 203	F: LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for fax transmission. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User		

	Tools display.		
8 205	S:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		

8 211	T:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned into the document server . [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 212	C:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 213	F:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 215	S:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 216	L:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 221	ADF Org Feeds	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning.		
8 221 1	Front	Number of front sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front	

		side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.)
8 221 2	Back	Number of rear sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning.

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8 231	Scan PGS/Mode	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF.		
8 231 1	Large Volume	Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time.	
8 231 2	SADF	Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF.	
8 231 3	Mixed Size	Selectable. Select “Mixed Sizes” on the operation panel.	
8 231 4	Custom Size	Selectable. Originals of non-standard size.	
8 231 5	Platen	Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen.	

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- The user cannot select mixed sizes or non-standard sizes with the fax application so if the original's page sizes are mixed or non-standard, these are not counted.
- If the user selects "Mixed Sizes" for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count is enabled.
- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

8 241	T:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by original type for all jobs, regardless of which application was used.		
8 242	C:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Copy jobs.		
8 243	F:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs.		
8 245	S:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Scan jobs.		
8 246	L:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen		

	8 241		**8 242**	**8 243**	**8 245**	**8 246**
8 24x 1: Text		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
8 24x 2: Text/Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

System Service Mode

8 24x 3: Photo	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
8 24x 4: GenCopy, Pale	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
8 24x 5: Map	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
8 24x 6: Normal/Detail	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
8 24x 7: Fine/Super Fine	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
8 24x 8: Binary	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 9: Grayscale	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 10: Color	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 11: Other	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

8 251	T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	These SPs show how many times Image Edit features have been selected at the operation panel for each application. Some examples of these editing features are: ▪ Erase> Border ▪ Erase> Center ▪ Image Repeat ▪ Centering ▪ Positive/Negative [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] Note: The count totals the number of times the edit features have been used. A detailed breakdown of exactly which features have been used is not given.
8 252	C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 254	P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 256	L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 257	O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	

The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

8 261	T:Scan PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 262	C:Scan PGS/ ColCr	*CTL	-
8 266	L:Scn PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 26x 1	Color Conversion	These SPs show how many times color creation features have been selected at the operation panel.	
8 26x 2	Color Erase		
8 26x 3	Background		
8 26x 4	Other		

8 281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	

8 291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 293	F:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 296	L:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	

8 301	T:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].		

8 302	C:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442].		
8 303	F:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443].		
8 305	S:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445].		
8 306	L:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446].		
8 30x 1	A3	-	
8 30x 2	A4		
8 30x 3	A5		
8 30x 4	B4		
8 30x 5	B5		
8 30x 6	DLT		
8 30x 7	LG		
8 30x 8	LT		
8 30x 9	HLT		

8 30x 10	Full Bleed	
8 30x 254	Other (Standard)	
8 30x 255	Other (Custom)	

8 311	T:Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.		
8 315	S: Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings. **Note**: At the present time, SP8-311 and SP8-315 perform identical counts.		
8 31x 1	1200dpi <		
8 31x 2	600dpi to 1199dpi		
8 31x 3	400dpi to 599dpi		
8 31x 4	200dpi to 399dpi		
8 31x 5	< 199dpi		

- Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.
- The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

8 381	T:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode
8 382	C:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 383	F:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 384	P:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 385	S:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	

8 386	L:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 387	O:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
  - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
  - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
  - Reports printed to confirm counts.
  - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
  - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
  - Error notification reports.
  - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8 391	LSize PrtPGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger. **Note**: In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		

8 401	T:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed from the document server. The counter for the application used to print the pages is incremented. The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 402	C:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 403	F:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 404	P:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 405	S:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 406	L:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.
- Fax jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the F: count.

8 411	Prints/Duplex	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

8 421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.		
8 422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application.		
8 423	F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application.		
8 424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.		
8 425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application.		
8 426	L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing from within the document server mode		

	window at the operation panel.			
8 427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications			
8 42x 1	Simplex> Duplex			
8 42x 2	Duplex> Duplex			
8 42x 3	Book> Duplex			
8 42x 4	Simplex Combine			
8 42x 5	Duplex Combine			
8 42x 6	2>	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)		
8 42x 7	4>	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)		
8 42x 8	6>	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)		
8 42x 9	8>	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)		
8 42x 10	9>	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)		
8 42x 11	16>	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)		
8 42x 12	Booklet			
8 42x 13	Magazine			

- These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet			**Magazine**	
Original Pages	**Count**		**Original Pages**	**Count**
1	1		1	1

2	2		2	2
3	2		3	2
4	2		4	2
5	3		5	4
6	4		6	4
7	4		7	4
8	4		8	4

8 431	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.		
8 432	C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the copy application.		
8 434	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the print application.		
8 436	L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel with the three features below.		
8 437	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications.		
8 43x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.	

8 43x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.
8 43x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.

8 441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application.		
8 443	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application.		
8 444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.		
8 445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application.		
8 446	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.		

8 44x 1	A3			
8 44x 2	A4			
8 44x 3	A5			
8 44x 4	B4			
8 44x 5	B5			
8 44x 6	DLT			
8 44x 7	LG			
8 44x 8	LT			
8 44x 9	HLT			
8 44x 10	Full Bleed			
8 44x 254	Other (Standard)			
8 44x 255	Other (Custom)			

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8 451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.		
8 451 1	Bypass	Bypass Tray	
8 451 2	Tray 1	Copier	
8 451 3	Tray 2	Copier	
8 451 4	Tray 3	Paper Tray Unit (Option)	
8 451 5	Tray 4	Paper Tray Unit (Option)	
8 451 6	Tray 5	LCT (Option)	
8 451 7	Tray 6	Currently not used.	

8 451 8	Tray 7	Currently not used.
8 451 9	Tray 8	Currently not used.
8 451 10	Tray 9	Currently not used.

8 461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications. ▪ These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. ▪ Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. ▪ During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.		
8 462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.		
8 463	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application.		
8 464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.		
8 466	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 46x 1	Normal		
8 46x 2	Recycled		

8 46x 3	Special
8 46x 4	Thick
8 46x 5	Normal (Back)
8 46x 6	Thick (Back)
8 46x 7	OHP
8 46x 8	Other

8 471	PrtPGS/Mag	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.		
8 471 1	< 49%		
8 471 2	50% to 99%		
8 471 3	100%		
8 471 4	101% to 200%		
8 471 5	201% <		

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8 481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	

8 484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. **Note**: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]		

8 491	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by each application.
8 492	C:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 493	F:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 496	L:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 497	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 49x 1	B/W		
8 49x 2	Single Color		
8 49x 3	Two Color		
8 49x 4	Full Color		

8 501	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by the print application.
8 504	P:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 057	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	

8 50x 1	B/W
8 50x 2	Mono Color
8 50x 3	Full Color
8 50x 4	Single Color
8 50x 5	Two Color

8 511	T:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514	P:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514 1	RPCS			
8 514 2	RPDL			
8 514 3	PS3			
8 514 4	R98			
8 514 5	R16			
8 514 6	GL/GL2			
8 514 7	R55			
8 514 8	RTIFF			
8 514 9	PDF			
8 514 10	PCL5e/5c			
8 514 11	PCL XL			
8 514 12	IPDL-C			

System Service Mode

8 514 13	BM-Links	Japan Only		
8 514 14	Other			

- SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

8 521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 522	C:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.		
8 523	F:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application. **NOTE**: Print finishing options for received faxes are currently not available.		
8 524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.		
8 525	S:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.		
8 526	L:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 52x 1	Sort		

8 52x 2	Stack
8 52x 3	Staple
8 52x 4	Booklet
8 52x 5	Z-Fold
8 52x 6	Punch
8 52x 7	Other

Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8 531	Staples	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]

8 581	T:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		
8 581 1	Total		
8 581 2	Total: Full Color		
8 581 3	B&W/Single Color		
8 581 4	Development: CMY		
8 581 5	Development: K		
8 581 6	Copy: Color		

8 581 7	Copy: B/W
8 581 8	Print: Color
8 581 9	Print: B/W
8 581 10	Total: Color
8 581 11	Total: B/W
8 581 12	Full Color: A3
8 581 13	Full Color: B4 JIS or Smaller
8 581 14	Full Color Print
8 581 15	Mono Color Print
8 581 16	Full Color GPC

8 582	C:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the copy application broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 583	F:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the fax application broken down by color output.		
8 583 1	B/W		
8 583 2	Single Color		

8 584	P:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the print application broken down by color output.		
8 584 1	B/W		
8 584 2	Mono Color		
8 584 3	Full Color		
8 584 4	Single Color		
8 584 5	Two Color		

8 586	L:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the local storage broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 591	O:Counter		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.			
8 591 1	A3/DLT			
8 591 2	Duplex			

8 601	Coverage Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total coverage for each color and the total printout		

	pages for each printing mode.		
8 601 1	B/W		
8 601 2	Color		
8 601 11	B/W Printing Pages		
8 601 12	Color Printing Pages		

8 631	T:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 633	F:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 63x 1	B/W		
8 63x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 641	T:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax.		

8 643	F:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax.		
8 64x 1	B/W		
8 64x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 651	T:S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications.		
8 655	S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only.		
8 65x 1	B/W		
8 65x 2	Color		

Note

- The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).

- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8 661	T:Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications.		
8 665	Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application.		
8 66x 1	B/W		
8 66x 2	Color		

Note

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8 671	T:Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications.		
8 675	Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application.		

8 67x 1	B/W
8 67x 2	Color

8 681	T:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax application only, so the counts for SP8 681 and SP8 683 are the same. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 683	F:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

8 691	T:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent from the document server. The counter for the application that was used to store the pages is incremented. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 692	C:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 693	F:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 694	P:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 695	S:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 696	L:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	

Note

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

8 701	TX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.		
8 701 1	PSTN-1		
8 701 2	PSTN-2		
8 701 3	PSTN-3		
8 701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 701 5	Network		

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by each compression mode.		
8 715 1	JPEG/JPEG2000		
8 715 2	TIFF(Multi/Single)		
8 715 3	PDF		
8 715 4	Other		

8 741	RX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port used to receive them.		
8 741 1	PSTN-1		
8 741 2	PSTN-2		
8 741 3	PSTN-3		
8 741 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		

8 741 5	Network		

8 771	Dev Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.		
8 771 1	Total		
8 771 2	K		
8 771 3	Y		
8 771 4	M		
8 771 5	C		

8 781	Toner Bottle Info.	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of already replaced toner bottles. **NOTE:** Currently, the data in SP7-833-011 through 014 and the data in SP8-781-001 through 004 are the same.		
8 781 1	Toner: BK	The number of black-toner bottles	
8 781 2	Toner: Y	The number of yellow-toner bottles	
8 781 3	Toner: M	The number of magenta-toner bottles	
8 781 4	Toner: C	The number of cyan-toner bottles	

8 791	LS Memory Remain	*CTL	This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for storing documents. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1]

8 801	Toner Remain	*CTL	[0 to 100/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP		

	allows the user to check the toner supply at any time. **Note:** This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).
8 801 1	K
8 801 2	Y
8 801 3	M
8 801 4	C

8 851	Coverage Count: 0-10%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 0% to 10%.		
8 851 11	0 to 2%: BK	8 851 31	5 to 7%: BK
8 851 12	0 to 2%: Y	8 851 32	5 to 7%: Y
8 851 13	0 to 2%: M	8 851 33	5 to 7%: M
8 851 14	0 to 2%: C	8 851 34	5 to 7%: C
8 851 21	3 to 4%: BK	8 851 41	8 to 10%: BK
8 851 22	3 to 4%: Y	8 851 42	8 to 10%: Y
8 851 23	3 to 4%: M	8 851 43	8 to 10%: M
8 851 24	3 to 4%: C	8 851 44	8 to 10%: C

8 861	Coverage Count: 11-20%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.		

8 861 1	BK
8 861 2	Y
8 861 3	M
8 861 4	C

8 871	Coverage Count: 21-30%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.		
8 871 1	BK		
8 871 2	Y		
8 871 3	M		
8 871 4	C		

8 881	Coverage Count: 31%-	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is 31% or higher.		
8 881 1	BK		
8 881 2	Y		
8 881 3	M		
8 881 4	C		

8 891	Printing PGS: Present Ink	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining current toner for each		

	color.
8 891 1	BK
8 891 2	Y
8 891 3	M
8 891 4	C

8 901	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 1	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining previous toner for each color.		
8 901 1	BK		
8 901 2	Y		
8 901 3	M		
8 901 4	C		

8 911	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 2	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining 2nd previous toner for each color.		
8 911 1	BK		
8 911 2	Y		
8 911 3	M		
8 911 4	C		

8 921	Coverage Count: Total	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 921 1	BK (%)		
8 921 2	Y (%)		
8 921 3	M (%)		
8 921 4	C (%)		
8 921 14	BK (Page)		
8 921 15	Y (Page)		
8 921 16	M (Page)		
8 921 17	C (Page)		

8 941	Machine Status	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.		
8 941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).	
8 941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.	
8 941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing	

		background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.
8 941 6	SC	Total time when SC errors have been staying.
8 941 7	PrtJam	Total time when paper jams have been staying during printing.
8 941 8	OrgJam	Total time when original jams have been staying during scanning.
8 941 9	Supply PM Unit End	Total time when toner end has been staying

8 951	AddBook Register	*CTL		
	These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration.			
8 951 1	User Code	User code registrations.		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 951 2	Mail Address	Mail address registrations.		
8 951 3	Fax Destination	Fax destination registrations.		
8 951 4	Group	Group destination registrations.		
8 951 5	Transfer Request	Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX.		
8 951 6	F-Code	F-Code box registrations.		
8 951 7	Copy Program	Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		[0 to 255 / **0** / 255]
8 951 8	Fax Program	Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		
8 951 9	Printer Program	Printer application registrations		

		with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8 951 10	Scanner Program	Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	

8 999	Adomin. Counter List	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 999 1	Total		
8 999 2	Copy: Full Color		
8 999 3	Copy: BW		
8 999 4	Copy: Single Color		
8 999 5	Copy: Two Color		
8 999 6	Printer Full Color		
8 999 7	Printer BW		
8 999 8	Printer Single Color		
8 999 9	Printer Two Color		
8 999 10	Fax Print: BW		
8 999 12	A3/DLT		
8 999 13	Duplex		
8 999 14	Coverage: Color (%)		
8 999 15	Coverage: BW (%)		
8 999 16	Coverage: Color Print Page (%)		
8 999 17	Coverage: BW Print Page (%)		
8 999 101	Transmission Total: Color		

8 999 102	Transmission Total: BW	
8 999 103	FAX Transmission	
8 999 104	Scanner Transmission: Color	
8 999 105	Scanner Transmission: BW	

SP9-XXX: Others

9511	Skew Origin Set	*CTL	
001	M: Skew Motor	These SPs reset the skew correction value (SP2-119-001 to -003) to "0".	
002	C: Skew Motor		
003	Y: Skew Motor		

9911	**[Pressure Roller Condition]**		
001	Normal: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **140** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
002	Normal: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
003	Coefficient: Low	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: No effect 1: Normal 2: High 3: Highest
	DFU Adjusts the coefficient value of the temperature correction for ferrite roller rotation when the the fusing unit is in the low temperature.		
004	Coefficient: Mid.	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1** / 1 /step] **DFU**
005	Coefficient: High	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**

006	Stand-by: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
007	Stand-by: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
008	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **200** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		
009	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **190** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		

9912	**[Target Angle]** Ferrite Roller Paper Size Adjustment **DFU**		
001	A3/DLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **323** / 1 PULSE/step]
002	B4	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **381** / 1 PULSE/step]
003	A4/LT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **400** / 1 PULSE/step]
004	B5	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **498** / 1 PULSE/step]
005	A5/HLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]
006	B6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]

007	A6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]

9921	Page Correction Setting	*CTL	Not used in this machine. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

9965	**[Repeat Print Temp.Correction]**		
	These SPs are used for Preventing the fusing temperature overheating due to a multiple printing job.		
001	JOB Interval: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in plain paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		
002	JOB Interval: M-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in middle thick paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		
003	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **600** / 10 sec/step]
	Specifies the threshold time for entering the temperature correction mode. If a job continues for the time specified with this SP, the machine enteres the temperature correction mode.		
004	Offset Value: Plain: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		
005	Offset Value: Plain: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		
006	Offset Value: M-Thick: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		
007	Offset Value: M-Thick: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		

8.1.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE

When entering the Input Check mode, 8 digits display the result for a section. Each digit corresponds to a different device as shown in the table.

Bit No.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Result	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1

Copier

5803	Description	Reading	
		0	1
5803 1	2nd Tray Size Detection	See table 2 following this table.	
5803 2	1st Tray Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 3	1st Tray Paper Height Sensor1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 4	1st Tray Paper Height Sensor2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 5	2nd Tray Paper Height Sensor1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 6	2nd Tray Paper Height Sensor2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 7	1st Tray Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 8	2nd Tray Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 9	1st Tray Upper Limit Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 10	2nd Tray Upper Limit Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 11	Bypass Paper Width Detection	See table 3 following this table.	
5803 12	Bypass Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 13	Bypass Paper Length Detection	See table 3 following this table.	
5803 14	1st Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 15	2st Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 16	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 17	Tray Full Exit Sensor	Paper not full	Paper full

5803 18	Fusing Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 19	Fusing Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 20	1st Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 21	2nd Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 22	Duplex Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 23	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 24	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 25	Junction Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 26	2nd Tray Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 30	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 31	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 32	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 33	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 34	Drum Phase Sensor: Bk	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 35	Drum Phase Sensor: M	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 36	Drum Phase Sensor: C	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected

5803 37	Drum Phase Sensor: Y	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 38	Interlock Release Detection 1	Front door open	Front door closed
5803 39	Interlock Release Detection 2	Front door open	Front door closed
5803 40	Right Door	Closed	Open
5803 41	Duplex Cover	Closed	Open
5803 42	Toner Collection Bottle Set	Set	Not set
5803 43	Toner Collection Full Sensor	Not full	Full
5803 46	ITB New Unit Detection	Not new	New
5803 50	Airflow Fan: Front: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 51	Airflow Fan: Rear: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 52	Fusing Exit Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 53	2nd Duct Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 54	3rd Duct Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 55	Paper Exit Fan:Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 56	Fusing Coil Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 57	IH Power Supply Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 58	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 60	ITB Contact Motor Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 61	Paper Transfer Contact Motor Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 62	Toner Relay Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 63	ITB Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock

5803 64	K Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 65	M Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 66	C Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 67	Y Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 68	Fusing Exit Motor:Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 80	HVPS:TTS:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 81	HVPS:CB:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 82	HVPS:D:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: DOM (JPN)	Set	Not set
5803 84	Fusing Destination Detection: NA	Set	Not set
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: EU	Set	Not set
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: TWN	Set	Not set
5803 87	Fusing New Unit Detection	New	Not new
5803 88	Fusing Unit Detection1		
5803 89	Fusing Unit Detection2		
5803 90	Zero-cross Signal		
5803 91	Fusing Rotation Sensor	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 92	Fusing Pressue Release Sensor	Not contact	Contact
5803 94	GAVD Open/Close Detection	Closed (LD5V ON)	Open (LD5V OFF)

5803 100	Keycard: Set	Set	Not set
5803 101	Mechanical Counter Bk: Set	Set	Not set
5803 102	Mechanical Counter FC: Set	Set	Not set
5803 103	Key Counter: Set	Set	Not set
5803 110	IOB Version		
5803 200	Scanner HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
5803 201	Platen Cover Sensor	Open	Closed

ADF (B802)

6007	**Description**	**Reading**	
		0	**1**
6007 1	Original Length 1 (B5 Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 2	Original Length 2 (A4 Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 3	Original Length 3 (LG Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 4	Original Width 1	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 5	Original Width 2	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 6	Original Width 3	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 7	Original Width 4	Paper not detected	Paper detected

6007 8	Original Width 5	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 9	Original Detection	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 10	Separation Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 11	Skew Correction	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 12	Scan Entrance Secsor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 13	Registration Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 14	Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 15	Feed Cover Sensor	ADF cover close	ADF cover open
6007 16	Lift Up Sensor	ADF cover close	ADF cover open
6007 17	Inverter Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 18	Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6007 19	Original Set HP Sensor	Original not detected	Original detected

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805)

6140	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
6140 1	Entrance Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 2	Proof Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 3	Proof Full Detection Sensor		Not Full	Full
6140 4	Trailing Edge Detection: Shift		Paper not detected*1	Paper detected*1
6140 5	Staple Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 6	Shift HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 7	Shift Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 8	Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 9	Paper Detection Sensor: Staple		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 10	Paper Detection Sensor: Shift		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 11	Paper Full Sensor: 2000-Sheet		Not Full	Full
6140 12	Oscillating Back Roller HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 13	Jogger HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 14	Exit Junction Gate HP Sensor		HP	Not HP
6140 15	Staple Tray Paper Sensor		Paper not	Paper detected

		detected	
6140 16	Staple Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 17	Skew HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 18	Limit SW	Not Limit	Limit
6140 19	DOOR SW	Closed	Open
6140 20	Stapler 1 Rotation	Not HP	HP
6140 21	Staple Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 22	Staple Leading Edge Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 23	Punch Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 24	Punch Registration HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 25	Punch Registratioin Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 26	Punch Chad Full Sensor	Not Full	Full
6140 27	Punch HP	Not HP	HP
6140 28	Punch Selection DIPSW 1	See *[1]	
6140 29	Punch Selection DiPSW 2	See *[1]	
6140 30	Stack Junction Gate Open/Closed HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 31	Leading Edge Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 32	Drive Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 33	Arrival Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected

6140 34	Rear Edge Fence HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 35	Folder Cam HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 36	Folder Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 37	Folder Pass Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 38	Saddle Full Sensor: Front	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 39	Saddle Full Sensor: Rear	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 40	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Front	Not HP	HP
6140 41	Saddle Stitch Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 42	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 43	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Rear	Not HP	HP
6140 44	Saddle Stitch Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 45	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 46	Full Sensor: 3000-Sheet	Not Full	Full
6140 47	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Front	Not used in the machine	
6140 48	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	
6140 49	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	

*1: Combination of DIP SW 1 and SW 2

DIP SW 1	DIP SW 2	Punch Type
0	0	Japan
1	0	Europe
0	1	North America
1	1	North Europe

*2: Please refer to "Lower Tray (B804 Only)" in the Service Manual for the "2000/3000 (Booklet) Finisher".

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6139	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6139 1	Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 2	Shift Exit Sensor (Lower Tray Exit Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 3	Staple Entrance Sensor (Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 4	Staple Moving HP Sensor (Stapler HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 5	Jogger HP Sensor (Jogger Fence HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 6	Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor	Home position	Not home position
6139 7	Staple Tray Paper Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 8	Staple Rotation Sensor (Staple Rotation HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 9	Staple Sensor	Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 10	Staple READY Detection	Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 11	Exit Guide Plate HP (Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 12	Shift HP Sensor	Not home position	Home position

6139 13	Paper Sensor (Stack Height Sensor)	Output tray not detected	Output tray detected
6139 14	Tray Lower Sensor (Lower Tray Lower Limit Sensor)	Lower limit	Not lower limit
6139 15	Proof Full Sensor (Paper Limit Sensor)	Not full	Full

Bridge Unit (D386)

6150	**Description**	**Reading**	
		0	**1**
6150 1	Bridge: Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6150 2	Bridge: Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6150 3	Bridge:Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6150 4	Bridge: Exit Cover Detection	Closed	Open
6150 5	Bridge: Feed Cover Detection	Closed	Open

Internal Shift Tray (D388)

6152	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6152 1	Shift:Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6152 2	Shift: Position Sensor	Tray position: Front	Tray position: Rear

1 Bin Tray (D414)

6154	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6154 1	1 bin: Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6154 2	1 bin: Paper Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected

Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCIT 2000 (D352)/ LCIT 1200 (D353)

6160	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6160 1	Bank: Tray3: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 2	Bank: Tray4: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 3	Bank: Tray5: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 4	Bank: Tray3: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 5	Bank: Tray4: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 6	Bank: Tray5: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 7	Bank: Feed Cover Detection	Closed	Open
6160 11	Bank: Palau: Paper Supply Switch	Closed	Open
6160 12	Bank: Palau: Slide Switch	Closed	Open

Table 1: Paper Height Sensor

0: Deactivated, 1: Activated (actuator inside sensor)

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1	Paper height sensor 2
Full	0	0
Nearly full	1	0
Near end	1	1
Almost empty	0	1

Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)

Switch 1 is used for tray set detection.

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models		Switch Location		
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**4**	**3**	**2**
11" x 17" SEF*[1] (A3 SEF)	A3 SEF*[1] (11" x 17" SEF)	0	0	1
8.5" x 14" SEF *[2] (B4 SEF)	B4 SEF *[2] (8.5" x 14" SEF)	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
8.5" x 11" SEF	8.5" x 11" SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
11" x 81/2" LEF*[3] (A4 LEF)	A4 LEF*[3] (11" x 81/2" LEF)	1	0	0
10.5" x 7.25" LEF*[4] (B5 LEF)	B5 LEF*[4] (10.5" x 7.25" LEF)	0	1	0

A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

*1: The machine detects either 11" x 17" SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-003.
*2: The machine detects either 8.5" x 14" SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-004.
*3: The machine detects either 11" x 81/2" LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-002.
*4: The machine detects either B5 LEF or 10.5" x 7.25" LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-005.

Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table)

0: ON, 1: OFF

By-pass Paper Size Sensor				Length Sensor	NA	EU/ASIA
bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0			
1	1	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A6 SEF
0	1	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A6 SEF
0	0	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A5 SEF
1	0	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A5 SEF
1	0	0	1	0	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A4 SEF
1	0	0	1	1	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A5 LEF
1	1	0	1	0	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A4 SEF
1	1	0	1	1	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A5 LEF
1	1	0	0	0	DLT SEF	A3 SEF
1	1	0	0	1	LT LEF	A4 LEF
1	1	1	0	0	DLT SEF	A3 SEF
1	1	1	0	1	LT LEF	A4 LEF

*1: The paper size (LT or LG) can be selected with SP1-007-001.

Table 4: APS Original Size Detection

Original Size		Length Sensor			Width Sensor		SP4-301 display
Metric version	**Inch version**	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	X	00011110
F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5” x 14”	O	O	O	X	X	00011100
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	X	X	X	O	O	00000011
B5 LEF	-	X	X	X	O	X	00000010
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	X	O	O	X	X	00001100
B5 SEF	-	X	X	O	X	X	00000100
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	X	X	X	X	X	00000000

8.1.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE

Copier

5804	Display	Description
5804 3	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 230 mm/s
5804 4	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 205 mm/s
5804 5	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 154 mm/s
5804 7	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 77 mm/s
5804 10	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 11	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 12	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 14	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77 mm/s
5804 17	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 18	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 19	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 21	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77

		mm/s
5804 24	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 25	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 26	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 28	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77 mm/s
5804 31	Fusing Exit Motor: 230mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 32	Fusing Exit Motor: 205mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 33	Fusing Exit Motor: 154mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 35	Fusing Exit Motor: 77mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 36	Fusing Exit Motor: 56mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 56 mm/s
5804 37	Toner Relay Motor	Toner Transport Motor
5804 40	Image Transfer Motor: 230mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 41	Image Transfer Motor: 205mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 42	Image Transfer Motor: 154mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 44	Image Transfer Motor: 77mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 50	Feed Motor: 300mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 300 mm/s
5804 51	Feed Motor: 265mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 265 mm/s
5804 52	Feed Motor: 242mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 242 mm/s
5804 53	Feed Motor: 230mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 54	Feed Motor: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 55	Feed Motor: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 154 mm/s

5804 56	Feed Motor: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 115mm/s
5804 57	Feed Motor: 77mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 115mm/s
5804 58	Feed Motor: 215mm/s	Registration Motor: 215 mm/s
5804 60	Regist Motor: 230mm/s	Registration Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 61	Regist Motor: 205mm/s	Registration Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 62	Regist Motor: 154mm/s	Registration Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 64	Regist Motor: 77mm/s	Registration Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 67	Duplex Feed M:CW:230mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 230 mm/s
5804 68	Duplex Feed M:CW:205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 205 mm/s
5804 69	Duplex Feed Motor: CW: 154mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 154 mm/s
5804 71	Duplex Feed Motor: CW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 77 mm/s
5804 74	Duplex Feed M:CCW:230mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 230 mm/s
5804 75	Duplex Feed M:CCW:205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 205 mm/s
5804 76	Duplex Feed Motor: CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 154 mm/s
5804 78	Duplex Feed Motor: CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 77 mm/s
5804 81	Duplex Reverse M:CW:230mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 230 mm/s
5804 82	Duplex Reverse M:CW:205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 205 mm/s
5804 83	Duplex Reverse Motor: CW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 154 mm/s
5804 85	Duplex Reverse Motor: CW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 77 mm/s

5804 88	Duplex Reverse M:CCW:230mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 230 mm/s
5804 89	Duplex Reverse M:CCW:205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 205 mm/s
5804 90	Duplex Reverse Motor: CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 154 mm/s
5804 92	Duplex Reverse Motor: CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 77 mm/s
5804 95	ITB Contact Motor	Image Transfer Belt Contact Motor
5804 96	Paper Transfer Contact Motor	Paper Transfer Contact Motor
5804 97	1st Tray Lift Motor: Up	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Up
5804 98	1st Tray Lift Motor: Down	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Down
5804 99	2nd Tray Lift Motor: Up	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Up
5804 100	2nd Tray Lift Motor: Down	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Down
5804 102	Fusing Pressue Release Motor	Pressure Roller Contact Motor
5804 104	Polygon Moter: LL	Polygon Motor: LL
5804 105	Polygon Moter: L	Polygon Motor: L
5804 107	Polygon Moter: HH	Polygon Motor: HH
5804 110	Air Flow Fan: Front	Ventilation Fan - Front
5804 111	Air Flow Fan:Rear	Ventilation Fan - Rear
5804 112	Fusing Fan:H	Fusing Fan: High Speed
5804 113	Fusing Fan:L	Fusing Fan: Low Speed
5804 114	PSU Cooling Fan	PSU Fan 1: High Speed
5804 115	2nd Duct Fan: H	Duct Fan 2: High Speed
5804 116	2nd Duct Fan: L	Duct Fan 2: Low Speed

5804 117	3rd Duct Fan: H	Duct Fan 3: High Speed
5804 118	3rd Duct Fan: L	Duct Fan 3: Low Speed
5804 119	Paper Exit Fan:H	Paper Exit Fan: High Speed
5804 120	Paper Exit Fan:L	Paper Exit Fan: Low Speed
5804 121	Fusing Coil Fan	IH Coil Fan
5804 122	IH Power Supply Cooling Fan	IH Inverter Fan
5804 123	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock
5804 126	Development Clutch: Bk	Development Clutch-K
5804 127	Development Clutch: M	Development Clutch-M
5804 128	Development Clutch: C	Development Clutch-C
5804 129	Development Clutch: Y	Development Clutch-Y
5804 130	Toner Bottle Clutch: Bk	Toner Bottle Clutch-K
5804 131	Toner Bottle Clutch: M	Toner Bottle Clutch-M
5804 132	Toner Bottle Clutch: C	Toner Bottle Clutch-C
5804 133	Toner Bottle Clutch:Y	Toner Bottle Clutch-Y
5804 134	Toner Supply Pump: Bk	Toner Supply Clutch: Bk
5804 135	Toner Supply Pump: M	Toner Supply Clutch: M
5804 136	Toner Supply Pump: C	Toner Supply Clutch: C
5804 137	Toner Supply Pump: Y	Toner Supply Clutch: Y
5804 138	1st Paper Feed Clutch	Paper Feed Clutch 1
5804 139	2st Paper Feed Clutch	Paper Feed Clutch 2
5804 140	Bypass Feed Clutch	By-pass Feed Clutch
5804 141	Bypass Pickup Solenoid	Bypass Pickup Solenoid

5804 142	Feed Tray lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid
5804 143	TD Sensor Shutter Solenoid	ID Sensor Shutter Solenoid
5804 144	Exit Junction Solenoid	Junction Gate 1 Solenoid
5804 145	1st Feed Pickup Solenoid	1st Pickup Solenoid
5804 146	2st Feed Pickup Solenoid	2nd Pickup Solenoid
5804 147	Duplex Junction Solenoid	Duplex Junction Solenoid
5804 161	PCL: Bk	
5804 162	PCL: M	
5804 163	PCL: C	
5804 164	PCL: Y	
5804 165	TD Sensor Power Supply	
5804 166	HST Sensor:Bk	TD Sensor:Bk
5804 167	HST Sensor: M	TD Sensor: M
5804 168	HST Sensor: C	TD Sensor: C
5804 169	HST Sensor: Y	TD Sensor: Y
5804 170	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner End Sensor: Bk
5804 171	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner End Sensor: M
5804 172	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner End Sensor: C
5804 173	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner End Sensor: Y
5804 174	TM Sensor: Front	ID Sensor: Front
5804 175	TM Sensor: Center	ID Sensor: Center
5804 176	TM Sensor: Rear	ID Sensor: Rear
5804 177	TM Sensor: M	ID Sensor: M

5804 178	TM Sensor: C	ID Sensor: C
5804 179	TM Sensor: Y	ID Sensor: Y
5804 181	Bank Motor 2: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 115 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 182	Bank Motor 2: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 154 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 183	Bank Motor 2: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 205 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 184	Bank Motor 2: 215mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 215 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 186	PP:Development:K	
5804 187	PP Development:M	
5804 188	PP Development:C	
5804 189	PP Development:Y	
5804 190	PP Development:Y	
5804 192	RFID ON/OFF: K	
5804 193	RFID ON/OFF: Y	
5804 194	RFID ON/OFF: C	
5804 195	RFID ON/OFF: M	
5804 196	RFID COM ON:K	
5804 197	RFID COM ON: Y	
5804 198	RFID COM ON: C	
5804 199	RFID COM ON: M	
5804 202	Scanner Lamp	
5804 216	LD1: K	

5804 217	LD2: K	
5804 218	LD1: M	
5804 219	LD2: M	
5804 220	LD1: C	
5804 221	LD2: C	
5804 222	LD1: Y	
5804 223	LD2: Y	
5804 224	PP:1TB:K	PP: Image Transfer Roller: K
5804 225	PP:1TB:M	PP: Image Transfer Roller: M
5804 226	PP:1TB:C	PP: Image Transfer Roller: C
5804 227	PP:1TB:Y	PP: Image Transfer Roller: Y
5804 228	PP:PTR:+	PP: Paper Transfer Roller:+
5804 229	PP:PTR:-	PP: Paper Transfer Roller:-
5804 231	HVPS: ChargeDC: K	
5804 232	HVPS: ChargeDC: C	
5804 233	HVPS: ChargeDC: M	
5804 234	HVPS: ChargeDC: Y	
5804 237	PP:Charge AC:K:230mm/s	
5804 238	PP:Charge AC:K:205mm/s	
5804 239	HVPS: ChargeAC: K: 154mm/s	
5804 241	HVPS: ChargeAC: K: 77mm/s	
5804 244	PP:Charge AC:M:230mm/s	
5804 245	PP:Charge AC:M:205mm/s	

5804 246	HVPS: ChargeAC: M: 154mm/s	
5804 248	HVPS: ChargeAC: M: 77mm/s	
5804 251	PP:Charge AC:C:230mm/s	
5804 252	PP:Charge AC:C:205mm/s	
5804 253	HVPS: ChargeAC: C: 154mm/s	
5804 255	HVPS: ChargeAC: C: 77mm/s	

ARDF (B802)

6008	Display	Description
6008 3	Feed Motor Forward	Feed Motor-Forward rotation
6008 4	Feed Motor Reverse	Feed Motor-Reverse rotation
6008 5	Relay Motor Forward	Transport Motor- Forward rotation
6008 7	Relay Motor Reverse	Transport Motor- Forward rotation
6008 8	Inverter Motor Reverse	-
6008 11	Inverter Solenoid	-
6008 12	Stamp	Stamp Solenoid

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6144	Display	Description
6144 1	Relay Up Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6144 2	Relay Down Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6144 3	Exit Motor	-
6144 4	Proof Junction Gate SOL	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 5	Tray Up Motor	Lower Tray Lift Motor
6144 6	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6144 7	Staple Moving Motor	Stapler Motor
6144 8	Staple Motor	Stapler Hammer
6144 9	Staple Junction Gate SOL	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 10	Positioning Roller Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6144 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	-
6144 12	Shift Motor	-
6144 13	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher

6145	Display	Description
6145 1	Entrance Motor	Finisher Entrance Motor
6145 2	Upper Feed Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6145 3	Lower Feed Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6145 4	Exit Motor	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor
6145 5	Knock Roller Motor	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor
6145 6	Shift Motor	Shift Roller Motor
6145 7	Exit Guide Plate Open/Close Motor	Exit Guide Plate Motor
6145 8	Tray Lift Motor	Upper Tray Lift Motor
6145 9	Oscillating Back Roller Motor	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor
6145 10	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6145 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
6145 12	Staple Moving Motor	Corner Stapler Movement Motor
6145 13	Staple Skew Motor	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor
6145 14	Staple Motor	Corner Stapler EH530
6145 15	Upper Junction Gate Solenoid	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid
6145 16	Lower Junction Gate Solenoid	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6145 17	Knock Solenoid	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid
6145 18	Trailing Edge Hold Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6145 19	Saddle Stitch Hold Solonoid	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid
6145 20	Stack Junction Gate	Stack Junction Gate Motor

	Open/Close Motor	
6145 21	Trailing Edge Fence Moving Motor	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor
6145 22	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Front	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front
6145 23	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Rear	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear
6145 24	Folder Plate Motor	Fold Plate Motor
6145 25	Folder Roller Motor	Fold Roller Motor
6145 26	Drive Roller Oscillating Motor	Positioning Roller Motor
6145 27	Punch Motor	Punch Drive Motor
6145 28	Punch Moving Motor	Punch Movement Motor
6145 29	Punch Registration Detection Motor	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor
6145 30	Exit Jogger Motor: Front	-
6145 31	Exit Jogger Motor: Rear	-
6145 32	Exit Jogger Release Motor	-

Bridge Unit (D386)

6151	Display	Description
6151 1	Bridge: Feed Motor: Current Selection	Bridge: Feed Motor: Current switching signal
6151 2	Bridge: Feed Motor:Reset	Bridge: Feed Motor:Reset
6151 3	Bridge: Feed Motor:Enable	Bridge: Feed Motor:Enable
6151 4	Bridge: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 230mm/s
6151 5	Bridge: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 205mm/s
6151 7	Bridge: Feed Motor: 154mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor:154mm/s
6151 8	Bridge: Feed Motor: 77mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 77mm/s
6151 11	Bridge: Junction Solenoid	Bridge: Junction Solenoid

Shift Tray (D388)

6153	Display	Description
6153 1	Shift: Lift-up Motor	

1 Bin Tray (D414)

6155	Display	Description
6155 1	1 bin: Junction Solenoid	

Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCT 2000 (D352)/ LCT 1200 (D353)

6161	Display	Description
6161 5	Bank1: Feed Motor:300mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 6	Bank1: Feed Motor:265mm/s	Feed Motor:265mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 7	Bank1: Feed Motor:242mm/s	Feed Motor:242mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 8	Bank1: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Feed Motor:230mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 9	Bank1: Feed Motor:215mm/s	Feed Motor:215mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 10	Bank1: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Feed Motor:205mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 11	Bank1: Feed Motor:154mm/s	Feed Motor:154mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 12	Bank1: Feed Motor:115mm/s	Feed Motor:115mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 13	Bank1: Feed Motor:77mm/s	Feed Motor:77mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 15	Bank2: Feed Motor:300mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 16	Bank2: Feed Motor:265mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 17	Bank2: Feed Motor:242mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 18	Bank2: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 19	Bank2: Feed Motor:215mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 20	Bank2: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 21	Bank2: Feed Motor:154mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 22	Bank2: Feed Motor:115mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 23	Bank2: Feed Motor:77mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 25	Bank1:Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 26	Bank2:Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid (D353)

6161 30	Bank:Tray3: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 31	Bank:Tray4: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D353)
6161 32	Bank:Tray5: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D353)
6161 35	Bank:Tray3: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 36	Bank:Tray4: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D353)
6161 37	Bank:Tray5: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D353)

8.1.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING

Printing Test pattern: SP2-109

Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing.

Note

- Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC occurs.

1. Enter the SP mode and select **SP2-109-003**.
2. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [#].
3. When you want to select the single color of Magenta, Yellow or Cyan for printing a test pattern, select the color with SP2-109-005 (2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan).
4. When you want to change the density of printing a test pattern, select the density with SP2-109-006 to -009 for each color.

   Note

   - If you select "0" with SP2-109-006 to -009, the color to be adjusted to "0" does not come up on a test pattern.
5. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, touch "Yes" to select the test pattern for printing.
6. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size etc.).

   Note

   - If you want to use black and white printing, touch "Black & White" on the LCD. If you want to use color printing, touch "Full Colour" on the LCD.
7. Press the "Start" key to start the test print.
8. After checking the test pattern, touch "SP Mode" on the LCD to return to the SP mode display.
9. Reset all settings to the default values.
10. Touch "Exit" twice to exit SP mode.

No.	Pattern	No.	Pattern
0	None	12	2-dot pattern
1	1-dot line pattern (Vertical)	13	4-dot pattern
2	2-dot line pattern (Vertical)	14	1-dot trimming pattern

3	1-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	15	Cross stitch: sub-scan
4	2-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	16	Cross stitch: main-scan
5	1-dot grid pattern (Vertical)	17	Belt pattern (Horizontal)
6	1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal)	18	Belt pattern (Vertical)
7	1-dot grid pattern (Fine)	19	Checkered flag
8	1-dot grid pattern (Rough)	20	Gray scale (Vertical)
9	1-dot slant pattern (Fine)	21	Gray scale (Horizontal)
10	1-dot slant pattern (Rough)	22	Dual beam density pattern
11	1-dot pattern	23	Solid

8.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

8.2.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE)

1001	Bit Switch			
001	Bit Switch 1		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**No I/O Timeout**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur.		
	bit 4	**SD Card Save Mode**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the GW SD slot (☛ “Card Save Function” in "System Maintenance Reference" section of the Field Service Manual).		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	**[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs with a border on the edges of the printable area.		

1001	Bit Switch			
002	Bit Switch 2		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-

	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	**Applying a collation Type**	Shift Collate	Normal Collate
		A collation type (shift or normal) will be applied to all jobs that do not already have a 'Collate Type' configured. Note ▪ If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect.		
	bit 3	**[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching**	0: Enable	1: Disable
		Disable: The MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job. Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If Auto PDL switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
003	Bit Switch 3		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	**[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually "<ESC>*r0A") will be changed to "<ESC>*r1A"		
	bit 3	DFU	-	-
	bit 4	DFU	-	-

	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
004	Bit Switch 4 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
005	Bit Switch 5		0	1
	bit 0	**Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.**	Disable	Enable
		If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type, Staple Type, and Punch Type from the operation panel. The available types will depend on the device and configured options. After enabling the function, the settings will appear under: "User Tools > Printer Features > System"		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PS] PS Criteria**	Pattern3	Pattern1
		Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS interpreter to determine whether a job is PS data or not. Pattern3: includes most PS commands. Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and headers		
	bit 4	**Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.**	Disable (100)	Enable (1000)
		Enable: Changes the maximum number of jobs that can be stored on the HDD via Job Type settings to 1000. The default is 100.		

	bit 5	**Face-up output**	Disable	Enable
		Enable: All print jobs will be output face-up in the destination tray.		
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
006	Bit Switch 6 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
007	Bit Switch 7 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
008	Bit Switch 8		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PCL,PS]: Allow BW jobs to print without requiring User Code**	Disable	Enable
		Enable: BW jobs submitted without a user code will be printed even if usercode authentication is enabled. Note ▪ Color jobs will not be printed without a valid user code.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	**[PS]: Orientation Auto Detect Function**	Enable	Disable
		Disable: Automatically chooses page orientations of PostScript jobs		

		(Landscape or Portrait) based on the content printed on the page.		
	bit 7	**[PDF]: Orientation Auto Detect Function**	Enable	Disable
		Automatically chooses page orientations of PDF jobs (Landscape or Portrait) based on the content printed on the page.		

1003	[Clear Setting]
1003 1	Initialize Printer System
	Initializes settings in the “System” menu of the user mode.
1003 3	Delete Program

1004	[Print Summary]
1004 1	Print Summary
	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).

1005	[Display Version]
1005 1	Disp. Version
	Displays the version of the controller firmware.

1006	[Sample/Locked Print]	*CTL	**0**: Linked, 1: On
1006 1	Enables and disables the document server. When you select “0,” the document server is enabled or disabled in accordance with Copy Service Mode SP5-967. When you select “1,” the document server is enabled regardless of Copy Service Mode SP5-967.		

1101	[Data Recall]
	Recalls a set of gamma settings. This can be either a) the factory setting, b) the previous setting, or c) the current setting.

1101 1	Factory	*CTL	
1101 2	Previous		
1101 3	Current		
1101 4	ACC		

1102	[Resolution Setting]
	Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment.
1102 1	**2400x600 Photo**, 1800x600 Photo, 600 x 600 Photo, 2400x600 Text, 1800x600, Text, 600x600 Text

1103	[Test Page]
	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.
1103 1	Color Gray Scale
1103 2	Color Pattern

1104	[Gamma Adjustment]		
	Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected in the “Mode Selection” menu.		
1104 1	Black: Highlight	*CTL	[0 to 30 / **15** / 1/step]
1104 2	Black: Shadow		
1104 3	Black: Middle		
1104 4	Black: IDmax		
1104 21	Cyan: Highlight		
1104 22	Cyan: Shadow		

1104 23	Cyan: Middle		
1104 24	Cyan: IDmax		
1104 41	Magenta: Highlight		
1104 42	Magenta: Shadow		
1104 43	Magenta: Middle		
1104 44	Magenta: IDmax		
1104 61	Yellow: Highlight		
1104 62	Yellow: Shadow		
1104 63	Yellow: Middle		
1104 64	Yellow: IDmax		

1105	[Save Tone Control Value]		
	Stores the print gamma adjusted with the “Gamma Adj.” menu item as the current setting. Before the machine stores the new “current setting", it moves the data currently stored as the “current setting” to the “previous setting” memory storage location.		
1105 1	Save Tone Control Value		

1106	[Toner Limit]		
	Adjusts the maximum toner amount for image development.		
1106 1	Toner Limit Value	*CTL	[100 to 400 / **260** / 1 %/step]

8.3 SCANNER SP MODE

8.3.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS)

1004	**[Compression Type]**		
	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing.		
1004 1	Compression Type	*CTL	[1 to 3 / **1** / 1/step] 1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR

1005	**[Erase margin]**		
	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin. This SP is activated only when the machine uses TWAIN scanning.		
1005 1	Range from 0 to 5 mm	*CTL	[0 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

1009	**[Remote scan disable]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: enable, 1: disable
1009 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

1010	**[Non Display Clear Light PDF]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Display, 1: No display
1010 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

8.3.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY)

2021	**[Compression Level (Gray-scale)]**		
	Selects the compression ratio for grayscale processing mode (JPEG) for the three settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2021 1	Level 3 (Middle Image Quality)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **40** / 1 /step]
2021 2	Level 2 (High Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]
2021 3	Level 4 (Low Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **30** / 1 /step]
2021 4	Level 1 (Highest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **60** / 1 /step]
2021 5	Level 5 (Lowest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]

2024	**[Compression ratio of ClearLight PDF]**		
	Selects the compression ratio for clearlight PDF for the two settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2024 1	Compression Ratio (Normal image)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **25** / 1 /step]
2024 2	Compression Ratio (High comp image)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]